



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

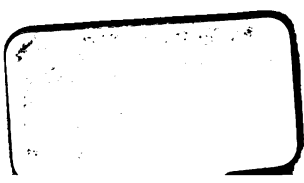
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



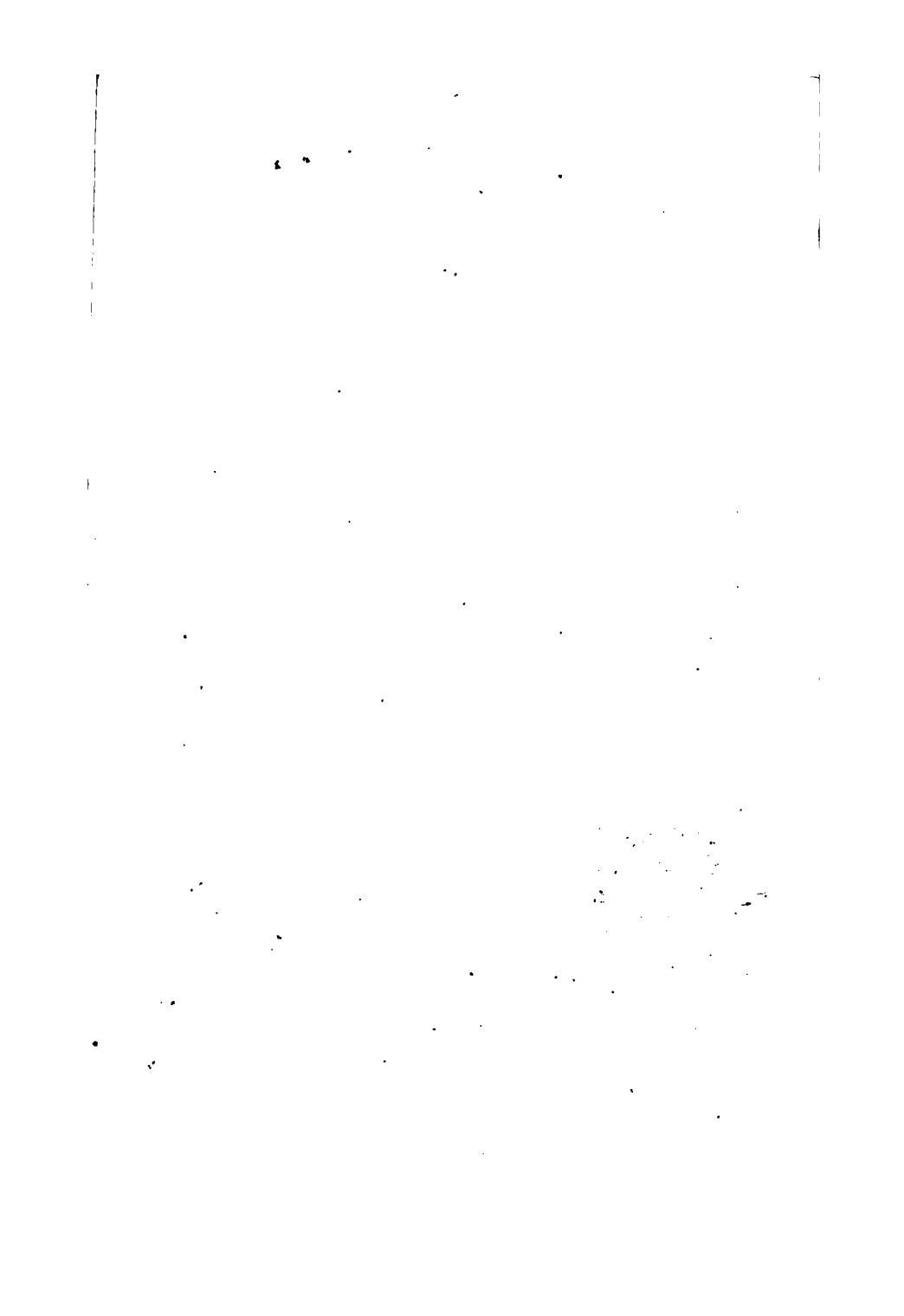


600084410N









**COMPLETE PRACTICAL GRAMMAR**  
**OF THE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE,**  
**WITH**  
**EXERCISES IN CONVERSATIONS, LETTERS, POEMS AND TREATISES,**  
**FORMING A**  
**METHOD AND READER;**  
**WITH**  
**A PHRASE BOOK OF PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS ETC.**  
**AND**  
**FULL DIRECTIONS FOR THE PROPER USE OF AHN'S FIRST COURSE,**  
**BY**  
**TR. HEINRICH WEISSE,**  
**UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN,**  
**GERMAN MASTER IN THE EDINBURGH EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTION FOR LADIES &c.**  
**AUTHOR OF "GERMAN LIFE & MANNERS,**  
**A SYSTEMATICALLY PROGRESSIVE COURSE**  
**OF**  
**NEW CONVERSATIONAL EXERCISES**  
**IN GERMAN COMPOSITION"**  
**WITH**  
**FULL REFERENCES TO THIS EDITION.**  
**THIRD EDITION.**



**WILLIAMS AND NORGATE,**  
**14, HENRIETTA STREET, COVENT GARDEN, LONDON;**  
**AND 20, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET, EDINBURGH.**  
**1872.**

303. 9. 113.

The following testimonial was prefixed to the first edition:  
From SIR WILLIAM HAMILTON, Bart., *Professor of Logic and Metaphysics in the University of Edinburgh.*

*Auchtermoot. Fifeshire, September 21, 1855.*

*Dear Sir,*—Your Grammar seems to me admirably calculated for the purpose of imparting a practical knowledge of the German Language. It is compendious and clear, embodying the most recent philological speculations; and, I happen to know, that when accompanied with your personal instructions, it has proved in all respects satisfactory to your pupils.

With best wishes for its well-merited success, I remain, Dear Sir,  
very truly yours,

W. HAMILTON.

T. H. WEISSE, Esq.

## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

In offering this third edition of his Grammar to those wishing to acquire the power of reading, writing and speaking German correctly, the Author has to say, in the first place, that he has taken every care that it shall contain neither more nor less than is absolutely necessary for that purpose, and shall not only give the most complete information on each of the grammatical subjects, illustrated by numerous examples and exercises, but that it shall also have such an arrangement as best takes account of the principles of English Grammar. In the second place, he has endeavoured to relieve the student from the usual imposition of a large amount of cumbrous memory-work, by comprising facts otherwise obscure and perplexing under simple leading principles such as he has been enabled to lay down by prolonged literary studies at the University of Berlin, by an experience of more than twenty years as a practical teacher of the language, and by constant and undivided attention to his subject.

It will be found that these leading principles, so far from involving the mind in abstruse speculations, are appreciable even by the youngest pupil, and that they facilitate true progress to an extent far beyond the reach of the systems commonly in use. Of this nature are the following: —

The Author's original explanation of the euphonic function of the soft *e* [p. 4] not only as regards accent, but chiefly in so far as it essentially simplifies the Declension of Adjectives [p. 78, 3] and Nouns [pp. 157, 2 and 3, — 170, 1 and 2];

His reduction of all declension to a unity, with the pronoun *der* for its type [see "Suggestions on the nature of German Declension", p. 153];

His connection of the Modification of Vowels [p. 167], and especially that in the Enlarged Plurals in *er* [p. 173, 3], with the primitive character of the word;

His Tabular Views giving at a glance all the points of agreement and difference in the Articles and Pronouns, together with their influence on the Adjective [pp. 84 and 85], and in

a similar way those in the Nouns [pp. 164, 176 and 177], in the Verbs [p. 241] and the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood [p. 259];

His arrangement of the Prepositional Idioms [p. 49, D. to p. 64] and of the Adverbs [p. 311 to p. 318] according to their logical significance, a task hitherto universally neglected;

His "Fundamental Principle of German Construction" [p. 334];

His "Rule" on Dependent Clauses [p. 333];

His statements regarding the nature of Inversion [p. 335], the Position of Objects [p. 350], and Adverbs [p. 354];

And lastly, his treatises on the Conjunctive (or Subjunctive) [p. 369, Explanation] and Conditional [p. 375, B.], and on German Metre [p. 384], and Punctuation [p. 18].

Teachers seeking to perform their duty conscientiously will, in devoting their attention to such peculiarities of the Author's system, find it a grateful task to supplant by an intellectualising process modes of instruction too often superficial and confusing; and they will at the same time further benefit their pupils by a large saving of time and energy. It is matter for regret that ignorance of the subject, and a desire after astonishing results should, even in large educational centres, favour all kinds of pretension in a field of such growing international importance as in the study of German. Honest men will allow no false considerations to deter them from holding before the public the fact, that in this study pupils undertake the difficult ascent from that among modern languages which in a grammatical point of view has been furthest reduced, to that which is grammatically the most developed: that accordingly both the time and care willingly bestowed on the classical languages are requisite also for the German, and that it were far better that the study should remain unattempted than that it should be undertaken in such a manner as to leave young minds disheartened and distrustful of their own abilities.

Favourable opinions of high literary authorities, and of critical journals in this country, a large circulation both here and in America, and above all the hearty approval of the Author's efforts in the first and second editions on the part of an extensive circle of intelligent and enthusiastic pupils, are here gratefully acknowledged as an ample reward for conscientious labour, and may well encourage those who do not shrink from following him in honourably fulfilling their duty as educationalists.

THE EXERCISES embodied in this work, being written each to illustrate a particular portion of the Grammar, and, according to their numbers, in strictest dependence on each other, are intended as both METHOD AND READER, for pupils who either bring to their task independent habits of intelligent study, or who (as is indispensable in large classes) have been previously prepared by "*The First Course of Ahn's Method*" (see below). By giving to these Exercises,

as to those in his "German Life and Manners",\* the form of Conversations, Letters, Treatises on Literature, and the like, the Author has endeavoured to make them more instructive and interesting than the usual string of hackneyed and unconnected phrases. Thus he hopes they may with intelligent scholars find like favour. To insure their being really "*graduated*", he was obliged to compose them himself. Even with that object in view, he would hardly have felt himself warranted in doing so, had not his earlier writings met with encouragement from the first literary review\*\* of Germany. As a specimen of their grammatical merits, he would call attention to Exercise XVI a. p. 179, containing every noun in the language forming the enlarged plural in *et*, as quite sufficient to fix them in the memory when used in conjunction with Exercise XVI. of "German Life and Manners". DIRECTIONS for the use of these Exercises are given p. XXIV.

The DIRECTIONS for the proper use of the First Course of *Ahn's Method*, subjoined to the above (p. XXV), may probably surprise some teachers by the amount and nature of the grammatical rules which they are expected to connect with each exercise of that method which though deservedly very popular, leaves the pupil helpless as regards Grammar. They must bear in mind that in using *Ahn*, their object must be not to teach the pupil the little book, but by means of it to teach them the language. The Author is certain that rigorous adherence to his plan will always be found the procedure best calculated to place the pupils in a safe position with regard to general reading and more advanced composition.

Both the size and the price of this book are certainly greater than those of Elementary Grammars and like publications. A little experience however, and in fact the first attempt at independent reading, will convince the student that the grammar of a language is a compact whole, the dealing with which promiscuously, or in so called popularising extracts, must ultimately lead to disappointments.

1, DARNAWAY STREET,  
EDINBURGH, August 1872.

H. WEISSE.

---

\*See Title-page.

\*\**Brockhaus, Blätter für literarische Unterhaltung. Review of H. Weisse's poems; 1844.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## AND

## ANALYSIS OF THE WORK.

(For the Index of Exercises see p. XXIV "Directions" for "Directions for the Use of Ahn's Method" see p. XXV).

A specified table of contents is in itself a means of instruction as it forms a kind of skeleton grammar and promotes the pupil's insight into the connection of facts. Alphabetical indices in works of this kind certainly tend to the opposite effect.

The portions of the work marked † in the Contents are **original Contributions** to the knowledge and treatment of German Grammar.

SECTION.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET (das Alphabet or Abecé), Use of Capitals . . . . .	1
II. PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY (Ausſprache und Rechtschreibung). . . . .	2
Value of correct pronunciation †.	
† (All the illustrations in analogy to the English.)	
A. SOUND OF THE VOWELS (Grundlaute or Vocale.) . . . . .	3
Leading Remarks. <i>Simple vowels</i> ; † The euphonic <i>e</i>	4
Modified vowels (Umlaute); — † where occurring . . . . .	5
Double vowels; the <i>ie</i> (also p. 16, t.)	
Diphthongs (Doppellaute) . . . . .	6
B. POWER OF THE VOWELS (long and short vowels) . . . . .	6
† Value of correct syllabbling . . . . .	6
4. The vowel in verbs . . . . .	7
† Contraction and elision. The vowel before <i>ch</i> , <i>dt</i> , <i>ft</i> , <i>ß</i> . († Exceptions complete.) . . . . .	8
C. SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS (Mitlaute). . . . .	9
† 3. Beginning and final sounds. 4. Interchange of consonants. . . . .	9

# CONTENTS. SECT. III-VI.

VII

## SECTION.

PAGE

Pronunciation of simple and compound consonants .	10
Gutturals (Rschlaute); — <i>pure and palatal</i> ; <i>table</i> —	11
{d} and {p} 15: {f}, {ß}, {t}. <i>Statement and exceptions</i>	
<i>complete tiar, tiat, tion, tius &amp;c.</i> . . . .	16
D. PUNCTUATION (Zeichenſetzung), <i>new and complete</i>	
<i>statement</i> . . . . .	18
The „; and „ 18. the : . . . . .	20
The ?! — The inverted commas and apostrophe .	21
E. ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	21
III. THE ACCENT OR STRESS (Silbenton). <i>Its law.</i>	
— The euphonic t . . . . .	23
A. IN SIMPLE WORDS . . . . .	23
B. IN COMPOUND WORDS . . . . .	24
† 5. The Demonstrative portion accented . . . .	25
C. THE ACCENT IN SENTENCES (der Satzton) —	
† <i>awkward habits</i> . . . . .	26
D. EMPHASIS (der Nachdruck) . . . . .	26
IV. PREFIXES (Vorſilben); — here treated with regard to	27
accentuation and orthography. — For their position	
and force see Sect. XX, p. 233 and 235 &c. and	
p. 64 E.	
† <i>Leading Remarks, List</i> . . . . .	27
A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES (untrennbare B.) — <i>be, emp,</i>	28
<i>ent, er, ge, ver, zer, ant, miß, un and ur.</i> — <i>The</i>	
<i>prefix un</i> . . . . .	28
B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES (trennbare B.) . . . . .	29
C. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES — <i>durch, über, um, unter, voll</i>	
<i>and wieder</i> (see also p. 233, 2), <i>note 1, hinter; 2, vor;</i>	
<i>zu, 31</i> . . . . .	30
V. DERIVATION. A. CHANGE AND MODIFICATION	
OF THE VOWEL. B. SUFFIXES. 1 and 2 Roots	
in radical or strong verbs. 3 stems, nouns . .	32
4, Adjectives, 5, Derivative weak verbs, . .	33
6, Derivative nouns and adjectives in <i>el, en, er,</i>	
7, Derivatives in <i>e, d, de, ft, t, te</i> (mostly feminine),	
8, Derivatives with prefix <i>ge</i> . . . . .	34
B. SUFFIXES (Nachſilben). Secondary derivatives, when	
modified, foreign accented. <i>a. Adjective suffixes</i>	35
<i>b. Adverbial suffixes, c. numeral suffixes, d,</i>	
<i>Substantive suffixes</i> . . . . .	36
1, masc., 2, fem., 3, neuter 37, 4, various genders	38
<i>e, Infinitive suffixes in en, eln, ern, foreign iten</i> .	38
VI. PREPOSITIONS (Vormörter) <i>Leading Remarks</i> . .	39
A. GOVERNMENT. — 1, genitive, 40; — <i>Ex. XV</i> .	41
2, Dative, 43; <i>Ex. XIV</i> . . . . .	44
3, Accusative, 44; <i>Ex. XIII</i> . . . . .	45



SECTION.	PAGE
4, Dative and Accusative, 45; <i>Ex. XVI</i> . . .	46
B. CONTRACTION WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE . . .	47
C. COMBINATIONS <i>nach</i> — <i>zu</i> , <i>auf</i> — <i>zu</i> , <i>von</i> — <i>auf</i> , <i>von</i> — <i>an</i> , <i>von</i> — <i>ab</i> , <i>von</i> — <i>aus</i> , <i>bei</i> — <i>an</i> , <i>auf</i> , <i>vor</i> , <i>zu</i> , <i>nach</i> — <i>hin</i> — <i>von</i> — <i>her</i> , . . .	48
D. † PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS (PHRASE BOOK) . . .	49
1, ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE 50; 2, OF TIME 54; 3, OF CAUSE, REASON OR MOTIVE, 57; 4, OF OBJECT OR CAUSE, 59; 5, OF PURPOSE, 61; 6, MAN- NER AND CONDITION . . . . .	62
E. Prepositions used as separable prefixes; — with <i>hin</i> and <i>her</i> . — F. Prepositions with <i>sich</i> 64 and	65
VII. DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN . . .	65
1 and 2 form of address, 3, <i>unſ</i> , <i>euch</i> and <i>sich</i> for each other, 4, <i>eſ</i> for “so”, 65, <i>table</i> . . . . .	66
<i>Ex. VI</i> and <i>Ex. VII</i> . . . . .	67
<i>Ex. VIII</i> 5, <i>It is I, thou</i> &c.; — <i>Es iſt. Es find</i> , <i>Ex. XVII</i> . . . . .	68
VIII. REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	69
1, when to be used with prepositions 69; <i>Ex. XVIII</i>	70
2, <i>List of Prepositions forming components of da</i> , <i>wo</i> , &c. . . . .	71
3, The Partitive 71; 4, <i>distinguished from Genitive Plural</i> . . . . .	72
5 <i>a, Selbſt, b, einander, c, man, d. Jedermann</i> , <i>e, Jemand</i> and <i>Niemand, f, Etwas, g, Nichts</i> . . .	72
<i>Ex. XIX</i> and <i>XX</i> . . . . .	73
IX. DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLES, PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	74
A. LEADING REMARKS. 1, Definite article ( <i>der beſtimmte Artikel</i> ) [the chief Pronoun and type of declension]. 2, Pronouns corresponding with it. 3, The inde- finite article ( <i>der unbeſtimmte Artikel</i> ), [the nume- ral one] defective declension. 75; 4, Possessive Pronouns corresponding with it. 75; 5, Numbers and Cases. 6, Accusative corresponding with nomina- tive. 7, The Plural. 8, <i>derjenige</i> , &c. 9, Indefi- nite numerals . . . . .	75
B. ADJECTIVE, used attributively, predicatively, adverbially . . . . .	76
1, Not changed as Predicate or adverb, — 2, and placed at the end, 77. — 3, † Effects of the posi- tion of the Adj., as attribute, on euphony. — 4, Euphonic nature of the terminations. — 5, The consonant <i>n</i> . — The economy of forms.	77

SECTION.

PAGE

— 6, Nominatives in <i>e</i> , — 7, in <i>er</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>eß</i> , 78, Note 1. <i>a good one</i> . 2, <i>so good a</i> , <i>not so good</i> and <i>too good a</i> . — 8, The adjective without Art. or Pron., 79. — 9, <i>jener</i> , <i>selber</i> , <i>mein(ige)</i> , <i>dein(ige)</i> , &c. reduced to adjectives — 10, The Adj. after indefinite numerals, 80. — 11, The <i>e</i> omitted 81, — 12. Adj. as nouns. Note 1, <i>hoch</i> , 2 and 3, <i>all</i> , <i>all the ganz</i> , <i>aller</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>eß</i> . <i>Ex.</i> XXI . . . . .	82
† Tabular view of the declension of the articles, pronouns and adjectives, 84 and 85. <i>Ex.</i> XXII	86
X. OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVES.	
1, Adj. as nouns. — 2, After <i>Etwas</i> something, <i>Nichts</i> nothing, <i>viel</i> much, <i>wenig</i> little, 87. — 3, The attribute after its noun. — 4, The neut. termina- tion <i>eß</i> omitted. — 5, The adj after pers. Pron. — 6, Adj. formed from names of nationalities, 88. — 7, of places, — 8, of materials. — 9, from adverbs and prepositions, 89; — 10, from nume- rals, 90. <i>Ex.</i> XXIII . . . . .	90
XI. USE OF THE PRONOUNS . . . . . 92	
A. INDEFINITE OR SUBSTANTIVE DEMONSTRATIVES, <i>Dies</i> , <i>Das</i> . — <i>a</i> , their use, 92. — <i>b</i> , their cases <i>dessen</i> , <i>dem</i> &c. — <i>c</i> , Compounds with prepositions ( <i>damit</i> , <i>daran</i> , <i>darauf</i> , <i>davon</i> &c.), their use with <i>daß</i> and the infinitive with <i>zu</i> in rendering English participial clauses (see p. 297 <i>e</i> ); <i>hier</i> used for <i>Dies</i> , 93. — <i>Note</i>	
B. THE ADJECTIVE-DEMONSTRATIVES . . . . .	95
Remark. <i>This one that one, such a one</i> . . . . .	95
1, <i>dieser this</i> , <i>jener that</i> , the <i>latter</i> , the <i>former</i> , —	95
2, <i>Jener</i> distinguished from <i>derjenige</i> . — 3, <i>a</i> , <i>derjenige</i> , <i>that</i> , <i>he who</i> , differs from <i>jener</i> ; Explanation. 96	96
<i>b</i> , <i>Not always the antecedent of a Relative</i> . —	
<i>c</i> , The accent, <i>dessen</i> , <i>deren</i> , <i>derer</i> , <i>denen</i> . — <i>d</i> , <i>He</i> <i>who</i> rendered by <i>wer that which</i> by <i>was</i> , when followed by the antecedent, 97. — <i>Ex.</i> XXIV. 98	98
4, <i>derselbe (selber) the same</i> ; — used for <i>it</i> with Prep. 100, for <i>he, she</i> and for Possessives. —	
5, <i>all, each, every</i> , <i>aller</i> , <i>alles</i> its limited use 101. <i>No-</i> <i>tes</i> , <i>Alles</i> , <i>was</i> , <i>all that</i> . — 6, <i>jeder</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>eß</i> , (pl. <i>alle</i> ) <i>each</i> , <i>every</i> , <i>ein jeder</i> &c. Adj., <i>alle all the</i> ; <i>das All</i> , <i>all' all</i> — 7. <i>Mancher</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>eß many a</i> . — 8. <i>Goldher</i> 102 <i>e</i> , <i>eß such</i> , <i>ein solcher</i> , <i>solch ein such a</i> , <i>dergleichen</i> , <i>dergleichen, the like</i> , <i>Note. such</i> qualifying Adj. <i>solch'</i> and so. <i>b. such a (thing) as</i> , how rendered <i>such-as</i> rendered by <i>so</i> — <i>daß</i> , <i>so</i> , <i>solche welche</i> , <i>solche wie</i> 103	103

(see p. 115). — 9, *Welcher* used for *some*, *irgend welche any, any at all* (see also the Relative). — 10, Pronominal numerals; their Singulars, ein anderer (*a different one*), noch einer *another*, neulich *the other day*; einiger *some*, sämtlicher *the whole*, limited use; viel *much* and wenig *little* 104, *when declined*; etwas, einiger, irgend einer, irgend welcher *some, any* . . . . . 105

#### C. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND *kein, e*.

*a*, *Your* expressed in three ways *b*, agreement in gender and case. — *c*, Substantive-Possessives, — *d*, *mein, dein* for *der meinige, der deinige* &c. . . 106  
Note, *ihr*. — *e*, *kein* no, NOT *A*, *reason for its use*, — *f*, *keiner* no one.

#### D. The INTERROGATIVE pronouns . . . . . 107

1, *Welcher? Which, what?* — *Welch ein, what a*. — 2, *Wer? Who? 108*, — 3, Declension of *wer* and *was*, (*wessen, wem, wen*). — 4, Prepositions annexed, (*weßhalb, weßwegen? On account of what? womit, with what, woraus, out of what* &c. &c.) — *Was? for Warum? Why? — What, which?* how rendered with prepositions not entering into composition. Note, compounds of *wo*, not to be used for definite Relative, 109. — 5, *Was für ein? What sort of? — awkwardly separated*; with plurals for *what!* 6, *Was — Alles what all*, — 7, *auch, auch immer*, nur used with *Wer, Was* and its compounds, *whosoever, whatsoever*. — *I wonder*, also with interrogative Adv. . . . . 111

#### E. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE ADVERBS . . . . . 111

*a*, *Wann? When? At what time?* (see also p. 322) — *b*, *Wie? How?* (see also p. 330). — *c*, *Wo? Where?* (see also p. 330) *Ex. XXV*. . . . . 112

#### F. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . . 113

*Auch* omitted, Note 1. — *a*, The Relative; its agreement; — *b*, in what sense definite or indefinite. — *c*, *Wer he who, was that which, Was not daß that* after. *Alles, Manches* &c. Note 2. 114. — *d*, *As* referring to *such*, rendered by the Relative or by *wie*, Note 3 *wie as* when used. — *e*, *So* used as Relative. *f*, The Genitive of *welcher*; *why not used* 115

#### XII. *der, die, daß*, as THE SHORTER FORM OF PRONOUNS . . . . . 116

*A*. 1, used as Demonstrative; — 2, for *he, she, it, they*; — 3, as the Relative, — *how recognized*, 116

## SECTION.

## PAGE

— representing at once the Demonstr. and Rel., Note. — Declension. . . . .	117
B. The shorter form indispensable <i>a</i> , in the Genitive 117, — <i>b</i> , in phrases like <i>I who, thou who, we who</i> ; († reason for their construction), . . .	118
— <i>c</i> , after <i>Jemand somebody, Niemand nobody, Jedermann everybody</i> ; <i>d</i> , indefinite pronouns, <i>alles, etwas</i> etc. requiring Gen. <i>dessen</i> , —	
C. The shorter form used further 1, as indefinite Demonstrative, 119. Note, <i>Das</i> ; expressing contempor.† — 2, for <i>dieser, jener</i> . — 3, for <i>derjenige</i> . 4, for <i>derselbe</i> , 120. <i>Ex. XXVI</i> . . . . .	121
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS	122
1, † Modification of Monosyllables only, 122; — the reason why! — List of monosyllables which Modify 123; — 2, the terminations <i>er</i> and <i>st</i> . . . . .	124
A. 1. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES, declined; — 2. Superl. after the indef. art. — 3, no compound comparison; its nature in English† . . . . .	125
B. Adjectives used ADVERBIALLY; Comp. in <i>er</i> . . . . .	125
The superlative absolute in 1. <i>st</i> , 2, <i>stens</i> — 3, <i>auf's</i> — <i>ste</i> . . . . .	125
The relative superlative <i>am</i> — <i>sten</i> , — used adverbially, Note 1; — when used predicatively, Note 2, 126	
C. PARTICLES AND ADJECTIVES COMPARED WITH <i>mehr</i> and <i>am meisten</i> . Note, <i>mehr</i> for <i>rather</i> . . . . .	127
D. THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE USED PREDICATIVELY, expressed by adverbs <i>höchst</i> , <i>sehr</i> &c. <i>most</i> &c. &c., 127	
E. IRREGULAR COMPARISON. 127 — Note 1, <i>hoch</i> , <i>höher</i> , <i>höchst</i> ; — 2, <i>wenig</i> little; — 3, the adjective <i>most</i> die meisten; — 4, <i>much</i> sehr; — 5, <i>much</i> viel	128
F. PARTICLES OF COMPARISON . . . . .	128
1, <i>so</i> , <i>as</i> . — 2, <i>als</i> <i>as</i> . — 3, <i>als</i> <i>than</i> . 128. — Note 1, The comma; 2, the clauses preceding <i>als</i> <i>than</i> , completed; 3, <i>als</i> <i>but</i> . — 4, <i>no sooner than</i> , <i>saum</i> — <i>als</i> . — 4, <i>Wie</i> like, <i>as</i> not to be confounded with <i>als</i> . — 5, <i>Je</i> the, <i>desto</i> the. 129. — 6, <i>immer</i> more and more. — 7, <i>aller</i> prefixed to Superlatives. — 8, <i>zu</i> too, (requiring the dative, see p. 217 <i>b</i> ). — 9, Compound adjectives expressing superlatives . . . . .	130
XIV. NUMERALS (Zahlwörter) . . . . .	133
A. Cardinal numbers (Grundzahlen). List (1 to 100,000) 133	
1, <i>a</i> , <i>eins</i> one, how distinguished from the indef. article. 133. — <i>einer-e-es</i> , — not declined in compounds, — die Einen some (of a number). <i>b</i> zwei & drei declension. <i>c</i> . Card. Num. used as	

## SECTION.

## PAGE

- noun. **134**. — Note 1. the phrase *two or three* — ein Paar. — 2, *beide-both the*. d. Card. with adj. 135  
 e. gen. by von. Note 3. names of numerals  
 fem. — 4, with the suffix *er*.
- B. THE ORDINAL NUMBERS, *a*, how formed . . . 136  
 Dates. — c. the Interrogative *der wievielfte? Which?*  
 note 1, Ordinals in names of sovereigns.
- C. DISTINCTIVE NUMERALS. *erstens in the first place* . 137
- D. Fractions, Note 1, half a, the 2 *andertalb*, Note 3,  
*a twelvemonth, sixmonth &c.* — 4, Hours of the  
 day . . . 138
- E. Distributive numerals (*je zwei each two &c.*).  
 F. Multiplicative numerals (*zweifach two fold, &c.*)  
 G. Variative numerals (*einerlei all of one kind*) . . 138  
 H. Reiterative numerals (*einmal one time, once, &c.*).  
 I. The indefinite numerals (*all all the, many*);  
*Ex. XXVIII.* . . . 139
- XV. NOUNS (Hauptwörter). — GENDER (das Geschlecht). 142  
*Treatise on its necessity, value for the construction, their force in poetry &c.*, (for advanced pupils) . . . 142—146  
 General rules. — Compound nouns, exceptions.  
 A. Masculine, **146—148**. — B. Feminine, — C.  
 Neuter, . . . 148—150  
 Note 1, Terms of natural relations. — Note 2, Social  
 relations. — Note 3, for species of animals, 150—151  
 Nouns varying in meaning with different genders;  
 List; . . . 152
- XVI. NOUNS. — DECLENSION (Biegung) . . . 153  
 † *Suggestions on the Nature of German Declension.*  
 Leading Remarks. — 1, *Only two terminations*, —  
 2, *when these only are added*. — 3, *The euphonic*  
*suffixes e and er*, 157. — 4, † N-declension and  
 S-declension. — 5, Modification; *rule for its occur-*  
*rence*. — 6, Anomalies. — 7, Nouns of foreign origin  
**158**. — 8 FEMININE NOUNS; relics of declension  
 in the Singular. . . . 159
- A N-DECLENSION, *analogous to that of adjectives.*  
 — Specimen, *Snabe, Dohs* **159**. — *Ex. IX.* — 160  
 List. 1, nouns formerly ending in *e* the nomina-  
 tive. — † *these nouns characterized* . . . 161
- Note 1, *Bauer, Nachbar*. — Note 2, *Herr*. — Note 3,  
 Nouns formerly declined by N- and now by S-de-  
 clension, — *Ex. X*, **162**. — List 2, † the oldest

SECTION.

PAGE

feminine nouns not declined by the N-form. — Why modified, <b>163</b> . — Feminine specimens, <i>Blume, Art, Gans</i> . — Note 1, Derivatives in in, <b>164</b> . — <i>Ex. XI and XII</i> . . . . .	165—169
B. THE S-DECLENSION; — <i>how ascertained</i> , <b>169</b> . — 169 † <i>in what nouns modification is to be expected</i> . — The terminations <i>ē</i> and <i>n</i> . — 1, <i>Where to use these only</i> ; — Tabular view, suffixes. — Infinitives, — nouns in <i>e</i> for <i>en</i> , — <b>List 3</b> ; <i>these characterized</i> , <b>170</b> . — The only nouns of this class modifying the vowel, <b>List 4</b> . . . . .	171
2, Where to add the euphonic <i>e</i> , <b>171</b> . — Examples. Notes 1, The Acc. Sing. no <i>e</i> ; — 2, <i>e</i> omitted in the Gen. <b>172</b> . — 3, in the Dat.; — 4, <i>ē</i> changed into <i>ij</i> ; — 5, double vowels, how modified, — 6, Plurals in <i>ē</i> ; — 7, foreign nouns in <i>em</i> and <i>en</i> ( <i>Charakter</i> ).	
3, The nouns adding <i>er</i> in The Plural; characterized † as the most primitive <b>173</b> ; — <b>List 5</b> ; ( <i>Gewande, Thale, Mannen, Leute</i> ), <b>174—175</b> ; <i>Tabular key to the Declension of nouns</i> , <b>176</b> .	
Specimens of the S-declension in its three forms, <i>Ragel, Thal, Pfahl</i> , <b>177</b> .	
<i>Ex. XVI. a</i> . <b>178</b> . — Exceptions from modification. — <i>a</i> , Nouns with the soft <i>e</i> ; — <i>b</i> , Neuter nouns; — <i>c</i> , Masculine nouns forming the Plural in <i>e</i> , <b>List 6</b> ; <b>181</b> . — <i>d</i> , Masculine Derivatives, <b>List 7</b> ; — <i>e</i> , Nouns of foreign origin, <b>182</b> ; — <b>List 8</b> , of those modifying; † <i>remarkable feature</i> . . . . .	183
ANOMALIES, masc. and neut. nouns having the S-form in the <i>Sing.</i> and the N-form in the <i>Plur.</i> ; <b>List 9</b> ; <i>foreign nouns</i> in <i>or, um</i> , <b>183</b> . — Note 1, in <i>iē, müß, iuß</i> and <i>ma</i> , — 2, <i>das Her</i> ; . . . . .	184
Nouns with different Plur. having different meanings, <b>List 10</b> , . . . . .	184
C. COMPOUND NOUNS. — (The first component decl.), [198, 2] . . . . .	185
<i>Caution</i> , significance, Note, . . . . .	185
D. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES. — A, not declined with the article; Exceptions, Note 1, Countries; Note 2, with adjectives, Note 3, with possessive Pronouns.	
B, <i>without</i> the article; — <i>a</i> , Fem. in <i>e</i> ; — <i>b</i> , Gen. in <i>ē</i> ; — <i>by von</i> , — Note 4, no Genitive, <b>187</b> ; — <i>c</i> , Pr. names with the christian name, — <i>d</i> ,	

SECTION.	PAGE
with titles; — <i>e</i> , Plurals; 188. — <i>f</i> , Christus, Jesus, Gott. . . . .	189
XVII. ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE (Mainly for REFERENCE.) . . . . .	189
Phrases without the article.	
A. The article NOT used, 189. — The Gen <sup>r</sup> expressed by composition. — B, article with PROPER NAMES NOT OMITTED. . . . .	190
1, with Adjectives, — 2, fem. names of Countries, — 3, of mountains, 190. — 4, with months and seasons, Note, with Authors, Titles . . . . .	191
C. Before ABSTRACT NOUNS, and common nouns denoting the whole class 191. — D, Before COMMON NOUNS. — 1, Of different Gender. — 2, in enumerating, — 3, Contracted with <i>zu</i> after the verbs of MAKING AND APPOINTING, 193; — 4, after <i>werden to become</i> ; — 5, in prepositional phrases, — 6, Terms used with the article, 194. — 7, The def. for the indef. Art.	
XVIII. ON THE USE OF THE CASES ( <i>Gebrauch der Fälle</i> ) 195	
APPOSITION, 195.	
THE NOMINATIVE. — Note 1, <i>werden</i> with <i>zu</i> ; — 2, <i>es giebt there is, there are</i> with Acc. . . . .	196
THE GENITIVE (POSSESSIVE). — A, The ATTRIBUTE . . . . .	196
1, The Gen. with relationship or possession, — of Engl. participial Substantives (take note of 296, <i>a</i> ), — Note 1, The Gen. before its complement (Schiller); — phrases like <i>sister to</i> &c. — 2, <i>a friend of, a friend to</i> . . . . .	197
2, The Gen. in compound nouns, . . . . .	198
3, The Possessive by <i>von</i> with the Dat. — <i>a</i> , with nouns without the Art.; — <i>b</i> , with nouns with an Adj.; 198. — <i>c</i> , Poss. of quality or material; — <i>d</i> , of numerals; Note 3, <i>part of, half of</i> , — Note 4, with months and dates; <i>e</i> , of places in <i>§</i> and <i>§</i> ; — <i>f</i> , rulers &c. of countries; — Note 5, in poetry; — <i>g</i> , Fem. names of countries . . . . .	200
B, THE PARTITIVE (differing from the French Partitive) 200	
1, Not expressed after terms used in weighing, measuring and counting &c. (228, 3), <i>kind of, species of, &amp;c.</i> 201. — Note 1, in poetical language. — 2, <i>voll full of, 201</i> . — 3, Partit. of Pers. Pron. &c.; — 4, of <i>derselbe (of it, of them)</i> ; — 5, of nouns with Art. or Pron. . . . .	202
C. THE GENITIVE AS THE OBJECT . . . . .	202
of. adjectives. List 1, . . . . .	203

SECTION.

PAGE

2, of verbs, List 2—3. of verbs along with an accusative, List 3, — of <i>reflective</i> verbs; List 4, . . .	205
with the verbs <i>sein to be</i> , <i>bleiben to remain</i> , <i>werden to become</i> . . . . .	206
D. The Genitive IN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS ( <i>a</i> , by prepositions, — <i>b</i> , by adverbs, — <i>c</i> , Indefinite time, — <i>d</i> , adverbials of mood of manner, . . .	206
— <i>e</i> , in exclamations of lament; — <i>f</i> , in idioms). . . . .	207
THE DATIVE. (The terms, transitive and intransitive verbs, foot-note) . . . . .	207
1, The dative as the INDIRECT OBJECT, 207. List 1, 208, verbs of <i>giving</i> (350.) — <i>a</i> , Objects are simple cases; — <i>b</i> , Passive construction, 209; — <i>c</i> , Reflective verbs. . . . .	210
2, of transitive (objective) verbs governing the dative, 210. — List 2, 211. Note, The prefix <i>be</i> . . . . .	212
List 3, verbs forming no passive voice and governing the dative, often <i>a nominative in English</i> . . . . .	213
List 4, IMPERSONAL verbs of <i>idiomatic interest</i> . . . . .	213
Note 1, compound expressions, 215 — 2, The dative for the Possessive with parts of the body or articles of possession; 3, The ethical dative . . . . .	216
5, The dative, <i>a</i> , with Participles, and <i>b</i> , <i>Superlatives</i> with <i>zu</i> too, <i>c</i> , with <i>adjectives</i> 217; — List 5 . . . . .	218
6, The dative in adverbial expressions; <i>Ex.</i> XXIX. 220 and <i>Ex.</i> XXX. . . . .	222
THE ACCUSATIVE (OBJECTIVE, 1.) . . . . .	223
Passive construction. — Note 1, <i>lehren to teach</i> , <i>heissen to bid</i> , <i>lassen to let</i> , <i>to allow</i> ; <i>reason for the double accusative</i> . — 2, Verbs of calling and abusing; 223. — 3, Verbs of appointing and making, — of declaring and considering, with <i>a</i> , <i>für</i> and <i>b</i> , <i>als</i> ; — 4, The reflective pronoun; 5, The impersonal form . . . . .	224
2, The Acc. with expressions of measure, weight, age or value . . . . .	225
3, With <i>genug enough</i> , <i>viele many</i> , &c. . . . .	225
4, TIME DEFINITE, <i>when</i> . . . . .	225
XIX. ON THE USE OF THE NUMBERS (Sing. <i>die Anzahl</i> , Pl. <i>die Mehrzahl</i> ) . . . . .	226
1, Dispositions of the mind (fears, thanks, precautions), — 2, Peculiarities, — <i>a</i> , Interchange of the Plurals of <i>Sache</i> and <i>Ding</i> ; 226. — <i>b</i> , Compounds of <i>Mann</i> , <i>Leute</i> ; — <i>c</i> , <i>Volk people</i> ; — <i>d</i> , Collectives with the Sing. of the verb and Poss. . . . .	
<i>e</i> , For nouns used only in the Plur. . . . .	



SECTION.	PAGE
3, <i>a</i> , Terms used in <i>weighing, measuring, counting</i> , &c. forming no Plur.; — <i>b</i> , feminine exceptions, † <i>how these may be known</i> ; Note, with fractions; — <i>c</i> , names of coins; 228. — <i>d</i> , The above when used in the Plural. — <i>e</i> , Terms of time. . . . .	229
4, Nouns used in the Plural only . . . . .	229
5, Engl nouns used in the Plural only . . . . .	230
XX. THE VERB (das Zeitwort); CONJUGATION . . . . .	231
A. UNIVERSAL FORMS. The Infinitive, stem and Participle as NOUNS. <i>a</i> , The Infinitive, the stem. — <i>b</i> , The Present Participle. — <i>c</i> , The Past Participle with and without <i>ge</i> ; — (of verbs in <i>iren</i> ), — <i>d</i> , of verbs with sep. pref.; — <i>e</i> , The particle <i>zu to</i> . . . . .	231
Separable compound verbs and combinations. † <i>Hint as to their meanings</i> , . . . . .	232
DETAILS REGARDING THE PREFIXES . . . . .	233
1, her and hin. List of sep. prefixes. — 2, durch, über, um, unter, voll, wieder. — † <i>Suggestion respecting their accent</i> . — 3, Composition of prefixes, 233. — 4, ant, ur, miß, when they take the prefix. <i>ge</i> . — 5, Insep. comp. verbs taking <i>ge</i> . List, 234. — 6, Force of the insep. prefixes, <i>a</i> , <i>be</i> , <i>ent</i> ( <i>emp</i> ), <i>et</i> , <i>ge</i> , 235. <i>ver</i> , <i>zer</i> , . . . . .	236
B. INFLECTIONAL TERMINATIONS; 236. <i>e</i> , where inserted . . . . .	237
XXI. STRONG OR ANCIENT, AND WEAK (MODERN) FORM OF CONJUGATION. (Starke und schwache Form der Conjugation) . . . . .	238
1, Strong verbs characterized. — 2, The weak verbs; 238 — <i>c</i> , where inserted. — . . . . .	239
Note 1, Mixed form; — 2, Auxiliary verbs. . . . .	239
3, The change of the vowel in the Present . . . . .	239
4, The Imperative how formed. . . . .	240
5, The Imperfect Conjunctive (its importance) . . . . .	240
6, Irregularities in the final consonant of the stem. 241 <i>Table</i> ; <i>KEY for the strong and weak forms</i> . . . . .	241
XXII. MIXED FORM (gemischte Form). Specimen and list; 242 Note 1, <i>senden</i> and <i>wenden</i> ; — 2, forms of <i>thun</i> ; — 3, of <i>wissen</i> ; — 4, † <i>use of kennen</i> and <i>wissen</i> ; . . . . .	243
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE STRONG VERBS, (its advantages) <i>Explanations</i> . . . . .	244—252
Verbs having both the strong and weak form. List of the strong verbs classified according to their vowels . . . . .	252
XXIII. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD (Hülfszeitwörter des Modus) . . . . .	253

SECTION.

PAGE

Their construction, logical force, meaning and idiomatical use. Completely stated . . . . .	254-258
1, können ( <i>can</i> ), 254. — 2, mögen ( <i>may</i> ). — 3, dürfen ( <i>dare</i> ). 255. Note, es, könnte, möchte, dürfte — 4, müssen ( <i>must</i> ), — 5, wollen ( <i>will</i> ), — not expressing the Future, 256. — 6, sollen ( <i>shall</i> ), 257. — 7, lassen ( <i>to let</i> ), &c. . . . .	258
fühlen, hören, sehen, beißen, helfen, lehren, lernen, machen construed with the Inf. Active . . . . .	258
† Table of the Conjugation of these verbs. . . . .	259
Infinitive-form of their Past Participles and use of their compound tenses, 260. — I might have, ought to have (379 <i>d</i> .) Note their peculiar construction, (339, 5, <i>a, b</i> ). — <i>Ex.</i> XXXI. . . . .	262
XXIV. THE THREE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE ( <i>Hülfszeitwörter der Zeit</i> ) . . . . .	264
<i>Traces of the use of thut to do as an Auxiliary.</i> . . . .	264
A, The ABSOLUTE verbs <i>sein to be</i> , 264. <i>Ex.</i> I 265, II 266	
B, <i>werden to become</i> . — C, <i>haben to have</i> , as distinguished from the AUXILIARY verbs of tense, 266. <i>Ex.</i> V. 267.	
1, <i>sein to have</i> , with intrans. verbs; <i>a</i> , of EXISTENCE, <i>b</i> , of TRANSITION, <i>c</i> , of LOCOMOTION. Note 1, The latter when used with <i>haben</i> ; — Note 2, <i>es ist (war) zu &amp;c.</i> 268. — <i>Ex.</i> III. 269. — 2, <i>werden a. shall, will, aa, würde conditional, b, to be Ex.</i> IV. 270. — <i>Ex.</i> IV. <i>a</i> . — 3, <i>haben to have</i> , 271. — Their use and conjugation, — Note 1, irregular Present, — Note 2, the Imperf. <i>ward</i> , — Note 3, limited use of the Pres. Part. . . . .	272-275
SPECIMEN ( <i>loben</i> ) ILLUSTRATING THE FORMATION OF THE VERB . . . . .	275
Active voice ( <i>thätige Form</i> ) (286), 276. — PASSIVE VOICE ( <i>leidende Form</i> ); OBS. actual force of the PASSIVE VOICE . . . . .	278
XXV. ON THE USE OF THE MOODS, TENSES AND PARTICIPLES . . . . .	280
A. THE INDICATIVE; (the Conjunctive and Conditional see Sect p. XXXI, p. 363) . . . . .	280
1, The Present <i>a</i> , for the Imperfect, — <i>b</i> , with <i>sein</i> for the Engl. Perfect, 281. — <i>c</i> for the Future.	
2, The Imperfect, <i>a</i> , for the Engl. Perfect, 282. — <i>b</i> , for the Conditional Past . . . . .	283
3, The Perfect, differing from the Engl.; — for the Past; 283. — Note, in historical style . . . . .	284
4, The Pluperfect ( <i>Participial phrases</i> ) . . . . .	284

## SECTION.

## PAGE

5, The Future (I am going to, about to), . . . . .	284
B. THE IMPERATIVE, † with einmal nur and doch; — by the Past Part. . . . .	285
C. THE INFINITIVE; 1, <i>without</i> zu; (Note, <i>hören, [suchen, [schlafen, [spazieren] gehen to go to fetch, [to seek, to sleep, to walk]</i> ) . . . . .	285
2, for the Pres. and Past Part. with <i>bleiben to remain, sehen to see, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	286
3, for the Pres. Part. as a noun.	
THE ACTIVE VOICE USED FOR THE ENGLISH PASSIVE . . . . .	286
a, with lassen, hören, sehen, heißen &c., 286. — b, with the Gerund-phrases <i>Es ist (war) zu, It is (was) to, 287.</i> — bb. with attributive Participles; † <i>reason for these constructions</i> ; c, with man ( <i>man sagt, it is said</i> ); — d, The Passive by the Refl. form; — e, ( <i>geschehen to be done</i> ); — f, The German Passive used impersonally applied to intransitive verbs . . . . .	288
THE INFINITIVE WITH zu and um zu; . . . . .	289
Obs. Construction and force; position of the clause; how to be dealt with, in writing German, inverts the main clause . . . . .	289
1, As in English. — exception.	
2, with anstatt <i>instead of</i> , ohne <i>without</i> ; the necessity, possibility, pleasure, honour of, charged with. — Note. " <i>As to</i> ", " <i>Whom to</i> ", " <i>What to</i> ", " <i>When to</i> ", &c. . . . .	290
3, † limited use of um zu, <i>in order to</i> . . . . .	290
4, The English INFINITIVE WITH <i>to</i> NOT expressed by the German Infinitive, 290. a, after Verbs of <i>believing</i> and <i>wishing</i> , used with an improper objective, ( <i>I believe him to be</i> ) . . . . .	291
List of these verbs, probable cause of their being construed differently from similar verbs, 291. — b, <i>I happen to, I chance to.</i> — c, <i>I am to do id</i> soll. 292, Ex. XXXII . . . . .	293
D. THE PARTICIPLES, 1, used as adjectives, . . . . .	294
† with what limitation; — 2, as substantives; — 3, expressing adverbially the MANNER of the action, — 4, Notes on the Past Participle. 1, The Past Participle absolutely. — 2, as a command, 3, its peculiar use with kommen and bringen; — 4, for the Pres. Part. — 5, The English PRESENT PARTICIPLE rendered by DIFFERENT FORMS, — a, when used as an abstract noun; 296. — b, after the verbs <i>to feel, to help, to hear, &amp;c.</i> — c, d,	

## SECTION.

## PAGE

	<i>e</i> , when introduced by prepositions, with <i>damit</i> , <i>dafür</i> , &c, <i>daß</i> , <b>297</b> . — <i>f</i> . German participial constructions limited to expressions of manner and condition, English Participial clauses of <b>TIME</b> , <b>REASON</b> and <b>CAUSE</b> . — Note 1, <i>indem while</i> . — 2, <i>da for als when</i> , if combining time and reason†; — <i>g</i> , Participial clauses used attributively or resolved into relative clauses . . . . .	298
<b>XXVI.</b>	<b>REFLECTIVE VERBS, CHARACTERIZED . . . . .</b>	<b>299</b>
	1, construed, <b>299</b> , conjugated, <b>300</b> . — 2, <i>a</i> and <i>b</i> . Position of the refl. Pron., — Note, precedes the nominative, <b>301</b> . — 3, Refl. verbs with the Gen. — 4, with the Pron. in the Dat. — 5, The refl. form alters the meaning of verbs, — 6, expresses the intransitive sense of transitive verbs. — 7, The English Passive by the reflective, <b>302</b> . — 8, Impers. refl. verbs. — 9, <i>lassen</i> , <i>es läßt sich</i> , <i>ließ sich</i> , <b>303</b> . — <i>Ex. XXXIII</i> . . . . .	304
<b>XXVII.</b>	<b>THE IMPERSONAL FORM . . . . .</b>	<b>306</b>
	1, with the phenomena of external nature; — 2, of our physical nature, with the Acc. or Dat. of the subject, and <i>Es</i> as the Nom., <b>306</b> ; — 3, with moral and intellectual sensations, the <i>e</i> elided — Note 1, †distinction between personal and impersonal expressions, <b>307</b> ; — (4, list p. 213, 4, idioms). — 5, †Use of, <i>Es ist, sind, giebt there is, there are, there occur</i> , <b>308</b> . — 6, The impers. Pron. heading an inversion, see p. 336 <i>d</i> ; — 7, follows the personal form of <i>sein</i> ; — ( <i>ich bin es it is I</i> ). — 8, The impersonal form of trans., even of intrans. verbs, used passively, ( <i>Es wird gesungen &amp;c. they are singing</i> ) . . . . .	309
<b>XXVIII.</b>	<b>ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS (Umstandswörter und Interjectionen) . . . . .</b>	<b>310</b>
	<b>A. FORM AND CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.</b> — Adj. used as Adv. remain unchanged; — the suffix <i>lich</i> <b>ly</b> ; — 1, Adverb of place† — (applied to time cause, etc.) <b>311</b> . — 2, of time, <b>313</b> . — 3, of manner, <b>315</b> . — <b>B.</b> Alphabetical list of Adverbs having practical peculiarities, <b>318</b> . — <b>C.</b> Interjections classified† . . . . .	323

\*) The author has here grouped the Adverbs each class according to their logical force, which has hitherto been done nowhere else.

SECTION.	PAGE
<b>XXIX. CONJUNCTIONS (Bindewörter)</b> . . . . .	324
<b>List 1</b> , PURE conjunctions not affecting the construction ( <i>denn unless</i> ) <b>325</b> . — <b>List 2</b> , COORDINATIVE conjunctions, construed like Adv. and inverting the clause <b>326</b> . — <b>List 3</b> , the SUBORDINATIVE conjunctions introducing dependent clauses. Note 1, inversion of the dependent clause by the omission of <i>da</i> , <i>ob</i> , <i>während</i> and <i>wenn</i> , <b>327</b> . — Note 2, Conj. combined with Adv., — how construed. <i>Wenn nicht if not, wenn — nicht unless</i> ) <b>328</b> . — <i>Ex.</i> XXXIV	330
<b>XXX. RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES, (Regeln über den Satzbau).</b>	
<b>1</b> , ELEMENTS of the sentence, — <i>a</i> , the subject, — <i>b</i> , the predicate. — <i>b 1</i> , The <i>finite</i> or <i>inflected</i> and the <i>uninflected</i> part of the verb. — <i>b 2</i> , The predicate of <i>sein to be</i> &c. — <i>c</i> , the objects, direct and indirect, <b>331</b> . — <i>d</i> , Adverbials, — <i>e</i> , Attributes. — <i>f</i> , Apposition . . . . .	332
<b>2</b> , COMPOUND SENTENCES, <i>a</i> , principal and <i>b</i> , dependent clauses <b>332</b> . — <i>c</i> , "Rule" † <b>List of English conjunctions introducing dependent clauses</b> . . . . .	333
<b>3</b> , DIRECT AND INVERTED SENTENCES . . . . .	333
The † <b>Fundamental principle of construction</b> . . . . .	334
INVERTED SENTENCES . . . . .	335
† <b>The nature of this form</b> ; — inversion <i>a</i> , by the <i>Object</i> ; — <i>b</i> , by the <i>Predicate</i> ; — <i>c</i> , by <i>Adverbials</i> ; — <i>d</i> , by the verb itself, the finite verb introduced by <i>Es</i> (for the rest see p. 344 & 346 &c.) . . . . .	336
<b>A. POSITION OF THE VERB</b> . . . . .	337
<b>1</b> , of the <i>uninflected</i> part. — <b>2 a</b> , The auxiliary Past Part. after the main Past Part. — <i>b</i> , The Inf. after the Past Part. — <i>c</i> , The Past. Part. and Inf. after the Predicate, <b>337</b> . — <b>3</b> , The finite verb placed last in dependent clauses, — <b>4</b> , placed after the nominative; — Note, The adverb not placed between the Nom. and verb, <b>338</b> ; <i>list of conjunctions placed between the Nom. and verb</i> . — <b>5</b> , <i>a, b, c</i> , Peculiar construction of auxil. verbs of mood and of <i>werden</i> in comp. tenses . . . . .	339
<b>AA. Remarks on COMPOUND SENTENCES</b> . . . . .	340
Dependent clauses, <i>a</i> , their position, insertion, <i>a. a. adverbial insertion, where placed. Obs. † Direction how to proceed in translating complicated periods</i> , <b>340</b> — <i>The importance of the comma</i> . — <i>b</i> , Omission of the Relative, <b>341</b> , and <i>c. of conjunc-</i>	

SECTION.

PAGE

tion, — <i>d, e</i> , of the auxiliary verb, 342. — <i>f</i> , of <i>daß</i> <i>that</i> , restrictions, † <i>wenn</i> <i>if</i> and <i>ob</i> <i>whether</i> . — <i>g, Such</i> — <i>as</i> ; <i>h</i> , Relative clauses like, <i>what to do?</i> 343. — <i>i</i> , Clauses with the Inf. <i>with</i> <i>zu</i> . . . . .	344
B. The INVERTED ORDER OF THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB.	
<i>a</i> , in <i>main clauses</i> , 1, interrogative and imperative, — 2, not beginning with the subject, — Words of a speech followed by <i>said</i> <i>he</i> , &c. 344. — 3, The main clause following the dependent ( <i>yet</i> <i>doch</i> , <i>dennoch</i> ; position). 345; — <i>b</i> , In <i>Dependent clauses</i> , — 4, † by the omission of <i>da</i> , <i>indem</i> , <i>since</i> , combined with <i>doch</i> . . . . .	346
5, <i>a</i> , The DEPENDENT inverted by the omission of <i>wenn</i> , <i>während</i> and <i>ob</i> <i>if</i> , <i>whether</i> , 346. — † <i>when</i> it may precede the main clause . . . . .	347
<i>b</i> , The Particle <i>so</i> ( <i>dann</i> ) 347. — their use and omission. — Note inversion by the omission of <i>ob</i> and <i>wenn</i> combined with <i>auch</i> , <i>gleich</i> , <i>schon</i> <i>although</i> . — The omission of <i>ob</i> <i>whether</i> ( <i>oder</i> ). 348	
6, † Objects, &c. preceding the nominative . . . . .	349
C. THE MUTUAL POSITION OF THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS AND OF THESE WHEN EXPRESSED BY PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	350
<i>a</i> , The object in the Genitive following the accusative or reflective; — <i>b</i> . The object in the Dative and accusative. . . . .	350
1, One object a Pers. Pron. — 2, Both obj. Pers. Pron. — 3, <i>Dieß</i> and <i>Daß</i> , Obj., 351. — 4, Both obj. nouns. — 5, OBJECTS WITH THE INDEF. ART., 352. — Note, † Force of the indefinite Article. — 6, Rel. clauses affecting the object. — Note, Separable components of the verb . . . . .	353
D. Position of SEPARABLE PREFIXES and of ADVERBS or ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS qualifying the verb . . . . .	354
Note. Adverbs not qualifying the verb are placed as in English; — 1, The Prefix, Adverbs etc., at the end; — 2, The Adverb preceding, the Prefix joined to the verb, 354; — 3, The adverb preceding the object, <i>a</i> , heading the clause, <i>b</i> , time <i>when</i> , <i>c</i> , place mentioned incidentally, 355. <i>d</i> , Prepositional clauses, 356. <i>e</i> , <i>auch</i> , <i>gleich</i> , <i>schon</i> <i>even</i> , <i>f</i> , "were you not", "did you not", etc., <i>g</i> , inessential adverbs <i>gern</i> , <i>immer</i> , † means of emphasizing <i>h</i> , adverbs used attributively and in contradistinction; — 4, cannot precede the Pers. Pron. — 5,	357

	<i>a</i> , Several adverbs &c. 358. — <i>b</i> , The adverb of <i>place</i> — <i>c</i> , Exceptions. — 6, <i>a</i> , Right NOT; 359. — <i>b</i> , if not qualifying the verb; — <i>c</i> , follows adverbs of time, — <i>d</i> , loses its neg. force, 360. — 7. Adverbial sentences where inserted. . . . .	361
	E. Position of the attributive ADJECTIVE or PARTICIPLE when qualified by adverbial expressions, objects &c. — in poetry, — at the end, 361; — <i>a</i> , preceding the complement; — <i>b</i> , objects governed by the Participle, 362. — complications. . . . .	363
XXXI.	ON THE USE OF THE CONJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL . . . . .	363
	A. The Conjunctive (SUBJUNCTIVE), <i>its true nature</i> . . . . .	363
	1, The Conj. <i>a</i> , in indirect quotations; — <i>b</i> , instead of the English Past, 364; — †reason for this; — †mechanical sequence of tenses in English; — <i>c</i> , the Conjunctive in quoting — † <i>a</i> , the Pres. — <i>β</i> , the Past and Perf., — <i>γ</i> , the Plup., 365 — <i>δ</i> , the future, — <i>ε</i> , the imperative, — <i>ζ</i> , Substitution of the Imperfect Conjunctive for the Pres., — Note, improper Substitution, 366. — <i>d</i> , †The leading clause omitted, — Note 1, <i>ob dem so sei</i> rendered by <i>sei dem so</i> , <i>be that as</i> . — Note 2, <i>denn</i> unless . . . . .	367
	2, The Conj. after an imperative or wish ( <i>mögen</i> ) 367. — Note 1, Simple Conj. for <i>that you should</i> &c. — Note 2, <i>damit</i> , <i>daß</i> and <i>um zu</i> in order <i>that</i> ; — Note 3, <i>mögen may</i> in the Indicative.	
	3, The Conj. in the main cl. expressing a prayer, 368	
	†Explanation.	
	4, The Indicative in indir. quotations; †a matter of good taste . . . . .	369
	5, The Conj. in the speaker's own statement, — 6, in his own prayer . . . . .	371
	7, The Indic. with verbs of absolute reality or power and in questions. 371. — Ex. XXXV, 372.	
	B. The CONDITIONAL . . . . .	375
	1, The Imperf. and Pluperf. Conj. in the dependent clause.	
	2, The Conditional in the main clause, its full form.	
	3, Deviations, <i>a</i> , The Conditional in dependent clauses. 375. — <i>b</i> , The condition merely doubtful; — <i>c</i> , introduced by <i>wenn auch</i> , <i>ob auch</i> &c. although, — <i>d</i> , by <i>zu</i> , <i>um zu</i> in order <i>to</i> , — <i>e</i> , merely understood. . . . .	376

SECTION.	PAGE
N. B. $\alpha$ , $\beta$ , $\gamma$ , — † " <i>I should, would</i> ", not always to be taken for a Conditional, 376. — $\delta$ , when to be rendered by <i>ich sollte, wollte</i> . . . . .	377
4, Shorter form. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Con-junctive for the Conditional Present and Past, 377	
Passive voice, † rare and remarkable use of the Imperf. Ind. for the Cond. Past.	
a, The full form to be preferred with weak verbs, 378. — b, Optative clauses, interrogative exclama-tions. — c, Deferential Cond. <i>ich möchte, ich dachte I should like, think</i> ; — their construction and difference from the full form. — d, <i>I might, ought ich möchte, sollte or müßte; I might have, ought to have ich hätte können, sollen, müssen how to be explained</i> , 379. — e, The idioms, <i>Then she would say, Dann sagte sie wohl</i> . — Concluding remark, 380; — Ex. XXXVI. . . . .	381
XXXII. REMARKS ON GERMAN METRE . . . . .	384



## DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF THE EXERCISES.

---

The German Exercises in this work together with those in English in the Author's "*German Life and Manners*" (see Preface p. IV) form a connected method and therefore require to be taken up in the order in which they are figured in the List below. The earlier exercises where the English meanings are inserted beside the German words are to be gone through with strict regard to the grammatical forms they illustrate. They may then be copied out without the English and translated from the copy so as to ensure the proper learning of the vocabulary. In the later Exercises the copying is not so desirable as they become more grammatically complicated and their vocabulary is largely supplied by references to Lists &c. in the Grammar itself it need scarcely be said that the strong verbs (marked "st"), the conjunctions and Lists must be carefully committed to memory:

EXERCISE	PAGE	EXERCISE	PAGE	EXERCISE	PAGE
I — — —	265	XIII — — —	45	XXV — — —	112
II — — —	266	XIV — — —	44	XXVI — — —	121
III — — —	269	XV — — —	41	XXVII — — —	131
IV — — —	270	XVI — — —	46	XXVIII — — —	139
IV <i>a</i> — — —	271	XVI <i>a</i> — — —	178	XXIX — — —	220
V — — —	267	XVII — — —	69	XXX — — —	222
VI & VII — — —	67	XVIII — — —	70	XXXI — — —	262
VIII — — —	68	XIX & XX — — —	73	XXXII — — —	293
IX — — —	160	XXI — — —	82	XXXIII — — —	304
X — — —	162	XXII — — —	86	XXXIV — — —	330
XI — — —	165	XXIII — — —	90	XXXV — — —	372
XII — — —	167	XXIV — — —	98	XXXVI — — —	381

---

DIRECTIONS FOR THE PROPER USE OF AHN'S GERMAN COURSE  
IN CONNECTION WITH THIS BOOK.

(see preface p. IV).

*α.* For the pronunciation a brief reference to Leading Remarks (L. R.) page 3 and the reading of pages 4—7. 1 to 5. without the exceptions suffice. The consonants especially the gutturals, the *sp*, *ff*, *ft*, and *ff* must be referred to where their occurrence causes a difficulty. The prefixes (L. R. page 27) must be learned at once and those under 4. *a.* & c. p. 27 must be committed to memory as also the *feminine and neuter suffixes* (p. 37, 2 & 3); the *adjective suffixes* (page 35. 5. *a.*) being read previously with attention.

*β.* Certain grammatical facts must at once be completely impressed on the pupil's mind. Facts requiring only a preliminary introduction are given in (—).

*γ.* Always read the list of words at the top of the exercise first and then go over them again with the references to the grammar as given here. Let the English Exercises be written out in german, References occurring in the rules cited must be carefully attended to.

*δ.* L.=List, L. R.=Leading Remarks, references in bold type must be committed to memory. The figure at the beginning of each paragraph is that of corresponding Exercise in Ahn's Method.

PART I.

For *Ex.*

1. 65, 1. — 264, A. — (268, 1. *a*, *b* and *c*) — 76 B. *a*, *b* and *c*. 1 and 2.
3. 35, 4 and 5 *a.* — *nicht* is placed before the predicate — page 331, *b*, 2.
5. 142, 1 and 2, and 143, 3. — 74, 1.
7. 142, 1 and 2, and 143, 3. — Learn gender of every noun mentioned. — revise 77, 1.
9. 75, 3 and 4. — 105, C, *a.*
11. 105, C. *a.* — in writing *Ex.* 12, put every phrase with *thy* or *your* in 3 ways.
13. 122, 1 and 124, 2.
15. 127, E. ADJECTIVES. (attend to gender).
17. 38, 4 *e.* — form like *loben* p. 276. present indicative of *fingen*, *fommen* and *faufen*. — 266, C. — 76, 6. — object

## For Ex.

- of *haben* and most other transitive verbs in the Accusative. 359, 6, a. Learn L. 3, p. 44.
19. Explain past participle according to p. 238, 1 and 2 and at once commence learning from L. page 245, **ten strong verbs** every lesson omitting all portions in (—).
21. **decline completely *der, die, das***. p. 84 (which always keep in view).
23. **decline completely *ein, eine, ein***. p. 85.
25. Guard against confounding *sein*, *his* with *ih*, *her* keeping p. 85 in view.
27. 196. A to end of 1 — 159, 8. see 164 *Blume, Art, ganz*, (sing. only), *ist abgeriff* &c. 268, 1. a, b, c.
- Before beginning Ex. 29 give outlines of declensions. After familiarising themselves with the principles laid down page 153. "Suggestions &c." teachers will find it easy to guide pupils as follows. p. 157, L. R. 1 to 5 and 8. — 159, A. — Learn List 1, p. 161. — then the plurals of *Blume* and *Art* then specimens *Regel, Pfahl* p. 177 (*Thal*) decline examples there subjoined and show that the plur. of *ganz* is the same as that of *Pfahl* 177. leave rest of declension for future lessons.
20. decline words at top of the Exercise like *Regel* and *Pfahl* 177. (sing. only) — 162, note 1. 170, 1 and 171, 2.
31. decline again the words at the top of the Exercise referring to page 170, 1. and 171, 2.
33. On the one hand resist the vulgar notion that the dative corresponds with "*to the*" in English by pointing out in L. 2, p. 211 and the L.s following the vast number of cases in which the German dative answers to no "*to*" in English on the other hand impress thoroughly 207, 1. merely glancing at L. 1. shewing there the verbs which are given in Ahn's method. — 352, 4, 5.
35. Again 352, 4 and 5.
37. 39, 2. Learn L. 2, page 43, page 50 from top to 1, adverbials of manner generally follow the object, revise 196 A. to end of 1. — *wird geliebt* 270, 2. b. — 278, observation. also explain *wird* by 239, 3. — (distinguish well between Attribute, Object and the Adverbial, as; "*we we speak of the mother of the child*" and guard against confusing these Elements by analysing each sentence according to 331 c. and 332 d and e.
39. 122, 1 and 124, 2. — p. 124, A, 1. 127, E. — here the declension of Adjectives (pp. 84 and 85, must be mastered and Explain by 76 B. to end of 8. — Examples occurring in the Exercise (as; *der reichste Mann, die beste Feder, das stärkste Thier*) being declined in the positive and comparative 125 whole of B.
41. p. 108, 2 and 3. (109, 4). 73, f, g and e. — for sentences 1-4, 68, 5. for sentence 5, p. 96, 2. In this and all the fol-

For *Ex.*

- lowing Exercises the pupil must be made to find 1<sup>st</sup> the Nom. then the entire verb, then the objects, and lastly, the adverbials according to p. 50 (top). The pupils attention to this rule of procedure is indispensable.
43. 108, 1. Learn p. 45, 4. and L. 4, p. 46. —
45. 113 "The Relative Pronouns are &c." and *a*, to *b*, p. 114. Learn p. 333, c. Rule which must be repeated wherever dependent clauses occur in any of the future Exercises; also p. 338, 3. After Reading Exercises 45 and 46 with the full form *welcherseß* keeping in view p. 18, 3. and p. 19, *d*. the same are gone through with the shorter Form according to p. 116, 3. and p. 117, after which the use of its Genitive p. 115, *f*. and 117, B. *a*. must be explained. Write 46 in both forms of the Relative.
47. p. 84, 3. 80, 9. 96, 3. entirely, applying the portion *d*. p. 97, to the 1<sup>st</sup> sentences of Ex. 47 and 48, give always the full form of *derjenige* (evaded by Ahn).
49. 187, B. *a* and *b*. p. 50, 1. *a* and *b*. p. 51. the Article is sometimes placed before proper nouns, especially in the dative to make the case more distinct and then the proper name is not declined. 186, D. A.

## PART II.

51. Score out Ahn's Rule because the monosyllables in L. 1. (p. 161), by far the greater number of Feminine monosyllables (see "Art" p. 164) and those in L. 9, (p. 183), form the plural in "en" whilst those in L. 5, (p. 174) take "er" this is shown in going over the declensions as in *Ex.* 29, each lesson until they are mastered. Learn List 2, (p. 183) and p. 181, *b*. give gender of each noun specimens *Wahl*; (177) and *ganß* (164). [*die Banf, the Bench* is missed in List 2].
53. Proceed as above and read a few times L. 6, p. 181, specimen *Wahl* (p. 177) and *ganß* 164.
55. Score out in Ahn's Rule the words "*are exceptions from the general rule and*"; — Learn Nouns given above the *Ex.* repeating them in the plural and read a few times L. 5, (174) with special attention to 173, 3.
57. Score Ahn's Rule down to "plural": specimen *Magel* (p. 177). Read a few times L. 4, (p. 171) specimen "*Blume*" (p. 164) decline the Nouns given below it. Read a few times L. 9, (p. 183).
59. 133, A. List read *a*, *b* and *c*. and Note: explain the plurals of the nouns given *Jahr* (p. 181, *b*.) *Tag* (L. 6, 181). Ahn confounds *seit* (55, 1) with *vor* (46 L.) in Sentences 13 and 15. For sentence 16, 281, *b*. study 308, 5. 6. — "in our town there are &c." "in unserer Stadt giebt es &c." study

For *Ex.*

- 344, 1 and 2, especially the 4<sup>th</sup> paragraph revising the rule where ever the Inversion occurs.
61. p. 200, 1. — "findet man" 344, 1 and 2. — 225, 4.
63. 104, 10. — wenig, few, (not wenig) mehr and weniger, see p. 127, strict attention to gender.
64. 1<sup>st</sup> sentence 355, *b.* always to be referred to.
65. p. 228, 3, *a.* and *b.* — 66. "enough for ten shirts" see zu p. 43, and für p. 44, List.
67. 79, 8. and 84-85 foot: give the gender of each noun occurring, also its case with the article, as corresponding with the Adj.
69. 78, 7 and 85 which always keep in view — 89, 8.
71. 78, 6 and 84. — 187, Note 2.
73. 136, B. *a.*, *b.* and *c.* (p. 137). 136. *e.* 225, 4 in writing *Ex.* 74. sentences 4 and 5 must be written both with sein and haben and in 6 the dates must be given in the acc. and with "am".
75. p. 80, 9 and p. 81. *d.* (complete). — 106, *d.*
77. Learn p. 66, "er, sie, es" 331, *c.* — (69, Sect. VIII to end of 1). — 351, 1. — 358, 4. not regarding exceptions. — 340, 4. 3<sup>d</sup> paragraph.
79. 264, A. 268, 1. *a.* *b.* *c.* 150, Note 2. and p. 138, Note 3. 358, 5, *a.* and especially 359, *b.*
81. "ich war &c." is a specimen of imperfect of the strong verb, form like it the imperfects of kommen, gehen and verlieren, List p. 245 and Specimen werden 241, also their imperfect conjunctive according to 240, 5. — als 327. Ahn, not having given the Imperfects of strong verbs suggests in *Ex.* 82 and 84 the use of the Perfect in stead in parentheses which score out as altogether incorrect. 333 Rule.
83. hätte is the Specimen of the Imperfect of a weak verb, see "lernen" 241, also "loben" Imperf. Ind. and Conj. 276, yet notice p. 272, the Imp. Conj. ich hätte with note.
85. Learn p. 66 declension of "ich and du" 351, 1 and 2. 253 Sect. XXIII. 1, p. 254, 2 and 3. p. 255. Large print only. — Learn particularly 259 and make yourself acquainted with 260 and 261. — 289, 1. 289, 2. 2<sup>d</sup> paragraph. 2<sup>d</sup> pers. plur. is "sönnt" not "sönnet". a mind p. 189, 1.
87. Repeat ich and du also 259 and learn 256, 4, 5 and 6, large print only 2<sup>d</sup> pers. plur. is "wollt" not "wollst".
89. Repeat p. 259 and 258, 5. 299, 1 and 301, 2 and 302, 5.
91. Repeat 259. 256. 4. 2<sup>d</sup> pers. plur. is "müßt" not "müßet".

## PART III.

93. Ahn confuses the forms of the Pres. Indic. with those of the Pres. Conj.; see the difference. p. 276. — 236, B. especially two last paragraphs 237. 364, 1, *a.* and 367, 2. — 354, 1.

For *Ex.*

95. Revise 241 the Imperfect of the strong and weak forms also 344, 1 and 2, and learn 345, 3, score out "jo" in sentence 5 comparing it with sentence 12.
97. "But when construed with the Infinitive of another verb &c." — 266, B. 270, 2, a. — pay strict attention to 333 "Rule" and 345, 3. — Sentence 6 wann p. 322. — Sent. 11 282, c. in Exercise 98 Sent. 2, 343 f. entirely: in the case of *erlauben* the Pres. must not be substituted for the Future the former applies as in English to a principle whilst the Future applies to particular cases.
- 99 and 100. Require 3 separate lessons. 1<sup>st</sup> Lesson. p. 270 aa. — 375, 1 and 2 (thoroughly) 330 wenn. — sent<sup>s</sup> 9 and 10, p. 376 e. (sent. 8 ought to be *du werdest morgen nicht* etc. not "*du würdest*" 366 d.). Strictest attention to 333 Rule and 345, 3. — Second Lesson. use throughout the shorter form of the conditional according to p. 377, 4. Third Lesson. except in the interrogative sentences invert every dependent clause, according to p. 346, 5, a. and place it first in the sentence. Heading the principle by "jo" according to 347. b. and again use throughout the shorter form of the conditional as above.
101. study 354, 1 and 2. and 233, 1. 231, c. 232, d. and e. explain in each sentence the why the prefix is detached or joined.
103. 231 c. and 232 d and e. revise section IV. altogether.
105. as in 103. — refer to 238. L. R. 1. as Ahn's Rule on the past part. is misleading.
106. for "not a single," "not all" refer to p. 359, 6, a, and chiefly 360 b.
107. 289, *Obs.* and rest to end of 290 (291 and 292). Ahn incorrectly uses "um" in sentences 2, 15 and 17. — 232 e.
- 109 and 110. (266, B. 270, 2, a, aa.) especially 270, 2. b. 272 "werden". — 278, *Obs.* to 280.
111. The whole of Section XXVI. p. 299, along with 66 Table.
112. Sent. 5, p. 96, 3 a. — Sent. 13 use *befinden* in both clauses according to 281 b.
113. Whole of Section XXVII. 307 especially 2 and 3. p. 307.
114. Sent. 1. p. 110, 5.
115. 138, D. especially Note 4.
117. Repeat List 1, p. 40. L. 2, p. 43. L. 3, p. 44 and L. 4, p. 45. p. 51 d and e. and p. 52 f.
119. 47, B. the rest as in *Ex.* 117.
120. p. 109, 4. where the "Note" must be attended to (as the use of the compounds of *wo* by Ahn in sent. 2, 4 and 7, is incorrect). — p. 69, 1, — 43, *ju*. — 64, E. — for sent. 15 in *Ex.* 121. see p. 111, c.
122. 37, 3. *hertzen*, dandies.

# xxx DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF *AHN*. ERRATA.

For *Ex.*

- 123. 255, 2.
- 124. "A headache" Section XVII. to beginning of A.
- 125. Sent. 10, 226, 2, *a*.
- 126. Sent. 11, p. 291 *a*. thoroughly.
- 127. Sent. 1, 367, 2. which also applies to *Ex.* 128. Sent. 18.
- 129. 242. Sect. XXII. learn L. p. 243, *a* and *b*.
- 133. As above and 254, 1.
- 136. p. 343, *h*. — compound verbs with *mit* imply the pers. pron.  
(the rest requires no explanation).

## ERRATA.

The Author regrets having to request the correction of the following misprints which have occurred mainly owing to a change of hands in the German printing office during the war.

- | page | line   |  |
|------|--------|--|
| 4.   | 1.     | read <b>came</b> for "calm".   |
| 4.   | 11.    | — u for "ju"   |
| 10.  | 3.     | — <b>r</b> — "e".  |
| 15.  | 14.    | — shp for "ship".  |
| 33.  | 17.    | — formed as above for "above formed as".   |
| 68.  | 4.     | (from foot) read <b>Papiere</b> for <b>Papier</b> .                                |
| 70.  | 14.    | read <b>things</b> for "persons".  |
| 74.  | 12.    | — nur <b>zeigen (to show)</b> for "nur (zeigen to show)".                          |
| 75.  | 24.    | — <b>un, una</b> for " <b>nn, nne</b> ".   |
| 75.  | 30.    | — <b>nicht ein</b> for "nicht <b>nein</b> ".                                       |
| 79.  | 3-4.   | — <b>perform</b> for <b>howform</b> .  |
| 155. | 8 & 9. | — <b>Band</b> for <b>Land</b> .  |
| 163. |        | insert <b>die Banf, the Bench</b> in List 2.                                       |
| 166. | 18.    | read <b>französische</b> for <b>französishe</b> .                                  |
| 167. | 2.     | of <i>Ex.</i> XII. read <b>Die</b> for "die".                                      |
| 167. | 21.    | of <i>Ex.</i> XII. — <b>deity</b> for <b>diety</b> .                               |
| 168. | 6.     | (from foot) — <b>Reinede</b> for <b>Reinide</b> .                                  |
| 169. | 3.     | read <b>größten</b> for <b>größesten</b> .   |
| 178. | 1.     | 2 <sup>d</sup> verse, read <b>reißigen</b> for <b>reißigen</b> .                   |
| 180. | 18.    | read <b>edler</b> for <b>Edeler</b> .  |
| 180. | 24.    | — "dem" for "im".  |
| 205. | 3.     | in List 3. read <b>entwöshnen</b> for <b>entwohnen</b> .                           |
| 266. | 8.     | (form end of <i>Ex.</i> II.) read (intellectual) for (spirited).                   |
| 267. | 9.     | read <b>interessant &amp; interesting</b> for <b>intressant &amp; intresting</b> . |
| 343. | 20.    | (from foot) read <b>expect</b> for "except."                                       |
| 383. | 25.    | read <b>um</b> for <b>nun</b> .  |

## HISTORICAL REMARKS ON THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

---

ALL the European languages, except the Finnish, the Hungarian, and the Turkish, are of Indian origin, more or less closely related to the ancient Sanscrit, which is distinguished from the Mongolian languages by polysyllabic words, and an abundance of inflectional forms. The common Indian stock was developed into the greatest splendour and precision in the southern peninsulas of Europe (Greece and Italy). It shrunk in the northern (Scandinavian) peninsulas to guttural indistinctness. In the centre of Europe it settled in its greatest power and purity, famed and dreaded among the Romans about the beginning of our era as the language of the Germans or war-men. It not only maintained its independence whilst the Celtic languages sank under the dominion of the Latin, but it penetrated the regions of the latter, changing it into Italian, French, and Spanish, and expelling it from England. It drove back the Slavonic element from the vast territories between the Elbe and the Vistula, and extinguished the remains of the Celtic in the Alps. At a later period it settled in Prussia proper, in the Baltic provinces now possessed by Russia, and in Transylvania. With the most remarkable tenacity it has withstood all foreign influences, and is still progressing towards the South, East, and North. The German language, now spoken by nearly fifty millions of people, shewed itself first of all modern languages fit for the translation of the Bible, which appeared in the Gothic dialect A. D. 370. Earlier than any other it possessed prose, and reached a state of classical beauty and fullness in the middle ages. There is a German translation of the *Æneid* by Heinrich von Veldeke, as early as A. D. 1185. Though neglected for a time, German soon became the most powerful vehicle of the reformatory ideas of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Supported by the most persevering, extensive, and minute inquiry into the knowledge of the ancients, it has, since the middle of last century, again risen to a perfection in clearness, flexibility, and grace, which has made it pre-eminently the language of thought and taste. Its development has been altogether genuine. No foreign element has contributed to its formation; and, though occasionally borrowing words and terms from ancient and modern languages, it has mainly depended on the richness and facility of its own combinations, and such foreign words have never



### xxxii HISTORICAL REMARKS ON THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

formed an essential element in its composition. In its forms it certainly requires more study than English, French, or other modern languages, but it appears more consistent than these, and less marked by arbitrary idiomatical peculiarities.

The Gothic German, drawing a little on Greek forms, was absorbed during the great commotions that filled Europe from the fourth to the middle of the seventh century. The dialect of the Franks who, about A. D. 500, established themselves in Gaul, where they came in contact with the civilisation and the creed of Rome, then took the lead, finding its chief promoter, and, indeed, its first grammarian, in Charlemagne (A. D. 800). Gradually freeing itself from Latin Forms, this dialect was developed into what is termed the *old High-German* (*die althochdeutsche Sprache*). After Germany had renounced her connexion with France, however (A. D. 888), this Franconian dialect lost its superiority in both countries. A period remarkably favourable for the development of the noble and heroic, prepared by extensive classical studies in the monasterial schools, ensued for Germany under the auspices of the glorious race of the Hohenstaufen emperors (A. D. 1137-1254). Their native dialect, the Swabian or Allemanian, was employed in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries in immortal lyric and epic poems by emperors, princes, and nobles, known as the *Minnesänger*, by whom it was developed to a classical perfection. It is termed the *middle High-German* (*die mittelhochdeutsche Sprache*, i. e., *High-German* from the upper or mountainous regions of the south of Germany). But it ceased to be the leading dialect when the romantic spirit passed away. The *Nether-German* (*Niederdeutsch* or *Plattdeutsch*), the present sweet dialect of the rural population of the vast North-German plains and of the Netherlands, began to compete with the Swabian as a medium of literature, producing amongst other works the celebrated "Reynard the Fox." With the degeneracy of the leading institutions of the middle ages, chivalry and Roman Catholicism, and with the increased predominance of the Latin in church and law, the High-German was grossly neglected. But, though used only by writers of the lower orders, known as the *Meistersänger*, with more zeal than taste, it did the important service of sustaining that broad under-current of popular opposition to the abuses of the church and of society, in which Luther found his main support. He it was that freed the language as well as the mind of his nation from a foreign yoke by the translation of the Bible, in which he adopted the High-German. The present predominance of this dialect is the consequence of the rapid and universal diffusion of Luther's version of the Scriptures, and of the veneration with which it was received; for since that event, every true German has exerted himself in developing and refining the High-German, which is now the language of the educated classes throughout the country.

H. Weisse.

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

---

## SECTION I.

### THE ALPHABET.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z  
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z

(f at the beginning, but s at the end of syllables.)

### COMPOUND CHARACTERS.

ch ck pf ph sch ss st sz th tz  
ch ck pf ph sch ss st sz th tz

### CAPITALS.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S  
T U V W X Y Z

All nouns, and the addressing pronouns in letter-writing, (also the first word in each sentence and in each line of poetry), begin with a capital letter.

## SECTION II.

## PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

**Obs.** \* It may be of use to notice, that Anglo-Saxon when it parted from its sister tongue the German, not only ceased to share in the organic and steady development of the latter towards that definiteness and harmonious simplicity in which the High German at present appears, but it was first interfered with by the Danish, and soon checked altogether in its development by the introduction of the French through the Norman conquest. Thus the Saxon portion of the English language to some extent represents the German of 1300 years ago, having preserved many of the undeveloped sounds of that period. On the other hand these same sounds are not altogether extinct in German, for, whilst the educated classes have been carrying out the work of refinement, the mass of the lower and chiefly of the rural population have but slowly given up the vernacular of their forefathers. Hence it will be conceived that any tendency in the pupil to pronounce the High German with an English-Saxon accent would impart to his pronunciation a resemblance to that of the lower rather than the upper classes and must therefore be studiously restrained: but the greatest care ought to be bestowed on correct pronunciation, not only as a matter of taste but as indispensable to prevent the awkwardness of one word being mistaken for another with a very different meaning, in consequence of mispronunciation. For instance *ächten to outlaw* for *ächten to esteem* or for *echten genuine*. The pronunciation as given below will be found consistent with the laws of euphony while at the same time it avoids the extremes to be met with in provincial dialects.

Great pains have been taken to make both **rules** and **exceptions complete**, and beginners are recommended to moderate as much as possible their energy in the task of pronouncing the words given. The more easily and gently they take the consonants whilst giving the greatest possible power and clearness to the vowels, the safer will be their success.

\* Portions marked "**Obs.**" are recommended to the teacher and to such pupils as may wish a fuller explanation of the ordinary rules.

All other matter in small type is mainly to be referred to by advanced pupils.

Foot notes are of a strictly philological nature.

## A. SOUND OF THE VOWELS.

**LEADING REMARKS.** 1. Each vowel has everywhere the same sound with that difference only which arises from its being more or less sustained. The long vowels are much more sustained than in English. Double vowels have quite the sound of the simple vowels and are merely longer.

2. The German root vowels are very sonorous and clear and are pronounced from the chest, the English vowels from the throat, and far more subdued, as will be shewn by the illustrations given below. The German language derives its vigour mainly from *vocalisation*, the English from *accentuation*. Compare: *That*-*craft* with *energy*, *allgewaltig* with *omnipotent*.

To a great extent the difference in sound between German and the Saxon portion of the English language is that between two dialects, the German being pronounced with a more decidedly *open and rounded*, the English with a more uniformly horizontal, position of the mouth. Comp.  *Sprache* with *speech*, *Stoß* with *stick*, *suchen* with *seek*, *größer* with *greater*, *füllen* with *fill*.

3. There are three **strong vowels**: *a*, *o*, *u*, and two **weak vowels**: *e*, *i*. This order represents the gradation of sound as effected, the first by the greatest, and the last by the least, possible opening of the mouth.

4. The strong vowels occur blended with the sounds of the weak vowels, and are then called **modified vowels**; *a* blended with *e*: *ä*; *o* with *e*: *ö*; *u* with *e* or perhaps *i*: *ü*.

5. By contracting a stronger vowel with a weaker vowel and sounding them with one closing movement of the mouth, a **diphthong** is formed: *au*, *ai*, *ui*, *eu*, *ei*.

## SIMPLE VOWELS.

See LEADING REMARKS 1, 2, 3.)

**A**, a sounds like *a* in *far*, *calm*; long in *fam* *calm*; *Mahl* meal; doubled in *Mal* eel, *Maal* mole; short in *fait* cold, *Banf* bench, *lang* long.

**O**, o long like *oa* in *boat*; *wohl* well, *Sohn* son; doubled in *Moss* moss, *lot*; o short like *o* in *lot*; *kommen* come, *Sonne* sun. Both in o long and o short the lips must be nearly pointed.

**U**, u long like *oe* in *shoe*; *Pfuhl* pool, *Blut* blood, *Brut* a breed. The long u has a peculiar power, is therefore never doubled and must be well sustained; *zu* short like *u* in *full*; *Sturm* storm, *muß* must *Kuß* kiss.

**E**, e long is pronounced like *ei*gh in *nei*gh with a horizontal and almost closed position of the mouth; *Mehl* meal, *Sehne* sinew; doubled in *See* sea, *Meer* sea. e short like *e* in *nest*; *best* best, *Rest* rest, *Nest* nest.

AN ALMOST MUTE *e*, as in *father* occurs very extensively in suffixes and terminations, where it mainly serves as a mitigating element to prevent the harshness which would arise from the close succession of strong syllables. Compare: *Alle guten Thaten haben Gottes großen Segen*, with *all good deeds have God's great blessing*. (For the author's system of the declension of nouns, adjectives etc. the thorough understanding of the value of this *e* is indispensable, and the teacher must well impress the pupil with its nature and importance.)

This *e* often still appears in the English spelling of Saxon words, but is now mute, as the softening of the English root vowels has rendered it superfluous as a soft suffix. Compare *haben*, *Woge*, *suchen*, *geben*, *finden* with *have*, *wave*, *seek*, *give*, *find*.

**I**, i long like *ie* in *priest*; *ihm* him, *mir* me; short like *i* in *in*; *Kinn* chin, *ist* is.

it is used for double *i* with the sound of *ie* in *thief*, *field*; as *Bier* beer, *hier* here, *schier* sheer, *Dieb* thief.

In words from the **Latin** the *i* and *e* are pronounced separately; as *Familiē*, *Patriziē*, *Viniē*, *Vilisiē*, *Amalisiē*; but *Coloniē*.

In words from the **Greek** it sounds again as in *field*, as *Academiē*, *Harmoniē*, *Monarchiē*, *Philosophiē*.

In the plural the *i* and *e* are sounded separately as *Melodiēn*, *Sympathiēn*. At the end of a line write *Sympathiēn*.

In words from the **French** it is treated as in words from the **Greek**, *Compagniē*, *Coteriē*, *Partiēn* &c.

**Y, y** sounds like the modified *u* (*ü*) (see below) and occurs only in words of Greek origin; *Elybe* syllable, *Olymp* Olympus.

## MODIFIED VOWELS.

(See LEADING REMARKS 4.)

**Äe, ä** long like *a* in *care*; *gäbe* gave, *Käse* cheese, *Fähre* ferry; short nearly like *a* in *many*; *Männer* men, *Kälte* chill, *hält* holds, *Äpfel* apples.

**De, ö** long nearly approaches the sound of *ea* in *great* when pronounced with pointed lips; *größt* greater, *tödt*n deaden, *Föhre* fir, *Ofen* stoves; short that of *a* in *can*, likewise with pointed lips; *fönnen* can, *Löffel* spoon, *Schöpfer* (shaper) creator, *Öffnung* opening.

**Ue, ü** long like *ee* in *feel* with the lips very slightly rounded, not pointed; *fühlen* feel, *grün* green, *süß* sweet, *Uebel* evil; short like *i* in *fill* with the lips as above; *füllen* fill, *Müller* miller, *füssen* kiss.

If doubled vowels undergo modification, only a single modified vowel is written: *Saal* hall, *Eäle* halls; *Boot* boat, *Böte* boats. The diphthong *au* modifies only the *a*—*äu*. The modification of the vowel generally forms an element in derivation, in comparison, in the formation of plurals and in conjugation.

## DIPHTHONGS.

(See LEADING REMARKS 5.)

**Au, au** like *ou* in *soul*, German *faul*, *Haus* house, *braun* brown, *grau* grey, *Traum* dream.

**Äi, ai** like *uy* in *buy*; *Kaiser* (from *Cæsar*) emperor, *Mai* May, *Maid* maid.

**Ei, ei** like *i* in *fine*, German *fein*, *mein* my, *dein* thy, *reiten* ride, *Pein* pain, *Reis* rice.

**Ui, ui** occurs only in *hui*, like *hooi* hie; *pfui*, like *psui* fie.

**Eu, eu** and **äu** much like *oi* in *point*; *Feuer* fire, *neu* new, *treu* true; *Mäuse* mice, *Träume* dreams, *Räume* rooms, *Bräute* brides, *Auglein* little eye.

## B. POWER OF THE VOWELS IN SIMPLE WORDS.

In dissyllabic simple words.

1. The vowel is **long** when followed by only **one** consonant, the consonant, without regard to Etymology, passing altogether to the second soft syllable.

Ex.: *La-den* to load, *Of-fen* an oven, *Ru-der* a rudder.

2. On the other hand the vowel is **short** when followed by **two** consonants or a **double** consonant, the two consonants being, in pronouncing and spelling, divided between the two syllables.

Ex. *lan-den* to land, *of-fen* open, *run-den* to round, *Mut-ter* mother, *Fut-ter* fodder.

The almost **universal** neglect of this simple rule of syllabing is the chief cause of a **bad accent**, *alle all* being pronounced like *Aale eels*, *ſchaf-fen* to *create* like *ſcha-fen sheep*, *har-ren* to *await* like *haa-ren hairs*, *Mut-ter mother* like *Muh-ter*. On the other hand *gut-te* like *gut-te*, *Brü-der* like *Brud-der*.

Compound consonants are syllabed as stated in the alphabetical list of consonants below.

**3. Diphthongs and double vowels, also vowels followed by an *h*, are always long**, the *h* then being the only mute letter in German. It is also mute in *th* (See Consonants below) where it likewise lengthens the root vowel which it follows or precedes, only the *t* being sounded.

rau=ben, Sai=te, Sei=te, Bier, paa=ren, fah=ren, Loos, Koh=len, Pfuhl, ru=hen, Rath, ra=then, That, Tha=ten, roth, rö=then, Thon, Ku=the, thun, Thran, Thra=ne, Thron.

Pan=ther, Thurn and Birth are the only words with *th* in which the vowel is short.

As to the effect of other compound consonants on the root vowel see below.

**4. If the vowel in the Infinitive of a verb (which always ends in *en*) is long, it remains long**, whatever termination may be added to the stem: as *le=ben* to *live*; stem: *leb*; *lebst* *livest*, *lebt* *lives*, *lebte* *lived*, *leb=* *haft* *lively*.

Only in the verb *ha=ben* to *have*, *hast* *hast* and *hat* *has* are short, in spite of the length of the root vowel. In other deviations from this rule the orthography is altered; they are marked in the verbs.

**5. The vowel is long besides:**

*a.* In all monosyllables ending with the vowel: *da* *there*, *wo* *where*, *du* *thou*; also in the foreign prefixes ending with the vowel: *Co=**häsion*, *De=**fect*, *Di=**mension*, *e=**maniert*, *Pro=**test*, *Re=**form*.

*b.* In monosyllables and foreign suffixes (except *or*, *uö* and *um*) in which the simple vowel is followed by one consonant, as: *Graf* (*gerefa*), *stat*, — *mal* as *drei=mal* *three times*, *dem*, *den*, *der* — *wem*, *wen*, *wer* — *er* *he*, *her* *hither*, *dir*, *mir*, *wir*, *loß*, *gut*.

**Except:** *ab*, *Grab*, *Bad\**, *Rad\**, *am*, *an*, *man*, *daß*, *Gas\**, *Glas\**, *Gras\**, *was*, *Mar*; — *groß\**, *vom*, *von*; — *Club* (*club*), *um*, *jum*, *un*; — *es*, *des*; — *im*, *in*, *bin*, *hin*, *bis*, *Rnix*.

In the prefixes *be*, *ge*, *er*, *ver*, *zer* and also *her* before another prefix as: *heran*, *heraus*, *herein*, *herüber*, and in the compounds *Herberge* and *Herzog*, and the foreign prefixes ending with a consonant, *Ad=**vocat*, *Col=**lecte*, *Con=**cert*, *Ex=**fect*, *Dis=**cant*.

The words marked \* are short only in the form here given.



c. The simple vowel followed by **two consonants** is **exceptionally long** only in the following words: *Mäler*, *Art*, *Artzt*, *Bart*, *Birje*, *Erde*, *Geberde*, *Harz*, *Herd*, *Krebs*, *Krebs*, *Magd*, *Mond*, *nebst*, *Obst*, *Papst*, *Pferd*, *Propst*, *Schwert*, *stets*, *Trost*, *Vogt*, *werden*, *zart*.

**Note 1.** Some words formed by **contraction** from others in which the long root vowel is followed by a simple consonant and by suffixes, like *e*, *el*, *en*, *er*, are of course long and will be easily recognized, as: *böslich wickedly* from *böse wicked*, *Hüfner possessor of a hide of land* from *Hufe hide*, *Tadler blamer* from *tadeln to blame*, *Segler sailer* from *Segel sail*, *übler worse* from *übel ill*, *Grübler speculator* from *grübeln to reason*, *Gegner opponent*, *begegnen to meet* from *gegen against*, *unsäglich unspeakable* from *sagen to say*, *regnen to ruin* from *Regen rain*, *üblich usual* from *üben to practise*, *Obrigkeit authority* from *ober upper*, *übrig remaining* from *über over*. These are properly speaking no exceptions.

**Note 2** In other cases the elision of an *e* or *i* is indicated by an apostrophe: (See below punctuation) as: *erhab'ner* for *erhabener* sublime, *Vetrag'ner* for *Vetragener* deceived one, *besflüg'let* for *besflügelte* give wings, *sel'ge* for *selig* blissful, *ew'ge* for *ewig* eternal.

**6. Long** are lastly and likewise **exceptionally** the following words in which the simple vowel is followed by a compound consonant. (For the pronunciation see alphabetical list of consonants below.)

a. by **ch**: *nach* after (originally *nah nigh*) and its derivatives as *nächst next*, *Schmach shame* from *schmähen to revile*; *hoch* high (originally *hoh*) and its derivatives as *höchst highest* (short in *Hochzeit* wedding); and the following Imperfects: *brach* broke, *sprach* spake spoke, (*Sprache* speech) *stach* stung and all words with the vowel *u* when followed by **ch** only, as *Buch*, *Fluch*, *suchen* etc.; except *Bruch* and *Spruch*.

b. by **dt**: *Städte* cities, *tot* dead and their derivatives (compare *Stätte stead*, *spot*, *Tod death*) also *beredt* (for *beredet*) *eloquent*.

c. by **ft**: *Ost* East, *Ostern* Easter, *Kloster* cloister, *Trost* consolation, *düster* dusky, *Husten* cough, *pusten* puff, *Schuster* shoemaker, *wüst* waste, and their derivatives; as, *tröstlich* comforting, *unverwundlich* indestructible.

d. by **ß**: *aß* and *fraß* ate, *vergaß* forgot, *Maß* measure, *maß* measured, *Spaß* fun, *Straße* street, *saß* sat, *Gefäß* vessel; *erboßen* to exasperate, *bloß* naked, *blößen* to denude, *flößen* to float, *Kloß* clod, *groß* great, *Stoß* a shock, *Proß* provost; *Buße* penance, *Fuß* foot, *Muß* pulp, *Muße* leisure, *Gruß* greeting, *grüßen* to

greet, süß sweet, and words derived from the above as: gemüß according to, büß-en to expiate, Füß-feet, Grüß-te greetings.

In all other words the simple vowel followed by two consonants or by a double consonant is short. (Compare the list of consonants below.)

**Prefixes and suffixes** (See Sections IV and V) do not affect the power of the root vowels, except in the few words marked with \* under 5, b, above.

## C. SOUND OF THE CONSONANTS.

**LEADING REMARKS.** 1. Every simple consonant is sounded in German, except the *h* after a vowel and in *th*, where it is even dispensed with by some modern Grammarians. (See above, Power of the vowels 3.)

2. The following consonants sound as in English: *f*, *t*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *t*, the *r*, however, without any admixture of *a*.

3. Beginning consonants are very soft, final consonants are sharp, especially *b*, *d*, *g* and *s*, the *b* more or less approaching the sound of *p*, *d* that of *t*, *ng* that of *nk* and *s* (final *s*) that of *ss* whenever they are placed at the end of a syllable and even when followed by another consonant as: *gab*, *Land*, *lang*, *Gras*. They, of course, resume their soft character when the word is lengthened by a termination or suffix beginning with *e* or *i*, as they are then sounded at the beginning of that additional syllable according to the mechanical law of German syllabbling (see above Power of the vowels 1, 2) as *Ga-be*, *lan-dig*, *lan-ge*, *Grü-fer*. (Compare: *God* with *Gott*, *word* with *Wort*, *rank* with *Rang*, *glass* with *Glas*.)

4. In German and Saxon-English words the interchange of the following consonants is common, and attention to it will facilitate the recognizing of words akin to each other. 1. *b* and *p* with *v* and *f*, as *ba-*

ben have, halb half, Dieb thief, tief deep. 2. *ch* and *k* (see Gutturals). 3. *d* with *th* and *t*, as Dank thank. Bad bath, that did. 4. *e* with *s* or *z* as war was, frieren to freeze, Eisen iron. 5. *S*, *ss*, *sz* with *t*, das that, was what, Wasser water, besser better, groß great, Fuß foot. 6. *z* is often represented by the English *t*, as zwanzig twenty, Zeit time, (tide) furz short, Wis wit. 7. *ag* and *eg* often represent the English *ay*, as Tag day mag may, Weg way.

5. The following compound consonants *ch*, *chß*, *ck*, *dt*, *ng*, *ph*, *qu*, *sch*, *sp*, *st*, *ß*, *th*, *ß* must be considered as orthographical signs for sounds not strictly represented by their individual components. Their pronunciation is given along with that of the simple consonants in their alphabetical order. — *kn*, *lt*, *lm*, *pf* and *pf* sound like *k—n*, *l—k*, *l—m*, *p—f*, and *p—s*.

6. *y* is used as a consonant in the Dutch word *Yaht* yacht only.

## PRONUNCIATION OF SIMPLE AND COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

(In the following list only those consonants are given, the sound of which deviates from that of the English character, or which have some other peculiarity.)

The words ought to be carefully syllabled according to the rule given above: Power of the vowels 1 & 2. and the master will greatly encourage the efforts of the pupil by supplying the corresponding English words which are in close analogy to the German.

For *B* *b*, *C* *c*, *Ch* see below as the Gutturals are introduced here in order not to interfere too much with the alphabetical arrangement.

## THE GUTTURALS.

**Ch** and **g** are pure gutturals (like *ch* in the Scottish *loch*) after the strong vowels, *a*, *o*, *u* and *au*, in which the mouth is fully opened, but palatal-gutturals (resembling the *y* in *yes*) after the weak and modified vowels and after *l*, *n* and *r*, when the mouth is nearly closed.

**ch** shortens, **g** lengthens the preceding vowel. The following table fully shows their relation to each other and to the vowels.

## PURE GUTTURALS

(after the strong vowel.)

<b>ch</b> sharp	{	ach, lachen	{	loch, loche	{	Buch, Buche	{	auch, rauchen
vowel short								
<b>ch</b> final like <b>ch</b>	{	lag	{	log	{	Bug	{	saug-te
but the vowel long								
<b>g</b> before a vowel	{	la=ge	{	lo=gen	{	Bu=ge	{	sau=gen
very soft								

## PALATAL GUTTURALS

after the modified and weak vowels and after *l*, *n* and *r*.

<b>ch</b> sharper than y in yes	{	lächeln	{	löcher	{	Bücher	{	räuchern, Eichen
<b>g</b> soft								
vowel long	{	lägen	{	lögen	{	flüger	{	säugen, eigen
	{	rechen	{	sichten	{	Molch	{	Mandche, Arche
	{	weg	{	Sieg richtig	{	Balg	{	(ng is not) guttural
	{	regen	{	siegen	{	folgen	{	arg

**ll** is long even before a **ch**, and becomes short only when a is added as *Bucht*, *Frucht*. Other exceptions are given above: "Power of the Vowels" 6a.

**ch** is always palatal in the diminutive suffix *chen* as *Mamachen*, *Frauchen*, *Röschchen*.

**ch** See below.

**Ch** in words of foreign origin is palatal before *e*, *i* and *y* as *Cherub*, *Chemie*, *China*, *Chirurg*, *Chylus*.

## II. PRONUNCIATION.

Following the vowel it is pronounced as in German words — *Woloch*, *Wetoch*, *Monarch*.

**B, b** like *b*, but at the end of syllables like *p* even before consonants: *beben* (be-ben), *beßt*, *bebt*, *bebte*, (beb-te), *Habe*, *Grab*, *gräbßt*, *grob*, *gröblich* (gröb-lich).

**C, c** before *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, *l* and *r*, as in English like *k*: *Co-car-de*, *cau-siſch*, *Curt*, *Gla-rier*, *Credit*.

**C** in all other cases like *ts*, as *Cä-ci-li-e*, *Cent*, *Cö-li-bat*, *Gym-bel*.

**Ch, ch** like *k* in the ancient German words *Char* (also *Kar*), *Chur* (also *Kur*); *Charfreitag* Good Friday, *Churfürst* prince-elect. — **ch** like *k* in words of Greek origin at the beginning of syllables, as *Cha-os*, *Cho-ral*, *Chriſt*.

**Ch** in words from the French like *sh*: *Cha-ra-de*, *Chiſ-ſer*, *Cho-ro-la-te*.

Before *e*, *i* and *y* it is a palatal-guttural (see above).

**chſ** (divided **ch** — **f**) is simply the German sign for *x* (*r*) the latter being used in foreign words: *Wch-fel*, *Sach-fe*, *Wachſ*, *wach-zen*; *Dchſ*, *ſuchſ*, *ſechſ*, *wichſen*. — In a few words **ch** occurs before **f** by composition and contraction, preserving its guttural sound, the **f** belonging to the second syllable, as *nach-ſehen* to set after, *wachſam* (watchful) vigilant, *Buchſ* for *Bu-ches* of the book. The same is the case with **ch** followed by a **ſ** in words like *jauch-zen*, *ſchluch-zen*, *äch-zen*, *fräch-zen*, *lech-zen* and in the contractions *ſech-zehn*, *ſech-zig*.

**ck** like *ck* stands for **ff**, by which in syllabing it is sometimes replaced: *Äcker* (*Äf-fer*), *Beck*, *Flöck*, *trocken*; *Brücke*, *Glück* (*Ge-lück*); *decken*; *ſtecken*.

**D, d** like *d*: *dancken*, *Donner*; *Durſt*; *dencken*, *dir*, *dich*; but

**d** at the end of syllables like *t* *Bad* (ba-den), *Nad*, (*Nä-der*), *Hand* (*Hän-de*); *Brod* (also *Brodt* and *Brot*); *Hund* (*Hun-de*); *Herd* (*Her-de*); *Bild* (*Bil-der*) soft in *Waidmann*, *Waidwerk*. — **d** sounds like *t* also before

consonants in derivatives of nouns as *schädlich* from *Echa-de*, *süßlich* from *Sü-den*, *friedlich* from *Grie-de*. It is softened however in derivatives of verbs, as *duld-sam*, from *dul-den*; *redlich* from *re-den*, *Send-ling* from *sen-den*, *bild-sam* from *bil-den*, *Find-ling* from *fin-den*. Like *t* however in *Ge-duld*, *be-redt*. *d* sounds like *d* in contractions, like *Händ-ler* (for *Hän-deler*); *Bünd-ner* (for *Bün-dener*), *Red-ner* (for *Re-dener*); *Wand-er* (for *Wan-derer*).

*dt* like *t* occurs only in *Stadt* (short) city, to distinguish it from *Statt* place, — in *Städte* (long) cities, to distinguish it from *Stätte* spot, — in *tot* (long) dead to distinguish it from *Tod* death, — in *töd-ten* to kill and *tödtlich* (both long) deadly. — Lastly in contraction: *beredt* (long for *beredet*) and in *gesandt*, *gewandt*, *verwand* for *gesendet*, *gewendet*, *verwendet*.

**G g** as guttural; see above.

*g* at the beginning like *g* in *gave*: *gab*, *Glaß*, *Gnade*, *Graß*, *Gott*, *groß*, *gut*, *Gluth*, *Grund*. *g* ought to be somewhat softened before *e* and *i*: *gefannt*, *gefaust* (Compare *gestern* with yesterday, *gern* with yearn), *Gift*, *Gicht*. Before the same vowels in words from the French it sounds as in French: *Ménage*, *Ménagerie*, *Courage*, *Etage*; *Loge*, *logiren*; *Glée*, *Genie*, *Melange*; *arrangiren*, *obligiren*.

*ng* (divided *n—g*), like *ng* in *longing* *fan-gen*, *han-gen*, *san-gen*, *Sän-ger*; *Jun-ge*, *Lun-ge*, *Zun-ge*; *men-gen* (mingle), *sen-gen*; *brin-gen*, *fin-gen*, *sin-gen*, *schlin-gen*.

*ng* at the end and before *st*, *t*, *te* in verbs is scarcely softer than *nk*; *lang*, *verlangst*, *verlangt*, *Rang*, *sang*, *jung*, *verjüngt*, *Eprung*, *mengt*, *sengst*, *bringst*, *Ding*, *Ring*, *ringt*, *singt*.

**h** like *h*: *Haar*, *Horn*, *Hund*, *her*, *bisher*, *hin*, *hier*, *heute*.

*h* after a vowel and after a *t* is not sounded and merely lengthens the vowel: (See power of the vowels,

1) *H*ahn, *h*ohl, *H*uhn, *r*auh, *h*ehr, *m*ehr, *n*ahen, *dr*-*h*en, *ru*-*h*en, *gl*-*h*en, *ge*-*h*en, *fl*ie-*h*en, *th*at, *R*ath, *Th*a-*ten*, *ra*-*th*en etc. See below *th*.

*J*, *j* like *y* in *yes*: *J*a, *ja*-*gen*, *J*am-*mer*, *J*och, *j*obeln, *J*ude, *J*ugend, *jauch*-*zen*, *j*eder, *j*ene, *J*es<sup>us</sup>, *J*erusalem.

*K*n, *kn* like *k*—*n* (both sounded): *K*nabe, *kn*al-*len*, *K*nochen, *K*nollen, *K*noten, *kn*üpfen, *kn*urren, *K*necht, *kn*eten, *kn*i-*den*, *Kn*irp<sup>s</sup>, *kn*istern, *K*nids or *Kn*ir.

*l*f like *l*—*k*, (both sounded) as *Val*-*fen*, *Fal*-*te*, *K*alt, *wal*-*fen*, *Mol*-*fen*, *W*olt, *Wol*-*te*.

*l*m like *l*—*m*, (both sounded): *H*alm, *mal*-*men*, *Pal*-*me*, *P*salm, *H*olm, *U*l-*me*, *H*elm, *S*helm.

*P*f, *pf* like *gentle p*—*f* (divided *p*—*f* when following the vowel). *P*aff, *P*fahl, *P*sand, *P*farre, *Ap*-*fel*, *Gop*-*fen*, *Klop*-*fen*, *K*nopf, *stop*-*fen*, *P*fuhl, *P*sund, *P*flug, *P*fennig, *P*ferd, *S*chnep-*fe*, *P*feife, *P*fingst<sup>n</sup>, *S*umpf.

*Ph*, *ph* (Greek) like *f* (never divided): *Ph*alanx, *Ph*arao, *Ph*arisäer, *Em*-*ph*ase; *Sim*-*ph*onie, *Ph*os-*ph*or, *Ph*önix: *Ph*ilantrop, *Ph*ilosoph, *Ph*ilister, *Ph*ysiologie, *H*ierogly-*ph*e, *Zoo*-*ph*yt.

*P*s, *ps* (*s*) like *p*—*s*: *P*salm, *P*salter; *P*seudo; *P*sittig parrot; *P*syche, *P*sycholog and at the end of German words: *K*laps<sup>s</sup>, *R*ipp<sup>s</sup>-*rapp*<sup>s</sup>, *M*ops, (*W*öp-*se*), — *P*st!

*Qu*, *qu* like *kv*: *Qu*ack-*sal*ber, *Qu*ader, *Qu*adr-*at*, *Qu*al, *Qu*alle, *Qu*aft, *Qu*otient, *qu*oll, *Qu*elle, *quer*, *quet*sch<sup>n</sup>, *erqu*iden, *qu*illt, *Qu*inte, *Qu*irl, *qu*itt, *Qu*itte, *Qu*ittung.

*S*, *s* at the beginning of syllables, before vowels, soft like *s* in *resign* or *wise*: *S*aal, *S*ack, *Bas*-*e*, *ra*-*sen*, *S*ohn, *S*onne, *lo*-*sen*, *Ro*-*se*, *sud*eln, *Su*-*san*ne, *Mu*-*se*, *se*hen, *Sen*-*se*, *le*-*sen*, *s*icher, *S*inn, *nie*-*sen*, *Kie*-*se*; also in *le*s-*bar* (for *lese*bar), *ver*meßlich, *er*weislich.

*s* always at the end of syllables and before the termination *t* in verbs, like *ss*: *Ma*s, *la*s, *ra*s, (Comp. *Ra*st.)

In the following the vowel is exceptionally short: *bi*s, *da*s, *de*s, *es*, *Ga*s, *Gl*a<sup>s</sup>, *Gr*a<sup>s</sup>, *wa*s, *w*re<sup>s</sup>, but

in every other form it is long as *Ga-se*, *Gláser*, *Grá-ser*, *loß*, *verloßt*, *Moos*, *Haus*, *Maus*, (*Mäuse*), *Eis*.

*s* like *ss* also before the diminutive suffix *-chen* as *Glás-chen*, *Grás-chen*, *Rös-chen*, *Mäus-chen*; rather soft again before the diminutive suffix *-lein* owing to an elided *e* as *Häuslein* (for *Häuse-lein*) *Mäuslein*, *Röslein*.

*sch*, *sch* (the compound consonant) like *sh*: *Schale*, *Scharlach*, *Scham*, *Schaf*, *Schlaf*, *Schottland*, *Schuld*, *Schule*, *schelten*, *schlecht*, *schmelzen*, *Schiff*, *Schild*, *Schirm*, *Flasche*, *rasch*, *haschen*, *falsch*, *Frosch*, *Gros-chen*, *Busch*, *husch*, *Es-chen*, *dre-chen*, *Fisch*, *mi-chen*, *rau-chen*, *Flisch*.

*sp* like *sp*; but at the beginning it is more or less aspirated nearly like *ship* (see *st* below): *spannen*, *Sprache*, *Sporn*, *Spott*, *sprossen*, *spuken*, *Sprung*, *Spruch*, *Speer*, *Spieß*, *Spindel*, *sprießen*.

*sp* shortens the preceding vowel is divided *s-p* *Haspe* (*Has-pe*), *Raspel* (*Ras-pel*), *Rnospe* (*Rnos-pe*), *Wespe* (*Wes-pe*), *Rispe* (*Ris-pe*), *wisperm* (*wis-pern*).

*ß* like *ss* in *hiss* (divided *s-ß* the vowel of course short) is used mostly before *e* and *i* (and not after diphthongs) as *lassen*, *lässig*, *Wasser*, *Rosse*, *müssen*, *rußisch*, *missen*, *wissen*.

Seemingly to please the eye *ß* is changed into *ff* whenever the *e* or *i* after it is dropped, as *lassen* into *läßt*, *laßt*, *müssen* into *muß*, *müßt*, *missen* into *mißlich*, *wissen* into *wißt*, *gewiß*; also before *ung*; *Fassung*, *Messung*.

In such derived forms the vowel remains short; see *ß* below.

*ß* always like *ss* in *hiss* is a troublesome character, because in some words it leaves the preceding vowel long, and in others like the above it shortens it.

It is to no purpose to evade this difficulty by altering the spelling in class books, and the pupil may therefore in doubtful cases refer to the following statement as conclusive.

*ß*, proper, not changing into *ff* and not divided



is used after *ie* and the diphthongs as *fließen*, *springen*, *außen*, *äußern*, *Preußen*, *beißen* &c. and besides in the words given above under **Power of The Vowels 6**. *d* in all the forms of which the long vowel and the *ß* are retained as *Fuß*, *Fü-ße*, *groß*, *grö-ßer* &c.

In all other cases the *ß* follows a short vowel and is changed into to an *ff* when an *e* is added as, *Fluß*, *Fluß-fe*, *Rosß*, *Rosß-fe*, *naß*, *Naß-fe* &c. *Gloß*, *Haß*, *Guß*, *Eduß*, *iß*.

**Et, ft**, The pronunciation of *sp* and *ft* is disputed. At the end of the stem they indeed sound always as in English, as *saunst canst*, *Post post*, *crist first*. This is owing to the closing movement of the mouth.

At the beginning however *sp* as well as *ft* is sounded as in English in some parts of Germany only, whilst in the other and probably the larger portion the *f* before *p* and *t* has more or less the sound of *sh*.

As this latter sound is more in keeping with the pure enunciation of the strong stem vowels and with the more rounded position of the mouth which they require, the author would recommend a moderate admixture of the *sh-sound* with these compound consonants as the not inelegant medium between the extremes and as common where people are freest from provincial dialects. Compare *Sprache* with *speech*, *Spring* with *spring*, *Stahl* with *steel*, *Stamm* with *stem*, *Stoß* with *stick*, *Strom* with *stream*. The words in which *ft* is preceded by a long vowel have been given above; Power of the vowels 6, c. In all other words the vowel before the *ft* is short.

*ß* see under *ff* above.

**T, t** sounds as *t* in English. — Before *ia*, *iä*, *io*, *iu*, *ie* in foreign suffixes it sounds like *ts*: *mar-tialisch*, *Par-tiale*, *Ter-tia*, *vene-tianisch*; *Ter-tiär*; *Conjuga-tion*, *Proclama-tion*, *Na-tion*, *Destina-tion*, *Mo-tien*, *Por-tion*, *Sta-tion*; *Epa-tium*, *Gro-tius*, *Helve-tius*; *Pa-tient*, *Duo-tient*.

**Th, th** (never divided) sounds like *t*, but *lengthens* the vowel of the root in which it occurs, both when it precedes and when it follows it: *Thal* dale, *gethan* done, *Thran*, *Thráne*, *That*, *Unslath*, *Rath*, *Thomas*, *Thon*, *Thor*, *Thron*, *Noth*, *roth*, *Christen-thum*, *König-thum*, *thun*, *Thür*, *Muth*, *Ku-the*, *Thau*, *theuer*, *Thee*, *Theer*, *Meth*, *Thier*, *Thimian*, *mie-then*, *rieth*. The root vowel is *short* only in *Pan-ther panther*, *Thurm tower*, *Wirth host* and their derivatives, as *Thürmchen turret*, *wirthlich hospitable*, and in words from the *Greek* in which the vowel is followed by *more* than one consonant, as *Parthenon*, *Orthographie*, *Thyrseus*.

ꝥ see ꝥ.

**B, v** in originally *German* words always like *f*: *Vater*, *Vogel*, *Volk*, *von*, *vor*, *ver* (prefix), *Velten*, *Veit* (names), *Behme*, *Vetter*, *Vieh*, *viel*, *vier*. *v* in *foreign* words at the beginning like *v*, but at the end like *f*: *Bagabond*, *Bandale*, *Botiv*, *Bulfan*, *Vesuv*, *vibrien*, *Viper*, *Bistr*, *Bisite*, *Motiv*. When followed by a vowel the *v*-sounds like *v*: *Moti-ve*, *vesu-visch*.

**W, w** always like *v*: *Wald*, *Wall*, *warm*, *Wasser*, *Woche*, *Wolfe*, *Wolle*, *Wort*; *Wunder*, *Wurf*; *Weib*, *Weide*, *weiß*, *weben*, *Beh*, *Wetter*; *wie*, *wild*, *Wind*, *Wittwe*, *schwach*, *schwor*, *schwer*, *Schwester*, *schwinden*, *Löwe*, *Möwe*.

**X, x** like *x* or rather like *ks*: *Xantippe*, *Alexander*, *Art*, *Orchoft*, *Xerxes*, *Xamen*, *fix*, *Mixtur*.

**3, ꝥ** and ꝥ (divided *t* — *3* or, as well, *3* — *3*) sounds like *a sharp t followed by a gentle s*, the *t* being virtually the essential sound. *3, ꝥ* occurs at the beginning, as *zählen*, *zahn*, *Zahn*, *zapfen*, *Zoll*, *Zunder*, *Zunge*, *zauen*, *zehn*, *zerren*, *Zeit*, *zimmern*, *Zinn*, *zwanzig*, *zwölf*, *Zweig*.

The vowel followed by *3* or ꝥ is always *short*; the difference being merely orthographical, as the ꝥ is used directly after the vowel, the *3* after diphthongs and consonants: *Glat-ze*, *Glanz*, *Kat-ze*, *Kauz*, *frat-zen*, *Kranz*, *Kloß*, *Volzen*, *Holz*, *Schurz*, *Schürze*, *Schmuzz*.

*schmungen, heizen, hetzen, Herz, schmelzen, schmerzen, Reiz, Reiz, Kreuz, Bliß, blinzeln, Hitze, Hinz, Spitze, Fiß, Pilz, Miß, winzig.* Such Geographical names as *Glaß* for *Glaß*, *Graß* for *Graz*, (both long), *Greiz*, *Schleiß* and *Zeiß*, are abnormal.

Some innovations in orthography recently attempted on onesided theoretical grounds as phonetic spelling, as well as the resuscitation of old fashions, viz: the writing of nouns with small instead of with capital initial letters are decided disadvantages, particularly to the foreign student.

## D. PUNCTUATION.

This Portion as well as the following containing the abbreviations, to be referred to by advanced pupils only.

German punctuation follows simple and definite rules and is therefore easily learned.

1. The FULL STOP (.), *der Punkt*, is equivalent to the English period and demands a decided pause.

2. The SEMICOLON (;), *das Semikolon*, is equivalent to the full stop and is used at the end of one sentence if a close internal connection with the following sentence is to be indicated, the two sentences being otherwise separable. The sentence following the semicolon does not begin with a capital unless its first word be a noun; as, *Ich kann es nicht finden; ich fürchte, es ist nicht hier.\** I cannot find it, I fear it is not here.

3. The COMMA (,) *das Komma*, differs in its application from the English comma. It indeed af-

\* In giving German illustrations to the grammatical rules the author has throughout observed these two principles. 1. He has preferred such words as, being akin to the English, could be readily understood and might leave the attention undivided for the appreciation of the rule in question. 2. He has, as far as possible, avoided the introduction of such grammatical elements into these illustrations as cannot be comprehended from the knowledge already acquired during the progress through the work.

fords an opportunity for replenishing the lungs with air, yet it does not indicate a separating pause, but demands rather a raising of the voice, in such a manner as to signify a logical connection of the preceding with the following part of the sentence. It is placed,

a. In enumerating equal elements of a sentence, to be comprehended under one idea, except when they are coupled by the conjunctions *und* and, *oder* or, as; Weiß, Gelb, Roth, Violet, Blau, Grün und Schwarz sind Farben. White, yellow, red, violet, blue, green and black are colours. Er sprang vorwärts, rückwärts, seitwärts, auf und nieder. He sprang forward, backward, sideways, up and down. Sie lachen, sprechen, singen oder schreien fortwährend. They laugh, speak, sing or cry continually.

b. Also when words addressed to a person are interrupted by a vocative, the latter must be placed between two commas. Wünsche dir, lieber Freund, vor Allem ein starkes Herz. Wish for thyself, dear friend, before everything a strong heart. The same is the case with nouns and adjective clauses when used in apposition; as, Der Mann, ein Gärtner, war nicht zu Hause. The man, a gardener, was not at home. Wir, seit langen Jahren Freunde, verstanden uns bald. We, friends for many years, soon understood each other. Die Mischung, grün von Farbe, war nicht löslich. The mixture, green in colour, was not soluble. Die See, die wilde, weite, rauscht und schäumt. The sea, the wild wide (sea), rushes and foams.

c. In simple sentences also an antithesis is marked by a comma. Du mußt springen, nicht klettern. You must spring, not climb. Handeln, nicht warten, ist mein Motto. Act, not wait, is my motto.

d. The comma is used in compound sentences before the relative pronouns and all those conjunctions which express the relation of the clause (sentence) which they introduce, to another part of the same compound sentence. In these cases even as there is no comma

in English so in German the reader should not pause but only mark by the voice the logical continuity of the idea of the compound sentence. *Sieh, ob er hier ist.* See if he is here. *Komme, wenn du kannst.* Come when you can. *Sage mir, wer er ist, was er ist, wo er ist.* Tell me who he is, what he is, where he is. *Es ist das Beste, das ich habe.* It is the best that I have. *Dies ist nicht der Mann, den ich suche.* This is not the man whom I seek. If the leading clause is interrupted by an inserted dependent clause, the inserted clause must be placed between two commas: *Der Garten, welchen du siehst, ist mein.* The garden, that you see, is mine. (See Section XXX. compound sentences, dependent clauses.)

e. Clauses containing an infinitive with *zu* (to) are not separated by a comma when, as usual, they contain the object of the leading assertion. *Ich hoffe meine Freunde zu sehen.* I hope to see my friends.

f. Adverbial phrases, which are placed between commas in English, are separated by commas in German only when several of them are enumerated or when used antithetically as above. *Wir suchten dich im Hause, im Garten, auf der Straße.* We sought you in the house, in the garden, in the street. A sentence like: *He stated, on behalf of his brother, who was absent, that, on his return, he would meet his friends,* must accordingly be punctuated in German: *He stated on behalf of his brother, who was absent, that on his return he would meet his friends.*

4. The COLON (:) Der Doppelpunkt is used before every *verbatim* quotation. *Er sagte: komme morgen.* He said, come to-morrow. Also when a clause is to be introduced as expressing a logical consequence of the preceding assertion or its object as inferred by the speaker without the use of a conjunction. *Hieraus folgt: er muß sein Recht aufgeben.* Hence it follows that he must give up his right. *Es ist klar: er will nicht kommen.* It is clear that he does not wish to

come. Er will nicht kommen: man muß ihn nöthigen. He will not come, hence one must compel him.

The colon is also used in **classifying** and **enumerating** objects. Die Propheten sind: Jesaias, Jeremiaß &c. the prophets are Isaiah, Jeremiah &c. Es giebt mehrere Arten: die rothe, die weiße, die gelbe Rose, die Moosrose. *There are several species, the red, the white, the yellow rose, the moss rose.* — From its nature it will be seen that the colon is but an *intensified comma*, and that the pause which it demands, must be preceded by a decided **raising** of the voice, so as to excite the expectation of the hearer. The colon in fact replaces the words *thus, as follows, hence &c.*

The rest of the marks of punctuation have the same force as in English; yet it must be observed that the different construction of the German language requires **more expression**, that is, a more decided interrogative and exclamatory accent before the Fragezeichen (?) and the Ausrufungszeichen (!) the latter as well as the Gedankenstrich (—) being used with some discretion. The **inverted commas** Anführungszeichen are represented by „preceding and“ following the quotation. Er sagt: „Wir wollen sehen.“ *He says, 'we will see.'*

**THE APOSTROPHE** (') is the sign of an elided e or i and sometimes even ei in the words eine, einem, einen, einer; as, 's ist spät for es ist spät. 'Tis late. Sel'ge Ruh for selige Ruh, blessed rest. Wår' ich der Sturm, ich säng' euch lust'ge Lieder, (wåre, sänge, lustige). Were I the storm, I'd sing you merry songs. 's war 'ne kalte Nacht for es war eine, 'Twas a cold night. Mit 'nem (einem) Sprunge, with a spring. Vor 'ner (einer) Pforte, before a gate. Für 'nen (einen) Thaler, for a dollar.

## E. ABBREVIATIONS.

a. a. D. (am angeführten Orte) | a. D. (außer Diensten) re-  
in the work referred to. | tired from service.

- a. D. (an der Doffe) on the Dosse.  
 a. M. (am Main) on the Main.  
 a. O. (an der Oder) on the Oder.  
 Bco. (Banco) bank money.  
 C. M. (Conventions-Münze) Convention money.  
 Cour. (Courant) Currency.  
 d. h. (das heißt) that means.  
 d. i. (das ist) that is.  
 desgl. (desgleichen) likewise.  
 d. J. (dieses Jahres) (lat. a. c. *anni currentis*) of this year.  
 d. M. (dieses Monats) of this month.  
 ff. (*seq.*) and the following (*pages etc.*)  
 geb. (geboren) born, also like the French *née* preceding a lady's maiden name.  
 gest. (†) (gestorben) died.  
 Hr. (Herr) Mr.  
 Hrn. (Herrn) to Mr.  
 i. J. (im Jahre) in the year.  
 m. o. w. (mehr oder weniger) more or less.  
 n. Chr. (nach Christo) after the birth of Christ.  
 Herr N. N. Mr. so and so.  
 Der pp. Müller, the said Müller.  
 quäst. the thing or person in question.  
 S. (Seite) page.  
 f. (siehe) (lat. v. *vide*) see.  
 St. (Sanct) Saint.
- u. a. m. (und andere mehr) and others.  
 u. dgl. (und dergleichen) and the like.  
 u. f. f. (und so fort) and so forth.  
 u. f. w. (und so weiter) and so on.  
 v. Chr. (vor Christo) before the birth of Christ.  
 vergl. or vgl. (vergleiche) compare.  
 v. J. (vorigen Jahres) last year.  
 v. M. (vorigen Monats) last month.  
 &c.  
 z. B. (zum Beispiel) for instance.  
 z. E. (zum Exempel) for example.  
 In addressing persons by their titles in letters Gw. Emr. — (Euer) Your, (Eurer) Yours — occur; as, Gw. Excellenz, your excellency. Gw. Majestät (Eure Majestät) your majesty.  
 Similarly in documents, newspapers etc.  
 S. M. (Seine Majestät) His Majesty.  
 Ib. Maj. (Ihro Majestät) Her Majesty.  
 k. (königlich) royal.  
 k. k. (kaiserlich) imperial.  
 H. or Hoh. (Hohheit) Highness.

<b>Durchl.</b> (Durchlaucht,) serene- nissimus) Serene High- ness etc.	A. M. (anno mundi) in the year of the world.
Others like A. D. (anno domini) in the year of our Lord.	N.B. (nota bene) observe. P. S. postscript, as in English.

## SECTION III.

## THE ACCENT OR STRESS.

**A. THE ACCENT IN SIMPLE WORDS.** It has been repeatedly stated (See Sound of the Vowels 2, and p. 3, the sound of *e*) that the power of the German root vowels demands the preservation of a soft and (almost mute) *e* in the second syllable of many words in which that *e* is not pronounced in English. Hence the predominance of dissyllabic simple words with **gentle suffixes** containing an *e* forms a characteristic feature of the German when compared with the English language. The intervening of these suffixes and also of many prefixes and little words with a soft *e* between stronger syllables, not merely prevents that harshness, complained of where the nature of this soft *e* is not understood, and where the successive syllables are carelessly pronounced with equal force, but it even renders the language mellow, imparts to it a fine musical rhythm, and makes it eminently fit for the rendering of the complicated metrical forms of the ancients. (See Section XXXII) Comp: Diese braven Männer haben alle jene großen Thaten gethan, with *These brave men have done all those (yon) great deeds.*

Erwache, heil'ge Fluth des Sanges, Und rausehe fort in stolzen Bogen, Daß von der Nacht des süßen Klanges	<i>Arise, thou holy flood of song, And rush forth in proud waves That by the might of the sweet sound</i>
Sich fühle jedes Herz gezogen.	<i>Each heart may feel itself drawn.</i>



The word *leben'big* *alive, vivid*, from *leben* to *live* is the only strange instance of a suffix accented instead of the stem.

Indeed, so much is the language averse to a succession of strong syllables that even in the declension of nouns and adjectives a soft *e* or a syllable containing it is added to words devoid of it in the nominative as *Mann* *man*, *Mannes* *man's*, *Manne* *to man*, *Männer* *men*; *gut* *good*, *gute*, *gutem*, *guten*, *guter* (inflectional forms).

B. THE ACCENT IN COMPOUND WORDS is decidedly influenced by the law explained above, so that

1. in compound nouns, adjectives, verbs and numerals the accent rests entirely on the first component, the second part being utterly reduced on behalf of the first. *Glas'haus*, *Faus'freund*, *danf'bar* *thankful*, *hart'herzig* *hardhearted*, *hand'haben* *to handle*, *recht'fertigen* *to justify*, *acht'zehn* *eighteen*, *sech'zehn* *sixteen*, *ein'mal* *once*, *zwei'mal* *twice* etc. (See below 4 & 5).

**Exceptions:** The accent is on the second component in the divine attributes *allge'genwärtig* *omnipresent*, *Allge'genwart* *omnipresence*, *allgü'tig* *allgracious*, *algeredt'* *aljust*, *allmä'chtig* *almighty*, *allwei'se* *allwise*, *allwi'ss'end* *omniscient* and the nouns derived from these (except *Allmacht*); farther *barmher'zig* *merciful* and *allbarmher'zig* *allmerciful*; also the compounds of all with terms of time *alljähr'lich* *annual*, *allmo'natlich* *monthly*, *allwöch'entlich* *weekly*, *alltäg'lich* *daily* (but *all'täglich* common) *allmä'hlich* *gradually* and the compounds of *aller* like *allerhöchst'* *most high*, *allerlieb'st'* *most dear*, *Alleman'nen* *Alemanni*, *außeror'dentlich* *extraordinary* and *haupt'sächlich* *mainly*; in *nothwendig*, *wunderschön*, the accent rests better on the first component. Others like *unterthä'nig* *submissive*, *wiederho'len* *to repeat* are explained under the Prefixes Section. IV, C, p. 30.

2. In all words with separable prefixes (See Section IV, B,) the prefix alone is accented, as;

*ab'gehen* *to go off*, *aus'gehen* *to go out*, *ein'fallen* *to fall in*, *Ab'gang* *departure*, *Ein'gang* *entrance*. (The vowel of these prefixes is not *e* except in few.)

It must be noticed that when the separable prefix itself is a compound word it follows rule 4, below and that the prefixes *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll*, *wieder*; (See S. IV, C,) are accented only when separable.

3. Suffixes have either no accent at all, as, *ste'tig* steady, *glüd'lich* lucky, *Jüng'ling* youth, *Klein'heit* smallness, or at most a very subordinate accent, as *theil'haft* (part having) *participient*, *won'nesam* winsome, *Freund'schaft* friendship, *Bis'thum* bishopric.

The suffix *ei* also *bat* in the word *offenbar'* manifest only, however, have the accent, as *Arzenei'* medicine, *Heuchelei'* hypocrisy, *Sclaverei'* slavery; similarly *lei* in *einerlei'*, in the sense of *all the same* (to a person).

4. On the other hand. In compound adverbs, conjunctions and prepositions the accent rests on the second component: *bergan'* uphill, *bergab'* downhill, *her-vor'* forth, *vorher'*, *voraus'* before, *hernach'* afterwards, *nachher'* thereafter, *indes'sen* meanwhile, *gegenü'ber* over against, *überaus'* exceedingly, *zuwi'der* contrary to. The only exceptions are al'so *thus*, *den'noch* and yet, and the compounds of *halb*, *maß* and *wärtß* which are rather suffixes.

5. However, in words composed with the demonstrative pronoun or with the demonstrative adverbs *hier* here, *da*, *dort* there, the Demonstrative has the accent whether it be the first or second part; *dieß'seit* on this side, *überdies'* moreover, *da'mit* with that, *da'nach* after that, *nachdem'* after that, *dem'nach*, *dem'gemäß* according to; that *vor-dem'* before this; *hier'mit* herewith, *dort'hin*, *da'hin* thereto, *allhier'*, *dahier'* at this place.

*Da* in some compounds is not demonstrative and has merely the force of "if" and is then of course not accented; *damit'*, with it, *davon* of it, *daraus* out of it (See S. VIII. 1) *daßer'* along, *daßin'* away.

6. In words of foreign origin the accent (because their formation was not readily understood) is mechanically placed on the last syllable. Ex.: *Autorität*, *Eleganz*, *Harmonie*, *Patron*, *Rebellion*; unless that syllable has been germanized as in *Charac'ter*, *Capitel* when the accent is given to the syllable preceding it, as is also done with the suffix *isch*. (Deviations from this rule will be given in the list of suffixes, Section V.)

C. THE ACCENT IN SENTENCES, being altogether of a logical nature, rests of course precisely on the word on which it is placed in English, no matter where these words may be placed in the German sentence, as *ich habe den Mann' gesehen*, I have seen the man.

Obs. As the pupil, however, is very apt from not understanding the German sentence he reads, to contract awkward and mechanical habits, it is of the greatest importance that his exercises from the very beginning should be such as he can readily comprehend. But even then the pupil must be guarded against the following:

1. The accent resting in English on the object, as *I have seen the man'*, and this object standing frequently at the end, the pupil is apt to place the accent in German mechanically on the last word although this may be found to be the verb; as, *Ich habe den Mann' gesehen* instead of *Ich habe den Mann' gesehen*. 2. The pupil, commencing the sentence with a good will but not being able to carry it through, is apt to give undue force to the beginning and on the other hand to droop towards the end, as *der' Garten' ist' nicht' sehr lang*, while logic demands the very opposite: *der Garten ist nicht sehr lang'*, *the garden is not very long'*; *ich' bin* for *ich bin' I am* &c. Here it must be reiterated that the object of pronunciation and accentuation is best attained by the most moderate and gentle application. 3. From one or the other reason the articles and prepositions, which are the least accented parts of the sentence, are generally pronounced with undue weight and in this regard too the pupil's attention must be carefully kept up.

D. EMPHASIS may, of course, as in English, be laid on any part of the sentence for which the speaker desires to claim the particular attention of the hearer apart from the logical nature of his communication; as, *Der Mann' ist nicht alt*, *The man (not the woman) is not old*, *Der Mann ist nicht alt* and *der Mann ist nicht' alt*, *is' and is not' old*, (for instance in contradicting,) *Der Mann ist nicht alt' not old*, (*rather young*).

## SECTION IV.

## PREFIXES.

For farther details see Sections XX & XXXI, the facts given here having reference mainly to accentuation and orthography.

**LEADING REMARKS.** 1. Prefixes are properly component parts of the word and are therefore always distinctly syllabled by themselves, as *be-enden to end*, *be-fallen to befall*, *ent-arten to degenerate*, *ab-brechen to break off*, *auf-atmen to exhale*, *bei-legen to lay by*, *zu-legen to lay to*, *vor-rennen to run before*.

2. Prefixes are either accented or not accented (See below 4).

3. Prefixes occur in nouns, adjectives and other parts of speech; but they are of most importance in verbs.

4. In verbs, three classes of prefixes must be distinguished.

*a.* The inseparable prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, which are never accented, and *hinter* and *wider*, not accented in verbs farther *ant*, *miß*, *un* and *ur*, which are generally accented.

*b.* separable prefixes (See below B). These are always accented.

*c.* The words *durch*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll*, *wieder*, which sometimes assume the character of inseparable and unaccented and sometimes that of separable and accented prefixes, may be called doubtful. (See C below).

(The lists given under *a* and *c* above must be committed to memory immediately after the first lesson on pronunciation, because they are indispensable both for correct accentuation and for the formation of verbs. All prefixes not given above are always accented, because separable.)

**A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES** are those which, like the English *be* in *befall* never occur otherwise than joined to the word. Of these the following seven have no accent: *be* (Engl. *be*), *emp* or *ent* (*e*, *ex*), *er* (*forth, thoroughly*), *ge*\* (is affirmative and in nouns collective like *com*), *ver* (*far, farther, too far*), *zer* (expressing *dissolution & destruction*). (*Ver* sounds almost like *fr*, *zer* like *tsr*.) Examples: *bedecken* to deck, to cover, *entdecken* to discover, *empfangen* to receive, to obtain out of, *entspringen* to escape, *erblühen* to bloom forth, *erfrieren* to freeze to death, *gelingen* to succeed with, *gewinnen* to win, *verbannen* to banish, *vermehrten* to increase, *verleiten* to mislead, *zerstreuen* to disperse, *zerstören* to crush, *zerschlagen* to smash.

The words *hinter* *behind* and *wider* *against, contrary*, when prefixed to verbs, as well as all prefixes of foreign origin are inseparable and unaccented, as *hinterlassen* to bequeath, *widerstehen* to resist, *addiren* to add, *Concert'* *concert*, *Protestant'* *protestant*.

Of the following four inseparable prefixes *ant* occurs only in *Antlitz* *countenance* and *antworten* to answer and its derivatives, and is accented; *miß* (Engl. *mis* or *dis*) is accented except in *mißfal'len* to displease, *mißglä'den* and *mißra'then* to fail, *mißgö'n'nen* to grudge; *un* (short, Engl. *e*, *un*, *in*) mostly accented (see below); *ur* (long, Engl. *prime, elementary*) always accented except in *urplötz'lich* all on a sudden and *ursprüng'lich* originally.

\* The use of *ge* as a prefix is explained Sect. V. A. 8.

**Note.** The prefix *un*, sometimes accented and sometimes not offers a real difficulty. What Becker and his repeaters have said about it is unsatisfactory. The author can only offer the following results of his investigation, as approaching the point as nearly as possible.

**Un** has the accent. 1. When followed by a simple noun, as *Un'dant* *ingratitude*, *Un'glück* *misfortune*, *Un'mensch* *brutal man*; only daß *Unges'fahr'* the hap or chance has the accent on the stem.

2. In all adjectives derived from the above compounds, as *un'dantbar* *ungrateful*, *un'glücklich* *unfortunate*, *un'menschlich* *inhuman*. The adverb *unmensch'lich* *vastly* has the accent on the stem.

3. *un* is accented in all compounds with **simple adjectives**, as *un* edel *ignoble*, *un*'frei *unfree*, *un*'weise *unwise*.

4. In all adjectives in *ig*, as *un*'gläubig *infidel*, *un*'richtig *incorrect*, **except** in *unablä*'ssig *unremitting*, *un*'stret'ig *indisputable*, *un*'tadelig *unblameable*, and *un*zäh'lig *innumerable*.

5. In all adjectives in *isch*, as *un*'biblisch *unscriptural*, *un*'grammatisch *ungrammatical*.

6. In all adjectives in *sam*, as *un*'duldsam *intolerant*, *un*'wegsam *pathless*, **except** *unaufhalt*'sam *irrestrainable*.

7. In all adjectives formed with the **present** or **past participles** of a verb. When in the latter the *un* is **followed by another prefix** it is accented only when a **contrary** is asserted, as *un*bedeckt' *not covered*, *un*'bedeckt *not covered*.

*Un* is generally **not** accented in the adjectives in *bar* and *lich* (unless they are derived from nouns), as *un*sehl'bar *unsailing*, *un*sterb'lich *immortal*. When in these the *un* is followed by another prefix, the stem has the accent, as *un*besieg'bar *invincible*, *un*verwund'bar *invulnerable*, *un*ausprech'lich *unspeakable*, *un*widersteh'lich *irresistible*, *un*wiederbring'lich *irretrievable*. In adjectives with *unge* ending in *lich*, *un* has the accent, as *un*'gebräuchlich, *un*'gewöhnlich *unusual*.

**B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.** All prefixes not included in the above lists are called **separable**, because they **may or may not** be joined to the verb of which they form a component, somewhat like or in the English *onset* and *set on* and *out set* and *set out*. Many **adverbs** and **prepositions** are used as separable prefixes; the latter are marked in the lists Section VI by asterisks, as to the former Section XX, Note 1. may be referred to. Separable prefixes are detached, from **verbs** only when these are **not at the end** of the grammatical clause and then the prefixes invariably stand at the end themselves. Wherever the separable prefix stands it has the **principal accent** not only in the word but even in the whole clause; as, Das Schiff ist *ab*'gesegelt. *The ship has sailed.* Wann segelt das Schiff *ab*? *When does the ship sail?* Ich kann es nicht *aus*'sprechen. *I cannot pronounce it.* Sprich es laut *aus*'. *Pronounce it loudly.* Die Saat war *ein*'gepflügt. *The seed was ploughed in.* Die Männer pflügen die Saat *ein*'. *The men are ploughing seed in the.* (The prefix *ein* stands for the prepositions *in, into*.)

**Obs.** Knowing the inseparable and the doubtful prefixes by heart the pupil can easily infer what prefixes are separable and need not commit them to memory.

Of two separable prefixes forming a compound, only the second is accented; as, *hervor'gesendet sent forth*, *vorher'gesendet sent before*, *premised*, *voraus'gesetzt presumed*, *auseinander'gestreut strewn asunder*, *scattered*.

C. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES, Are the following: *durch through*, *über over*, *across*, *um around*, *over again*, *down*, *unter under*, *down*, *voll full* and *wieder again*, *back*. These are separable and accented when their force in the compound is quite literal, as *durch'bringen to get through*, *Der Regen drang durch' The rain got through*; but they are inseparable and unaccented when the compound word has an abstract meaning, as *durchdrin'gen to permeate*, *to pervade*. *Das Gift durchdringt' den Organismus. The poison pervades the organism*. When followed by the sign of the past participle *ge*, or by the sign of the infinitive *zu*, these prefixes are always separable and accented, as *der Regen war durch'gedrungen*, — *begann durch'zubringen. The rain had got through*, — *began to get through*. Thus the verb *setzen to set* with the separable prefix *über over* means *to put across*, *to cross a river*. Hence: *Die Franzosen setzten in Masse ü'ber*, — *wurden in Böten ü'bergesetzt*, — *begannen ü'berzusetzen; The French crossed in masses*, — *were crossed in boats*, — *began to cross*. On the other hand the inseparable compound *überset'zen* means *to translate (words etc.)*; as, *Die Franzosen überset'zen manches Buch*, — *haben überset'zt*, — *wissen zu überset'zen. The French translate many a book*, — *have translated*, — *know how to translate*.

Not all compounds formed with these words have a double meaning. However either the meaning, or the position of the prefix according to the above rule will assist the pupil in finding the proper accent. Thus *um'werfen to knock over*, because literal, *umge'ben*

(p. part.) *surrounded*, *um'gegeben handed round, helped on (a cloak)*, *voll'stopfen, voll'zstopfen to stuff full, voll'gestopft* (p. part.) *stuffed full, vollbrin'gen to accomplish, vollbracht'* (p. part.) *done, wie'dergeholt* (p. part.) *fetches back, wiederholt'* (p. part.) *repeated, un'ter'schlagen to fold under, unter'schla'gen to embezzle.*

**Obs.** It will be found that neither the above rule respecting the meaning of these compounds nor another suggestion, **originally made by the Author**, viz.: to distinguish them as separable when their English equivalent is of Saxon, and as inseparable, when it is of Classical or French origin (See S. XX, Note 2), would suffice to guide the pupil safely in all cases. The Author has therefore in his *New Conversational Exercises "German Life and Manners"* devoted a special exercise to their interpretation and he farther advises the pupil to pay strict attention to them in reading and to apply patiently to a good dictionary such as Dr. F. Köhler's where the accents are marked.

When prefixed to a simple substantive the above words are always accented, and remain so in the derivatives of such compounds, as *Um'stand circumstance, um'ständlich detailed, Un'terschied difference, un'terschiedlich differently.* (Notice: *Vollzug' execution.*

**Note 1.** The use of *hinter* as a separable prefix, is not to be recommended; expressions like *hin'tergehen to go to a back room, hin'terbringen to swallow* being inelegant.

**2.** *Vor* is unaccented only in *vorhan'den at hand, vortreff'lich excellent, vorzüg'lich pre-eminent.*

*Zu* is separable and accented in **VERBS**, as *zu'sehen to look on; ich sah zu' I looked on.* It is also accented in all other words except in the adjective *zufrie'den contented*, and as the first component of prepositions and adverbs.

*Zu* (to) used as the sign of the infinitive, must be distinguished from the separable prefix *zu*, and is never accented, as *zu'zu'sehen.*



## SECTION V.

DERIVATION A. CHANGE AND MODIFICATION OF  
THE VOWEL. B. SUFFIXES.

**Obs.** The main points of this section must be quite briefly noticed at the outset so as to give the pupil a general notion of the formation of the words with which he has to deal and thus to make his work more intelligent and interesting. With a view to this, the facts have been treated in the closest connection with the English. They will be easily understood, and as they besides greatly facilitate accentuation, conjugation, comparison etc.; the progressing pupil will find it advantageous to refer frequently to this section, without, however, trying to form derivatives or compounds by himself.

1. The foundation of a language is its **Roots**.

In all the so called Indo-European languages *i. e.* languages akin to the Sanskrit, the roots are of **one syllable** only. But even suffixes and terminations are originally roots which to some extent have lost their form.

**2. Real roots** (not derived stems) are in German as in English to be found mainly in those verbs which have erroneously been termed **irregular verbs**, and in which the vowel undergoes a change in the different tenses such as;

<i>sing</i>	<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
fingen	fang	gefangen

and these verbs are therefore called **radical verbs**.

They are of course the **most ancient** and their conjugation is called the "**Strong Conjugation**."

**Obs.** The list of these verbs, given in Section XII. must almost from the outset **be committed to memory**, in moderate portions.

Even many verbs that no longer follow the strong conjugation were originally radical verbs.

**3.** The **first form** of derivation appears in the **Stems** formed simply from the **roots** of verbs and

therefore, like these, monosyllables; as in the English *a break* from *to break*, *a drive* from *to drive*, *a shoot* from *to shoot*.\* Here the stems are formed from the present.

It is more in their nature however to spring from imperfects and past participles, showing their changed vowels; like, *a drove*, *a shot*, *a drift*. Often they show a vowel not now appearing in the conjugated verb; like *a breach*, *a song*.

**Obs.** In English this form of derivatives and regular derivation on the whole is **limited** since, owing to the introduction of the Norman French, words of *classical* origin have been extensively substituted for the Saxon derivatives; as *broken*, *fractus*; hence *fracture*, *fraction*, (Ger. Bruch from brechen); *driven*, *pulsus*, hence *impulse*, (Ger.trieb from treiben *to drive*.)

Such simple stem forms are of importance to the pupil, as the German nouns above formed as almost invariably modify the vowel in the plural: as *Fall a fall*, *a case* (from *fallen to fall*) plural *Fälle falls*, *cases*, *Trant a potion* and *Trunt a drink* from *trinfen*, *trant*, *getrunken to drink* pl. *Tränke*, *Fluß a river* (from *fließen to flow*), *Schuß a shot* (from *schießen to shoot*) pl. *Flüsse*, *Schüsse*.

4. Also many adjectives are simple stem forms; as *wach awake* (from *wachen to wake*) *brach fallow* (land) (from *brechen to break*), *glatt smooth* (from *to glide*), *fröh glad* from *freuen to rejoice*.

5. Another form of primary derivatives are those verbs formed from radical verbs, often by a change of the vowel. These are of the **weak conjugation** and have a transative or causative meaning;

as, *legen to lay*, *legte laid*, *gelegt laid*; *to make lie* (from *liegen to lie*, *lag lay*, *gelegen lain*).

\* We give here the out lines of derivation in the ordinary acceptation of the word, as sufficient for grammatical ends; without entering on the more philological aspect of the subject. It may however be noticed that primitive roots are now recognised no longer exclusively in verbs, but also in pronouns, substantives and other words.

*setzen to set, setzte set, gesetzt set; to make sit from sitzen to sit, saß sat, gesessen sat.*)

Often the vowel of the radical form is modified: as *tränken to make drink, to saturate*, from *trinken impf. trant to drink, flößen to make flow, to set a floating*, from *fließen impf. floß to flow, führen to conduct* from *fahren impf. fuhr etc.* On the other hand verbs derived from derivatives as *flüchten to put into safety* from *Flucht flight* (from *fliehen to flee*), *frösteln to shiver*, from *Frost frost* (from *frieren to freeze*) are secondary derivatives and like all derivatives of the weak form.

6. Some Grammarians also consider as **primary derivatives** such nouns and adjectives as add to the stem with the altered vowel one of the endings *el*, *en*, *er* when these have no obvious significance; as, *Büdel a hump*, *Bügel hoop*, *Bogen bow*; all from *biegen impf. bog to bend*, *Bissen a morsel*, *bitter bitter*, both from *beißen to bite*; *Fehler a failing* from *fehlen to fail*; *waschen generously active*, from *wachen to wake*.

7. Farther to the same class of *primary derivatives* belong those nouns formed of the roots of radical verbs mostly by changing the vowel and **adding e**; as *Falle a trap*, *Blase a bubble* from *blasen to blow*, *Fähre a ferry* and *Fuhre a conveyance* from *fahren to move*, *Sprache speech* from *sprechen (impf. sprach) to speak etc.*, or adding *b*; as *Jagd the chase* from *jagen to chase*, or *be*; as *Kunde knowledge* from *kennen to know*, *Bürde a burden* from old—Ger. *baren to bear*. (Compare: *gebären.*), or *st* as *Brunst ardour* from *brennen to burn*, *Kunst art, skill*; from *können to be able*, or *t*; as in *Saat seed* from *säen to sow*, *Naht seam* from *nähen to sew*, *Jahrt a journey* from *fahren*, *Zucht rearing* from *ziehen to rear*; or *te* as *Fährte a track* from *fahren*, *Blütze a blossom* from *blühen to bloom*.

The pupil may notice that the derivatives thus formed with *e*, *b*, *be*, *st*, *t* and *te*; are generally like most abstracts of a **feminine** gender and that the ending *t* sharpens the preceeding *b* or *g* into *f* and *ch*; as in *schreiben to write*, *Schrift scripture*, *biegen to bend*, *Bucht a bend, or creek (bight).*

8. The Prefix *ge*. In the English versions of Becker's Grammar the words formed with the prefix *ge* are introduced as derivatives, *ge* being treated as a mere sound and according to Becker called the "Augment."

Subsequent inquiries however have completely borne out J. Grimm's views according to which

*ge* is a real prefix and, like all other inseparable prefixes, originally a preposition. (J. Grimm's *Deutsche Grammatik* Bd. II, p. 434. As to the force of *ge* see Sect. XX. Details 6.

Its use with past part. is explained Sect. XX. A. c.

## B. SUFFIXES.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. Besides the above primary derivatives, there are **secondary derivatives** formed by the addition of one or more **suffixes** to the stem.

2. The force of the Suffixes appears sufficiently from the examples attached to the following lists, and it is only farther to be observed that the more **primitive** the meaning of a simple word the more certainly its **vowel is modified** in the secondary derivative.

On the other hand, the addition of another suffix to a secondary derivative never affects its vowel.

3. Except in the one or two cases stated, the native **suffixes are not accented** but the suffixes of foreign origin are **strongly accented** unless marked to the contrary.

4. In pronouncing and syllabing, **the suffix is separated** from the word, only when beginning with a consonant; as, *kind-liċ childlike*, *blāu-liċ bluish*. If the suffix commences with a vowel it receives the last consonant of the preceding syllable, as *fin-diċ childish*, *ſan-diċ sandy*, *la-den to load*, *gũ-tiċ kind* (from *gut good*): but again it is separated when the preceding syllable ends in a vowel; as, *Brau-er brewer*, *thau-ig dewy*.

5. The pupil should make himself familiar with the suffixes, but only those given under *d.* 2, 3, need be committed to memory; and full attention should be given to *e.* **Infinitive Suffixes.**

*a.* **ADJECTIVE-SUFFIXES**, as in the following examples: **bar** (*accented only in offenbar manifest*); **danfbar** thankful **denfbar** (thinkable) imaginable, **trinfbar** drinkable;

— **e** (*euphonic*) in böse wicked, base, müde tired, weary, weise wise etc.; — **en** and **n** in golden of gold, golden, silbern of silver, silvery, wollen woollen; — **er** in bitter bitter, sicher secure, berliner of Berlin, londoner of London; — **ern** in eisern made of iron, steinern made of stone; — **haft** in schamhaft modest, lebhaft lively, meisterhaft masterly; — **icht** in regnicht rainy, neblicht (nebulous) foggy; — **ig** in artig mannered, flüssig fluent, liquid, sandig sandy, windig windy; — **isch** in biblisch biblical, kindisch childish, närrisch foolish; — **lich** in ältlich (old-like) elderly, kindlich childlike, mütterlich motherly, väterlich fatherly; — **licht** in gelblicht, slightly yellowish, grünlicht slightly greenish; — **sam** in folgsam tractable, furchtsam timid, wonnesam blissful. **Participles**: bil'dend cultivating, fashioning, le'bend living, wär'mend warming; — gebun'den bound, verbun'den obliged, erschla'gen slain, gebil'det educated, belebt enlivened.

**Foreign**: (all accented) abel, al, ant, är or air, ar, el, ell, it, il, iv, ös &c.

**Note.** German suffixes are often added to words of foreign origin; the accent then rests on the syllable preceding the German suffix; as, preservir'bar preservable, theatra'lisch theatrical, manier'lich mannerly.

**b. ADVERBIAL SUFFIXES**: ends in eilends speedily, nirgends nowhere, (irgend any) vollends wholly; — lich in folglich consequently, kürzlich a short time ago, wahrlich verily; — lings in hauptlings head foremost; rittlings a-straddle, seitlings from the side; — malß in einstmals once, ehemals, vormals formerly; — warts in rückwärts backwards, seitwärts sideways, vorwärts forwards.

**c. NUMERAL-SUFFIXES** (partly with adjective force): ens, erlei, fach, fältig, mal; as, erstens firstly, drittens thirdly, einerlei of one kind, dreierlei of three kinds, einfach simply, vierfältig fourfold, einmal once, dreimal thrice.

**d. SUBSTANTIVE SUFFIXES.** Of these, the following indicate gender.

1. THE MASCULINE: **em**, **ig**, **ing**, **ling**, **rich**, **sam**; foreign: **ain**, **ant**, **ent**, **eur**, or (which is not accented in the singular), plur. **-o'ren**; as, **Doc'tor**, **Docto'ren** doctors) etc. Examples: **em** only in **Athem** and **Odem** breath; — **ig** in **König** king, **Rettig** radish; — **ing** in **Schilling** shilling, **Hering** herring; — **ling** in **Jüngling** (from **jung** young) youth, **Höfling** (from **Hof** court) courtier, **Schwächling** (from **schwach** weak) weakling; — **rich** in **Gänserich** (from **Gans** goose) gander, **Wütherich** (from **Wuth** rage) tyrant; — **sam** only in **Balsam** balm, **Gehorsam** obedience, **Gewahrsam** custody.

2. THE FEMININE: **ei** (accented), **heit**, **in** or **ium**, **keit**, **schaft**, **ung**; foreign: **an**, **en**, **ie**, **if** (sometimes unaccented; masculine in **Katholik** Roman Catholic), **ion**, **ive**, **ur** etc. Examples: — **ei** (**-y**) in **Brauerei** brewery, **Fischerei** fishing, fishery, **Reiterei** cavalry; — **heit** (**-hood**) in **Kindheit** childhood, **Christenheit** christendom, **Freiheit** freedom, **Mehrheit** majority, **Menschheit** mankind, **Wahrheit** truth; — **in** pl. **innen** female positions **Königin** queen, **Herrin** mistress, **Gräfin** countess, **Löwin** lioness; — **keit** (**-city**) **Wahrhaftigkeit** veracity, **Neuigkeit** novelty, **Herrlichkeit** lordliness, splendour, **Freundlichkeit** kindness; — **schaft** (**-ship**) **Freundschaft** friendship, **Brüderschaft** brotherhood, **Mannschaft** crew, **Herrschaft** dominion; — **ung** (**-ing**) **Rechnung** reckoning, **Warnung** warning, **Festung** fastness, fortress, **Erfältung** cold, **Genesung** recovery, **Wirkung** effect.

**Note.** It will be seen that the English suffixes do not always meet the corresponding forms in German, and therefore the pupil must not conjecture too freely, and should altogether abstain from forming derivatives. Comp. **Christen-heit** *christendom*, with **Christenthum** *Christianity*, **Gleich-heit** *equality* with **Wahrscheinlich-heit** *likelihood* etc.

3. THE NEUTER is indicated by **chen** (**elchen**) and **lein**, which with the modification of the root vowel form the **diminutives**, generally employed as terms of endearment. Foreign: **ment**, **iv**, **ium** pl. **ien** (the last leaves the accent on the preceding syllable; as, **Stu'dium** study, **Stu'dien** studies). Examples: **Mann** man,

Männchen manikin, Vater father, Väterchen darling father, Mutter mother, Mütterchen dearest mamma, Hand hand, Händchen little hand, Haus house, Häuschen and Häuslein little house, Dorf village, Dörfchen pretty little village, Magd, Maid maiden, Mädchen girl.

**Note 1.** Before both suffixes the terminations *e* and *en* are omitted; as, Blume flower, Blümchen and Blümlein floweret, Faden thread, Fädchen and Fädlein little thread, Garten garden, Gärtchen and Gärtlein little garden, Rose rose, Röschen and Röslein sweet little rose. If the root ends in a guttural; as, Buch book, Wagen carriage, either *lein* is used; as, Büchlein little book, Wägelin little carriage, or both suffixes are combined in *elchen*; as, Büchelchen, Wägelchen. Vogel bird forms, Vögelin or Vögelchen little bird.

**Note 2.** The suffix *lein* is rather quaint and less usually employed than *chen*, as it occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible in a manner similar to the Engl. *hath, speaketh*; for instance, „Lasset die Kindlein zu mir kommen.“ *'Suffer little children to come unto me.'* „Ja, Herr, aber doch essen die Hündlein von den Brotsamlein, die von ihrer Herrn Tische fallen.“ *'Truth, Lord: yet the dogs eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters table.'* (Comp. the Greek text.)

4. The following substantive suffixes occur with the different genders: *de, en, end, el, er, icht, niß, sal, sel, thum* and numerous foreign suffixes. Examples: — *de* in Behörde (f.) authorities, Gebäude (n.) building; — *en* in primary derivatives; as, Wagen (m.) waggon, Regen (m.) rain, Eisen (n.) iron; — *end* in Abend (m.) evening, Tugend (f.) virtue, Duzend (n.) dozen; — *el* (frequent in primary derivatives) Hagel (m.) hail, Mangel (f.) mangle, Segel (n.) sail; — *er* in Bäcker (m.) baker, Reiter (m.) rider, Dauer (f.) duration, Feuer (n.) fire; — *icht* in Habicht (m.) hawk, Kehricht (n.) sweepings; — *niß* in Wüßniß (f.) wilderness, Bildniß (n.) likeness; — *sal* in Trübsal (f. and n.) trouble, distress, Drangsal (n. from Drang throng) oppression; — *sel* in Deichsel (f.) pole, Gewinsel (n.) whining; — *thum* in Irrthum (m.) error, Wachsthum (n.) growth.

e. SUFFIXES OF INFINITIVES. All verbs of German origin have *en* in the infinitive; as *laden to load, bohren to bore, fühlen to cool, rauschen to rush* etc. A diminutive form occurs in *eln*; as, *lächeln to smile* from *la-*

*then to laugh*; and a frequentative in *ern*; as, *wimmern to whimper*, *zittern to tremble*. Verbs derived from nouns in *l* or *r* form the infinitive by adding a simple *n*; as, *nageln to nail* from *Nagel nail*, *feuern to fire* from *Feuer fire*.

Verbs of foreign origin take the suffix *iren*, which is accented in all its inflectional forms; as, *demonstri'ren (demonstrare) to demonstrate*, *doc'i'ren (docere) to lecture*, *agi'ren (agere) to act*, *poli'ren (polire) to polish*; *symbolis'i'ren to symbolize*, *amüsi'ren to amuse*, *charm'i'ren to charm*, *frant'i'ren to pre-pay*. In *regier'en (regere) to govern*, and *spazier'en (spatiari) to walk about*, *i* has been germanized into *ie*. In *grundir'en to ground*, *to size*, *halbir'en to halve*, *hantir'en to handle*, *haufir'en to hawk about*, *schattir'en to shade* etc., the root is German.

## SECTION VI.

## THE PREPOSITIONS

are introduced here, because a certain number of them are frequently used as separable prefixes, and because an early familiarity with them is also otherwise of the utmost advantage to the student. In committing them to memory, begin with list 3; then learn list 2; then list 4. For the prepositions governing the genitive, the writing of the exercise suffices.

LEADING REMARKS. 1. The prepositions precede their objects; as, *in das Haus, into the house*; *zu meinem Freunde, to my friend*; except in a few cases stated in the lists, when they immediately follow the object; as, *meinem Wunsche nach, according to my wish*; *Ihrem Willen entgegen, contrary to your will*. They can, therefore, never be separated from their object, as in the English, *the matter that you speak of*.

2. When thus used as real prepositions, they are invariably the least accented words in the sentence; except when they are particularly emphasized; as, *Er stand vor und nicht hinter mir. He stood before and not behind me.*



3. But if employed as **separable prefixes** (see Section IV, B) which is easily seen from their being either joined to the verb, or placed separately at the end of grammatical clause, they have generally the **strongest** accent in the sentence; as, *Ich will **aus**'gehen, I wish to go out. Wir gingen diesen Morgen **aus**'.* *We went out this morning.*

The prepositions which can be used as separable prefixes, are marked by asterisks. The sense of the compounds which they form cannot be conjectured, but must be carefully ascertained from the dictionary.

4. Sometimes one preposition, placed before the object, and a second placed immediately after the object, form a **combination** with a force essentially different from that of either of them taken separately; as, *nach dem Strande to the shore; but nach dem Strande zu, towards the shore.* (See C. Combinations of prepositions). Sometimes a demonstrative adverb occurs in place of the second preposition; as, *nach der See hin, towards the sea.*

5. Prepositions often form adverbial compounds being appended to demonstrative or interrogative roots; as, *damit therewith, womit wherewith.* See Sect. VIII. 1, 2; XI. A. c. and D. 4.

#### A. GOVERNMENT OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

##### 1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

Notice the accents in this List and see p. 25, 4 & 5.

*anstatt* or *statt* instead of.

*dies'seit*—on this side of.

*jen'seit*—on the other side of.

*halben* or *halber*, (following its case)—for the sake of,  
on account of.

*auß'erhalb*—outside of.

*in'nerhalb*—within, inside of.

*ob'erhalb*—above  
*un'terhalb*—below } (a point on a given line.)

fraß — in virtue of.

längst along (also with the dative).

laut — according to the tenor of.

mittelt or vermittelt — by means of.

troß in spite of (also with dative).

um . . . willen; as, um Gottes willen — for God's sake;  
for the sake of.

ungeachtet — notwithstanding.

unweit, unfern — not far from.

vermöge — in virtue of, by dint of.

während — during.

wegen (ob, obsolete) — on account of, because of.

zufolge — in consequence of, according to, (governing the genitive when preceding its object).

unbeschadet — *without prejudice to*, may be introduced here on the same grounds as ungeachtet. These, as well as wegen, occur both before and after their objects.

Halben, willen, and sometimes wegen, if used after personal pronouns, form compounds with the genitive of the latter. The final *r* of the genitive is then changed into *t* for the sake of euphony; as, mein'et-halben, for my sake; ihr'et-halben, for her sake, or for their sake; Ihr'et-halben, for your sake; dein'etwillen, for your (thy) sake; un'ertwillen, for our sake; Eur'etwegen, for your sake; (weshalb', deß'wegen).

Meinethalb'en and meinethweg'en are used adverbially to express indifferent assent.

### EXERCISE XV,

according to DIRECTIONS subjoined to Table of Contents.

On the S-DECLENSION in connection with the above according to Sect. XVI. B. SPECIMENS Regel, Pfahl.

Alte und Neue Heimat. The Old and New Home.

Meine Heimat (native district) ist Alt-Preußen (Prussia Regal). Man erreicht (to reach) sie von Berlin mittelt

der Eisenbahn (railway) in einem Tage (in one day). Die Provinz (province) stand (to stand) laut der alten (old, ancient) Akte (Act) **außerhalb** des deutschen Bundes (m. confederation); aber kraft des neuen Vertrages (treaty) gehört (belongs) sie zu Norddeutschland (North Germany). Mein Geburtsort ist eine alte (ancient) Hansestadt (Hanse town). Sie hat Schifffahrt (shipping) **mittels** eines kleinen Flusses (m. river), dessen Brücken (the bridges of which) **innerhalb** der Stadt liegen, **diesseits** des Flusses sind reiche Ebenen, (f. plains) **jenseits** des Stromes (m. stream, river) waldige (wooded) Hügel (m. hill), **oberhalb** des Ortes liegt ein großer See (m. lake) **unterhalb** des Hafens (m. harbour) das „frische Haff“ (frith), das in die See (sea, ocean) führt (leads). Beide Gewässer (n. waters) werden (are, pas. v.) des Fischfangs (m. fishing) **halber** und der Entenjagd (duck shooting) **wegen** viel besucht (frequented). **Vermittels** vieler Canäle (m. canal) hat die Stadt Verkehr (m. traffic) mit vielen Orten (m. place, like Thal) welcher im Winter (m. winter) **wegen** des starken (strong) Eises (n. ice) **anstatt** auf Bötten (n. boat) auf Schlitten (m. sledge) stattfindet (to take place). Die Umgegend (country around) ist sehr schön und um meiner Freunde und manchen lieben (dear) Andenkens (n. remembrance) **willen** habe ich sie **trotz** der Entfernung (distance) oft (often) besucht (to visit). **Meinethalben** würde (would) ich gerne (gladly) dort leben, aber ich habe hier Pflichten (f. duty) und Freunde; **ihrenwegen** bleibe ich in dieser großen Stadt (city) **wohin** (whither) ich **während** des politischen (political) Kampfes (m. struggle) auf den Wunsch (wish) meines Bruders kam, der **meinetwegen** besorgt (anxious) war. **Zufolge** aller Berichte (m. account) ist sie nicht nur die prächtigste (magnificent) Stadt des Nordens sondern auch (but also) ein Sitz (m. seat) der Gelehrsamkeit (learning). **Trotz** des veränderlichen (changeable) Klimas (climate) bin ich gesund (in good health) und **ungeachtet** manchen Wunsches glücklich (happy) weil ich unbeschadet meines Gefühls (n. feeling) für das Vaterland (fatherland) vieler Vorrechte (n. privileges) genieße (to enjoy, with the Gen. vieler many.)

## 2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

\***aus**—out of, from, of (consisting of).

**außer**—without, (out of), except, besides.

\***bei**—at, at the house of, by, near, with, on.

**binnen**—within.

\***entgegen**—(following its object) towards, against, opposed to.

\***gegenüber**—*over against, opposite to* (often following its object, especially with persons and always with personal pronouns and pronouns used substantively (Goethe has "**gegen dem Altare über**" opposite the Altar).

**gemäß**—(following its object) in conformity with.

\***mit**—with, along with (by).

\***nach**—after, to (with the place), according to (in the latter sense often following its objects).

**nächst**—next to.

**nebst**—together with, (Dr. A. **nebst** Frau, Dr. and Mrs. A).

**sammt**, (expressing appertenance) together with, along with.

**seit**—ever since. (See Sect. XXV. A. 1, b.)

**von**—of, from, by (caused by, made by). In compounds, the separable prefix **ab** *off*, is substituted for **von**.

**Note.** **Von** *of*, expresses the genitive of words, where of a genitive proper cannot conveniently be formed; as, **das Volk von Paris**, *the people of Paris*; **die Hälfte von sieben**, *the half of seven*.

\***zu**—*at, by, on, to, for* (after materials out of which the object is to be made; as, The timber *for* the building, **Das Holz zu dem Gebäude**), *for* (with the design or object).

**zufolge**—according to (following its object).

\***zumider**—(following its object) contrary to.

The prepositions **langſ** (along) and **troß** (*in spite of*) are used with the genitive and dative indiscriminately.

## EXERCISE XIV.

On the above in connection with the declension of the personal pronoun and the noun.

**Anna an Auguste. Anna to Augusta.**

Dresden, den 25ten April 1870.

Liebe Auguste!

Meinem Versprechen (m. promise) gemäß melde (to inform) ich dir, daß Marie mit ihrem Manne **sammt** den Kindern seit dem Montag (m. Monday) hier ist. Ihrem Plane (m. plan. arrangement) **nach**, bleiben (Sect. XXV., A. I. d.) sie eine Woche (week) **bei** uns, werden dann zu Euch kommen und **innen** vierzehn (14) Tagen **nach** ihrem neuen (new) Wohnorte (m. place of residence) **ab**reisen (depart). Seiner Bestallung (commission) **zufolge** hat er **außer** dem guten (good) Gehalte (m. salary) ein freies (free) Haus (house) der Kirche (church) **gegenüber**, **nebst** einem großen Garten (garden) **nächst** dem Flusse (m. river). Meinen Erwartungen (f. expectation) **zuwider** ist Marie mit dem Wechsel (m. change) zufrieden (satisfied). Sie kann freilich (it is true) dem Glücke (n. good fortune) ihrer Kinder nicht **entgegen** sein die ihr **nächst** ihrem Manne das Theuerste (dearest) sein müssen. Uebrigens wirst du vieles Interessante (much of interest) von ihnen hören, wenn sie dir meine herzlichsten Grüße bringen.

Deine treue Schwester Anna B.

## 3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

\*durch—through, by.

für—for (instead of), and *for* (following articles to be consumed by the object; as, The food *for* the cow, Das Futter für die Kuh; The water *for* the engine, Das Wasser für die Maschine).

gegen—towards (both in a friendly and hostile sense),

against, in comparison to, on (with receipts bills etc.).

(gen [scriptural for gegen]—towards, to).

ohne—without.

(sonder—[obsolete]—without.)

\*um—about, round, for, at (with the time; as, Um fünf Uhr, At five o'clock).

wider—against. (Observe the adverb wieder, again).

Bis till, entlang along, if not in connexion with other prepositions, require the accusative, in which case entlang follows its object.

### EXERCISE XIII.

On the acc. as governed by the above. (The acc. in the S. Declension and in all pls. is like the nom.)

#### Marime. Maxim.

Wider das Unrecht<sup>1</sup> ewig<sup>2</sup> in Waffen<sup>3</sup>,  
Gegen das Leid<sup>4</sup> durch den Glauben<sup>5</sup> gestählt\*<sup>6</sup>,  
Immer bereit<sup>7</sup> für das Ganze<sup>8</sup> zu schaffen<sup>9</sup>,  
Gegen die Schwachen<sup>10</sup> von<sup>11</sup> Milde<sup>12</sup> befeelt\*<sup>13</sup>,  
Ohne Furcht<sup>14</sup> vor dem Haffe<sup>15</sup> der Schlechten<sup>16</sup>,  
Wenig bemüht<sup>17</sup> um den Beifall<sup>18</sup> der Welt<sup>19</sup>,  
Warm<sup>20</sup> für die Pflege<sup>21</sup> des Schönen<sup>22</sup> und Echten<sup>23</sup> —  
Das ist der Mann mir<sup>24</sup>, — so sei<sup>25</sup> der Held<sup>26</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> wrong, <sup>2</sup> ever, (for ever), <sup>3</sup> arms, <sup>4</sup> affliction, <sup>5</sup> faith, <sup>6</sup> steeled, <sup>7</sup> ever ready, <sup>8</sup> the whole (the common weal), <sup>9</sup> work, create; <sup>10</sup> weak, <sup>11</sup> by, <sup>12</sup> clemency, <sup>13</sup> animated, <sup>14</sup> fear, <sup>15</sup> for the hatred, <sup>16</sup> wicked, <sup>17</sup> little anxious, <sup>18</sup> praise, applause, <sup>19</sup> f. world, <sup>20</sup> Zealous, (warm), <sup>21</sup> fostered, <sup>22</sup> beautiful, <sup>23</sup> genuine, <sup>24</sup> the dative mir here signifies to my judgement, <sup>25</sup> such be, <sup>26</sup> hero.

\* In participial clauses take the participle first.

#### 4. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

These prepositions if used with reference to place govern the Dative when 'being in or at a place' is expressed; as, Man tanzt in dem Saale. They are

*dancing in the hall* (being in the hall). They govern the Accusative when 'motion towards the object' is expressed; as, *Ich kam in den Saal. I came into the hall.* But their government is indefinable when they are used without reference to place. They are then, indeed, **generally** construed with the **Accusative**, the Dative being more suggestive of **place**; but a good dictionary should be applied to in each case.

\*an—on, at, beside, up to, of (*denk' an mich*, think of me).

\*auf—upon, on (the top of), at, in.

hinter—behind.

\*in (as prefix *ein*)—in. (With the acc. into),  
neben—at the side of, beside.

\*über—above, beyond, on, over, across, about, at.

\*unter—below, beneath, among, under.

\*vor—in the front of, before (Time is in the Dative after *vor*; as, *vor einem Jahre, a year ago*), with (*bleich vor Schreck, pale with fright*).

zwischen—between, among, betwixt.

## EXERCISE XVI.

State the government of the preposition in each case and the reason for it, also the gender of words where not marked.

The conventional imperative has the form of 3d pers. pl. Pres. Indic.

### Ein kleines Geschäft. A little Task.

Gehen Sie in die andere (other) Stube (f. room) und setzen Sie (to put) das Licht (light) auf den Tisch (table) an dem (am) Ofen (m. stove.) Auf dem Tische steht Feder und Tinte (f. pen and ink) und in dem (im) Kasten (m. box drawer) liegt Papier (paper). Legen (to put) Sie etwas Holz (m. wood) auf das (auf's) Feuer (fire) und setzen Sie sich (to sit down) an den Tisch. Hinter der Thür (door) neben dem Sopha (n.) hängt (to hang) mein Rock (m. coat). In der Tasche (pocket) finden Sie ein Couvert (n. envelope). Auf demselben steht (is written) die Adresse (address) welche Sie

auf den Brief (n. letter) schreiben. Der Brief ist an einen Freund und geht (to go) über das (über's) Meer (sea). Sagen (to tell) Sie ihm ich freue mich (am glad) über sein Glück (good fortune) und werde ihm unter allen Umständen (m. circumstance) selbst (myself) schreiben. Jetzt (just now) bin ich unwohl (unwell) und muß im Bette (n. bed) bleiben. Stellen Sie einen Schirm (screen) vor den Ofen und die Lampe (lamp) hinter den Schirm der vor der Uhr (time piece, clock, watch) steht. Wenn Sie fertig (done) sind legen (to place) Sie das Schreiben (writing) zwischen das Löschblatt (blotting paper) das zwischen den Büchern (n. book) steckt (to stick.) Ueber dem Tische hängt ein Spiegel (m. mirror, looking glass) bringen Sie ihn mir, fallen (to fall) Sie aber nicht über den Hund (dog) der vor der Thür liegt (to lie). Schieben (to push) Sie doch das Tischchen neben mein Bett. Ich will meinen Namen (name) selbst unter den Brief schreiben. Unter den Sachen (f. things) auf dem Schreibtische (desk) finden Sie das Etui (case) mit den Postmarken (f. postage, stamp). Stecken Sie das Couvert wieder (again) in die Tasche des Rockes zurück.

## B. CONTRACTIONS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

occur in the following cases: — am, beim, im, vom, zum, instead of an-, bei-, in-, von-, zu-dem; zur instead of zu der; an's, auß's, durch's, für's, in's, über's, um's, vor's, instead of an-, auß-, durch-, für-, über-, um-, vor-das. Other contractions are less suitable.

**Obs.** The above contractions must not be used where the article has partly preserved its original character as a demonstrative pronoun (S. IX. Lead. Rem.) forming the antecedent of a succeeding relative clause. Accordingly one may indeed say, Er warf das Papier in's Feuer *he threw the paper into the fire* but one must use the preposition and the article separately in sentences like the following, Er warf das Papier in das Feuer, welches auf dem Herde brannte *he threw the paper into the fire (that particular fire) that was burning on the hearth.*



## C. COMBINATIONS OF PREPOSITIONS.

(See Leading Remarks 4.)

Two prepositions occur combined in the following manner:

1. **zu**, in the sense of *towards*; — along with **nach**, **Er schwamm nach dem Strande zu**. He swam *towards* the shore; — with **auf**, if the motion is directed to a more limited point; **Wir steuerten auf das Schiff zu**. We stood for the ship. **Er ging auf das Licht zu**. He went in the direction of the light. **Sie kommt auf mich zu**. She is coming towards me, She is coming up to me.

2. **Auf** and **an**, when employed in connexion with **von**, denote *commencement*; as, **Von Jugend auf** geglaubt, Believed from childhood; **Von Gemeinen auf** gedient, Risen from the ranks. **Von diesem Tage an** kam er täglich. From this day forth he came daily. **Von hier an** wird das Land fruchtbar. From this place the country begins to be fertile.

3. **Ab**, along with **von**, properly denotes *ceasing*; as, **Von Morgen ab** soll kein Schiff mehr passieren. From to-morrow no vessel is to pass.

4. **Aus**, along with **von**, is used with the point or station whence an action is managed or directed; as, **Von diesem Hügel aus** leitete Napoleon die Schlacht. From this hill Napoleon directed the battle. **Von Rom aus** beherrschten die Päpste die Welt. From Rome the Popes ruled the world. **Von meinem Fenster aus** kann man die See sehen. From my window one can see the sea. **Von Grund aus** zerstört, Totally destroyed (of structures); (**Von vorne herein** falsch, Wrong from the very outset; **Von innen heraus**, Developing from within).

5. **Bis**, **an**, **vor**, **auf**, &c., are used along with **bis**, to denote the measure or degree to which an action extends; as, **Bis zu diesem Punkte**, Up to this point; **Bis ans andere Ende**, Down to the other end. **Wir verfolgten**

sie **biß** vor die Thore der Festung. We pursued them to the very gates of the fortress. **Biß** auf diesen Tag, To this very day; **Raß** **biß** auf die Haut, Wet to the skin; **Getreu** **biß** zum Tode, Faithful to death; **Biß** über den Rhein, Even across the Rhine; **Alles** **biß** auf einen Pfennig, All except a penny; to the last farthing.

(In phrases like zur Thür hereinkommen, zum Fenster hinauspringen, the **herein**, **hinaus** &c., are separable prefixes to the verbs kommen, springen, &c.)

6. With prepositions referring to place, the adverbs **hin**, away from the speaker towards another object, and **her**, towards the speaker, both indicating the general direction, are frequently employed; as, Die Schiffe segeln nach Frankreich **hin**. The ships are sailing away towards France. Sie kommen von England **her**. They come from the direction in which England lies. Gegen den Aequator **hin**. Towards or approaching the equator; Sie marschirten auf Belgrad **los**. They marched upon Belgrade, (**los** denoting hostility).

Observe also the phrases von London **her**, von Berlin **her**; as, Ich kenne ihn von Berlin **her**. I know him, having made his acquaintance at Berlin. Von Alters **her**, Of old, From olden times.

## D. PREPOSITIONAL IDIOMS.

(Chiefly as a reference in translating from English into German. Constituting at the same time a most useful phrase book for advanced pupils.)

**Note 1.** The third personal pronoun *it*, pl. *them*, when referring to things, as well as the Indefinite Substantive-Demonstrative *this*, *that*, cannot be construed with prepositions preceding them in German, as in Engl. *with it*, *for them*, *after this*, *against that*, and for these combinations Section VIII, Remarks on the personal pronoun, and Section XI, A. The indef. Demonstr., c. must be referred to.

**Note 2.** The use of present participles, introduced by prepositions; as, *instead of seeking*, *without listening*, *for doing so*, being altogether foreign to the German language, the pupil, in rendering such phrases must consult Section XXV, D, the Participles. (See, however, p. 55, Time *m*.)

A noun or pronoun with a preposition governing it, is called an **adverbial expression**, the relations of **place, time, cause, manner** etc. being expressed by such phrases with adverbial force. Comp.: '*in this place*' with '*here*'; '*at that time*' with '*then*'; '*in this manner*' with '*thus*', etc. Adverbial expressions, however important in a statement, (for instance, a man *with* or *without* faith) are **not essential** for the formation of a sentence. They can afford no light as to its principal idea, but when taken up as they occur, are very apt to increase the difficulty of the translation. The student should, therefore, **avoid** dealing with them, until he has found the **subject**, the **verb** and its **object** or objects which are simple cases, that is, not introduced by prepositions. After having found these essential parts of the sentence, the adverbial expressions will be easily arranged.

As the application of the prepositions is altogether **idiomatical**, it demands the strictest attention and reference to a good dictionary for the adverbial expressions given along with the verbs. For the **position** of the adverbial expressions in sentences, see Section XXX, Rules on the construction of Sentences, C. The following hints are intended to assist the advanced pupil in rendering correctly some adverbial expressions of most common occurrence, for which the meanings given with each preposition in the lists may not be sufficient.

### 1. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE.

a. **Residing** *in* a certain country, city, street, house etc., requires *in*; as, *in Schottland*, in Scotland; *in Edinburgh*, in Edinburgh; *in dem Hotel*, in the Hotel. With small places in the country, *zu* *at* is usual; as, *zu Abbot'sford*, at Abbotsford. **Residing at the house of a person** or being there on a call, requires *bei* (Dat.) as, *Ich wohne bei meinem Onkel*. I live with my uncle; *Er war bei mir*. He was at my ' ' ' ' *er bei dem Notar*. We were at the notary's. *Ich kauft bei dem Händler*. I bought it at the grocer's; *bei einer Kettenweberin*. **Observe:** *zu*

**Haufe**, at home; *Er ist nicht zu Hause*. He is not in. **Coming from or being of** the above requires **von**, except, coming from a country, where **aus**, is more common; as, *Er kam aus England zurück*. He came back from England; *Herr W. von Berlin, Paris, Mr. W. of Berlin, Paris*. Notice: *auf der Welt*, *auf Erden*, in the world, *auf die Welt*, into the world, *aus der Welt*, *von der Erde*, out of the world; *auf dem Lande*, in the country, (not in town); *auf das Land*, to the country; *von dem Lande*, from the country; *in der* or *in die Stadt*, in or into town; *aus der Stadt*, from town; *auf dem Dorfe*, *auf das Dorf*, in or to a village. (village-life.)

**b. Going or repairing to** a certain country, city, street, building or house, simply **to reach it**, requires **nach** (Dat.); as, *nach Deutschland*, to Germany; *nach der Schweiz*, to Switzerland; *nach Berlin*, to Berlin; *nach der Georgenstraße*, to Georgenstrasse; *nach Numero achtzehn*, to number eighteen; *nach der Eisenbahn*, to the railway-station; *nach Hause gehen*, to go home. *Man läuft nach der Kirche*. They are running to the church.

(**Nach** is also required with **going or asking for** persons or things; as, *nach dem Doctor*, for the doctor. *Er schickte nach mir*, He sent for me; *nach einem Buche*, for a book.)

**Going to persons** requires **zu** (Dat.). *Ich gehe zu meinem Bruder*. I am going to my brother; *zum Doctor*, to the physician (for advice) *Ich komme morgen zu Ihnen*. I shall come to your house to-morrow. *Schicken Sie zu mir*. Send to my house. **Coming from** the above, always **von**, except countries, where **aus** may be preferred; as, *aus der Schweiz*, from Switzerland.

**c. Going to (up to) any object**, requires **zu**; *zur Thür*, to the door; *zu dem Baume*, to the tree; *zum Brunnen*, to the well. **Going forward to meet** persons or things both with an amicable and hostile intention, is rendered by the preposition **entgegen**, prefixed to the verb (with the Dat.). *Sie kamen uns entgegen*. They came to meet us. *Gehe deinem Gesichte männlich entgegen*. Go, manfully to meet thy fate. (See above, p. 48 COMBINATIONS, **auf—zu**.)

**d. Merely being in or entering** any building or enclosed place, hall, room etc, **apart from its purpose**, requires **in**, (Dat. and Acc.), and **coming out of it**, **aus**; as, *Sie flüchteten sich in die Börse*. They took refuge in the exchange-building. *Die Truppen waren im Dorfe postirt*. The troops were posted in the village; *im Hause*, in the house; *im Saale*, in the hall; *in der Küche*, in the kitchen; *im Garten*, in the garden. *Er rannte aus dem Hause*. He ran out of the house.

**e. Being in or going to public places**, for the purpose of **being instructed or entertained** there, is expressed by **in** (D. & A.) Such are: *die Kirche*, the church; *die Schule*, the school; *die Versammlung*, the meeting; *die Gesellschaft*, the party, company; *das Concert*, the concert; *das Theater*, the theatre, etc.; as, *Sie sind in der Kirche*, in

der Schule. They are in Church in or at school. Sie gehen in die Kirche, in die Schule. They are going to church, to school. (Nach der Kirche, nach der Schule, in less correct [see above, b]; zur Kirche, zur Schule gehen, properly means, to be a church goer, to attend school). Coming from the same requires aus; as, Sie kommen aus der Kirche, aus der Schule.

f. On the other hand, auf (Dat. & Acc.) with being in or at, or going to a place, and von (D.) with coming from, is used with: die Universität, the university, das Gymnasium, the pro college and other academical institutions, (but Professor, Lehrer an der Universität etc. professor, teacher in the university etc.); and besides with places where people enjoy themselves or transact business, independently of instructors or performers; as, der Ball, the ball, die Promenade, der Spaziergang, the public walk, die Jagd, the hunt; der Markt, the market; die Straße, the street; der Weg, the road; der Pfad, the path; die Börse, the exchange; die Post, the post; das Rathhaus, the town-hall; die Parade, the parade; die Wache, the guard. Similarly, auf der Welt, in the world; auf die Welt, into the world; auf dem Felde, auf das Feld, in or to the field (for work etc.); but im Felde, in's Feld, being in, or taking to the field (in a campaign). Notice: in der or die vornehme, gelehrte u. Welt, in or into the fashionable, learned etc. world.

g. Topographical Vicinity is expressed by bei, near, or in der Nähe von, in the neighbourhood, of; as, Sorrento bei Neapel, Sorrento near Naples; der Arthur's Sitz in der Nähe von Edinburgh, Arthur's Seat near Edinburgh; or by unweit (Gen.) not far from; unweit der Mündung des Stromes, not far from the mouth of the river. Travelling to one place by another, is expressed by über (Acc.); Wir gingen über Dresden und München nach dem Rhein. We went to the Rhine by Dresden and Munich.

h. On, on the top of, is rendered by auf; as, auf dem Berge, on the hill; auf den Berg, to the top of the hill; auf der See, on the sea (in See, at sea). Das Schiff lief auf den Strand. The vessel ran ashore; auf den Grund, took the ground — On, beside, touching at, an; as, Frankfurt am Main, Frankfurt on the Main; am linken Ufer, on the left bank; am Rande, on the brink of; am Lande, on or near the land, shore. An (Dat. & Acc.) is on the whole used to express proximity of objects of different character; as, Er steht an der Ecke. He stands at the corner. Ich trat an's Fenster. I stepped to the window. Stelle dich an die Thür. Go and stand at the door. Wir saßen am Tische. We sat at the table; (but bei Tische, at dinner, supper.) Similarly leaning etc. against: an der Wand lehrend oder befestigt, leaning or fastened against the wall. Neben beside, on the other hand, is used with things similar in their nature; as, Sie saß neben ihrer Schwester. She sat beside her sister. Neben der Eiche steht eine Buche. Beside the oak stands a beech-tree.

i. Distance and extent of movement are expressed by bis to, as far as, which requires no other preposition before the names of

places and before adverbs; as, *Wie weit ist es bis N?* How far is it to N? Napoleon kam bis Moskau. Napoleon came as far as Moscow; bis hieher und nicht weiter, unto this place and not farther. Otherwise it is construed as follows, **Bis an to, touching any line, boundary or point**; bis an den Rand, to the very edge; bis an die Elbe, as far as the Elbe; bis an die Ohren, up to ears. — **Bis auf, to some territory**; bis auf deutsches Gebiet, to German territory; *to the top of*; bis auf den Gipfel des Berges, to the top of the hill; also *through—to*; naß bis auf die Haut, wet to the very skin; bis auf den Knochen, to the very bone. Es reichte bis auf den Grund. It reached to the very bottom. Bis auf den letzten Pfennig, to the last farthing. — **Bis zu, up to some object**; bis zum Hause, as far as the house; bis zur Brücke, as far as the bridge; bis zur Thür, as far as the door. — **Bis in, penetrating into**; bis in die Wälder, into the very woods; bis in das Herz, into the very heart; bis in die Stube, even into the room. — **Bis nach, with places**, bis nach Paris, as far as Paris. — **Bis vor, to the outside of**; bis vor die Thore, to the very gates; bis vor die Hausthür, as far as the street. — **Bis über, beyond**; bis über den Rhein, beyond, as far as, across the Rhine; bis über die Eet, even beyond the sea.

**k. Above and below** are rendered by **oberhalb** and **unterhalb** with the Gen. if **on a certain line**, (road, river), a part or place *above or below a certain fixed point*, is mentioned; as, Die Themse ist schon oberhalb London schiffbar. The Thames is navigable even above London. Der Arm war unterhalb des Ellenbogens gebrochen. The arm was broken below the elbow. **Otherwise, above** is rendered by **über**, and **below** by **unter**, both with the Dat. & Acc.

**l. Passing-by** etc. Some compounds of **vor** with other prepositions must be observed. These govern the Dat., and are generally used in connexion with verbs expressing locomotion. Thus **vorbei** and **vorüber** express a *passing-by in the manner indicated by the verb*; as, vorbeifliegen, (an) to fly past; vorübertanzen (an) to dance past; vorüberfahren, (an) to rattle past; Er ging mir or an mir vorbei or vorüber. He passed me or went past me. Er schlich sich an den Wachen vorbei. He stole past the sentinels.

**Voran** and **voraus** express a moving at the head of; as, voranschicken, to march at the head of; voranstürmen, to rush at the head of; **voraus**, before, in advance, and **juvor**, are used in a similar sense with other verbs; as, voraussenden, to send off before; juvorstehen, to outdo, to excel.

For other expressions consult the lists of prepositions, and p. 48 C. COMBINATIONS of prepositions, also Section XVIII, on the use of the cases.

## 2. EXPRESSIONS REFERRING TO TIME.

**a. Chronological expressions of time**, (See also below, *c.*) like the following, may be rendered by the mere **Accusative**, (see p. 56. *s for, auf*); *as, den zweiten October*, the second of October; *Wir sind dieses Jahr glücklicher*. We are more fortunate this year; *künftiges Jahr*, next year; *diesen Monat*, this month; *vorigen Monat*, last month; *kommenden Monat*, next month; *vorige Woche*, last week; *diesen Morgen*, this morning; *diese Nacht*, this night; — (with the verb in the past tense), last night, — (with the verb in the present or future tense), to night; *heute Abend*, to night, this evening; *gestern Abend*, last night, evening. *Das letzte Jahr*, der letzte Monat &c. mean *the last in a series*; — *den andern Tag*, the same as den folgenden Tag, the next or the following day, (the other day is *neulich*); *den ganzen Tag*, all the day.

**b.** In stating simply the **season or part of the day**, during which a state or action usually progresses (see also, below, *d.*), the **mere genitive**, as formerly governed by some preposition, is used (see p. 55 *k. during, während*); *as, des Sommers* (*während des Sommers*), in, during summer; *des Winters*, in winter-time. In spring, in autumn usually, *im Frühjahr* (spring-season), *im Frühling*, (in spring weather), and *im Herbst*, in autumn. *Des Morgens*, in the morning; *des Tages*, in the day-time; *des Abends*, in the evening; *des Nachts*, during the night; also *des Sonntags* or *Sonntags*, on Sundays; *des Montags* etc.; *eines Tages*, one (of one) day; *eines Morgens*, one morning; *eines Abends*, one evening.

**c. The Date of an event**, in English *in* or *on the*, may be expressed likewise, (1), by *in* (*Dat.*); *in dem or im Jahre 1483*, in the year 1483; *im neunzehnten Jahrhundert*, in the nineteenth century; *im Januar, Februar &c.*, any time in January, February etc.; *im Frühjahr, Sommer &c.*, any time or some time in spring, summer. *Ich erwarte ihn in diesem Monate*, I expect him (some day) this month; *in dieser Woche*, this week; *in diesem Augenblicke*, at this moment; *noch in dieser Stunde*, this very hour. (*In der Jugend*, in youth; *im Alter*, in old age; *im Leben und Sterben*, in life and death.) (2) with the **days of the month or week**, *an* (*Dat.*) is used, as well as the mere accusative, (see above. *a*); *as, am zweiten October*, on the second of October; *an einem Dienstage*, on a Tuesday, *am Donnerstag*, den 4. April 1861, on Thursday, the 4<sup>th</sup> of April 1861; *an diesem Morgen*, on that morning.

**d. An** with the force of *in* is used in the expressions *am Morgen*, in the morning; *am Tage*, in the day-time; *am Mittage*, at noontide; *am Nachmittage*, in the afternoon; *am Abende*, in the evening; *am Sonntage*, on Sunday; *am Freitage*, on Friday, etc., etc. *Bei Tage*, by daylight; *bei Nacht*, by night (when it is dark); *in der Dämmerung*, *im Zwielicht*, in the dawn, by twilight.

**e. The hours of the day** are used with *um at*; *um acht Uhr Morgens*, at eight o'clock, A. M.; *um drei Uhr Nachmittags*, at three

o'clock. *p. m.* But zu dieser Stunde, zu derselben Zeit, at the same hour, time; zu gleicher Zeit, simultaneously, in diesem Augenblicke, at that moment. Also with **gegen** *about*; gegen neun Uhr Abends, about nine o'clock in the evening; gegen ein Uhr Nachts, about one o'clock at night; gegen Mittag, about noon; gegen Mitternacht, about midnight, but um Mitternacht, precisely at midnight.

*f.* **Um**, however, has the force of **gegen** *about* before any larger section of time; as, um or gegen die Mitte des Jahrhunderts, about the middle of the century; um or gegen das Jahr 450, about the year 450; um or gegen Ostern, about Easter.

*g.* Time previous to is expressed by **vor** with the Dat.; 1) *before*; vor dieser Periode, previous to this period; vor sechs Uhr, before six o'clock; vor meiner Abreise, Ankunft, before my departure, arrival. 2) *ago*; vor einem Jahre, a twelvemonth ago, vor drei Tagen, three days ago.

*h.* **Commencement** by **in** and **am**; im or am Anfange, in the beginning; anfangs, for some time in the beginning; vom Anfange, from the beginning.

*i.* **Continuance** (1) with the date from which, or less properly, with the period during which, a still continuing state or action has been going on, is expressed by **seit** (Dat.) *ever since*, which preposition then gives the German **present tense the force of the English perfect**; as, Ich bin seit 1850 in Edinburgh. I have been in Edinburgh since (ever since) 1850; Er ist seit mehreren Monaten abwesend. He has been absent for several months. Er spricht seit ein Uhr or seit zwei Stunden. He has been speaking since one o'clock or these two hours.

*k.* **Continuance** (2) of one action, state, etc. *during the whole extent* of another, is expressed by **während** *during*. Während des Protectorats war England gesücht. During the protectorate England was feared. Sie stehen während des Gebets. They stand during prayer. Während, however, occurs also in expressions like the following. Es geschah während meiner Anwesenheit. It happened during my sojourn there. Sie starb während seiner Abwesenheit. She died in his absence. In seiner Anwesenheit etc., When he is present, in his presence etc.

*l.* **Continuance** (3) as expressed by **for** (*for days, for weeks*) is not rendered by a preposition, but by the adverb **lang** suffixed to the term of time; (see, however p. 56 *s Futurity*) as, Sekunden lang, for seconds; Minuten lang, for minutes. Ich saß drei Stunden lang. I sat for three hours. Ich mußte Tagelang warten. I had to wait for days. Er ist wochenlang abwesend. He is absent for weeks. Irrthümer bestehen oft Jahrtausende lang. Errors often continue for thousands of years.

*m.* **Continuance** (4) of a state or action **accompanying** another more or less **accidentally**, is expressed by **bei** (Dat.) *chiefly before infinitives used as nouns and rendered participially in Eng-*



*lich*; as, Er raucht beim Lesen. He smokes whilst reading. Du stehst besser beim Singen. You had better stand when singing. Nimm dich beim Fischen in Acht. Take care of yourself when fishing.

n. *In or during the reign of* (not implying the whole duration) is rendered by *unter* (Dat.); as, unter der Regierung Friedrich des Zweiten, or simply unter Friedrich dem Zweiten, under the reign of Frederic II. Unter den Hohenstaufen blühte die deutsche Dichtkunst German poetry flourished under the Hohenstaufen emperors.

*Unter during* occurs also similarly in the following expressions: Es geschah unter dem Gottesdienste. It happened during divine service. Unter der Tafel war Musik. There was music during dinner (not continually); unter der Arbeit, whilst at work. (Ueber Tische wurde viel geredet. There was much talk at table.)

ö. *On, with the occasion when an event takes place*, is rendered by *bei* (Dat.); bei dieser Gelegenheit, on this occasion; bei meiner Ankunft, Abreise, on my arrival, departure; bei dem Ausbruche des Krieges, on the breaking out of the war; bei seiner Flucht, on his flight; beim Aufbruche, on starting; bei seinem Regierungsantritte, on his accession to the throne; beim Eintreten, on entering; beim Hinausgehen, on leaving (the room etc.); beim Scheiden, at parting.

*Bei* often implies *both time and cause*; as, bei seinem Anblide, at the sight of him; bei diesem Unwetter, in this, and owing to, this terrible weather; bei der Nähe der Gefahr, the danger being so near.

p. *At, with the occasion* is likewise *bei*; bei Tagesanbruch, at day-break; beim Sonnenuntergange, at sunset; bei dieser Zusammenkunft, at this interview; but, in diesem Augenblicke, Momente, at this moment, instant; also im Kriege, in time of war; im Frieden, in peace.

Notice the use of the terms *Frift, Stunde, Zeit*, with *zu, at, in*, in the following expressions: zu dieser Frift, zu dieser Stunde, at this time (at present); zur Stunde, presently; zur guten, bösen Stunde, in a good, an evil hour; zur rechten Stunde, Zeit, very opportunely, providentially; zu gelegener Stunde, Zeit, at a convenient hour, time; zu selber Frift, Zeit, zur selben Stunde, then, at that time; alles zu seiner Zeit, everything in its season; zur Zeit, zur rechten Zeit, at the proper time, in time.

r. *Futurity. (1) Requiring, promising a thing for a term*, is expressed by *zu* (Dat.); as, Ich brauche es zu morgen. I want it for to-morrow. Er versprach es zum Montage. He promised it for Monday. Ich suche einen Diener zum Neujahr. I am seeking a servant for the new year; zum Termin, for the term. In, (D.) in, and binnen, (D.) within, correspond in their use to the English.

s. *Futurity. (2) Making arrangements for, or postponing proceedings for a period or date to come*, is expressed by *auf*

### 3. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE, MOTIVE. 57

(Acc.); *as, Leihen Sie es mir auf 14 Tage.* Lend it to me for a fortnight. *Die Versammlung war auf den Dritten berufen.* The meeting was called for the third; *auf acht Tage vertagt,* adjourned for a week; *auf einige Tage verreist,* from home for a few days. *Das Concert ist auf Donnerstag verschoben.* The concert has been postponed till Thursday; *auf Wiedersehn, au revoir;* pünktlich *auf die Minute,* punctual to the minute.

**Auf** must not be confounded with **bis** (Acc.) *until*, which is used as referring to the **termination** of a period. *Ich bin bis fünf Uhr beschäftigt.* I shall be busy till five o'clock.

*1. To or until with the extent of time is rendered by bis, which requires no other preposition before the hours of the day; as, bis 6 Uhr, till 6 o'clock; — before the days of the week; as, bis Mittwoch, till Wednesday; — before the terms of the year; as, bis Neujahr, till New-year; bis Ostern, Pfingsten, Johannis, Michaelis, Martini, till Easter, Whitsuntide etc.; bis Weihnachten, till Christmas; and before adverbs: as, bis vorgestern, till the day before yesterday; gestern, yesterday; heute to day; morgen, to morrow; übermorgen, the day after to morrow; bis jetzt, until now; bis dann, bis dahin, until then.*

**Bis**, *to, until, requires another preposition in all expressions not stated above; as, bis an, up to (extension); bis an's Ende der Tage, to the very end of time; Er glaubte es bis an seinen Tod.* He believed it till his death; *bis an den Morgen, till morning came.* Similarly, **bis auf** (*continuation*); *bis auf den heutigen Tag, to this very day; bis auf diese Stunde, to this very hour. — Bis in (penetrating into);* *treu bis in den Tod, faithful till death; bis in die Mitte des Jahrhunderts, to the middle of the century; bis in den Sommer, into summer; bis in die Nacht, till late at night. — Bis zu (completion); bis zum Morgen, till it was morning; bis zum Schlusse, bis zum Ende, to the conclusion, to the end; bis zum letzten Augenblicke, to the last moment. — Bis über (extension beyond); bis über das Grab, beyond the grave; bis über den gesetzten Termin, beyond the term fixed. — Bis nach Neujahr, till after the new year.*

### 3. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE, REASON AND MOTIVE.

*a. By, with the passive voice (1) before the originating agent, is von (Dat.); as, von den Eltern geliebt, loved by the parents; von den Römern erbaut, built by the Romans; von den Vandalen zerstört, destroyed by the Vandals; Wallenstein von Schiller, Wallenstein (written) by Schiller; von einer Locomotive gezogen, drawn by a locomotive-engine; von einer Kugel getroffen, hit by a bullet. Gefeßtigt, gemacht von, made by; gemacht aus or von, made of.*

*b. By, through (2) in the sense of by means of, is durch (Acc.); as, durch den Glauben gestärkt, strengthened by faith; durch deine*

Worte getröstet, comforted by thy words; durch einen Schuß getödtet, killed by a shot; durch eine Maschine gehoben, lifted by means of an engine; durch einen Fall beschädigt, hurt by a fall.

(*By dint of, by the power of, vermöge* (Gen.); *by means of* an instrument, *mittelfst* (Gen.) eines Instruments (mit Dat.)

c. *From, of (arising proceeding from)* with the *direct cause* is *von* (Dat.) with the verbs *kommen, herrühren*; as, Das kommt von deinem Ungehorsam her. That arises (results) from your disobedience. Die Begriffe der meisten Menschen rühren von oberflächlichen Eindrücken her. The notions of most men proceed from superficial impressions. *Entspringen* and *erwachsen* require *aus* (Dat.); as, Große Ereignisse entspringen nicht aus kleinen Ursachen. Great events do not arise from small causes. Viel Gutes wird dir daraus nicht erwachsen. Much good will not accrue to you from that.

*Entstehen, werden, to grow into*, require *aus* when cause and result are in substance the same; as, Der Baum entsteht aus dem Reime. The tree springs from the germ. Aus dieser Reizung entstand eine Leidenschaft. From this inclination arose a passion; Aus dem Kinde wird ein Mann. (Of) a child becomes a man. (Werden has also zu (Dat.); as, Der Knabe wurde zum Manne. The boy became a man.) But *durch* (Acc.) is required with a *concomitant cause*; as, Der Regen entsteht durch (through) die Verdichtung der Dünste. Rain arises from the condensation of vapours. Der Aufstand entstand durch einen Streit zweier Männer. The crowd arose from a quarrel between two men. Also *bestehen, to consist of*, and *sich entwickeln, to develop*, require *aus*; as, die Flamme besteht aus Gasen. The flame consists of gases. Die Pflanze entwickelt sich aus dem Samen. The plant is developed from the seed.

*From with the source of information* is *aus*; as, aus Büchern, Zeitungen, from books, newspapers; *from with the informant* is *von*; as, Ich erfuhr es von Ihrem Bruder. I learned it from your brother.

*By, by, seeing, noticing from, knowing, recognising by* is *an*; as, Ich erkannt ihn an der Stimme. I knew him, recognised by the voice. Ich sah es, merkte es an seinem Wesen. I saw it from his manners.

d. *On, upon, with the indirect cause, is auf* (Acc); as, Ich that es auf Ihren Rath, Vorschlag, Wunsch, Befehl. I acted on your advice, proposal, wish, command. Ich glaube es auf Ihr Wort. I believe it on your word. Ich beschloß auf diese Nachricht. On these news I resolved; similarly auf Ihre Gefahr, *at your peril*; auf jeden Fall, *at all events*, under all circumstances.

e. *With, owing to* (considering), with the *accessory cause* is *bei* (Dat.); as, Bei seiner guten Constitution darf man auf seine Genesung hoffen. With his good constitution one may expect his recovery. Bei einiger Sparsamkeit ist das Kapital hinreichend. With some economy the capital suffices. Bei seiner Reizbarkeit fürchtete ich eine Scene. Owing to his irritability I was afraid of a scene.

#### 4. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF CAUSE, MOTIVE. 59

Bei der Maßlosigkeit seiner Ansprüche verfehlte er seinen Zweck. Owing to the immoderateness of his pretensions he failed in his object.

**Bei** thus used sometimes assumes the force of **troß in spite of**; as, Seine Heiterkeit bei allen diesen Leiden ist bewundernswürth. His cheerfulness with (in spite of) all these sufferings deserves admiration. Bei der Mangelhaftigkeit ihrer Werkzeuge sind die Leistungen der Hindus erstaunlich. With the deficiency of their tools, the productions of the Hindoos are astonishing.

*Notwithstanding, ungeachtet (Gen.); in spite of, troß (Gen.).*

**Under** is rendered by **unter** (Dat.); as, unter solchen Umständen, under such circumstances; unter günstigen Umständen, under favorable circumstances; unter günstigen Bedingungen, under favorable conditions; unter bösen Einflüssen, under evil influences (see also 5, adverbial expressions of manner).

*f. From, out of, with the direct motive, is aus (Dat.); as, aus Liebe, out of love; aus Haß, from hatred; aus Furcht, out of fear; aus Nachlässigkeit, from negligence; aus Ueberdruß, from satiety.*

*g. With, for, with an emotion leading to an outward demonstration, is vor (Dat.); as, Ich befe vor Ungebuld. I am trembling with impatience. Er konnte vor Bewegung (Rührung) nicht sprechen. He could not speak from emotion; bleich vor Schrecken, pale with terror; weinend vor Freude, weeping for joy.*

*h. For, on account of, with the reason is wegen (Gen. often following the object); as, wegen Ihres Ausbleibens, on account of your staying away; wegen seiner Mittellosigkeit, Armuth, on account of his small means, poverty; des Diebstahls wegen eingekerkert, imprisoned on account of (for) theft; ihrer Tugenden wegen geehrt, honoured for her virtues; wegen ihrer Anmuth geliebt, loved for her graciousness; wegen ihres Geistes und ihrer Schönheit bewundert, admired for her genius and beauty.*

*i. For, for the sake of, on behalf of is rendered by halben, halber, wegen and willen (Gen.) generally suffixed to the object; as, deinet halben, for thy sake; Ihretwegen, for your sake, (see list of prepositions governing the Gen.); Ehrenhalber, for honours sake; der Kürze halber, for the sake of brevity; willen requires the object to be preceded by um; as, um Gottes Willen, for God's sake; um des Friedens willen, for the sake of peace.*

(For other expressions of this nature an acquaintance with the lists suffices.)

#### 4. THE OBJECT, MORE OR LESS WITH THE FORCE OF CAUSE,

is construed with the following prepositions.

*a. In, after expressions of belief or interest is an; as, glauben an (Acc.); Wir glauben alle an einen Gott. We all believe in one God; Antheil, Interesse, Freude, Gefallen, Vergnügen an (Dat.)*

einer Sache haben, to have an interest or pleasure in a thing; sich erbauen an, to be edified by; Behagen, Geschmack an Etwas finden, to relish, to have a liking for something; — but Sinn für Etwas haben, to have a taste for; Befriedigung, Frieden, Glück, Ruhe, Trost in (Dat.) Etwas finden, to find one's satisfaction, peace, happiness, rest, consolation in a thing.

Of is rendered by an (Acc.) with denken, to think, to bear in mind, erinnern, to remind; as, Er wird an sein Versprechen denken, wenn du ihn an mich erinnerst. He will think of his promise when you remind him of me; but denken von, to think (to judge) of, like sprechen von, to speak of.

b. In, on and upon are rendered by auf (Acc.) after expressions of trusting and reliance; as, "Auf Gott, und nicht auf meinen Rath, will ich mein Glück bauen." On the Lord and not on my own counsel will I rest my happiness. Such are farther, hoffen auf, to hope for, vertrauen auf, sich verlassen auf, to trust in, to depend on, sich stützen auf, to rest oneself upon sich berufen auf, to appeal to, rechnen, zählen auf, to reckon, to count upon. But confidence, faith, in a person or thing, Zutrauen zu einer Person, Sache.

c. For, after asking, desiring, seeking, is nach (Dat.); as, fragen, to ask, inquire, (but bitten, betteln um (Acc.) to ask, beg for), forschen, to inquire, suchen, spähen, sich umsehen nach, to spy, seek, look out for, verlangen, sich sehnen nach, to long for, schmachten nach, to languish for, streben nach, to strive for, trachten nach, to strive after; Einem nach dem Leben trachten, to attempt one's life.

d. For, about, is um after begging, completing, fighting; as, bitten, betteln um, to beg for, flehen um, to implore for, sich bemühen um, to trouble oneself about, sich bewerben um, to compete for, to sue for, sorgen, sich ängstigen um, to be anxious about, spielen, würfeln um, to gamble, to throw the dice for, sich streiten, sich zanken um, to quarrel about; sechten, kämpfen, streiten, Krieg führen um, to fight, to wage war for, sich prügeln, sich schlagen um, to fight for (to scuffle). Es handelt sich um, the question is; es geht um's Leben, life is at stake.

(For, see also p. 61, purpose 5.)

e. At, about, (over), with, is über (Acc.) with the completed cause of an excitement or sentiment; as, Befriedigung, Genugthuung, gratification with, (but Zufriedenheit mit, satisfaction with), Freude, joy, delight, Vergnügen, pleasure, Jubel, Triumph, triumph; lachen und weinen über, to laugh at, to weep over; also, Aerger, Verdruss, chagrin, Aufregung, excitement, Missstimmung, ill-humor, Unzufriedenheit, (also construed with mit) dissatisfaction, Unruhe, uneasiness, anxiety, Unwille, indignation, empört über, shocked at, Erbitterung, exasperation, Grimm, Wuth, Zorn, wrath, rage, anger; also, Kummer, sorrow, Gram und Schmerz, grief, Scham, shame, Bedauern, regret, Trauer, sadness, Reue remorse, Schreck, fright, Entsetzen, horror, Verzweiflung, despair; and also with all verbs, adjectives, etc. correspond-

ing with the above. Examples: Er empfand keine Freude über den Erfolg. He felt no joy at his success; vor Aerger, Verdruß über die Täuschung, with chagrin at the disappointment; aus Wuth über den Verlust, from rage at the loss: vor Kummer und Reue über die That, with sorrow and remorse at the deed.

But auf (Acc.) is used in cases like the following mostly with the person; böse auf mich, *angry with me*; ergrimmt auf ihn, *enraged at him*; eifersüchtig, neidisch auf sie, *jealous, envious of her*; also schelten auf, *to scold at*; schimpfen auf, *to inveigh against*; schmähen auf, *to rail at*.

About is generally über; as, sich äußern, aussprechen über, to express oneself about; Betrachtungen anstellen über, to make reflections about; denken, nachdenken über, to think, to reflect about; erstaunen, sich wundern über, to be astonished at; staunen über, to wonder at; sich beruhigen über, to compose oneself about; reden, sprechen über, to talk about.

f. Of is vor (Dat.) with the impending cause of a fear, horror, etc.; as, Angst, Besorgniß, Furcht vor einer Gefahr, fear, apprehension, dread of a danger; Abscheu, Ekel, Graun, Schauer vor einem Menschen oder einer That, detestation, horror of a person or deed; the same with the *corresponding verbs* and with the following: beben, bangen, zagen, zittern, *to tremble*; for inst.; Ich bebe z. vor der Möglichkeit. I tremble in the face of the possibility; sich entsetzen, erschrecken, zurückschrecken vor dem Gedanken z., *to abhor the thought &c.*; zurückfahren vor einem Anblicke, to start back from the sight.

g. On account of is always wegen (Gen.); against, gegen or wider (Acc.); — gegen also meaning towards with a friendly intention.

## 5. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE.

a. For is zu (Dat.) with the thing purposed; as, das Geld zu dem Ankaufe, the money for the purchase; Lesen Sie das zu Ihrer Erbauung! Read that for your edification! Maßregeln zum Schutze des Eigenthums, measures for the protection of property. Thun Sie das zu Ihrem Vergnügen? Are you doing that for your amusement? Eine Sammlung zur Deckung der Ausgaben, a collection for the covering of the expenses (towards the expenses); zum Lesen, *for reading*, zum Schreiben, *for writing*; zum Arbeiten, *for working*.

In honour of, zu Ehren, in memory of, zum Gedächtnisse; in token of, zum Zeichen.

b. To with a right, claim is auf (Acc.); as, Sie haben ein Recht auf mein Vertrauen. You have a right to my confidence. Er macht Anspruch auf den Besitz. He lays claim to the possession.

c. For is für (Acc.) with a price or the object of a price; as, Ich bezahlte einen Thaler für das Buch. I paid three shillings for

the book. Ich kaufte das Buch für einen Thaler. I bought the book for three shillings. Er wagte sein Leben für die Freiheit. He staked his life for liberty.

d. **For**, with **going, sending for** a person or thing, is **nach** (Dat.); as, Ich gehe nach dem Arzte. I am going for the doctor; nach dem Ziele laufen, to race for the goal. Schicken Sie nach den Waaren. Send for the goods.

e. **For** is **für** (Acc.) with the **person** or **community**, on *whose behalf* a thing is done; as, Christus starb für die Menschheit. Christ died for mankind. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. He who is not for me, is against me. Er hat viel für seine Vaterstadt gethan. He has done much for his native-town. Zum Besten der Armen or für die Armen, on behalf of the poor; Geld an die Armen, an the Kirche geben, to give money for the poor for the church.

f. **For** is **für** (Acc.) with **making provisions**; as, Schätze für's Leben, treasures for life; Vorräthe für den Winter, stores for winter. But **gegen** with a **remedy**; as, ein Mittel gegen das Fieber, a remedy for fever.

g. **For** and **to** with an **inclination** or **tendency** is **zu** (Dat.); as, Neigung zum Schlaf, inclination for sleep; zur Schwermuth geneigt, inclined to sadness; Liebe zu einer Person oder Sache, love for a person or cause; Lust undtrieb zum Arbeiten, liking for work; Hang zum Stehlen, proneness to stealing. But **Freundschaft, Gefühle, Neigung für** eine Person, friendship, feelings, inclinations *for a person*; **Appetit auf**, appetite *for*.

In most other cases **für** is rendered by **für**.

## 6. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF MANNER AND CONDITION.

a. **In** is **auf** (Acc.) before the words **Art, Weise**; but **auf** (Dat.) before **Weg**, all signifying **manner, way**; as, auf alle Art und Weise, in every possible manner and way. Suchen Sie ihn auf eine gute Art loszuwerden. Try to get rid of him in an inoffensive manner; auf diese, folgende, gewisse Weise, in this, in the following, in a certain manner; auf einem graden und rechtlichen Wege, in a straight and honourable way; auf dem Wege Rechtsens, by means of justice. In Hogarth's Manier, in Hogarth's manner. (The pupil must limit the employment of the word **Weg** in the sense of *manner* to expressions he meets with in German authors etc.; as, **Weg**, more commonly means *road*; as, in this way, auf diese Weise, by this *road*, auf diesem Wege. Dies ist nicht die rechte Art. This is not the right way. Dies ist nicht der rechte Weg. This is not the right *road*.)

Auf's Liebendwürdigste in the most amiable manner, most amiably; auf's Nachdrücklichste, most, energetically; but am liebendwürdigsten, am nachdrücklichsten, the most amiable, the most energetical (used adverbially.) (See Section XIII, relative Superlative). Sagen Sie es auf

Deutsch. *Say it in German.* But, Er brückte sich in gutem Deutsch aus. He expressed himself in good German.

b. **In health, spirits is bei** (Dat.) bei guter Gesundheit, in good health; bei (in) guter Laune, in good spirits; bei Kräften, in vigour; nicht bei Laune, not in good humor; bei übler Laune, in a bad humor; nicht bei Sinnen, not in his senses; (*von Sinnen, out of his senses*); similarly, bei Gelde, bei Kasse, in money, in cash; nicht bei Gelde, out of cash.

**In or with a strong etc. voice;** mit starker, lauter, schwacher Stimme, in a strong, loud, feeble voice; mit leiser Stimme, in a low voice, in an undertone, in a whisper, flüsternd, ins Ohr (bei Stimme sein, to be in voice.)

c. **By, holding, leading by is an** (Dat.), and seizing by, bei (Dat.) as "Leite mich an deiner Hand, wie ein Kind am Gängelband." Lead me by thy hand, as a child on a leading-string. Nimm das Kind an die Hand. Let the child take your hand. Er faßte ihn am or beim Kragen. He took him by the collar.

d. **By, in its turn** is rendered as follows: Jahr für Jahr und Tag für Tag, year by year and day by day; but, ein Jahr um das Andere, every other year; Stunde um Stunde, hour by hour; Schritt vor Schritt, by a pace, Stück für Stück, piece by piece; Punkt für Punkt, point by point. Zu Zweien, *by twos*; zu Dreien, *by threes*.

e. **By, with the manner of travelling** is zu (Dat.); as, zu Wasser und zu Lande, by water and land, (mare terraque); zu Fuß, on foot; zu Pferde, on horseback; zu Schiffe gehen, to embark; mit dem Dampfboote, by steamboat; auf der Eisenbahn, by railway; mit der Post, mit dem Omnibus, by the coach.

f. **At** is für (Acc.) or zu (Dat.) with **buying, selling**; das Pfund für einen Thaler or zu einem Thaler, at three shillings a pound; für 100 Thaler verkauft, sold at £15; zu jedem Preise, at any price; zu allen Preisen, at all prices.

**At** is auf (Acc.) in expressions like: auf ihre Kosten, Gefahr, Verantwortlichkeit, *at your expense, peril, risk, responsibility*; auf meine Rechnung, *on my account*.

g. **On** is rendered variously; as on the point to do a thing, auf dem Punkte or im Begriffe es zu thun; on the wing, in Bewegung, im Fluge; on purpose, mit Fleiß; compassion on, Mitleid mit. Sein Sie auf Ihrer Hut. Be on your guard; on a sudden, plötzlich; on the road, unterwegs.

h. **Of** construed with *verbs* and *adjectives* is extensively rendered by the gen.; as, sich einer That schämen, to be ashamed of a deed; deß Glaubens bar, void of faith. For these see Section XVIII, B, The *Genitive*, (see also below i).

i. The following prepositions introducing expressions of manner offer no idiomatical difficulties, and may be translated simply as they



stand, with the few exceptions given in parentheses. After and according to, *nach* (Dat.) generally placed after the object; as, *dieser Behauptung nach*, according to this assertion; *dem Anscheine nach*, according to appearance; — according to, agreeable with, *gemäß, zu Folge* (Dat.), *laut* (Gen.) with documents, laws, manifestoes; — along, *entlang* (Acc.); *den Weg entlang, along the road*; — along with, together with, *nebst, sammt* (the latter implying the whole pertaining to); — by dint of, *vermöge* (Gen.); — by means of, *vermittels* (Gen.); sometimes *vermöge* (Gen.); — by virtue of, *Kraft* (Gen.); — contrary to, *zuwider* (Dat.) following the object; — For (owing to), *wegen* (Gen.), in, *in* (Dat.); in Glück und Unglück, *in fortune and misfortune*; in großer Aufregung, *in great excitement*; in Eile, *in haste*; (see above, *a & b*, in); — instead of, *anstatt* (Gen.); *for* in this sense is *für*; — in spite of, *trotz* (Gen.); — next to, *nächst* (Dat.); notwithstanding, *ungeachtet* (Gen.); — of and from, *von* (Dat.); — opposite to, opposed to, *entgegen, zuwider* (Dat.); — out of, *aus* (Dat.); — with (together with), *mit, zusammen mit*; — with, by means of, *mit* (Dat.); (disgusted with, *überdüssig* (Gen.); surrounded with grace, von Anmuth umgeben; with all my heart, von ganzem Herzen; with the Ancients, with the French, bei den Alten, bei den Franzosen); — without, *ohne* (Acc.) (sonder quaint)

## E. PREPOSITIONS USED AS SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

(See p. 40. 3, and for their position see Section XXX, D.)

In this capacity the prepositions assume the character of adverbs. They are marked\* —; in the lists and are repeated here, — an, auf, aus, bei, durch, entgegen, gegenüber, in, (appears as ein), mit, nach, über, um, unter, vor, zu, zuwider. They require particular attention when used in composition with the adverbs *her hither* and *hin thither* in verbs denoting movements. The English language, in such cases, generally employs the verb with the simple preposition; (as, *to go in — out — up — down*;) and the pupil is apt to form analogously *ausgehen, eingehe, aufgehen, untergehen*; whilst these simple prefixes, in German, give the verb quite a different meaning; as, *ausgehen to go out, on a walk or on business*, (and not *to leave an apartment* &c.); — *eingehe* only quaintly used for *to enter*; more commonly, *to be discontinued*; *aufgehen to rise*, said of the sun, moon &c., of dough, — *to sprout, to open*; — *untergehen to set*, said of celestial bodies, otherwise, *to perish*, &c., &c.

In order to make these verbs express simple motions, the adverb *her* is prefixed to the preposition, when *coming towards*. — and *hin*, when *going away from*, is implied; as, *heraus'kommen, to come out*, *hinaus'gehen to go out*; *herein'kommen to come in*, *hinein'gehen to go in*; *herauf'kommen to come up*, *hinauf'gehen to go up*; *herun'terkommen to come down* (a stair, ladder), *hinun'tergehen to go down*.

## F. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE REFL. PRON. *sich*. (p. 66.)

In adverbial expressions qualifying verbs denoting **placing, holding, carrying**, the English language fails to express in the third person the reflexive meaning in cases like the following: *He held his stick — before — behind — beside him (self)*. If the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. pron. thus used with the preposition, refers to the subject of the sentence, it is expressed by the refl. pron. *sich*, both in the Sing. and Pl.; as, *Er hielt den Stod vor — hinter — neben sich*. Notice; *Er steckte das Geld zu sich*. *He put the money in to his pocket*. *Er hatte seine Uhr und etwas Geld bei sich*. *He had his watch and some money with him*.

### SECTION VII.

#### DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

Remarks in explanation of the Table p. 66.

(As to the Genders, Numbers and Cases compare p. 75 and 76).

1. The Germans, in speaking to members of the family and the most intimate friends, use *Du* etc.; towards one and *ih*r towards more than one person; the same to young children. Towards all other persons, whether one or a number the conventional *Sie* *you* is used with the verb in the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. plural; as, *sind Sie wohl?* are you well? *Leben Sie wohl!* goodbye!

2. In addressing one person, *Ihr*, (with equals), and *Er* and *Sie*, fem., (with inferiors), were formerly used; as, *bringe Er (Sie) mir Wasser*, bring me water.

3. The 1<sup>st</sup> & 2<sup>nd</sup> pers. sing. & pl. have **no reflexive** form; the simple cases of the pronoun being used for the English *myself, ourselves* &c. The 3<sup>d</sup> person sing. and pl. and the Conventional form have the reflexive *sich* (See XXVI). The genitives occur also reflexively; as, *meinet, of my self*, &c. The datives and accusatives plural *uns*, *euch* and *sich*, are used for *einander*, *each other*; as, *Wir grüßten uns* *We saluted each other*. But *einander* is preferred where the verb might have a reflexive meaning, as in *Wir schaden uns*. *We hurt ourselves*. (See p. 72, 4, b.)

4. *Es* (sometimes *'s*) *it*, takes the place of the English "*so*" here this stands for the object or predicate; as, *Ich denke, hoffe, glaubt es*. *I think, hope, believe so*. *Er ist jung und sie ist es* *uch*. *He is young, and she is so too*. (See Sect. XXVII. 4, idioms.)

The prepositions "of" and "to", usually employed as the signs of the *Gen.* and *Dat.* do by no means always answer to these cases in German; see XVIII.)

## FIRST PERSON.

*Sing. Nom.* ich, I.

*Gen.* meiner, (mein beinet, (bein), of you,  
poetic) of me;

*Dat.* mir, to me,  
to myself;

*Acc.* mich, me,  
myself;

## SECOND PERSON.

Addressing relatives  
and intimate friends.

bu, you, Thou;

bit, to you, to your-  
self; to thee, to thyself;

bich, you, yourself, thee,  
thyself;

## THIRD PERSON.

also expressing "it" in the three genders  
*masc.* *fem.* *neut.*

er, he, (it with  
things masc.);

seiner, (sein), of her;  
him;

ihm, to him, it;  
sich, to himself;  
ihn, to  
himself;  
sich, her-  
self;  
es, it, sich;

*Plur. Nom.* wir, we;

*Gen.* unser, of us;

*Dat.* uns, to us,  
to ourselves;

*Acc.* uns, us, our-  
selves;

sie they;

ihret, of them;

ihnen, to them, sich, to them-  
selves;

sie, them, sich, themselves;

*Conventional Address, both sing. and pl. Nom.* Sie, you; *Gen.* Ihret, of you; *Dat.* Ihnen, to you; sich, to yourself(selves); *Acc.* Sie, you, sich, yourself(selves).

## EXERCISE VI.

In connection with the pres. Ind. Sect. XXIV. Specimen loben. There are many verbs taking their object in the genitive and dative case. These are given in the Lists Sect. XVIII.

**Gott, Menschheit, Natur. God, Mankind, Nature.**

**An meinen Sohn. To my son.**

Ich liebe (love) dich. Wenn (if) du mir gehorchst (listen, obey) und meiner gedenkst (think of) wirst du glücklich (happy) werden. Fürchte (fear) Gott und gieb (give) ihm dein Herz (heart). Er gedenkt (remembers) deiner wenn (when) du seiner nicht (not) gedenkst. Wenn du ihn liebst, liebt er dich. Gott ist die Liebe. Wer in der Liebe bleibt, bleibt in Gott und Gott in ihm. Christus lehrt (teaches) uns wie (how) wir ihn lieben sollen (are to.) Er liebt alle Menschen (all mankind) und wir sollen sie auch (also) lieben, Gutes für (for) sie wirken (work) und uns ihrer annehmen (take care of, take an interest in) wie Er sich unser angenommen hat. Indem (whilst) wir ihnen dienen, dienen wir ihm. Ihr dient Ihnen wenn ihr Recht thut (do) und die Wahrheit (truth) über Alles (above all things) liebt. Was ihr nicht wollt (wish) daß (that) euch die Leute thun (do) daß (that, thing) thuet ihnen auch (also) nicht (auch nicht neither.) Du liebst die Natur (nature) sie ist Gottes Werk (work). Er hat sie uns gegeben (given) damit (in order that) wir uns ihrer erfreuen (rejoice in) und ihm für sie danken (thank) sollen. Denn sie ist unendlich herrlich (infinitely glorious). Aber sie hat keinen (no) Geist (spirit) und kann (can) uns nicht lieben wie (as) Er uns liebt.

## EXERCISE VII.

On the conventional form of adress.

**An J. L. To F. T.**

Ich danke (thank) Ihnen und ehre Sie. Sie haben edel (nobly) gehandelt (acted) indem Sie (in aiding) mir in

meiner Sorge (care) und Arbeit (labour) beistanden (beistehen to aid). Wo (where) man dieses Werk kennt (knows) soll (shall) man Ihrer gedenken und Sie loben. Ich wünsche (wish) daß es Ihrer würdig (worthy) sei (may be).

## EXERCISE VIII.

On the above in connection with the prepositions governing the accusative.

## Freundschaftliche Warnung. Friendly Warning.

Lieber Fritz! (Fred)

Du handelst (act) unrecht gegen Onkel und Lante. Er thut Alles (everything) für dich und du thust Nichts (nothing) für ihn. Sei dankbar (thankful) gegen ihn und sie und thue Nichts ohne sie beide (both) sonst sind sie gegen dich. Ich bin besorgt um Euch nicht um uns. Also sprich (XXV. B.) nicht wider sie, denn nur (only) durch sie kannst du gedeihen (to prosper) Du weißt das ohne mich. Ich werde dich morgen (to morrow) sehen (to see) wenn du den Weg (road) entlang (a long) kommst und bleibe bis dahin (till then)

Dein treuer Vetter Hans.

5. The expressions "*it is I,*" "*it is thou,*" "*it is he*" &c. are rendered by *ich bin es, du bist es, er ist es, &c.*; the personal pronoun governing the verb instead of the impersonal "*it*" in English; thus, *wir sind es, it is we; sie sind es, it is they.* In introducing persons or things to the knowledge of a person "*es ist*" "*it is*" in the singular and "*Es sind*" in the plural must be used; as, *was für Papier haben Sie da? Es sind Briefe* What papers have you there? They are letters. *Waren es Engländer? Nein. Es waren Franzosen, were they Englishmen? No. They were Frenchmen.*

EXERCISE XVII. (To 5. above).

Eine Bestellung. A Message.

Tante und Neffen. Aunt and Nephews.

Es klopft (There is a knock.) Herein! (Come in!) Wer ist da? (Who is there?) Ich bin es liebe Tante. Ah, du bist es Georg! Ja; (yes) — und ich auch (too) wir sind es beide. Und was bringt ihr da? Es ist ein Korb von Mamma. Ei! und was ist denn darin? Es sind frische (fresh) Rosen und süße (sweet) Kirschchen (f. cherry). Das ist allerliebste! (charming.) Danke schön (thank you). Hier, Jungens, (boys, familiarly) ist ein Kuchen (cake) für euch. Danke! danke Tantechen! (Sect. V. B.) Mamma läßt dich auch grüßen (sends her love) und du möchtest doch Nachmittag (in the after noon) zum Kaffee kommen (if you would come to coffee, coffee being taken regularly instead of tea.) Es sind Freunde auf Besuch gekommen (on a visit). Wer ist es? Du mußt rathen (guess); es sind zwei Herren und eine Dame. Sind es die Forstens? Richtig! sie sind es; sie sind eben angekommen. Ich werde mit Vergnügen kommen.

---

SECTION VIII.

REMARKS ON THE PERSONAL AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, &c.

The third person, *er*, *sie*, *es* and its cases, is used both for persons and things of every gender (as in Ex. VI.)

1. But if the cases of *er*, *sie*, *es*; are used with a preposition before them, they refer exclusively to persons; as, mit ihm, with him; mit ihr, with her; mit ihnen, with them; für ihn, for him; für sie, for her. (Ex. VIII.)

On the other hand the English "*it*" pl. "*them*" when used adverbially *i. e.* governed by a preposition cannot be expressed by the cases of *er*, *ſie*, *eſ*. But when referring definitely to things it is frequently represented by the corresponding cases of the demonstrative pronoun *derſelb'e*, *dieſelb'e*, *daſſelb'e* *the same*; (See p. 84, 4.); as, *Ich erhielt Ihren Brief und ſah auß demſelben*. I received your letter and ſaw from it. (This demonstrative *derſelbe*, *dieſelbe*, *daſſelbe*, on the whole is often used with greater definiteness than *er*, *ſie*, *eſ* in pointing out persons and things: See p. 98, 4.)

More frequently and indiscriminately, whether ſpeaking of persons or circumstances, and whether in the ſing. or pl. the "*it*" and "*them*" used with prepositions are expreſſed by the indefinite pronoun *daß* with the preposition appended, which in ſuch caſes has the accent; as, *deßweg'en*, *deßhalb* on account of it.

The root of this pronoun is the adverb *da* (old german *dat*) *there* and moſt of the prepositions governing the dat. and acc. are appended directly to this root; as, *daraus* *out of it, them*; *baran* *on it, them*; (*there on*); *darin* *in it, them*; *darüber* *about it, them*, *darunter* *under it, them*.

Before prepositions beginning with a conſonant the letter *r* has not been preſerved hence, *dadurch* through it, them; *dafür* for it, them; *damit* with it, them; *davon* from it, them, of it, them, off it, them &c.; (Compare Sect. XI. A. c.)

#### EXERCISE XVIII.

##### Eine Gefälligkeit. A little Service.

Wo iſt mein Bruder? Er iſt ausgefahren (gone away in a carriage). Ich wundere (wonder) mich *darüb'er*; er hat mir nichts davon geſagt. Er hat wohl keine Zeit (time) *dazu* gehabt. Es kam ein Wagen vorgefahren (driving up to the door; Sect. XXV. D. 3, Note 3). Ein Herr ſaß

**darin.** Er hatte eine Rolle Papier in der Hand und winkte (beckoned) Ihrem Bruder **damit**. Dieser bat ihn **herauf** zu kommen (VI. E.). Der Herr hatte keine Lust (inclination) **dazu** so ist ihr Bruder **hinunter** gegangen (VI. E.) und mit ihm gefahren. Das **setzt** (puts) mich **recht** (really) in Verlegenheit (embarrassment, say "embarrasses me"). Er hatte mir **versprochen** diese wichtigen (important) Briefe auf die Post zu geben (to post). Er hat gewiß nicht **daran** gedacht (to think). Wenn ich **darum** gewußt hätte, würde (should) ich ihn **darin** erinnern haben (erinnern transitive to remind.) Aber wenn Ihnen **darin** liegt, (if it matters you), will ich **gerne** (gladly) **damit** gehen (go there). Sie werden mich **dadurch** **recht** sehr verbinden (you would greatly oblige me). Bitte **recht** sehr (pray don't mention it) **hier** sind fünf Groschen (6<sup>d</sup>). Was soll ich **damit**? (am I to do with it) kaufen Sie Postmarken (stamps) **dafür**.

2. Only the following prepositions, however, can be appended to **da** and to the pronominal forms **des**, **dem**, **was**, **wo**; the prepositions **halb**, **wegen** and **willen** to the Gen.; — **auf**, **bei**, (**dem**)**gemäß**, **mit**, **nach**, (**dem**)**nächst**, **nebst**, **von**, **zu**, (**dem**)**zufolge**, — **durch**, **für**, **gegen**, **um**, **wider**, and those governing both the Dat. and Acc. (p. 45, 4.).

If any other preposition is to be construed with the third personal pronoun referring to things, the corresponding case of the Demonstrative **der**=**die**=**das**=**selbe**, (see 1 above) must be used, and for this pronoun may be substituted in the Gen. **dessen**, and Dat. **dem**. See Sect. XII, Shorter form, 4.)

**Note.** **Dessen** and **dem** are particularly used instead of the neut. Gen. **seiner** and Dat. **ihm**, which are almost never employed, not even after verbs and adjectives. Farther **dasselbe** must always be substituted for the Acc. neut. **es** after the preposition **ohne** *without*, and in speaking of animate beings after any other preposition governing the Acc. The Dat. neut. **ihm**, when governed by verbs or adjectives, may be used where it is not apt to be mistaken for the Dat. masc. **ihm** to *him*.

3. In speaking of persons, the partitive is not expressed by the genitive Plural, but by the dative governed by the preposition **von** *of*, or sometimes **unter**,



*among*; as, *sechß von uns, six of us*; *welcher unter euch, which among you*; *mehrere von ihnen, several of them*; *derjenige von euch, he or that one of you*. In speaking of things, the *partitive of them* is, according to 1, above, *davon* or *darunter, among them*, sometimes *derselben* or, in its shorter form, *deren*; as, *die Hälfte davon, the half of them*; *einige derselben, a few of them*; *deren viele, many such, many of them*; which latter forms are also used *of persons*. (See Section XII, 4).

4. The Genitive Plural, of the personal pronoun preceding a numeral; as, *unsrer etliche, ihrer sechse* is not properly a partitive, but implies that the *whole party* amounts to the number stated; hence, *unsrer etliche* means, *we were a few*; *ihrer sechse, their party consisted of six*. *Ihr seid eurer drei und wir nur unsrer zwei. You number three and we only two.*

5. a. *Ich, &c., selbst, I &c., myself*, sometimes also *ich selber*, is more emphatic than the simple *ich, du, &c. Selbst ich, Even I; selbst du, even you.*

b. *Einander*, each other; as, *unter einander, among each other* is often expressed by *uns, euch, sich*. (See p. 65, 3).

c. — *man* is the indefinite personal pronoun and may be expressed by *one* (*one* thinks), and, when referring the others, by *they* (*they* think), by *people* (*people* think), or best by the passive voice, (*it is thought*); its possessive in English, *one's*, is *sein, seine*; as, *Man muß sein Geld sparen. One must spare one's money*; *One's self, sich*. — *Einer, Eine, Eines*; one, somebody is sometimes colloquially substituted for *man*; but its use particularly in the Dat. and Acc. in this capacity, should be avoided. *Irgend Einer*, any person, anybody. *Keiner*, no one, none; as, *Keiner von beiden, neither of them*. (See XI. C. f.)

d. *Jedermann everybody, anybody, all people*, has in the Gen. *Jedermanns*. *Jedlicher, =e, =es*, and *Jedweder*, (obsolete, for *ein Jeder, =e, =es*), *every one, every, each*, are declined like adjectives.

e. Jemand, *somebody* or *anybody*, some person, and Niemand, *nobody*, take *es* in the genitive, and *en* the Dat. and Acc.

f. Etwas, (colloquially *was*), *something*, *anything*, as, etwas Anderes, *something else*; so Etwas, *such a thing*, *some such thing*; Alles, *everything*, *all*.

g. Nichts, *nothing*; Nichts als, *nothing but*; Nichts weniger als, *anything but*. (X. 2.)

### EXERCISE XIX. On 5, above.

#### Freundschaft. Friendship.

Wenn man Jemanden Liebes (kindness) erzeigen (to show) will, muß man ihm Etwas zuführen (to make acquainted) was uns selbst erfreut (gladdened) oder erhoben (elevated) hat. Da (as) aber nicht Alles in Jedermanns Sphäre (sphere) liegt muß man seine Dienste (service) dem Geschmade (taste) eines Jeden anpassen (to adapt). Denn nichts ist unbefriedigender (more dissappointing) als (than) wenn man Jemandes Interesse für Etwas fordert (to demand) das ihn nicht fördert (to further, advance). Man darf (must) Niemanden Etwas aufdringen (to intrude upon), nur weil es einem selbst gefällt (to please) und auch hier (here too) heißt es (the motto is, is) „Jedem das seine“ (his own).

### EXERCISE XX. To the above; colloquial expressions.

#### Kaufhold. Hector. Vater und Sohn. Father and Son.

He! (halloh)! Hans! (Jack)! Was soll ich (is it) Papa? (papa?) Komm herauf! (See p. 64. E.) Gleich. (Immediately) Augenblicklich. (Instantly). Hier bin ich Papa. Wie oft habe ich dir verboten (to forbid) dich mit den Gassenjungen (street boys) zu prügeln? (to fight). Ja die Jungen lassen (to leave) Einen nicht zufrieden, (in peace) man soll doch (surely) nicht still sitzen wenn man angegriffen (to attack)

wird (pas. v.) Wenn Einer Einem Einiß giebt, giebt Einer Einem wieder Einiß (Einem Einiß geben to deal one a blow).

Aber man sagt daß du immer Händel (quarrel) anfängst, (st. to commence). Das ist nicht wahr; ich thue Niemanden Etwas, wenn mir Keiner Nichts thut (Einem Etwas thun to do one harm). Da siehst du! (sehen st.) (scoundrel) Schlingel du sprichst schon wie die Buben (cad) da unten. Das kommt vom Herumtreiben (loiter about). Du hast deine ganze Grammatik (grammar) vergessen. Hier nimmst du sogleich das Buch und lernst die Regel (rule) über die doppelte Verneinung (double negation). Nein! Nein! Wie? Da steht der Stock (cane). Oh! ich wollte (meant) nur (zeigen to show) daß ich die Regel ganz gut (quite well) weiß (know). „Eine doppelte Verneinung ist eine Bejahung.“ Falsch, (wrong) du Laugenichts! (good for nothing) es heißt „Eine doppelte Verneinung in demselben Satze (sentence) ist eine Bejahung.“ — Jetzt geh und hole deinen Cäsar (Caesar). Ja (aye) der hat sich ja (indeed) auch immer in Einem fort (incessantly, always) gehauen (sich hauen fighting). Ja aber er hat auch erst (first) Etwas Tüchtiges (decent) gelernt.

## SECTION IX.

### DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLES, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

A. LEADING REMARKS. (See Table pp. 84, 85). Although the customary term "*Article*" must be retained, the pupil should from the out set understand that there is in reality no such part of speech, since the definite article is a pronoun and the indefinite article a numeral, both being called articles where they are not used with their original force.

1. (The definite article) *der* masc., *die* fem., *das* neut., is a compound of the demonstrative *da* (*dar*)

*there* and the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. pron. *er*, *ſie*, *eſ* (there he, there she = the, there it = that), by means of the ending of which it points out the genders and cases of the nouns following it.

*der*, *die*, *daß* is thus largely used for *this* and *that*, for *he*, *she*, *it*, and, like the English, "*that*" also for the *relative pronoun*. (Compare the Ital. *il*, the French *le*, *la* with the Lat. *ille*, *illa*). *Der*, *die*, *daß*, as the pronoun is treated of in Sect. XII.

2. The pronouns arranged below *der*, *die*, *daß*, in a p. 84, point out in a similar manner the genders and cases, with this difference however, that, (except in the compounds *derſelbe* and *derjenige*), there is in the sing. no difference between the nom. or acc. neut. and the gen. masc. or neut.

Thus, *dieſeſ*, *jeneſ*, *ſolcheſ* etc., may be the nom. and acc. neut. or the gen. masc. and neut., a fact which, the Author thinks, has had an obvious effect on the Decl. of substantives. (See Sect. XVI Suggestions on the nature of German Declension).

3. (The Indefinite Article) *Ein* masc., *Eine* fem., *Ein* neut., is, like the English *a*, *an* (old Engl. *ane*) and the French *un*, *une*, originally the numeral "*one*."

*Ein* is not like *der* changed itself and the pronominal endings are simply appended to it except in the nom. sing. masc. and neut. which therefore fail to indicate the gender. This affects the declension of the Adjective as shown in B. 1 below and in the Table p. 85.

*Keine* not *a*, no is a contraction of *nicht* *nein* and therefore declined like *Ein*.

4. The possessive pronouns, which are arranged below *Ein*, *eine*, *ein*, in the Table p. 85, are the genitive forms of the personal pron. (See p. 66.) and therefore likewise fail to show in the nom. sing. the masc. and neut. gender whilst in the other cases the pronominal endings are likewise merely appended to them.

5. There are two numbers Singular and Plural and four cases the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative* and *Accusative*, the two latter with the force of the Engl. *Objective*.

6. Except in a few proper names the accusatives singular of the feminine and neuter gender, and the accusative plural of all declined words are like their nominatives. (Comp. Table, p.p. 84, 85).

7. The Plurals of all the words given in the table are alike in all the three genders.

8. Of the compound demonstratives *derjenige*, *diesjenige*, *dasjenige*, and *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasjelbe*, the first part is declined as the article, the second as the adjective. (See p. 80, 9.)

9. The indefinite numerals given under 10 in p. 84, to some extent share in the character of the pronouns, and take the plural terminations of the definite article, unless used with an article or pronoun, when they become adjectives.

## B. THE ADJECTIVE.\*

The pupil will find the following explanation, based on the euphonic nature of the suffixes containing a soft *e* (See p. 23 and especially 24) conclusive and somewhat simpler than the mechanical drudgery of the old arrangements. .

\* Grammatical nomenclature ought either to elucidate the nature of the present forms of the language, or to give the student of historical philology a clue to its development in the past. Were the terms "strong and weak or ancient and modern and even mixed (!) declension" of adjectives of the least avail for either of these objects, the author would hesitate to depart from them, in spite of their great aptness to confuse the pupil, particularly in their natural connexion with the declension of Nouns. The scholar who has made himself familiar with the subtle and conflicting speculations of German philologists on this very subject, (see Steinthal, *Charakteristik* &c. p. 303—311) will admit that a truly practical work

The adjective is used in three ways;

a. **attributively** when placed before the noun; as, *the stout heart*.

b. **predicatively** when it is connected with the nominative by the verb *to be*; also by the verbs *to appear*, *to remain*, *to become*, *to seem*, *to be called*; as, *he is stout*, *he appears stout*, *he becomes stout etc.*;

c. **adverbially**; as, *he defended himself stoutly*. In German no suffix like *ly* is added.

1. The adjective is not changed at all when used **adverbially** or **predicatively**. *Gut, good well. Sie singt gut. She sings well. Du bist gut. Thou art good. Er, sie, es ist gut. He, she, it is good. Sie find gut. They are good.* These examples show that the adjective used *as the predicate* is not in the least affected by gender or number; (a fact which at once places it in a position analogous to that in the Saxon-English and utterly different from that in the Classical languages in which it is *really* declined.)

2. When used as an **adverb** or **predicate** the adjective generally stands at the end of the clause, and being mostly a powerful monosyllable, finishes the clause in an impressive manner. *Er benahm sich gegen seine Eltern immer sehr gut. He always behaved well towards his parents. Dies Gesetz war nur in einem gewissen Sinne gut. This law was good only in a certain sense.* No addition is here desirable.

should confine itself to pointing out the laws of the present language. The author has had the pleasure of meeting with a general approval of the tabular view in p. p. 84, 85, as giving the simplest key to the most important inflectional forms in their various combinations. But whilst he would recommend beginners to study the table in the first place, experience has shewn him the necessity of extending the knowledge thus acquired and aiding the memory, by the addition of the comprehensive principle laid down in the above explanation which he bases entirely on *the euphonic nature* and *the grammatical economy* of the suffixes and terminations in the *present High German*. This explanation possesses the advantage of bringing the whole subject of declension into a coherent and perspicuous system, and may prove not undeserving of the attention of the general grammarian. (See *Bopp*, *vergl. Gramm.* § 287.)

3. When, however, the adjective is used as an attribute, it is placed before the noun which generally is, or begins with, a powerful syllable. The effect of this combination would be intolerable to the ear if no remedy were provided; for inst. gut Frucht, alt Mann, starf Knabe, grau Haus, roth Ochse. In English the greater softness of the vowels and the milder character of the final consonants are sufficient to prevent this harshness; comp. *good fruit, old man, strong knave (boy), grey house, red ox*; in German it could be avoided only by the insertion of a soft suffix between the two strong syllables; gute Frucht, alter Mann, graues Haus, rothen Ochsen.

4. Accordingly, the adjective, when placed before the noun, receives an additional syllable containing a soft *e*. This suffix is different according to circumstances.

5. When the attributive Adjective is preceded by any article or pronoun, the suffix is *en* in all the cases, *except* the nominatives singular and the accusatives singular feminine and neuter which are like their nominatives and require to be particularly distinguished from the rest.

The consonant *n* is best adapted to meet any sound with which the noun may begin, as it is that consonant which leaves the lingual organs in the most indifferent position and many old consonant terminations have hence dwindled into *n*.

6. The Adjective takes a simple *e* in the nominative singular of each gender, also in the Acc. Sing. of the fem. and neut. after the definite article and after the pronouns arranged below it in p. 84, because these show distinctly each gender in the Nom. Sing. by a special form; (See A. 1, 2.) as Nom. S., der gute, die gute, das gute, the good; dieser gute, diese gute, dieses gute, this good, the Acc. Sing. fem. and neut. corresponding with their nominatives, (all the other cases taking *en*.)

7. But the Adjective takes in the nom. sing. masc. *er*, fem. *e*, neut. *es*, — the Acc. Sing. fem. and neut. corresponding with their Nominatives, after the inde-

finite article and all the possessive pronouns, because these fail to point out the masc. and neut. gender in the Nom. Sing. and thus require the adjective to show form that function. (See A. 3, 4.)

According to the above, the terminations of the adjective are.

a. After the DEFINITE Article etc.

Sing. N. (der) gute; (die) gute; (das) gute.  
 G. (des) —en; (der) —en; (des) —en.  
 D. (dem) —en; (der) —en; (dem) —en.  
 A. (den) —en; (die) —e; (das) —e.

b. After the INDEFINITE Article etc.

Sing. N. (ein) guter; (eine) gute; (ein) gutes.  
 G. (eines) —en; (einer) —en; (eines) —en.  
 D. (einem) —en; (einer) —en; (einem) —en.  
 A. (einen) —en; (eine) —e; (ein) —es.

THE PLURAL after any Article or Pronoun:  
 Nom. guten; Gen. guten; Dat. guten; Acc. guten.

**Note 1.** The English "one" used after Substantive Attributive Adjectives, as in "a good one", "the little ones", is not expressed in German as the Article and termination clearly point out the connection; hence, ein guter, die kleinen.

**Note 2.** *so* and *zu* too used with an adjective and the indefinite article or *kein* (See A. 3.) are always placed between that article and the adjective which are declined as stated under *b* above; as, *so good a man*, ein *so* guter Mann; *too great a misfortune*, ein *zu* großes Unglück; in the Genitive eines *zu* großen Unglücks, eines *zu* guten Mannes etc.; *kein so großer*, kein *so* großes not so great a. *Keine so großen Pläne*, no such great plans.

8. If, however, the Adjective precedes the noun without any article or pronoun to point out the case, its euphonic additional syllable is turned to advantage and made to receive the terminations of the definite article instead of the mere *n*, which is retained only in the Gen. Sing. masc. and neut. because the Gen. here is unmistakably indicated by the noun itself; thus Gen. not reines Weines, but reinen Weines, of pure wine; not frisches Fisches, but frischen Fisches, of fresh fish; not kaltes Wassers, but kalten Weines, of cold water.



(There occur, indeed, genitives in *eß*; as, *gutes Muthes*, *of good courage*; *gerades Weges*, *straight way*; but these are mere traces of the very irregular historical development of the declensions.)

Hence the terminations of the attribute-adjective used without any article or pronoun are:

SING.	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	PLUR. <i>of all genders.</i>
Nom. (gut) <i>er.</i>		(gut) <i>e.</i>	(gut) <i>eß.</i>	Nom. (gut) <i>e.</i>
Gen. (gut) <i>en (eß).</i>		(gut) <i>er.</i>	(gut) <i>en (eß).</i>	Gen. (gut) <i>er.</i>
Dat. (gut) <i>em.</i>		(gut) <i>er.</i>	(gut) <i>em.</i>	Dat. (gut) <i>en.</i>
Acc. (gut) <i>en.</i>		(gut) <i>e.</i>	(gut) <i>eß.</i>	Acc. (gut) <i>e.</i>

**Note.** Even the pronouns *aller*, *jeder*, *mancher*, *jeder*, *welcher*, (See p. 84 5, 6, 7, 8,) are, before the genitives in *ß* of masc. and neut. nouns, used more correctly and elegantly with the termination *en*; as, *Troß allen*, (*jeden*, *manchen*, *solchen*) *Kummerß*, in spite of all, (every, many, such) sorrow, *welchen* *Standes*, of what rank.

9. The Pronouns *jener*, *jene*, *jenes* and *selber*, *selbe*, *selbes* are used as second components of the Demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das*; (see p. 84, 3 & 4); farther, the possessive pronouns are always preceded by the article when not placed before the noun (*my book*) but referring back to it as in *the book is mine* (French, *le mien*) *i. e.* when they are substantive possessive pronouns. As the article in these combinations points out the case, it reduces the pronoun following it to a mere adjective, so much so, that it even receives the adjective-suffix *ig*. Hence: *derjenige*, *diejenige*, *dasjenige*; *derselb(ig)e*, *dieselb(ig)e*, *daselb(ig)e*, (mostly without the *ig*); *der meinige*, *die meinige*, *das meinige*, — *deinige*, — *seinige*, — *ihrige*, — *unserige*, — *euerige*, — *ihrige*, — (sometimes more expressive without the *ig*). These will be easily declined, taking *n* in all the cases, except the Acc. Sing. fem. & neut. which take *e* like their nominatives.

10. After the plural forms of the indefinite numerals given in the table, 10, the adjective fails to take the *n* in the Nom. and Acc., but has only *e*; as, *wenige*

echte Charaktere, *few genuine characters*; (not echten, as in the other cases). The same is the case after the plurals solche *such*, and welche *which, what*, unless the latter is *the Relative*, after which the adjective has the usual en. After alle *all*, the adj. has en throughout.

11. The euphonic e is often omitted both in pronouns and adjectives whenever their last syllable already contains a soft e. Thus instead of unseres, unserem, unseren, put unser, unserm, unsern; of müde, besser &c., not müdeen, besseren, but müden, bessern.

In those cases, however, which either end in e, or in which the e must be retained before a terminating t, as in unsere, unserer, the e belonging to the word itself is often dropped; hence: unsre, unsrer, besser, besserer; and the adjective tapfer *brave*, for inst., would be declined without the article, Nom. masc. tapfer, Gen. tapfern, Dat. tapferm, Acc. tapfern; Plural Nom. tapfre, Gen. tapfere, Dat. tapfern, Acc. tapfre.

12. The following are declined as adjectives.

a. All adjectives used as nouns as stated p. 87, 1, where the exception must be noticed.

b. The present and past participles of verbs used attributively; as, das trinkende Kind, the drinking child; ein geliebter Freund, a loved (beloved) friend.

c. The ordinal numerals Sect. XIV. B.

d. The substantive-possessives der meinige, die meinige, das meinige; or meine mine; der deinige or deine thine, yours; der seinige, his; der ihrige or ihre, hers; der unsrige or unsre ours; der eurige and der Ihrige yours; die ihrigen, theirs; — the same used as nouns; as, das Meinige, Deinige, &c., *my, your &c. property, part, share*; die Unsrigen, the people of our party, our troops; die Meinigen, die Deinigen &c. die Ihrigen, *my, thy, &c., your family and relations, (always used with the article)*; and the colloquial, meiner, -e, -es mine; deiner &c. yours; ihrer, &c. theirs; Ihrer, &c. yours, (ending like the article).

**Note 1.** In the adjective *hoch* *high*, the guttural changes into *h* before an *e*; as, *der hohe, des hohen, höher; but der höchste.*

**Note 2.** The Adjective *all the* before nouns which in their singular form express a plurality; as, *Volk people, Familie family, Zahl number*, is rendered by *ganz* (*the whole, the entire*), preceded by the article; as, *das ganze Volk, all the people; die ganze Familie, all the family; die ganze Zahl, all the number.* Likewise *das ganze Jahr, all the year; den ganzen Tag, all the day.* Before the names of materials *all the* is *aller, alle, alles*; as, *aller Wein, all the wine; alle Butter, all the butter; alles Geld, all the money;* similarly *alles Fleisch, all flesh. Alles Volk sprach Amen. All people (the whole mass) said Amen.* (*Alle Leute, all people, every-body.*)

As a neuter noun *Alles* means *everything*, sometimes *every-body*. The repetition of periods of time, is expressed by the plural *alle, every; alle Jahre, every year; alle Tage, (täglich) daily; alle zwei Stunden, every two hours.*

**Note 3.** *All* with countries and places, is *das ganze; as, das ganze Gallien, all Gaul.* If not used literally, *ganz all* and *halb half* are employed without being declined; *ganz Europa, all Europe; ganz London, all London.* (See p. 101, 5.)

## EXERCISE XXI.

On the declension of adjectives in connection with the table p.p. 84, 85. The pupil has to state the nominative of each noun not given so, along with its adjective, article or pronoun, and must also state the gender where not given, according to the Table.

### Leben und Literatur. Life and Literature.

Die Literatur eines großen Volkes (n. people, nation) ist sein höchster (highest) Besitz (possession, treasure). Die eigenthümlichen (peculiar) Schönheiten (beauty p. 36. d. 2.) seines Vaterlandes (fatherland), seine erhabenen (lofty) Berge (m. mountain) und stillen (quiet) Thäler (XVI. L. 5.), rauschenden (rustling) Wälder (XVI. L. 5.), grünenden (verdant) Ebenen (f. plain) und schimmernden (glistening) Gewässer (n. water), kurz (in short) die ganze (entire) Natur seiner Heimath ist dem Volke angeboren (born to), wie dem einzelnen (individual) Menschen (XVI. L. 1.) der Körper (m. body). Ebenso (in the same manner) kann man die sichtbaren (visible)

Denkmäler (monument) des nationalen Fleißes (m. industry) und der nationalen Kunst (art) dem sich allmählich (gradually) ändernden Costüm einer Person vergleichen (to compare to).

Jene reichen Städte mit ihren heiligen (m. holy) Tempeln, prächtigen (magnificent) Gebäuden (n. edifice) und alle den mannigfaltigen (mannifold) Kunstwerken (n. works of art) sind in der That (indeed) nur (only) das mit den Jahrhunderten (n. century) verfallende (to decay) Gewand (garment) des Volkslebens (life of the people). Aber sein schlagendes (beating) Herz (heart), seine empfindende (sensitive) Seele (soul) und sein unsterblicher Geist (spirit) erscheinen in den unvergänglichen (imperishable) Worten (XVI. L. 10) seiner großen Denker (thinker) und Dichter (m. poet). Wir legen (legen bei to attribute) diesen freilich (certainly) ungreifbaren (intangible) Dingen kaum (scarcely) einen zu (too p. 79 Note 2) großen Werth (value) bei, wenn wir sagen, daß sie den letzten (last, ultimate) Zweck (object) alles menschlichen (human) Daseins (n. existence) bilden (to form). Denn (for) was sind alle anderen Thätigkeiten (activity) anders (else) als (than) Mittel zum Zweck. Die Arbeit (labour) des rüstigen (vigorous) Landmannes (husbandman) des fleißigen Handwerkers (handicraftsman), des sorgenvollen (anxious) Kaufmannes (merchant), des gelehrten (learned) Richters (judge), des menschenfreundlichen (philanthropic) Arztes und selbst oft des wissenschaftlichen (scientific) Forschers (inquirer) wie die Siegesthat (deed of victory) des Helden dienen, (to serve) nur dazu das Leben zu erhalten (preserve) und zu sichern (secure).

An sich (in themselves) sind sie vergänglich und ohne Charakter; denn sie dienten dem üppigen (luxuriant) Babylon und dem tyrannischen (tyrannical) Rom grade so, wie (just as) dem heutigen (modern, of this day) London und Paris. Gemeine (vulgar) Eitelkeit, (vanity) rohe (rude) Selbstsucht (selfishness) und unedele (ignoble) Leidenschaften (passions) erfordern (require) dieses vielseitige (multifarious) Geräth (apparatus) weit mehr (much more) als die wirkliche (real) Nothwendigkeit (necessity) und die stille Tugend (virtue). Sie alle sind dem unaufhörlichen Wechsel (m. change) unterworfen (subject to)

(Continued p. 86.)

In connection with the preceding portion of this section

## THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

**SINGULAR.**

		<b>Masc.</b>	<b>Fem.</b>	<b>Neut.</b>
<i>Nom.</i>	the	der	die	das
<i>Gen.</i>	of the	des	der	des
<i>Dat.</i>	(to) the	dem	der	dem
<i>Acc.</i>	the	den	die	das

**The PLURAL in the three genders: *Nom.* die; *Gen.* der:**

The following adjective Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns correspond with the definite article:

1. this	dieser	diese	dieses
2. that (yon)	jener	jene	jenes
3. that, he	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige
4. the same, (it)	derselbe	dieselbe	daselbe
5. any, all	aller	alle	alles
6. each, every	jeder	jede	jedes
(p. 80 Note)	(pl. alle)		
7. many a	mancher	manche	manches
8. such (p. 102)	solcher	solche	solches
9. which, who	welcher	welche	welches
10. and the following (pl.)	Numerals,		

after which the adjective has *e* in the Nom. and Acc.; as, *einige gute Menschen*; *andere*, other; *einige und etliche*, some, a few; *manche*, many; *mehrere*, several; *sämmtliche*, all, all appertaining to; *viele*, many; *wenige*, few; likewise *solche*, and *welche*, (what).

The components **selbe** and **jenige** in **derselbe**, **derjenige**, are declined like adjectives, as below.

THE ADJECTIVE, following any article or Plur. except in the Nom. Sing. *masc., fem. and neut.*

after the above,	Nom. Sing.	ε	ε	ε
	Accusative		ε	ε

Adjectives before a noun, when not preceded of the definite article in every case, except in the ge- the sake of euphony, they take **en** instead of **es**.

and with Section XL ON THE USE OF THE PRONOUNS.

## THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

### SINGULAR.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	a (or an)	ein	eine	ein
<i>Gen.</i>	of a	eines	einer	eines
<i>Dat.</i>	(to) a	einem	einer	einem
<i>Acc.</i>	a	einen	eine	ein

*Dat. den; Acc. die.* The same Plur. Endings in all Pronouns.

*Possessive pronouns* correspond with the indefinite article.

my	mein	meine	mein
thy, your	dein	deine	dein
his	sein	seine	sein
her	ihr	ihre	ihr
its	sein	seine	sein
our	unser	unsere	unser
your	euer	eure	euer
their	ihr	ihre	ihr
your	Ihr	Ihre	Ihr
not a, no	kein	keine	kein

The plurals of the possessive pronouns, and of *kein, e, sein*, take the terminations of the *plural* of the definite article.

The definite article is used instead of the possessive pronoun in cases like *Sie faltet die Hände, She folds her hands; Er verlor die Beine, He lost his legs*, because the possessor is evident enough.

pronoun takes *en* in all the cases of the Sing. and and the Acc. Sing. *fem.* and *neut.* in which it takes

after the above,      Nom. Sing. *er e es*  
    Accusative      *e es*

by any article, pronoun, &c., assume the terminations *nitive singular masculine and neuter*, in which, for

und ihrewegen (VI. A. 1) wäre das irdische (terrestrial) Leben wirklich eine so unfruchtbare (fruitless) Wiederholung (repetition) des Alten (p. 87, 1) wie (as) manche gedankenlose (thoughtless) Beurtheiler (judges) der Geschichte (History) glauben (to believe).

## EXERCISE XXII.

### Schluß. Conclusion.

Anders (different) ist es jedoch (however), wenn wir die geistigen (intellectual) Schätze (m. treasure) betrachten (to contemplate) welche die Literaturen der alten Indier (Hindoo) und Parsen (Parsee), wie die der Griechen (Greeks) und Römer (Romans), uns bewahrt (to preserve) haben und wenn wir es begreifen (to comprehend) wie (how) jene fast (almost) vergessenen (forgotten), uralten (most ancient) Ideen (f. idea) mittelbar oder unmittelbar (indirectly or directly) auf die geistigen Erzeugnisse (n. production) der neueren (modern) Nationen gewirkt (to act upon, to influence) haben. Vermittelt der neueren Sprachwissenschaft (philology) erkennen wir (to recognise) einen innigen (intimate) Zusammenhang (connection) jener uralten mit den neueren Sprachen. Weitere Studien (p. 37 d. §) werden einen ähnlichen (similar) Zusammenhang der dichterischen und philosophischen Gedanken (XVI. L. §) des hohen Alterthums (antiquity) mit denen (those) der jetzigen Zeit (present age) beweisen. Vor allen Dingen (above all things) werden wir erwägen (to consider) welche unendliche (infinite) Segnungen (blessing) die Worte der gottbegeisterten Dichter und Denker des alten und neuen Testaments für alle Zeiten über die ganze Menschheit ergossen (st. to shed) haben. In den dauernden (enduring) Werken des Geistes finden wir den endlichen (final) Zweck unserer endlichen (finite) Existenz. In ihnen ergreifen (to grasp) wir das Wahre und Ewige (p. 87, 1) wenn wir die

*schlechte* (base) *Wirklichkeit* (reality) *weltlicher* (worldly) *Dinge verlassen* (abandon).

(The pupil has always to state the tenses of the strong verbs given in the alphabetical list Sect. XXII. and marked "st." in the Exercises.)

## SECTION X.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVE.

1. Most adjectives (also participles: see Sect. XXV. D. 1, 2) can be used as nouns, but are then still declined as adjectives; as in the following instances: *der Gute*, the good man, (good people); *Die Gute*, the good woman; *Das Gute*, the good (all that is good); *Guter! m. Gute! f. good one, (persons)!* *Ein Armer*, a poor man; *Eine Arme*, a poor woman; — (with the indefinite article the neuter is rarely used.) — Pl. *Arme*, poor people; also those derived from proper names of places, (see p. 89, 7), which however are declined as nouns where used as such; *der* or *ein Pariser, Berliner, Edinburger*, the, or a Parisian, Berlin, Edinburgh man; feminine, *Die Pariserin, Berlinerin, Edinburgerin*.

The pupil must distinguish between adjectives used as nouns in the fem. gender, denoting female persons, and real derivative fem. nouns in *e* formed of adjectives (XV. B.); which latter are declined as nouns. Thus: *Der Fremde*, the stranger (man) has, as its fem. form, *Die Fremde* the female stranger and both are declined as adjectives; — but *Die Fremde* (sing.) foreign-land is a feminine substantive and as such like other fem. nouns remains unchanged.

2. After *Etwas* something, *Nichts* nothing, *viel* much, (a great deal), *wenig* little, (not much), the adjective becomes a neuter noun with the terminations of the neuter article; as, *Etwas Neues*, something new; *Nichts Gutes*, nothing good; *viel Schlimmes*, a great



deal of bad; wenig Angenehmes, not much that is agreeable.

3. The adjective, preceded by the definite article, is in poetry sometimes placed after the noun, in order to make it more impressive; as, An's Vaterland, an's theure schließ' dich an. Cling to thy dear fatherland. Das Meer, das wilde, läßt sich nicht gebieten. The wild sea obeys no command.

4. In poetry, the adjective before a neuter noun frequently loses the termination es in the nominative and accusative singular; as, Ein neu' Gesetz, instead of Ein neues Gesetz, A new law; Welch grausam Spiel! What cruel sport! and this even in the comparative and superlative degree; as, Mich treibt ein besser(es) Verlangen. A better desire prompts me. Mein erst(es) Gefühl sei Preis und Dank. Let my first feeling be praise and thanks.

5. When an adjective occurs after a personal pronoun it takes the same endings as after any possessive pronoun because the personal pronoun points out the cases; as, Ich armer Kerl! Poor fellow that I am! Dir, guten Kinde, To you, good child; Dich, liebes Herz, Thee, dear heart; Wir muntern Bursche, We merry fellows; Euch, lieben Leute, You, good people, also, Er dummer Kerl, stupid fellow you.

6. From proper names of nationalities adjectives are formed by changing the final e or er into isch; as, dänisch, Danish, from der Däne the Dane; preussisch Prussian, from der Preuße the Prussian; französisch French, from der Franzose the Frenchman; schottisch Scotch, from der Schotte the Scotchman; italienisch Italian, from der Italiener the Italian; römisch Roman, from der Römer the Roman; holländisch Dutch, from der Holländer the Dutchman, &c. &c. From der Spanier the Spaniard, is formed spanisch. Englisch English, and irisish Irish, are derived from the old names der Angle and der Ire, and not from the modern terms, der

Engländer and der Irländer. Deutsch German, originally teutisch, from Teut, has passed over into der Deutsche the German; ein Deutscher a German; polnisch Polish, is derived from Polen Poland.

7. From proper names of places adjectives are formed by the suffix *er*. These remain undeclined; as, Hamburger Rauchfleisch, Hamburg beef; Pariser Moden, Paris fashions; Berliner Witze, Berlin witticisms; whilst the declinable suffix *isch*, is used in referring to some ancient cities in their capacity of independent states, in the same way as in national adjectives; as, der Bremische Senat, the Senate of Bremen; das Hamburgische Gesangbuch, the Hamburg hymn-book; also "Berlinische Nachrichten," "The Berlin News."

8. From names of materials adjectives are formed by the suffixes *ern*, *n* or *en*; as, hölzern wooden, from the Plural Hölzer, timber; gläsern, crystal, from the plural Gläser, glasses; steinern, of stone, from Stein, stone; eisern, iron, from Eisen, iron; bleiern, leaden, from Blei, lead; wollen, wollen, worsted, from Wolle, wool; seiden, silken, from Seide silk; golden, of gold, golden, from Gold gold; silbern, of silver, from Silber, silver. Adjectives of this kind are not used predicatively, but the name of the material, with the preposition *von*, is employed; as, Der Ring ist von Gold. The ring is of gold. Der Shawl ist von Wolle. The shawl is of wool. In a figurative sense, however, there occurs, Er trägt sich sehr hölzern. He behaves very awkwardly, stiffly. Seine Züge schienen eisern. His features seemed of iron. These adjectives can be compared only when used figuratively.

9. From adverbs or prepositions adjectives are formed by the suffix *ig*; as, bisherig (der, die, das bisherige), from bisher hitherto; baldig, from bald soon; dässig and dortig of that place, from da and dort there; hiesig of this city, place, &c., from hier here; heutig to-day's, from heute to-day; gestrig yesterday's, from

gestern yesterday — (from morgen to-morrow, der morgende, &c. to-morrow's is formed) — jetzt the present, from jetzt just now; vorig the preceding (last), from the preposition vor before; diesseitig, jenseitig, from the prepositions diesseit on this side of, and jenseit on the opposite side of; der obige the above from oben above.

10. Derived from numerals are — einmalig, from einmal one time, only once; as, Ein einmaliger Versuch beweist Nichts. A trial made only once proves nothing; thus, zweimalig, from zweimal twice; dreimalig, from dreimal thrice; mehrmalig several times repeated, from mehrmals several times; vielmalig many times repeated, &c.

The adjectives mentioned under 9 and 10 can be used as attributes only.

### EXERCISE XXIII.

(On Section X.)

The figures refer to the different paragraphs of this Section.

**Aus kriegerischer Zeit. From Warlike Times.**

Braunschweig, den 7<sup>ten</sup> August 1870.

Geehrter Freund!

Ihren Brief vom 28<sup>ten</sup> des vorigen (9) Monats erhielt ich erst am gestrigen (9) Tage und will in meinem heutigen (9) Schreiben (writing) versuchen, die hiesigen (9) Zustände (state of affairs) unter den jetzigen (9) Umständen (circumstance) zu schildern (describe). Freilich (certainly) sind sie von den dortigen (9) wohl (probably) wenig (little)

verschieden (different) und wir armen (5) Correspondenten sind heut zu Tage (now a days) überhaupt (on the whole) übel daran (ill off). Wenn wirklich (really) Etwas Neues (2) geschieht (st.) so meldet (to announce) es der Telegraph und es ist Nichts Angenehmes (2) von Etwas Altem (2) zu reden (to talk) und Wenig Gutes (2) zu berichten (to report). Auch hört man nicht gerne (one does not like to hear) von viel Schlimmen (2).

Die Fremden (1 Note) haben fast (almost) Alle die hiesige Gegend (district) verlassen (st. to leave) und aus der Fremde (1 Note) sind Dienstpflichtige (1, liable to military service) von den diesseitigen (9) Regierungen (Government) zu den Fahnen (f. colours, banners) einberufen (to summon). Obwohl Handel (commerce) und Gewerbe (industry) schwer darniederliegen (lie heavily depressed), thut doch (nevertheless) der arme (1) wie der Reiche (1) gerne (willingly) Alles für das Vaterland, und der Deutsche (6) hat ein Recht, (right) auf solchen Patriotismus stolz zu sein.

Da die Ernte (harvest) gut ist und die ersten (first, most necessary) Lebensmittel (provisions) nicht theuer und bei (owing to) der holländischen (6) Neutralität (neutrality) sind wir mit batavischen (6) und andern Colonial-Waaren (goods) wohl besser versehen (provided), als die dortigen Gourmands mit braunschweiger (7) Würstchen (sausage), hamburger Rauchfleisch, (7) bremer (7) Cigarren und rheinischen (Rhenish) Weinen (wines) für welche sie jedoch (however) einen Ersatz (compensation) an bajonner (7) Schinken (ham) und feurigen (fiery) Burgunder (burgundy) finden. Sie werden jetzt keinen polnischen (6) und danziger (7) Weizen (wheat) sondern (but) russischen (6) einführen (to import). bis (until) die hiesigen Häfen (XVI. List 4) wieder offen (open) sind, was (which) nach den bisherigen (9) Erfolgen (success) unserer Waffen (f. arms) wohl nicht lange dauern (to last) wird. Sie werden gehört haben daß wir bei dreimaligen (10) Conflikten mit französischen Heeren (n. army) siegreich (victorious) gewesen sind und obgleich (although) Schiller's Wort "der Krieg, der Ungeheure" (monstrous) mehr auf den jetzigen Kampf (struggle) paßt (passen);

auf—to fit, to apply to), als auf jeden (any) früheren (former), wird es sich hoffentlich bald zeigen (sich zeigen, to show itself) daß auch dieser neue Götze (idol) vor dem die europäischen Völker (XVI List 5) sich gebeugt (sich beugen to bow) haben, und der jetzt Alles auf die eisernen (8) und bleiernen (8) Würfel (dice) gesetzt (setzen auf to stake on) hat, nicht auf goldenen (8) sondern auf thönernen (of clay) Füßen (m. foot) steht (st.)

In der Hoffnung (hope) einer baldigen (9) und erfreulichen (gratifying) Antwort (answer) von Ihnen verbleibe (remain) ich mit größter Hochachtung (high esteem) Ihr ganz ergebener (most faithfully)

S. M.

---

## SECTION XI.

### ON THE USE OF THE PRONOUNS.

#### A. THE INDEFINITE OR SUBSTANTIVE DEMONSTRATIVES.

a. The Indefinite or Substantive Demonstratives are **Dies** *this* and **Daß** *that*, used in pointing to persons, things or circumstances in the most general way; as, **Dies** ist er. *This is he.* **Daß** war sie. *That was she.* **Was** war **Daß**? *What was that?* **Was** soll **Daß** heißen? *What is the meaning of that?* and there is hardly any difference in their force, **Daß** being freely used in the sense of *this*. As they are not placed adjectively before the noun but are construed with the verb, they remain the same with any gender or number, almost like the adverbs **hier** *here*, and **da** *there*, to

which they bear a close affinity. Unlike the impersonal pronoun **Es**, (see p. 68, 5) they may be placed **before** all the persons Sing. and Plur. of the verb *sein* **to be**; as, *Dies bin ich, This is I; Daß warst du, That was you; Daß sind wir, This is we; Daß ist er, sie, That is he, she.* Examples: *Dies (hier) sind acht Äpfel und Daß sind zehn Birnen. These are eight apples and those are ten pears. Dies sind gute und daß sind schlechte Federn. These are good and those are bad pens.*

b. The Genitive, of the above, **Dessen**, the Dative **Diesem** or **Dem** and the Accusatives **Dies** and **Daß** are used with verbs and adjectives governing these cases (see Section XVIII.); as, *Ich erinnere mich Dessen, I remember (of) that; Bist du Dessen gewiß? Are you sure of that? Wir waren Dessen müde, We were tired of this; Kann man Dem (Diesem) nicht ausweichen? Can one not avoid that? Denken Sie Dem nach, Reflect upon that; Er ist Dem abgeneigt, He is averse to that; and besides with any preposition, particularly when the Demonstrative is referred to by a relative pronoun in the succeeding clause, in which case the relative is always "was" (or rarely one of its prepositional compounds, see D. 4), as, *Er beklagte sich wegen Dessen, was man ihm vorgeworfen hatte. He complained of (that) what he had been rebuked for. Er gab mir Nachricht von Dem, was geschehen war. He gave me intimation of (that) what had happened. Kümmer dich nicht um Daß, was dich Nichts angeht. Do not trouble yourself about (that) what does not concern you.* It will be seen that the Demonstrative cannot be omitted, when it is the Antecedent of the Relative **was**. (See Sect. XII. C. 1.)*

c. The prepositions stated p. 71, 2, as forming compounds with **daß**, (**da**) it are likewise joined to this Demonstrative which then has the principal accent. **Dies** *this*, is then sometimes represented by **hier**; as, *die'serhalb* or *de's'halb* and *de's'wegen* *on account of this (that)*; *hier'bei* *with* or *in doing this*, *da'bei* *with that*; *hier'mit* *with this*, *da'mit* *with that*;

demgemäß, dem'nach, dem'zufolge *according to this or that*; hier'von *of this*, da'von *of that*; da'für *for that, (this)*; hie'durch *through this*, da'durch *through that*; da'ran, da'rauf *on or upon that*; da'rum *for that (reason)*; da'rüber *about that*. The compounds of **Daß** *that*, can not be used as Antecedents of the Relative **was**, (See *b.*) but are extensively employed in rendering sentences like the following: *He thanked me for having warned him. He blamed them with having neglected their duty*, in which the present participles occur introduced by a preposition and with a subject different from that in the leading clause. In German they are expressed by two distinct clauses, the first of which contains the indispensable Demonstrative with the preposition; as, *Er dankte mir dafür, He thanked me for this*, whilst the second begins with the conjunction **daß** *that* and has the verb in a finite tense; as, *daß ich ihn warnte. Hence: Er dankte mir dafür, daß ich ihn warnte. He thanked me for warning him. Er tadelte sie deswegen, (on account of this) daß sie ihre Pflicht vernachlässigt hätten. He blamed them with having neglected their duty.* (Comp. Section XXV, D, on the use of Participles). When the two assertions of such sentences have the same subject, the second clause is generally rendered by the infinitive with **zu**; as, *Er begnügte sich damit seine Meinung auszusprechen. He remained satisfied with expressing his opinion.* Sentences of the latter kind, however, do not always require the demonstrative compound; as, *Er war angeklagt, gestohlen zu haben. He was charged with having stolen.* (See Sect. XXV, C, The Infinitive).

**Note.** If not referred to by a succeeding clause, the above compounds are generally at the beginning of the clause by which means they are distinguished from the same forms, representing the cases of "*it*" as, *Er ist hochmüthig geworden; da'rüber wundere ich mich nicht, aber ich staune über die Unterwürfigkeit seiner früheren Gegner. He has become haughty; at that I do not wonder, but I am astonished at the submissiveness of his former opponents.* Comp. with: *Ich wundere mich nicht darüb'er, aber ich bebaue es. I do*

*not wonder at it, but I regret it. Da'von hat er mir Nichts gesagt. Of that he has told me nothing.* Exercises on *b.* and *c.* will be found in the Sections referred to in the above.

## B. THE ADJECTIVE-DEMONSTRATIVES.

**REMARK.** As the Adjective Demonstratives, when used substantively refer by their gender with sufficient clearness to the noun implied, the Adjective Particle "*one*", used in such cases in English, is not expressed in German; as, *Ihr Bleistift ist schlecht dieser ist besser, Your pencil is bad this one is better.* *Dieses Messer ist stumpf, nehmen Sie jenes, This knife is blunt take that one.* Hier haben Sie mehrere Arten Hüte; ein Solcher kostet 3 Thlr., *Here you have several kinds of hats; such a one costs 9 shillings.*

1. (See p. 84). *Dieser, diese, dieses*, the neuter also "*dies*" (*der, die, das*, see p. 74, 1) *this, this one*, corresponds with the English when used with the noun; as, *dieser Mann, this man; dieser reiche Mann, this rich man; diese Familie, this family; dieses große Volk, this great nation; diese Leute, these persons, people;* or when the noun is understood: *Dieser war es. It was this one. Ich will dir diesen geben. I will give you this one.* Used substantively *dieser, diese, dieses*, often occurs with the force of *he, she, it*, and is also used for *der, (die, das) letztere* the *latter*, whilst *jener, jene, jenes* (see 96, 2) often stands for *der, (die, das) erstere* the *former*; as, *Wellington und Blücher erfochten den Sieg bei Waterloo; dieser erschien auf dem Kampfsplatz, nachdem jener sechs Stunden lang den wüthendsten Angriffen der Franzosen widerstanden hatte. Wellington and Blücher gained the victory of Waterloo; the latter appeared on the scene of combat, after the former had withstood for six hours the most furious charges of the French.* Ich fand Anna und Maria bei ihr, jene war aus Dresden, diese aus Leipzig gekommen. *I found*



*Anna and Mary with her the former had come from Dresden the latter from Leipzig.*

2. (See p. 84). *Jener, jene, jenes* (*der, die, das*) expresses the English *that, that one, yon, yonder*, only when an object is present to the senses, so that it can be pointed out without any farther explanation; as, *jener Baum, that tree yonder; jenes Gebäude, that building (yonder); jene Musik, that music (yonder)*. *Jener, e, es*, sometimes stands for *he, she, it* and frequently has the force of *der, die, das* *erstere* the *former* as stated above under *dieser*.

3. (See pp. 84 and 80, 9). *a. Der(jenige, die(jenige, das(jenige* (*der, die, das*, see Section XII) *that, one, he* (who), *she* (who), *that* (which), differs from *jener, e, es*, above, in this respect, that it is used when the object cannot be pointed at and thus requires to be farther explained, which is generally done by a *relative clause*; as, *Dies ist nicht der rechte Weg; der(jenige), welchen ich meine, führt grade nach der See. This is not the right road; that (one) which I mean, leads straight to the sea. Diese Feder kann ich dir nicht geben, nimm die(jenige), welche oben in meinem Schreibzeuge liegt. I can't give you this pen; take that (the one) which lies in my inkstand up stairs. Der(jenige), welcher dort kommt, kann es dir sagen. He who is coming yonder, can tell you. Die(jenige), welche Ihnen das gesagt hat, ist dafür verantwortlich. She who told you that, is answerable for it. Die(jenigen) Herren, welche aufstehen, sind für das Amendement. Those Gentlemen who stand up, are for the amendement. For the omission of this pronoun see p. 116, 3, Note.*

**Explanation.** The English "*he*", "*she*", (pl. "*those*") is the real demonstrative derjenige diejenige when it is the necessary antecedent of "*who*", as in "*he who stands before the king is the minister*", "*Derjenige, welcher vor dem Könige steht, ist der Minister*"; *she does not deserve the name of a mother who neglects her children*, Diejenige, verdient den Namen einer Mutter nicht, die ihre Kinder vernachlässigt.

But "**he**" "**she**" (pl. "**those**") is the **personal pronoun Er, Sie** when it is merely accidentally followed by a relative clause and in reality represents the name of a person **previously mentioned**, as *yesterday my friend B. arrived; he who never was here before is charmed with the beauty of the city*, *Western* kam mein Freund B. an. **Er**, der nie vorher hier war, ist entzückt von der Schönheit der Stadt; *Ask Mary for it. She who is rich can easily do it*, Bitte Marien darum. **Sie**, die reich ist, kann es leicht thun. In cases like the latter the Relative **der, die,** — not **welcher, e, es** must be used.

b. **Der = die = dasjenige** is not always the antecedent of a Relative but is often explained by a **genitive of possession or an adverbial expression**; as, *This hat is comfortable; that of my brother is too heavy for me*. Mariens Haar ist dunkler als das(jenige) ihrer Schwester. *Mary's hair is darker than that of her sister*. Diese Kinderstube ist geräumiger als die(jenige) in unser früherer Wohnung. *This nursery is more roomy than that in our former dwelling-house*. Seine Früchte schienen mir süßer als (diejenigen) aus meines Vaters Garten. *No fruits seemed to me sweeter than those out of my father's garden*.

c. The **Accent** in this demonstrative rests on the **der' die' das'** which is the real pronoun whilst **-jenige** is merely appended for the sake of distinctness and is often omitted as indicated in the examples above by the parentheses. The simple form **der, die, das** requires a particular stress to distinguish it from the relative pronoun; and when used substantively it must be declined according to Section XII, Shorter form; the enlarged forms **dessen, deren, derer, denen** being chiefly used in speaking of persons; as, *die Liebe dessen, den wir anbeten, the love of Him whom we worship*; *ein Freund derer, die wir ehren, a friend of those whom we honour*. Sei denen dankbar, welche dich strenge beurtheilen. *Be grateful to those who judge you strictly*.

d. The "**he who**", "**those who**", when used abstractly, i. e. not with reference to a particular person

or persons, but in the general sense of "*any man who*", "*any person who*", may in the NOMINATIVE be rendered in contraction by the indefinite Relative *Wer* with the force of "*whoever*" and in the same manner "*that which*," used abstractly, by *Was*, "*whatever*". Examples: *Wer Gott fürchtet, liebt die Menschheit. He who, (whoever) fears God, loves mankind. Wer Alles wirken will, wirkt Nichts. He who wants to do everything, does nothing. "Was Hänschen nicht lernt, lernt Hans nimmermehr." What little Jack does not learn, big John never learns. "Was dem Einen Recht ist, ist dem Andern billig." That which is due to the one, is due to the other.* The other cases of *wer* and *was* (see D, Interrog. Pron. p. 108, 3) occur in similar manner but have always the Demonstrative in the succeeding clause; as, *Werßen Hände rein sind, der erhebe sie; lit. Whose hands are clean, he may lift them, — Let him whose hands are clean, lift them. Wen die Noth treibt, der findet Mittel. He finds means whom necessity urges.*

EXERCISE XXIV. On A. and B. 1, 2, 3, of this Section,

Die englische und die deutsche Sprache. The English and the German Languages,

Jedermann (72, 5, *d.*) kennt den Unterschied (difference. XII, 3), in der Gestaltung (formation) der englischen Sprache und derjenigen (B. 3), des deutschen Volkes. Man (p. 72, 5 *e.*) weiß (XXII. Note 3 and the following portion of that Sect.) daß jene (B. 2), aus verschiedenen Sprachen zusammengesetzt (composed), diese auf heimatlichem Boden (m. soil) einheitlich (uniformly) und unvermischt (unmixed) erwachsen (st. to grow up) ist (explain "*ist*"). Diesenigen (B. 3), welche das Deutsche (the German language) wegen dieses Vorzuges (m. advantage) rühmen (to praise), bedenken (to consider) oft nicht wie viel (how much) das Englische durch jene geschichtliche (historical) Vereinigung (union)

mehrerer (several) Elemente an (in) Kraft und Schönheit gewonnen (st.) hat. Den meisten aber (most people) ist der wahre (true) Unterschied dunkel (obscure) oder unbekannt (unknown). Dieser liegt (st.) in dem Einflusse (m. influence) welchen jede (p. 84) der Sprachen auf die geistige (intellectual) Entwicklung (development) derjenigen übt (to exercise), welche sie als Muttersprache erlernen. Wer (p. 97, d.) dies kennen lernen (to experience) will, muß die Kinder beider Nationen zunächst (in the first place) beim buchstabiren (spelling) beobachten (to watch). Hier ist ein englisches und ein deutsches Kind. Jenes erlernt (to acquire) die Buchstaben (XVI. List 3); Dieses auch. Aber hiermit (A. c.) hat dieses zugleich die unveränderlichen (invariable) Laute (XVI. List 6) und mit diesen das Lesen (reading) selbst erlernt, während (whilst) jenes den ersten kleinen Schritt (step) auf einer Bahn (path) unendlicher (infinite) Mühsal (toil) gethan hat. Von dem was (A. b.) man im Englischen "*spelling*" nennt (to call) hat man im Deutschen keinen (p. 85) Begriff (idea), weil es höchstens (p. 125 B. 2) mehrere Zeichen (n. sign) für denselben (B. 4.) Laut, (wie in: mal, Maal, Mahl, — oder in sil, Vieh, viel), aber nie verschiedene Laute für dasselbe Zeichen giebt (es giebt, there are), wie im Englischen *plough, enough, though, through, thought, lough* oder in *are, fare, fall* und tausend ähnlichen (similar) Fällen (m. case). Wenn dies schon (already) das englische Kind zu einer großen Anstrengung des Gedächtnisses (n. memory) und zur geduldigen (patient) Unterwerfung (submission) an dasjenige gewöhnt, was ihm nicht erklärt (to explain) werden kann und wenn es ihm viele derjenigen Stunden kostet (costs), die das deutsche Kind dem freien Spiele (n. play) seiner Einbildungskraft (imaginative faculty) und der verständigen Betrachtung (intelligent contemplation) widmen (to devote) kann; ist damit (p. 93 c.) noch nicht Alles gethan. Zu dem (p. 93 d.), was der junge Britte in seiner unendlich complicirten und schwierigen (difficult) Orthographie zu überwinden (st. overcome) hat, kommt nun noch (yet) die größere Schwierigkeit der Ableitung (derivation) seiner Wörter aus den verschiedenen Sprachen, ohne deren

(of which) **Kenntniß** (f. knowledge) **er** gleichsam (as it were) ein **Fremder** (p. 87, 1.) in seinem eigenen (own) **Hause** bleibt. Auch **hierin** (p. 93 a.) übt er vorzugsweise (preeminently) das **Gedächtniß**, wo der **Deutsche** seinen **Geist** (intellect) in **leichten Schlüssen** (m. inference) entwickelt. Dem(jenigen) welchem dies nicht **klar** (clear) ist, werden folgende **Beispiele** (n. example) einleuchtend (plausible) sein. **Weg**, way; **bewegen**, to move; **Bewegung**, motion; **beweglich**, moveable agile. **Gehen**, to go; **sich ergehen**, to promenade; **entgehen**, to escape; **vergehen**, to pass away, to vanish, to perish; **vergänglich**, perishable; **Gang**, passage; **Ausgang**, exit, issue; **Eingang**, entrance; **Untergang**, ruin; **Uebergang**, transition; **Zugang**, access. **Kommen**, to come; **ankommen**, to arrive; **vorkommen**, to occur; **Abkunft**, descent; **Zukunft**, future; **Auskunft**, information; u. s. w., u. s. w. (p. 22). **Wer** (p. 98) die obigen **Vocabeln** (words) überblickt (to glance over), begreift (st. to comprehend) leicht die **Einfachheit** (simplicity) Dessen (p. 93 b.) was im **Deutschen** im **Vergleich** (n. comparison) zu dem (p. 93 b.) zu thun ist, was dem jungen **Engländer** in "Word Expositors" und "English Dictionaries" auferlegt (to lay upon) wird. Dem (p. 97) wird es auch **klar** sein, warum (why) die **Erziehung** (education) deutscher Kinder durchschnittlich (in the average) 2 bis 3 Jahre eher (sooner) beendigt ist (to finish) als diejenige englischer (p. 97 Note 1). Allerdings wird die **Bewunderung** (admiration) Dessen (p. 97, c.) groß sein der einen jugendlichen (juvenile) brittischen Helden **Shakespear** oder gar **Milton** analysiren (to parse) hört, und er wird nicht leugnen, daß mit dem, was ihr das Sprachmaterial aufnötigt (to force upon), zugleich eine Welt von Begriffen gewonnen wird. Doch dürfen wir die obigen **Thatsachen** (facts) der Aufmerksamkeit (attention) derer (p. 97, c.) empfehlen die bei der Verbesserung der Volksschulen ähnliches (similar p. 87, 1) zu erreichen wünschen; wie wir es (as) in Deutschland vermöge desjenigen Vortheils erreichen, den uns die Sprache selbst bietet.

4. See p. 84. **Dersel'be, diesel'be, dassel'be** (substantively sometimes selber, selbe, selbes, like the Art.)

*the same (he, she, it); as, Es war derselbe Mann. It was the same man. Wir hatten ein(en) und denselben Gedanken. We had one and the same thought. Ich bin derselben Meinung, I am of the same opinion. Ich that es aus demselben Grunde. I did it from the same reason.*

As stated p. 70 and 71 this Demonstrative extensively represents the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. pron. and especially the English "*it*" in all its cases, particularly when used with prepositions; as, anstatt desselben, *instead of it*; unweit desselben, *not far from it*; mit demselben, *with it*; von demselben, *of it*; durch denselben, *through it*; für denselben, *for it*; and sometimes for the sake of distinctness and euphony; as, Sie zeigte mir eine Statue; dieselbe (for sie) war von Rom gekommen. *She showed me a statue; it had come from Rome. Wenn Sie sich dieselben erwerben (for wenn Sie sie sich). If you acquire them for yourself. Er empfiehlt Ihnen denselben (for er empfiehlt ihn Ihnen). He recommends it to you.* (See Section XXX, C, Position of the objects.)

But besides it is used with advantage for the personal pronoun *er, sie es* in speaking of persons where the Engl. *he, she* &c. requires special interpretation, and in the same manner for the possessive pronoun; as, Er sprach von dem Regenten; derselbe sei der Ansicht (for er sei &c.). *He spoke of the regent; he (the regent) was of opinion. Sie begleitete ihre Mutter; dieselbe war leidend &c. She accompanied her mother; she (the mother) was suffering &c. Er reiste mit dem Grafen und dem Bruder desselben (or dessen Bruder). He travelled with the count and his (the count's) brother. Sie erzählte die Neuigkeit zuerst Marien und dann der Schwester derselben (or deren Schwester). She told the news first to Mary and then to her (Mary's) sister.*

5. See p. 84. *Aller, alle, alles*, the proper singular of *alle*, is limited in its application. It cannot be used with persons and means *any, all* rather than *every*; as, *Aller Anfang ist schwer. Any beginning is*

*difficult. Alle Gewalt geht vom Volke aus. All authority issues from the people; Alles Gute, everything good; Alles Wissen, any knowledge.*

**Note 1.** *Alles*, used substantively, *everything, all*, is always referred to by the Relative *was that*; as, *Alles, was ich habe, everything that I have. Alles, was du sagst, ist richtig. All that you say, is right.*

**Note 2.** The plural *alle all the*, does not require the article; *alle die* standing for *alle diejenigen all those*. (*Das All the universe*). See also p. 82, Note 2 and 3.

**Note 3.** *Alles &c.* occurs before possessives without any termination; as, *Alles mein Sehnen will ich, all mein Denken in des Letztes stillen Strom versenken, aber meine Liebe nicht. (Schiller.) All my longings, all my thoughts will I sink in the still stream of Lethe, — but not my love. Mit all seinem Fleiße und all seiner Mühe richtet er Nichts aus. With all his industry and labour he effects nothing.*

6. See p. 84. *Jeder, jede, jedes*, pl. *alle, each every*, also used substantively, is properly an indefinite numeral with pronominal force. It affects the adjective like any of the preceding pronouns; as, *jeder brave Mann, every upright man; jedes braven Mannes, of every upright man; jede schöne Stunde, every fair hour; jeder schönen Stunde, of every fair hour; jedes edle Weib, every noble woman; Pl. alle braven Männer, all upright men; alle schönen Stunden, all fair hours. Jeder, when preceded by the indefinite article, is treated like an adjective; as; ein jeder Betheiligte, every one concerned. Man kann nicht dem Rathe eines Jeden folgen. One cannot follow the advice of everybody.*

7. See p. 84. *Mancher, manche, manches* *many a*, is also used substantively, as in English; as, *Mancher glaubt Manches. Many a one imagines many a thing; manche Dinge, some things; manches Gute, many a good thing, quality.*

8. See p. 84. *a. Solcher, solche, solches* *such (like this)*, when preceded by the indefinite article, is declined like an adjective; as, *Ein solcher Krieg, Such a war; Eines solchen Mannes, Of such a man; Zu einer solchen*

*That, To such a deed.* When followed by the indefinite article, it loses the inflectional terminations, the article, alone being declined. In this form it is more significant, implying some distinguishing quality; as, *Solch eines Mannes, Of such (so able, &c.) a man; Zu solch einer That, To such a (heroic, ruthless &c.) deed; Pl. Solche Männer, Such men; Solcher Thaten, Of such deeds.* (Notice the indecl. adj. *deßgleichen* [Sing.], *dergleichen* [Plur.] *the like, like that.*

**Note 1.** "*Such*" preceding Adjectives, is in English used in two senses; *a.* as the real demonstrative, with the adjective rather parenthetically, when *such* means "*like this, that*" and is rendered by *solcher, e, es* or often *solch* without any ending; as, *such careless talk*, i. e. *such (careless) talk*, *solches* lose *Gerede* or *solch* lose *Gerede*.

*b.* *Such* often and less properly qualifies adverbially the adjective following it. There it has the force of "*to such a degree*" as in *I never heard such careless talk* i. e. *talk careless to such a degree.*

"*So*" (German *so*) ought to be used in these cases for "*such*" and it is by *so* that it must be rendered; as, *I never heard such careless talk*, *Ich habe nie so loses Gerede gehört.*

*b.* "*Such a*" — *as* etc.; when simply meaning "*like*" must be translated by *wie* omitting "*such*" altogether; as, *Such a country as Great Britain.* Ein Land wie Groß-Britanien. The phrases *there is such a place, &c.*; *as, there is no such a place &c. as* are rendered with the omission of *such* and *as* by "*es giebt*"; as, *Es giebt einen Ort, Mann &c.; Es giebt keinen Ort, Mann &c.*

*c.* "*Such as.*" *Such*, in connexion with *as*, when used before a verb, is rendered by *so*, the noun being turned into an adjective, or preceded by an adjective of intensity; as, *The violence of the storm was such as to make human exertions in vain.* So gewaltsam war der Sturm, or So groß war die Gewalt des Sturmes, daß menschliche Anstrengung vergebens war. In such cases the "*as to*" is always expressed by *daß*, as in, *I was so stupified that I could not speak.* So betäubt war ich, daß ich nicht sprechen konnte. If *such* in connection



with *as* precedes a noun merely as the Demonstrative, *as* is rendered by a relative pronoun; as, *Such man as are worthy*, *Solche Männer, die würdig sind*. (Comp. F. d. below.)

9. See p. 84. *Welcher, e, es*, as the Interrogative and Relative see p. 108, 1; and p. 113, F). *Welcher, welche, welches* occurs colloquially in the sense of *Etwas some*: as, *Wünschen Sie mehr Wein, hier ist noch welcher*. *Do you wish more wine, there is some here yet*. Its use however, is, better avoided, except after the adverb *irgend any at all* and then only in the plural; as, *Haben Sie irgend welche Ausichten?* *Have you any prospects at all?*

10. See p. 84. The Indefinito Numerals given in their plural forms under 10 p. 84, require no farther explanation with regard to their use.

But their singular forms are of great practical importance and the pupil should notice the following: *Ein anderer &c. another*, means *a different one*; the English *another* in the sense of "*one more*" being *noch Ein, eine &c.* (*den andern Tag, the next day; neulich, the other day.*)

*Einiger, e, es some* and *sämmtlicher, e, es the whole* can be used only before the names of materials or abstract nouns; as, *Mit einigem Fleiße und einiger Geduld kannst du Das Alles überwinden*. *With some diligence and patience you can overcome all that*. *Die Kinder hatten sämtliches Brod und sämtliche Milch verzehrt*. *The children had consumed the whole of the bread and the milk.*

*Viel much* and *wenig little* remain undeclined when denoting a single large or small quantity; as, *Er hat viel getrunken und wenig gegessen*. *He has drunk much and eaten little*; *mit wenig Wiß und viel Behagen, with little wit and much complacency*. (*Ein wenig, a little, a small quantity* remains unchanged). They are declined as adjectives after the definite article and the pos-

possessive pronouns; as, Das viele Prozeßiren hat sein wenigß Vermögen aufgezehrt. *The many litigations have consumed his little fortune.* For wenig little, in the sense of *limited*, gering may be substituted; von geringer Bedeutung, *of little importance.*

Vieles, *e. es*, however, assumes the terminations of the article when not a single large quantity, but the result of accumulation or frequency is implied; as, Vieles Gram und viele Sorge haben ihn gebeugt. *Much grief and care have bowed him down;* durch vieles Schütteln, *through a great deal of shaking.* The GEN. and DAT., however, occur without such significance; as, wegen vieler Arbeit, *on account of much work;* mit vielem Vergnügen, *with much pleasure.*

**Note.** No difference between *some* and *any* is expressed in German, as in the English, *Have you any books? I have some books.* They are generally omitted; as, Haben Sie Bücher? Ich habe Bücher. Geben Sie mir Brod. *Give me some bread.* Or, if they are rendered, etwas is used with the names of materials and abstract nouns or in referring to such, — irgend ein, *e.* plur. irgend welche, with persons and things, and irgend Einer, irgend Jemand, substantively with persons; as, Geben Sie mir etwas Geld. *Give me some money.* Ich hatte etwas or einigen Verdruß. *I had some annoyance.* Ich war etwas or ein wenig besorgt. *I was somewhat or a little concerned.* Wissen Sie irgend ein Mittel? *Do you know any remedy?* Gehen Sie zu irgend. einem Juristen. *Go to any lawyer.* Irgend Einer or irgend Jemand muß es gesagt haben. *Some one, some person must have said it.* Ist irgend Jemand hier gewesen? *Has any person been here?*

## C. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND sein, *e.*

Their declension, influence on the adjective &c. has been given in Section IX, p. 75, 3, 4, and p. 80, 7, p. 81, 12. Notice however:

*a. YOUR* is expressed in three ways: Speaking familiarly to *one* person by *Dein, deine, dein;* speaking familiarly to *several* by *Euer, eure, euer;* and speaking conventionally either to *one* or to *a number*, by *Ihr,*

**Ihre, Ihr.** Mein Kind, wo ist Dein Buch? *My child, where is your book?* Liebe Kinder, ich habe eure Bücher. *Dear children, I have your books.* Madam, hier ist Ihr Diener. *Madam, here is your servant.* Meine Herren, hier sind Ihre Pferde. *Gentlemen, here are your horses.* Where dependents are addressed with **Er** and **Sie (you)** the possessive is of course **Sein, e** and **Ihr, e (your.)** *Your Majesty, Highness &c. is* Eure Majestät, Hoheit &c.

**b.** The possessive pronouns, of course, agree in gender and case with the noun which they precede or refer to; as, mein Vater, *my father*; seine Mutter, *his mother*; unsre Kinder, *our children*; Gen. meines Vaters, seiner Mutter, unsrer Kinder &c.

**c.** The same is the case with the **substantive-possessive pronouns**; as, Dieser Garten ist der meinige (colloqu. meiner). *This garden is mine.* Ich habe meine Uhr nicht bei mir; leihe mir die deinige (colloqu. deine). *I have not my watch with me; lend me yours.* Die Meinigen werden erfreut sein die Ihrigen zu begrüßen. *My relations will be happy to salute yours.* Jedem das Seine (*suum cuique*). *To every one his due* (See p. 81, 12).

**d.** The **substantive-possessives** when used in the nominative are employed without article and terminations in poetical language and when referring to any indefinite pronoun; as, Der Pfeil, der von der Sehne flog, ist nicht mehr dein (for der deinige). *The arrow that flew from the bow-string, is no longer thine.* Noch ist dieß Bollwerk unser (for das unsrige). *As yet this bulwark is ours.* Sie wurde mein (for die meinige). *She became mine.* So lange ich dieses Reich mein nenne, *As long as I call these realms mine.* Wenn ich bedenke was einst mein war, *If I consider what once was mine.* Was Euer ist, soll Euer bleiben. *What is yours shall remain yours* (p. 80, 9).

**Note.** The possessive *ih* *her*, being identical with the dative *ih* of *ſie ſhe*, cannot be used for *der*, *die*, *daſ* *ih* *rig*; as, *Waſ ſie dir zeigt*, *iſt nicht daſ ih* *rig*. *What ſhe ſhows you iſt not herſ*.

**e.** *Kein*, *keine*, *kein* iſt a contraction of *nicht ein* *not a*, *no* and muſt be uſed not only where *no* and *not a* precede the noun in Engliſh; as, *no bread*, *kein Brod*; *not a word*, *kein Wort*; but even where “*not*” in Engliſh qualifies a *verb* having a noun with the indefinite article or the name of a material for its object; as, *Er hat mir kein Buch gegeben*. He has *not* given me a book. *Sie werden keine Umſtände haben*. You will *not* have *any* trouble. *Wir wollten keinen Wein trinken*. We did *not* wiſh to drink wine. *Er liebt keine Complimente*. He does *not* like compliments.

The contraction *Kein* iſt thus uſed for *nicht ein* becauſe the latter muſt be employed to expreſs *not one*; as, *Waren viele da?* *were there many there?* *Nicht ein Menſch*. *Not one* (*not a ſingle*) *perſon*. On the other hand, *Wir fanden keinen Menſchen dort*. We did *not* find a perſon there.

**f.** *Kein* takes the terminations of the definite article, Nom. *keiner*, *keine*, *keineſ* when uſed ſubſtantively, in the ſame manner as the numeral *Ein* *one* when referring to a preceding noun becomеs *einer*, *eine*, *eineſ*; as, *Wie viele Männer ſind da?* *How many men are there?* *Keiner*, *not one*. *Nur Einer*, *only one*. *Haben Sie einen Bleiſtift?* *Have you a pencil?* *Ich habe keinen*; *ich werde einen holen*. *I have none*, *I ſhall fetch one*. *Gieb mir eine Feder*; *ich habe keine*. *Give me a pen*, *I have none*.

*Keiner*, *e*, *eſ* occurs for *Niemand* *nobody*, *no one*, *none of them*, in the ſame way as *Einer*, *e*, *eſ* for *Jemand* *ſome perſon*, *ſome one*; as, *Keiner hat ihn geſehen*. *Nobody has ſeen him*. *Jemand hat eſ bemerkt*. *Some one has noticed it*.

## D. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

For the use of these pronouns as Relatives see this Section p. 113.

1. *Welcher, ? welche, ? welches, ? which, — ? what, — ?* as an Interrogative (of course not to be represented by the demonstrative *der, die, das*), agrees with its noun; as, *Welcher rechtlich denkende Mann — ? What right thinking man — ? Welche Person meinen Sie ? Which person do you mean ? Welches Lied wollen wir singen ? What song shall we sing ? —.*

It also occurs substantively especially with partitives; as, *Welcher von uns ? Which of us ? Welcher derselben ? Which of them ? Welchem von euch kann ich glauben ? Which of you can I believe ? also, Welcher war es ? Which was it ? Welche ist es ? Which is it ? Welchen haben Sie gebracht ? Which have you brought ?*

*Welch*(*er*) loses its terminations before the indefinite article; as, *Welch ein Leichtsin!* What frivolity! *Von welch einem Dämon bist du besessen!* By what demon are you possessed! *Welch ein Schauspiel!* What a spectacle! (*Was für ein* is sometimes substituted for *welch ein what a*, but ought to be used in the sense of *what sort of*, sees below).

*Welcher* &c. *some, any*, see p. 104, 1.

2. *Wer ? who ?* is a substantive-interrogative. and refers to persons indefinitely. '*Wer ist da ? Who is there ? Wessen or wem ist das Bild und die Unterschrift ? Whose is the image and superscription ?*' *Wem gehören diese Sachen ? To whom do these things belong ? Wen suchen Sie ? Whom are you seeking ?*

### 3. DECLENSION OF *Wer ? Who ?* and *Was ? What ? Which ?*

N. *Wer* who.

N. *Was* which.

G. *Wessen* or *wem* of whom, G. *Wessen* or *wes* of what. whose.

D. *Wem* (to) whom.

D. is wanting; (see 4 below).

A. *Wen* whom.

A. *Was* which.

*Wer* never forms compounds with prepositions; *wegen* *wessen?* *on account of whom?* *mit wem?* *with whom?* *wem gegenüber?* *opposite whom?* *für wen?* *for whom?*

4. *Was* *what* (*wo* *is where it*) on the other hand, has the prepositions, stated in p. 71, 2, appended to it; as, to the genitive *weshalb* and *weswegen* (or *weshalb*, *weswegen*) *on account of what, on what account?*

As the dative of *was* is wanting, the prepositions requiring this case, as also those governing the *Dat.* and *Acc.* or merely the *Acc.* are appended to the original root *wo*, (*wo* *where*; as, *wowen* *of what, womit* *with what, wherewith. wofür* (also *für was*) *for what*; the *r* being preserved before if the prepositions beginning with a vowel; as, *woraus* *out of what, woran* *on what, worauf* *upon what, upon which, whereupon, worin* *in what, in which, wherein, worüber* *about what, about which.*—*Worum* (*what/for*), *wherefore, why*, has more recently changed into *warum*.

The substitution of *Was?* for *Warum?* *why?* although frequently met with even in *Goethe's* and *Schiller's* works, (*Was legt ihr Hand an diesen Mann?* *Why do you lay hands on this man?*) is colloquial and cannot be recommended.

Such prepositions, governing the *Gen.* and *Dat.*, as do not enter into composition, (see p. 71. 2) render a noun in explanation necessary; as, *Anstatt welches Dinges?* *Instead of which thing?* *for instead of what.* *Unweit welches Ortes?* *In the neighbourhood of what place?* *Außer welchem Umstände?* *Besides which circumstance?* *for except what?* *Welchem Rathe zuwider?* *Contrary to which advice?*

**Note** The above compounds of *wo* are also employed *relatively*; but are only from *carelessness* substituted for the cases of the relative *welcher*, *e*, *es* *which*, preceded by prepositions, as the latter pronoun is not deficient in its cases and has a regular dative;

as, Das Buch von welchem (not wovon) Sie mir sagten, *The book of which you told me*; Die Gegend in welcher (not worin) die Stadt liegt, *The district in which the town lies*, —.

5. Was für ein, eine, ein? *What sort of, what kind of?* as, Was für ein Baum war es? *What kind of a tree was it?* Was für eine Uhr wünschen Sie? *What sort of a watch do you wish?* This form occurs substantively; as, Was für Einer war es? *What sort of a man was it?* Was für eine haben Sie gekauft? *What sort of a (fem.) thing have you bought?*

Für is sometimes awkwardly separated from was; as, Es soll mich wundern, was er am Ende noch für eine Rolle spielen wird, for was für eine Rolle &c. *I shall wonder what part he may yet act in the end*, This, of course, is not to be recommended.

The substitution of Was für ein, e &c. for welcher ein, e &c. what a, is, although very common, likewise objectionable, except in the plural, where it is needed; as, Was für Streiche! what pranks!

6. Was — Alles (separated by the Nom. and any simple personal pronoun in the clause) occurs colloquially, meaning *what a lot of, what a variety of things*; as, Seht, ihr Kleinen, was ich euch Alles mitgebracht habe. *Look you little ones, what a lot of things I have brought for you.* Es ist erstaunlich, was er Alles in seinem Laden hat. *It is astonishing what a variety of things he has in his shop.* Was hat sie dir denn Alles gesagt? *What all did she tell you?*

7. Was (Wer, Wann, Warum, Wie, Wo) — auch immer, — nur. In all these Combinations, which partly refer to E below, auch and auch immer answer to the English *ever, so ever* whilst nur may be rendered by *"I wonder,"* —. They all are Relative, (the clauses in which they occur being dependant ones), whilst nur is also used interrogatively *i. e.* in direct questions. The adverbial portions auch, auch immer and nur are separated from the opening Interrogative or Relative by the nominative of the clause and any personal or demonstrative pronoun object. Ex. Was der Mann auch beabsichtigt, — what (so) ever the man intends; womit er die auch immer droht; — what (so) ever he

threatens you with; — Mit *welchen* Gründen er uns auch begegne, — With whatever arguments he may meet us; Wo er auch sei, where ever he may be, *with* nur, — was er nur denkt *I wonder* what he thinks, what does he think. Wer es nur gesagt hat?; as, I wonder who has tol it — wer kann es ihm nur gesagt haben, who *can* have told him.

(Other examples on this head are given under E below along with wann, wie, wo etc.)

## E. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE ADVERBS.

a. Wann? *when? at what particular time, date, hour?* as, Wann war es? *When was it?* Wann essen Sie? *When do you dine? When do you take supper?* Kommen Sie, wann es auch sein mag. *Do come, whatever time it may be.* Wann er nur damit fertig werden wird! *I wonder when he will have done with it!*

warum? *why?* is simply a compound of *was* and *um* see above p. 100, 4.

b. Wie? *how? in what manner?* as, Wie alt sind Sie? *How old are you?* Wie heißen Sie? (*How are you named?*) *What is your name?* Wie es auch damit sein mag, — *However that may be.* — Wie sehr ich dies auch wünsche, — *However much I wish this.* — Wie lange es nur dauern wird? *I wonder how long it will continue?*

c. Wo? *where? in what place?* Woher? *whence? from what place?* Wohin? *whither? to which place?* as, Ergreift ihn, wo ihr ihn auch findet! *Seize him, wherever you may find him!* Wo er nur bleibt! *I wonder where he tarries?* Woher kommen Sie? *Where are you coming from?* Woher wissen Sie das? *Whence do you know that?* Wohin gehen Sie? *Where are you going (to)?* Wohin wollen Sie? *Whither bound?* (Comp. Section XXIX).



## EXERCISE XXV.

## On D., E. F. And Other Portions Of This Section.

The pupil has to explain in each case the interrogative or relative construction of the clause.

**Ein zudringlicher Beamter. An officious Official.**

Wer klopft? Wer ist da? Warum (E. a.) stören (to disturb) Sie mich so früh (early)? Was giebt's (what is the matter)? Was ist denn die Uhr (what o'clock is it)? Es ist halb Vier ( $\frac{1}{2}$  past 3) und Sie werden gleich (immediately) sehen, was es giebt. Wer sind Sie denn? Sie werden bald erfahren (soon learn) wer ich bin. Sagen Sie mir erst was Sie in Ihrem Koffer (trunk) haben. Was geht Sie das an (what does that concern you)? Ich frage: was haben Sie in Ihrem Koffer? In welchem denn? Hier sind zwei (two). Desto besser (all the better)! Was für (D. 5) Sachen haben Sie darin (p. 69, 1)? Mit welchem Rechte (right) fragen Sie darnach (93 c.) Von wem (D. 2) werden (pas. V.) Sie geschickt? Nun (well); Ich bin der Polizeisergeant (police sergeant) V. Die Polizei schickt mich; und nun (now) wo (E. c.) ist Ihr Paß (pass-port)? Wie, wenn ich nun keinen (107 c.) hätte? So verhafte (arrest) ich Sie. Sie sind mir verdächtig (suspicious). Sie sind in der Nacht angekommen und Ihre Koffer sind so schwer (heavy) sagt der Hausknecht (the Boots). Woher (whence) kommen Sie? wohin wollen Sie (gehen understood? keiner (p. 107, f.) weiß es, kein Mensch kennt Sie. Welch ein (D. 1) Unsinn (nonsense)! Aber machen Sie sich keine Mühe; ich werde selbst zum Bürgermeister (Burgomaster) kommen. Und wann (E. a.)? Wenn ich werde aufgeschlafen (st. to sleep sufficiently) und Kaffee getrunken (to breakfast) haben. Welche Dreistigkeit (boldness)! wer kann wissen wann Sie abreisen wollen und ich muß wissen worin (D. 4.) der Inhalt Ihrer Koffer besteht (to consist)? Ich soll Ihnen doch (surely) nicht aufzählen (enumerate) Was ich Alles (D. 6) darin habe? Was Sie mir auch (D. 7) immer

(D. 7) sagen, und wie Sie sich auch (D. 7) sträuben (sich sträuben to resist) ich weiß woran (about D. 4) ich bin. Also (therefore)! wo ist der Schlüssel (key)? Ach Sie langweilen mich (you are very tiresome) ich weiß nicht in welcher Tasche (pocket) er steckt und werde deshalb (A. e.) nicht aufstehen (to rise). Dann breche ich den Koffer auf (aufbrechen to break open). Nehmen Sie sich doch in Acht (pray take care of yourself)! Es könnten (might) Bomben darin sein. Warum nicht gar (what you say)! Nitroglyzerin-Bomben sage ich. Himmel (heavens)! für wen? Für wen anders (else) als für den Bürgermeister. Und jetzt (now) machen Sie daß Sie fort kommen (make off) sonst (or else) schieße (st.) ich in die Koffer und Sie fliegen (st.) in die Luft (air). Ich bin schon auf der Treppe (stair). Hören Sie (I say)! grüßen Sie (give my compliments) die Frau Bürgermeisterin und sagen Sie, ihr Vetter ist angekommen und bringt ihr ein paar Scheffel (a few bushels) reife Äpfel (List 4)

## F. THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

All the pronouns adverbs and combinations given above under D. and E. are also used **relatively**, and then introduce **dependent clauses**, the finite verb of which is placed at the end, (the Auxiliary being last of all).

**Note 1.** Auch (see p. 110, 7) *ever* is sometimes omitted in relative combinations, but is easily understood; as, *Wie unangenehm es uns Allen (auch) war, wir mußten es dulden. However disagreeable it was for us all, we had to bear it.*

The Relative pronouns are **Wer, who, who (so) ever, Was, what** (Their declension see p. 108, 3) and **welcher, welche, welches, who, which, that** (its declension see p. 84) or **der, die, das** (its declension see p. 117).

Also the prepositional Compounds of **Was, wo-  
raus, worin, womit, wovon** (p. 109, 4) are used relatively.

a. The Relative agrees only in gender and num-

pear like *the woman which son* &c.; — *Der Mann, welches Kind* &c. would appear like *The man which child* &c. and to avoid this awkwardness the genitive *dessen*, *deren* of the shorter form (see p. 117) is invariably substituted for the regular genitive, being for the sake of distinctness enlarged by the suffix *en*, and *des* receiving a second *f* to preserve the shortness of its vowel.

As to the rest of the cases, the use of the shorter form is optional. (See, however, p. 117; B, *a, b, c, d.*)

## SECTION XII.

### *Der, Die, Das* as THE SHORTER FORM OF PRONOUNS.

A. 1. *Der, die, das*, the original Demonstrative (see p. 74, 1) is still very extensively used in place of other demonstratives, and is then always accented. When used without a noun it is enlarged in the Gen. singular and in the Gen. and Dat. plural by the suffix *en*, in order to prevent its being confounded with the mere article; — *des* receiving another *f*, merely to preserve the shortness of its vowel.

2. As appears from Section XI. B. p. p. 95—101, most Demonstratives represent the English personal pronoun and hence the shorter form frequently occurs with the force of *he, she, it, they* &c.

3. But of particular importance is its use as a definite relative, in which capacity the pupil will readily recognize it, seeing it preceded by the comma (see p. 19. *d*) and finding the finite verb placed last in its clause; as, *Hier ist der Mann, der das Geld gefunden hat.* *Here is the man who has found the money.* As a Relative, *der, die, das* is not accented.

**Note.** Cases even occur in which the shorter form represents at once the Relative and its demonstrative Antecedent; the Demonstrative being omitted, and the shorter form introducing the dependent clause (see p. 96, 3.); as, *Der hier ruht, war mein Freund. He who rests here was my friend. Segnet, die euch fluchen. Bless them that curse you.* Such contractions imply the identity in form of the two pronouns; as, *Segnet die(jenigen), die euch fluchen.*

### Singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>dessen (deß),</i>	<i>deren,</i>	<i>dessen.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß.</i>

### Plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>die, who, which &amp;c.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>deren, of whom, whose, but derer, of those.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>denen, to whom, to which.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>die, whom, which.</i>

It will be seen that this shorter form is used for *this one, that one, he, she, it, who, which, that.* Its use instead of the full forms is optional,\* except in the following cases.

**B. It must be used instead of the relative welcher, e, es —**

**a. Always in the genitive, both singular and plural, so that there exists in practice no genitive singu-**

\* Strictly speaking the distinction made by careful writers between "*who*", "*which*" and "*that*" ought also to be observed between *welcher, e, es* and *der, die, daß*, which latter, like the English "*that*" is originally a *demonstrative*, singling out an individual rather than a general attribute; as, *Man who is mortal —, Der Mensch, welcher sterblich ist —; but The person that brought the news —, Der Mensch, der die Nachricht brachte —; Books which are not always useful —, Bücher, welche nicht immer nützlich sind —; Books that might have informed me on this subject —, Bücher, die mich über diesen Gegenstand hätten unterrichten können (i. e. such books as etc.) —.* It will do the pupil no harm to observe the above distinction, but he must understand that it is far from being recognised by most writers and that tastes and regard for euphony have done much to obliterate it.

lar or plural of the *Relative* welcher, -e, -es; (see p. 115, f) as, Der Mann, dessen (never welches) ich erwähnte; *The man of whom I made mention*; Die Dame, deren (never welcher) Sohn, *The lady whose son*; Das Weib, dessen (never welches) Kind, *The woman whose child*; die Bäume, deren (never welcher) Markt, *The trees, the pith of which*. From these instances it will be observed that this genitive must always be placed before the complement instead of after it as is done in English: as, Der Berg, an dessen Fuße, *The mountain at the foot of which*; Die Blumen, deren lieblicher Duft, *The flowers, the charming smell of which*, — and that it implies the article like the English Possessive *whose*.

When an Adjective precedes the noun, thus used with the Relative, it points out by its terminations the gender and case; as, Die Blumen, deren süßer Duft —, *The flowers the sweet scent of which* —; Der Berg, an dessen waldigem Fuße —, *The mountain at the wooded foot of which* —; Marie, deren ältestes Kind —, *Mary whose eldest child* (see foot of p. p. 84, 85.)

b. As the German Relative has the form of the third personal pronoun, and always governs the verb in the third person, it is unfit by itself to render phrases like "*I who am his friend, have warned him*. — *Thou who art our father, hast given us Thy law*. — *You who are children, cannot understand that*," in which the English *who* governs the verb in the first and second persons and thus maintains the desirable conformity of speech. In order to preserve this conformity in German, the personal pronoun corresponding with the Antecedent is re-introduced into the relative clause, being placed directly after the Relative, and made to govern the verb instead of it. This is done in the first and second persons, both in the Sing. and Plur. and in this kind of clauses the Relative must be used in its shorter form, (the reason for which appear from the footnote p. 117), as, Ich, der ich sein Freund bin, habe ihn gewarnt. (See above.) Du, der Du unser

Vater bist, hast uns Dein Gesetz gegeben. Ihr, die ihr Kinder seid, könnt das nicht verstehen. Wir, die wir den Tod nicht fürchten, wollen das Leben gewinnen. *We who do not fear death, seek to win life.* Unser Vater, der Du bist im Himmel. *Our father who art in heaven.*

c. The shorter form is required after **Jemand** *somebody*, **irgend Jemand** *anybody*, **Niemand** *nobody* and **Jedermann** *everybody*; as, **Jemand**, der es sah. *Some person who saw it.* **Jedermann**, dem du den Fall vorstellst. *Everybody to whom you present the case.* **Etwas** *something, any thing*, is better followed by **das** than by **was**; as, **Etwas**, das dich erfreuen wird. *Something that will please you.*

d. The indefinite pronouns **Alles** *everything*, **Etwas** *something*, **Manches** *many a thing*, **Nichts** *nothing*, and **Vieles** *many things*, which otherwise are referred to by **was** *that*, require the genitive **dessen** instead of **wessen** as stated above, (F, THE REL. PRON. p. 114, Note 2).

C. More or less optionally the shorter form occurs as partly stated in Section XI, A and B —

1. For the indefinite substantive Demonstratives **Dies** *this* and **Das** *that* in the Gen. and Dat. (see p. 93 b); as, **Er** erwähnte **Dessen** nicht. *He did not make mention of this (that).* **Er** ist **Dessen** nicht schuldig. *He is not guilty of that.* **Ich** kann **Dem** nicht beistimmen. *I cannot agree to this (that).* **Ich** weiß nichts von **alle** **Dem**. *I know nothing of all that.*

It must be remembered that certain prepositions, stated p. 71, 2, enter into composition with **Das**, (**deswegen** *on account of that*, **damit** *with this, that &c.*); but even with those prepositions **Dessen** and **Dem** must be used when they are the antecedents of the Relative **was**; as, **Ich** bedaure ihn wegen **Dessen**, **was** er zu leiden hat. *I pity him on account of what he has to suffer.* **Ich** bin zufrieden mit **Dem**, **was** Sie mir geben. *I am contented with (that) what you give me.* (**nach Dem** *after that*, **demnach** *according to that*).

**Note.** *Das* occurs as an expression of contempt used of persons with the force of *that sort of creatures*; as in *Schiller's Wallenstein*: *Ei, Das muß immer faulen und fressen!* (The soldier saying of the starving peasantry) — *Why, that set must always be guzzling and guttling*; or in *Tell*: *Das schlenkert wie die Schnecken.* *These sluggards are crawling like snails.*

2. The shorter form is used for *dieser, e, es this one* and *jener, e, es that one* (see p. 95, 1. 2.), particularly with the adverbs *hier here*, and *da, dort there*; as, *Der hier ist mit dem dort nicht zu vergleichen.* *This one is not to be likened to that one.* *Geh zu der dort;* *die wird es dir geben.* *Go to that one (her yonder); she will give it you.* *Gehen Sie den Weg hier; der dort ist nicht der rechte.* *Go this road; that yonder is not the right one.* (The Gen. *dessen* is here less usual).

3. The shorter form is used for *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige that (which), he, she (who)*. Here the enlarged forms *dessen, deren*, Gen. Plur. *derer of those*, Dat. *denen*, are used only substantively in reference to persons. (See pp. 96, 3. 97 c.)

In speaking of things, the forms of the article pronounced with a certain stress, suffice. The full forms *desjenige, denjenigen, denjenigen*, are preferred where distinctness requires it. As an illustration we give the harangue to the Bastards sword from „*der Eid*“ by *Herder* in which the shorter form occurs both demonstratively and relatively:

*Werth wird dessen, dem du dienstest,*

*Der sein, dem fortan du dienest.*

*Worthy of him, whom thou servedst,*

*Will he be whom thou shalt henceforth serve.*

4. The shorter form stands for *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe the same, he* (see p. 100, 4); as, *Suchen Sie Herrn N.? — Den finden Sie nicht zu Hause.* *Do you seek Mr. N.? You will not find him in.* *Ich suche Frau N. — Die ist ausgegangen.* *I seek Mrs. N. — She has gone out;* also with the force of a possessive; as,

Ich sah ihn mit Georg und dessen Bruder. *I saw him with George and his (George's) brother.* Er war mit seiner Frau und deren Schwester dort. *He was there with his wife and her (the wife's) sister.*

As *der*, *die*, *dasselbe* is extensively employed for *er*, *sie*, *es* *it*, the shorter form likewise expresses the third personal pronoun, particularly in the **genitives**; as, Ich war dessen nicht gewahr. *I was not aware of it.* Die Stadt hat viele Kirchen; jede Confession hat deren mehrere. *The city has many churches; each denomination has several of them* (see p. 71, 2.) — With **prepositions** not entering into composition with *da* (see p. 71, 2), the full form is preferable; as, Sein Haus liegt an dem Plage und meine Wohnung war demselben gegenüber. *His house is situated in the square, and my lodgings were opposite it.*

#### EXERCISE XXVI. On Section XII.

The pupil has to ascertain without the aid of figures the nature and meaning of the pronouns given in the exercise of which a written version is desirable.

#### Gottes Liebe. God's Love.

Der, dessen Wille<sup>1</sup> Deinen Sinnen<sup>2</sup>  
 Des Daseins Wunderwelt<sup>3</sup> enthüllt<sup>4</sup>,  
 Der läßt<sup>5</sup> Dich auch die Kraft gewinnen<sup>(\*)</sup>  
 Ihm nah<sup>6</sup> zu sein, der sie<sup>7</sup> erfüllt<sup>8</sup>

Der Gott, der Dir den Geist beschieden<sup>9</sup>,  
 Der ist's, der ihn mit Freiheit<sup>10</sup> krönt<sup>11</sup>.  
 Den rufe an<sup>12</sup>, Dem dank' den Frieden,<sup>13</sup>  
 Der mild<sup>14</sup> den Kampf<sup>15</sup> der Welt versöhnt<sup>16</sup>.

Denn, was<sup>17</sup> der Menschheit<sup>18</sup> heil'ge<sup>19</sup> Lehrer  
 Von seiner Liebe offenbart,<sup>20</sup>



Das bleibt ein ewig<sup>21</sup> Erbtheil<sup>22</sup> derer,  
In deren Brust<sup>23</sup> sie lebend<sup>24</sup> ward<sup>25</sup>.

Die dürfen<sup>26</sup> denen es verkünden,<sup>27</sup>  
In denen nicht die Liebe thront<sup>28</sup>  
Sie,<sup>29</sup> deren Flamme<sup>30</sup> zu entzünden<sup>31</sup>,  
Deß<sup>32</sup> Werk ist, der im Lichte<sup>33</sup> wohnt<sup>34</sup>.

H. W.

<sup>1</sup>(XVI List 3), <sup>2</sup>m. sense, <sup>3</sup>f. world of wonders, <sup>4</sup>for enthüllt hat has unveiled (In poetry, the auxiliary which ought to be at the end of a dependent clause is often omitted as it is readily premised), <sup>5</sup>from lassen st. XXI 3 to cause to, <sup>6</sup>near say to *draw nigh to*, <sup>7</sup>referring to Wunderwelt f., <sup>8</sup>to fill, <sup>9</sup>from bescheiden st. to grant as in 4), <sup>10</sup>freedom, <sup>11</sup>to crown, <sup>12</sup>anrufen to invoke, <sup>13</sup>(XVI List 3), <sup>14</sup>gently, mildly, <sup>15</sup>conflict, <sup>16</sup>to reconcile, <sup>17</sup>(p. 97 d), <sup>18</sup>holy (p. 21, THE APOSTROPHE), <sup>19</sup>m. teacher, <sup>20</sup>to reveal (as in 4), <sup>21</sup>everlasting (p. 88, 4), <sup>22</sup>n. inheritance, <sup>23</sup>(XVI List 2), <sup>24</sup>living, alive, <sup>25</sup>ward, *became*, preserved in the singular only, is the more correct and more powerful Imperfect of *werden* (see XXII), <sup>26</sup>(XXIII §), <sup>27</sup>to make known to, <sup>28</sup>to be enthroned, <sup>29</sup>referring to Liebe, <sup>30</sup>f. flame, <sup>31</sup>kindle, <sup>32</sup>for dessen, <sup>33</sup>n. light <sup>34</sup>to dwell.

## SECTION XIII.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

1. The modification of the vowel (a into ä, o into ö, u into ü), similar to the English *old elder eldest*, is, as of derivation in general, (See Sect. V) a characteristic feature of the Comparison of primitive, monosyllabic adjectives and adverbs.\* Practically it is limited to the following;

\* The author would direct attention to some facts affecting the established theory of modification. This theory is, that the vowel *i* (in some languages *u*) in the suffix, is the organic cause of the

alt (älter, ältest), old	flug, clever
arg, wicked	krumm, curved, crooked
arm, poor	kurz, short
bläß, pale	lang, long
dumm, stupid	lange, (adv.) a long time
fromm, good, pious	nah, (näher, nächst) nigh, near
glatt, smooth	oft, often
groß (superl. größt) big, tall	roth, red
grob, coarse	scharf, sharp
hart, hard	schwach, weak
hoch, (höher, höchst), high, tall	schwarz, black
jung, young	stark, strong
kalt, cold	warm, warm.

In a few other monosyllables the modification is doubtful; of *gesund sound, well, healthy, wholesome*, *gesünder, gesündest* is more common than *gesunder &c.*; *bang anxious apprehensive* has both *bänger, bängst* and *banger, bangst*; the same in *blanz burnished shining* *blänzer, blänzt* and *blanzer, blänzt*. Of *zart tender, delicate*, *Goethe* forms *zarter, zartest* but this is rather uncommon. All other monosyllables do not modify the vowel; partly because they had originally no comparison; such as *war true, falsch false, voll full*; partly because their meaning is not most primitive, or their vowel has undergone other changes.

modification of the root-vowel. Thus the terminations of comparison *ize, izo, ist's, ist* in the adjectives of the Gothic and old High-German, are held to be the cause of the subsequent modification of these adjectives. But the fact is that these terminations failed to affect the root-vowel during the whole period of the old High-German, from the 6<sup>th</sup> to the 13<sup>th</sup> century, whilst from the very beginning of this time the modified *a* occurs in the plurals of primitive nouns and even in such, as *lempir lambs, telit valleys*, which J. Grimm, Vol. II., p. 270, thinks likely to have been formed in analogy with the Comparative of adjectives. This discrepancy and farther the observation of the effect of climatic influences on vowels (which in a similar manner may have produced modification in the ancient Northern, Baktrian), embolden the author to suggest the possibility of modification having been received into German from the ancient and extensively modifying Norse, (Frisian, Angle-Saxon &c.) as a convenient means of inflection, first in primary nouns, and afterwards in the degrees of adjectives it is recognisable as primary by the *i* in their terminations.

All adjectives of more than one syllable are derivatives and as such *do not* modify the vowel.

Irregular Comparison occurs only in the adjectives gut, hoch, nahe, viel, wenig and in the adverbs bald and gern. (See E. p. 127).

2. The terminations of comparison are, even in adjectives of many syllables, always *er* in the Comparative, and *st* or *est* in the Superlative, (the *e* being euphonic after *d. t. f.*; as, *holdest, breitest, festest, leifest*).

Examples of the degrees of comparison used predicatively:

warm *warm*, wärmer *warmer*, (am) wärmst(en) *warmest*; grob *coarse*, gröber *coarser*, (am) größt(en) *coarsest*; jung *young*, jünger *younger*, (der) jüngst(e) *the youngest*.

(For the *am*— *sten* see below Relative Superlative).\*

A. 1. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES  
add to the terminations of comparison those of declension; (see pp. 84, 85) as, ein wärmerer Tag, *a warmer day*; das wärmste Wetter, *the warmest weather*; des größern Theiles, *of the greater part*; dem jüngsten Kinde, *to the youngest child*; (Notice p. 88, 4.)

Any degree of comparison may be used in the **attributive form** without a noun following it, if the noun to which it refers is mentioned before or after it; as, Unter den Königen Englands war Richard III der schlechteste und Karl I der unglücklichste (König). *Among the kings of England Richard III was the most wicked and Charles I the most unfortunate*; or, Richard III war der schlechteste und Karl I der unglücklichste König Englands. *Richard III was the most wicked and Charles I the most unfortunate king of England*.

2. After the indefinite article the Superlative is used only in a limited sense; as, Ein glücklichster Tag, *a happiest day (in one's life)*; Ein liebster Freund, *a dearest friend*. The English Superlative, *a most happy, a most dear*, must be expressed by ein sehr glücklichster, ein sehr theurer; as, Ein sehr angenehmer Tag, *a most agreeable day*. (See p. 127, D.)

\* It is needless to give a list of adjectives which from their meaning do not admit of comparison.

3. **Compound Comparison** is as foreign to the German Language as it is to the Saxon part of the English. (See C. p. 126).

English grammarians ought to understand that it is not the number of syllables that constitutes a difference in Comparison but that the Saxon words (as *wise*, *pretty*, *handsome*) compare in -er and -est whilst words from the Norman and French (as *court*, *correct*, *agreeable*) simply translate "*plus*", "*le plus*" by "*more*," "*most*."

B. IF USED ADVERBIALY, the Comparative always ends in *er*, but the Superlative is expressed in different ways.

#### a. The Superlative Absolute

occurs, 1. simply in *ſt* with some adjectives terminating in *bar*, *ig*, *lich*, *ſam*; and chiefly employed in phrases of courtesy as, *danfbarſt*, *most gratefully*; *gütigſt*, *freundlichſt*, *most kindly*; *gehörſamſt*, *most obediently*; also *ergebenſt*, *most faithfully*. This form, besides, occurs in composition with participles, used as adjectives, forming their first component; as, in *den beſtunterrichteten Kreiſen*, *in the best informed circles*.

2. In *ſtenſ* only in the following adverbial expressions: *beſtenſ*, *most kindly*, in the best manner, as well as one can; *eſtenſ*, as early as possible; *früheſtenſ*, at the soonest; *höchſtenſ*, at the highest, at the most; *längſtenſ*, at the longest, at the furthest; *meiſtenſ*, generally; *mindeſtenſ*, at least; *nächſtenſ*, very soon, in a little; *ſchönſtenſ*, in the finest manner; *ſpäteſtenſ*, at the latest; *wenigſtenſ*, at least;—and with numerals; as, *erſtenſ*, in the first place; (*leſtenſ*, lastly).

3. Most commonly with the preposition *auf* before the accusative neuter of the Superlative; as, *auf das beſte*, *in the best manner*; the preposition being usually contracted with the article; as, *auf's beſte*, *auf's ange-nehmſte*, *most agreeably*.

### b. The Relative Superlative

is expressed by **am** (contraction of **an dem**), adding the ending **en** to the Superlative; as, **am besten**, *best*; **am liebsten**, *what one would like best*; **am meisten**, *most*.

This relative Superlative is not only used adverbially but also predicatively.

**Note 1.** When used adverbially, the relative Superlative does not denote the highest degree absolutely attainable, but merely the highest degree attained by a person or thing as compared with some others, (which need not even attain a very high degree at all); as, *Dieſe Schiffe ſegeln ſchlecht*; *daß, welches am ſchnellſten ſegelt, macht kaum acht Knoten. These ships sail badly; that which sails fastest, scarcely makes eight knots.* — Or it signifies the highest degree attained by a person or thing under particular circumstances; as, *Georg ſchreibt nicht gut, er ſchreibt am beſten, wenn er ſteht. George does not write well; he writes best when he stands.*

**Note 2.** The relative Superlative ought to be used **predicatively** only, when the person or thing is stated as possessing a certain quality in the highest degree **under particular circumstances**; as, *Die Wirkung des Lichts iſt am ſtärkſten, wenn der Himmel nicht bewölkt iſt. The effect of the light is strongest when the sky is not clouded. Daß Weiter war ſeit mehreren Tagen ſehr warm; heute iſt eß am wärmſten. The weather has been very warm for several days; today it is warmest. Wenn die Noth am höchſten, iſt Gottes Hilfe am nächſten. When need is highest, God's help is highest.* Yet it occurs instead of the attributive form; as, *Die, welche am eifrigſten ſind, (for die Eifrigſten) ſind oft am fernſten vom Ziele. Those who are the most eager, are often the farthest from the goal.*

**C. PARTICIPLES**, not mentioned as adjectives in the dictionary, but hardly any adjectives at all, form the Comparative with **mehr** and the Superlative with **am meiſten**, (which words however are then nothing but qualifying adverbs like *ſehr very much* &c.); as, *Er iſt mehr gefürchtet als der König. He is more feared than the king. Er iſt am meiſten beſchädigt. He is the most injured. Negatively weniger and minder less, and am wenigſten, am mindeſten least* are employed.

Even attributively the above adverbs are inserted between the article and the participle used as an ad-

jective &c.; as, Ein minder annehmbarer Vorschlag. *A less acceptable proposal.* Auf der am meisten verdunkelten Seite des Horizontes war die Erscheinung am mindesten wahrnehmbar. *On the most obscured side of the horizon the phenomenon was least perceptible.* (See E. p. 128 and Notes).

**Note.** Mehr before the Positive (unless used with participles) has the force of *rather* when it is to be used only in distinguishing two qualities having an element in common with each other; as, Er ist mehr schlau als fähig. *He is cunning rather than able*, cunningness and ability having some features in common with each other. Becker's explanation of this so called 'compound Comparative', viz. that it is used when one quality is ascribed in a higher degree than another to the same person or thing, holds good only in so far as the above distinction may be inferred; else one might compare: *'He is more polite than little.'*

**D. THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE USED PREDICATIVELY**, as rendered by *most* before the Positive in English, is expressed by the Positive preceded by *höchst* (*in the highest degree*), or by any of the following adverbs: *sehr* (*very*), *äußerst* (*extremely*), *ungemein* (*uncommonly*), *überaus* (*exceedingly*), *durchaus* (*absolutely, utterly*); as, Die Sache ist höchst fatal. *The thing is most untoward.* Die Rede war sehr schön. *The speech was most beautiful.* (See E. p. 128 Notes).

### E. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
ADJECTIVES.		
gut, good	besser	best
hoch, high (Note 1)	höher	höchst
nahe, near	näher	nächst
viel, much	mehr	meist, mehrst
	mehrere, several,	die meisten, most of the.
wenig, little,	minder, (adverb less),	mindest, least
but also	weniger, less, fewer	wenigst, fewest.
mehr more and weniger are not declined before nouns.		
bald, soon	eher	am ehesten
gern, readily, gladly	lieber (rather)	am liebsten
gut wohl, well	besser	am besten.

ADVERBS.

**Note 1.** Used attributively &c., the Positive of hoch is *hoch* (-er); -e (-es) &c.; as, *der hohe Baum, the tall tree*.

**Note 2.** Wenig *little* (in quantity and degree) has both weaker *less*, wenigst *least* and minder *less*, mindest *least*; the latter expressing degree. Its use see p. 126, C.

**Note 3.** Most used adjectively; as, *most people, most cities*, requires the article in German; as, *die meisten Leute, die meisten Städte*.

**Note 4.** Much before a past participle and with verbs in general is *sehr*; as, *much loved, sehr geliebt; much wanted, sehr nöthig gebraucht; much admired, sehr bewundert; I like it much, Ich liebe es sehr*.

**Note 5.** Much before the Comparative is always *viel*; as, *viel länger, much longer; viel weiter, much farther; viel besser, much better*. (See also F.)

## F. PARTICLES OF COMPARISON.

1. *so so, as*, before the positive degree is used not only in negative assertions as in English; *Er ist nicht so reich als sein Bruder. He is not so rich as his brother*. — but also affirmatively: *Er ist so reich als sein Bruder. He is as rich as his brother*.

2. *As* in the second member of comparison is *als*; as, *Wir waren nicht so glücklich als ihr. We were not so lucky as you. Es ist so lang als breit. It is as long as broad*.

**Note.** Especially in rendering phrases like "*as well as I can*," "*as soon as he comes*," "*as soon as you wish*," *as cheap as you like* the "*as*" introducing the complete (second) clause is frequently not expressed in German, hence *so gut (als) ich kann, so bald er kommt, so bald Sie wünschen, so billig Sie wollen*.

*AS* before an Infinitive with "*to*" is never rendered; hence, *He was so good as to show it me, er war so gut, es mir zu zeigen*.

3. *Than* is rendered by *als*; as, *Er ist jünger als ich. He is younger than I*. Formerly *denn* and sometimes *weder* (*nor*) were used after a Comparative, as in Luther's translation of the Bible: *Denn es ist besser um sie handthieren, weder um Silber; und ihr Einkommen ist besser denn Gold. For the merchandise of it is better*

than the merchandise of silver and the gain thereof better than fine gold.

**Note 1.** *als* as, than, in the second member of comparison is **not** preceded by a **comma** when placed immediately after the Comparative or after the word with regard to which the comparison is instituted; as, Der Stahl ist härter als das Eisen. *Steel is harder than iron.* Sie zeigt mehr Fleiß als ihre Schwester. *She shows more application than her sister.* Wir werden von Niemanden so sehr gehaßt als von denen, die uns beleidigten. *By nobody are we hated so much as by those who have offended us.* On the other hand: Sie ist fleißiger gewesen, als ihre Schwester. *She has been more diligent than her sister.* Ich glaube, daß ich größer bin, als du. *I believe that I am taller than you.*

The **comma** is likewise required before *als* when it introduces a complete grammatical clause; as, Es ist nicht so weit, als ich dachte. *It is not so far as I thought.* Sie sehen die Dinge schlimmer, als sie sind. *You see things worse than they are.*

**Note 2.** If the sentence in which the comparison occurs contains a **past participle** or an **infinitive**, or if it is a **dependent clause** (with the verb at the end), it requires to be **completed** before the clause with *als* is joined to it; as, Ich habe es öfter gesehen, als du. *I have seen it oftener than you.* Sie können es so leicht finden, als ich. *You can find it as easily as I.* Zeigen Sie, daß Sie großmüthiger sind, als Ihre Feinde. *Show that you are more generous than your enemies.*

**Note 3.** *als* is used for *but* after *Nichts* nothing, *Keiner*, *Niemand* nobody, *Wer sonst* who else &c., when these expressions can be contracted with *als* into *nur* only, that is, when the idea of an **exclusion** is to be conveyed; as, Wer Anders als du hat die Macht? *Who else but you has the power?* (Nur du, only you &c.) Sie beweisen Nichts als Ihren bösen Willen. *You prove nothing but your ill-will.*

**Note 4.** *no sooner than* is rendered by *kaum* — *als* or *so*; as, kaum hatte er den Strand erreicht, als er zusammenbrach; or so brach er zusammen. *No sooner had he reached the shore, than he broke down.*

**4.** *wie* like, as, is never used after the Comparative and must not be confounded with *als* as. *Wie* is used in expressing similarity or in comparing manner; as, muthig wie ein Löwe, *courageous as (like) a lion*; schwarz wie die Nacht, *black as night*. Er handelt wie sein Bruder. *He acts like his brother.* (See also *such* as, p. 115 *d* and Conjunctions, Section XXIX).

**5.** *Je —, je —; or Je —, desto —; the —, the —; as, Je älter, je weiser.* *The older, the wiser. Je höher*



man steigt, desto kälter wird die Luft. *The higher one ascends, the colder becomes the air.* For *desto*, *the*, „*um* so,“ is often substituted especially when the first member of comparison is understood; as, *Sie sind schon hier? Um so besser! You are already here? So much the better;* but also *Je weiter nördlich, um so (or desto) größer die Kälte. The farther north, the greater the cold.*

6. *Immer* always, before the Comparative is rendered as follows: *Immer näher, nearer and nearer;* (also *Näher und näher*); *immer weiter* or *weiter und weiter, farther and farther;* *immer heftiger, more and more vehemently.* In adjectives of more than two syllables, the use of *immer* is preferred to the repetition of the Comparative; as, *Immer unzufriedener, more and more dissatisfied.*

7. *aller* of *all*, is sometimes rather superfluously prefixed to Superlatives; as, *der aller kleinste Vogel, the smallest bird of all;* *ein allerliebsteß Ding, a most delightful thing;* *am allermeisten, most of all;* *am allerbesten, best of all.* This form is not to be recommended.

8. *zu* too entirely agrees with the English; as, *zu viel, too much* (quantity); *zu sehr, too much* (degree); *zu klein, too small* (size); *zu wenig, too little* (quantity or degree); *zu gut, too well.*

9. Adjectives sometimes, as in English, acquire the force of Superlatives by composition: *schwarz wie Kohle, jet-black, (as black as coal),* *schwarz wie ein Rabe, as black as a raven;* *schwarz wie Pech, pitch-dark;* *blind wie Stein, stoneblind;* *stupid wie ein Esel, shockingly stupid, &c.*

## EXERCISE XXVII. On Section XIII.

(Letters and figures refer to this Section.)

## Die deutsche Literatur. The German Literature.

Jedes bedeutendere (important, A. 1.) Volk hat in seiner Geschichte eine kürzere oder längere (1. List) Epoche (epoch), in welcher es den höchsten (E.) Gipfel (summit) äußerer (external) Macht (XVI List 2) und innerer (internal —; both äußere and innere have the positive-meaning here given) Blüthe (blossom — here flourishing condition) erreicht. Daß diese Epoche zugleich mehr oder weniger (C. Note) genau (accurately, closely) mit der höchsten Entwicklung (development) und dem größten Glanze (lustre) der nationalen Kunst, Wissenschaft und schönen (fine) Literatur zusammenfällt (to coincide), zeigt sich auf's deutlichste (B. a, 3), wenn man diejenigen Zeitalter (n. age; as in golden age, Elizabethan age) betrachtet (to consider), die man — nach den hervorragendsten (prominent) Regenten (ruler) der verschiedenen (various) Völker — bei den Hebräern das Davidisch-salomonische, bei den Griechen das (jenige) des Pericles, bei den Römern das des Augustus, bei den Arabern das des Harun-al-raschid und der spanischen Ommajaden, bei den Britten das Zeitalter der Elisabeth und bei den Franzosen das des Louis Quatorze — genannt hat (XXIX.) Ähnliches (similar conditions) läßt (can) sich auch von den Zeiten des Dante, Ariost und Torquato Tasso, wie (as also) des spanischen Calderon, nachweisen (to show, can be shown).

Was nun Deutschland betrifft (now as the Germany &c.; the phrase is commonly followed by so which is not expressed in English), so weiß zwar (indeed) Jedermann daß der Deutsche Geist während (VI. L. 1) der letzten Hälfte (half) des vorigen (VI. D. 2; a.), und am Anfange des jetzigen Jahrhunderts seine classische Periode, d. h. (II. z.) die Periode seiner höchsten und reichsten Entfaltung, (development) in den Werken Klopstocks, Lessings, Wielands, Herders, Göth's,

Schillers u. a. m. (II. B.) gehabt hat. Aber während (XXIX. L. 3) es an sich (in itself) merkwürdig ist, daß die Deutschen in dieser Hinsicht am spätesten (late B. 5.) unter den civilisirten Nationen hervortraten, ist es eine noch merkwürdigere Erscheinung (phenomenon), daß diese classische Periode nicht, wie bei den obengenannten Völkern, von einer Zeit nationaler Größe, Macht und Wohlfahrt (prosperity) oder auch nur (even) größerer, glänzender (brilliant) Unternehmungen (enterprise rendered only in the Singular) begleitet (accompanied), oder von (on) einer solchen abhängig (dependant) erscheint, sondern (but) daß im Gegentheil (on the contrary) die große nationale Erhebung (rising) der Jahre 1813 bis 1815 (XIV. A.) und die noch ruhmreichere (glorious) Wiedergeburt (regeneration) des einigen Deutschlands in unseren Tagen auf's unzweifelhafteste (undoubted B. 4,3) in ihrem tiefsten (deep) Grunde (origin) auf dem Wirken jener großen Geister in der Literatur, Philosophie und in der Wissenschaft beruht (to be founded on, to spring from). Für den, der die sittlichen (moral) Gesetze (n. law) der Weltgeschichte (universal history) zu begreifen (to comprehend) sucht (to seek), erscheint in dieser Thatsache (fact, state the gender); auf's Erfreulichste (gratifying B. 4,3) die willkommene (welcome) Verheißung (promise) der Dauer (permanence) glücklicher Zustände (state of affairs). Nie war Deutschland trauriger (sad) zerstückelt (dismembered), nie in einer hoffnungslosen Lage als um (about) die Zeit, da (when) Schiller ihm (referring to Deutschland, n.) in seinem (his) „Wilhelm Tell“ sterbend (st.) zurief (to cry to): „seid einig! einig! einig!“ und, je härter das Joch (yoke) der Französischen Tyrannei auf dem zerrissenen (lacerated) Lande lag (st.), je dunkler (dark) seine Zukunft (future) erschien; desto (F. 5) gewaltiger (mighty), desto tiefer, desto umfassender (comprehensive) strebte (to strive) der nationale Geist in Wissenschaft und Literatur nach der Grundlage (basis) der edelsten (noble) Bildung (culture), auf der er zu derjenigen sittlichen Festigkeit (solidity) und Freiheit erwuchs, die endlich, bei (with) einer immer sorgfältigeren (careful F. 6) Volksverziehung (education of the people), seine politische Auferstehung (resurrection) möglich machten. Ehe wir aber auf diese neuere (recent) classische Periode weiter eingehen (to enter upon), müssen wir erst ein früheres (earlier) Zeit-

alter betrachten, daß, nicht minder wichtig (C.) für die Geschichte des Volkes, nicht weniger den Namen einer classischen verdient (to deserve).

## SECTION XIV. THE NUMERALS.

## A. Cardinal Numbers.

0 Null feminine.	40 Vierzig.
1 Eins, ein, eine, ein (see below).	47 Siebenundvierzig.
2 Zwei (see below).	50 Fünfzig, fifty.
3 Drei (see below).	55 Fünfundfünfzig.
4 Vier, four.	60 Sechzig.
5 Fünf.	66 Sechsendsechzig.
6 Sechs.	70 Siebzig.
7 Sieben.	77 Siebenundsiebzig.
8 Acht.	80 Achtzig.
9 Neun.	90 Neunzig.
10 Zehn.	99 Neunundneunzig.
11 Elf (elf).	100 Hundert.
12 Zwölf.	101 Einhundertundeins.
13 Dreizehn*).	175 Einhundertundfünfundsiebzig.
14 Vierzehn.	500 Fünfhundert.
15 Fünfzehn, fifteen.	1000 Eintausend.
16 Sechzehn for sechszehn.	100,000 Hunderttausend.
17 Siebzehn for siebenzehn.	Eine Million, a million.
18 Achtzehn.	Eine Billion, a billion.
19 Neunzehn.	1866 Eintausendachthundertsechsz-
20 Zwanzig.	echszig or achtzehnhundertsech-
21 Einundzwanzig.**)	undsechzig (never achtzehnjehsz-
25 Fünfundzwanzig.	sechzig).
30 Dreißig.	1870 Eintausendachthundertsebz-
36 Sechsenddreißig.	ig or achtzehnhundertsebz-

1. a. *Eins one, one thing* (when used abstractly).  
 Preceding the noun, it is *ein, eine, ein* like the indefinite article, from which it is distinguished through the print or spelt with a capital; as, *Ein Mann, one man; Eines Mannes, of one man; eine Person,*

\*) The Accent is distinctly on the first component

\*\*) From 21 to 99 the units are expressed first.

*one person; einer Person, of one person; nur ein Wort, only one word; mit Einem Worte, with one word.*

When used substantively, *Ein* takes in the Nom. masc. *er*, and Nom. and Acc. neut. (*e*)<sup>s</sup>; as, *Wünschen Sie einen Stod? Hier ist einer. Do you wish a cane? Here is one. Wenn Sie ein Pferd brauchen, will ich Ihnen eins leihen. If you require a horse, I will lend you one.* — (“*A good one*” see p. 79 Note 1; “*This one*” etc. p. 95 Remark).

When preceded by the definite article, it is treated like the adjective; (see Table, pp. 84, 85) as, *des Einen, der Einen, of the one; von dem Einen zum Andern, from the one to the other.*

Used as the unit in compound figures it remains undeclined; as, *für einundzwanzig Thaler, for one and twenty dollars; ein Mann von einundsechzig Jahren, a man of sixty one; — likewise in Einhundert one hundred, Eintausend one thousand, Eine Million one million; as distinguished from ein Hundert a hundred, ein Tausend a thousand, eine Million a million, in which it is the article and declined.*

The plural form *die Einen* is used in opposition to *die Andern*; as, *Die Einen beteten, die Andern jammereten. One part of the people was praying, the other was lamenting.*

*b. zwei* (formerly masc. *zween*, fem. *zwo*, neut. *zwei*).

*Zwei* and *drei* are not declined when preceded by the article or a pronoun; as *der zwei Freunde, of the two friends; diesen drei Männern, to these three men.*

Without the article, *zwei* and *drei* take *er* in the genitive; as, *die Aussage zweier Zeugen, the evidence of two witnesses; in Gesellschaft dreier Freunde, in company of three friends.* The dative in *en* occurs only quaintly in expressions like: *vor zweien Zeugen, (more commonly vor zwei), in the presence of two witnesses; nach dreien Tagen aufgeföhren, risen after three days.*

*c. Cardinal numerals chiefly those of one syllable, when used as substantives, take e in the Nom., Gen.,*

and Acc. and *en* in the Dat., especially when preceded by the definite article; as, *Man wählte unter Dreien. The election was made from among three.* „Keines der Viere steht in dem Thiere.“ *None of the four (elementary spirits) is in the beast. (Goethe's 'Faust').* Das Direktorium der Fünfe. *The government of the five directors (in France 1795); mit Sechsen fahren, to drive in a coach and six; zu Achten, by eights, eight and eight; zu Hunderten, in hundreds.*

**Note 1.** The English expression "two or three" must not be rendered by *zwei oder drei* which means *two or, at the most, three*, but by *einige a few, mehrere several* or more commonly by *ein Paar (a pair)*; as, *ein Paar Freunde, two or three friends; ein Paar Thaler, two or three thalers.* Ein Paar besides means *a pair or a couple* with two objects usually connected in counting; as, *drei Paar Strümpfe, three pairs of stockings; zwei Paar Schuhe, two pairs of shoes; (Ein glückliches Paar, a happy couple).*

**Note 2.** The adjective *beide* *both the, the two*, is used not to designate *two* of a larger number, but to comprise two mentioned objects under one idea as having something in common; as, *Beide Freunde waren reich. Both the friends were rich.* Die beiden Städte besitzen Privilegien. *The two cities possess privileges.* Ich habe beide Augen verloren. *I have lost both eyes.* Only as a neuter noun *Beides* has the force of *both — and —*; *Und ist gegeben zu erkennen, Beides, das Gute und das Böse. To us it is given to know both good and evil.*

*Beide* is not as "*both*" in English, followed, but preceded by the possessive pronoun, when, of course, it becomes *beiden*, as, *seine beiden Brüder, both his brothers.*

**d.** Only *Ein, Eine, Ein* affect the adjective like the indefinite article; (see Table p. 85) as, *Ein treuer Freund, one true friend; Einer treuen Freundin, of one true (fem.) friend; Ein treues Herz, one true heart;* but when this numeral is preceded by the definite article, it becomes an adjective itself; as, *der eine treue Freund, the one true friend; das eine treue Herz, the one true heart. (des einen, of the one; dem einen, der einen, to the one &c.).* No other Cardinal has pronominal force, not even *zwei* and *drei*, as sometimes erroneously stated, and hence the adjective following these numerals is dealt with independently of them. (See foot of pp. 84, 85).

c. The remaining cardinal numerals, have no regular genitive and to express this case, unless that is done by a preceding article or pronoun, the preposition *von* is used; as, Die Hälfte *von* fünf ist zwei und ein halb. *The half of five is two and a half.* Der dritte Theil *von* sechs ist zwei. *The third part of six is two.* Im Besitze *von* fünfhundert Thalern (*von* governing the dative), *in the possession of five hundred thalers.*

**Note 3.** The names of the figures are of the feminine gender and take *en* in the plural; as, Die Eins hier ist nicht deutlich. *The "one" here is not distinct.* Du mußt die Dreien besser schreiben. *You must write the threes better.* Die Neunen sehen gut aus. *The nines look well.*

**Note 4.** With the suffix *er*, numerals are used as substantives in certain technical terms; as, ein Dreier (also Dreiling), ein Sechser (Sechöling), certain small coins; guter Eiser, good wine of the vintage of 1811; ein rüstiger Sechziger, a vigorous man of sixty years of age (sexagenarian). Adjectively used, this form occurs before *Jahren*; as, in den dreißiger Jahren, in one of the years between 1830 and 1840. As a noun it occurs, in den Dreißigern, Bierzigern, meaning *between thirty and forty, between forty and fifty, &c., years of age.* Thus, in den ersten Zwanzigern means, *about two, three or four-and-twenty years of age.*

B. a. The ordinal numbers from *second* to *nineteenth* are formed by the addition of *te*, from *twentieth* upwards by the addition of *ste* to the cardinal numbers; and this rule is observed in all Compounds. The Ordinals are treated entirely as adjectives and occur both without and with the definite and indefinite articles.

b. *Der, die, das erste* *the first* is the Superlative of the adverb *ehe ere*, and hence preserves the long vowel. For the adverb *erst* see Sect. XXVIII.

The second, *der, die, das zweite* (*andere*); the third, *der, die, das dritte*; the fourth, *der &c., vierte*; the nineteenth, *der, &c., neunzehnte*; the twentieth, *der, &c., zwanzigste*; the thirtieth, *der dreißigste*; the hundredth, *der hundertste*; the hundred and fifth, *der hundert und fünfte*; the hundred and twenty-first, *der einhundert ein und zwanzigste*; the thousandth, *der tausendste*.

The pupil should notice that one says *der Hundert und erste, the hundredth and first; der Tausend und erste, the thousand and first; der Hundert und zweite, hundred and dritte &c.*; but, on the other hand *der Ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-first; der Zwei und dreißigste, the thirty-second &c.*

Ex. Den dreißigsten October 1870, (*on the 30<sup>th</sup> of October 1870*); der dritte Mai, *the third of May*; adverbially den dritten Mai or am dritten Mai, (*on the third of May*); den fünfundzwanzigsten Juli 1861, (*on the twentyfifth of July 1861*), den Achten Januar 1871.

It will be seen that the name of the month is not declined in stating the date except in Anfang, Mitte, Ende Septembers, *in the beginning, middle, end of September*, for des September.

The usual omission of the termination in the names of months arises from their having formerly been used in the Latin form; as, Mail, Septembris &c.; and no provision for the case having been made when, owing to a reaction against foreign forms, those Latin terminations were dropped.

c. The German language possesses an adjective-interrogative, *der, die, das wievielfte* (Lat. *quotus*), from *wie viele* how many, by which the ordinal number is elicited; as, *der wievielfte Schuß war dies? What (the how many<sup>th</sup>) shot was this? Es war der zehnte. It was the tenth.* In asking the date, with the adverbs *gestern, heute, morgen &c.* or the name of the weekday the words '*day of the month*' are not rendered; as, *der wievielfte war Dienstag? — gestern? What day of the month was Tuesday? — yesterday? Der Dritte. The third. Den wievielften haben wir heute? — morgen? What day of the month (have we) is (it) to-day? — tomorrow? Den fünften, den sechsten. The fifth, the sixth.*

**Note I.** With the name of sovereigns the Ordinal is used as in English, but assumes the case of the preceding name; as, *Katharina die Zweite* (Katharina II.), *Catherine II*; *Heinrich des Vierten*, (Heinrich IV) of *Henry IV*; *Wilhelm dem Ersten, to Wilhelm I.*

C. Distinctive Numerals. *Erstens*, in the first place; *zweitens*, secondly; *drittens*, thirdly; *neunzehntens*, in the nineteenth place; *zwanzigstens*, in the twentieth place; *lestens*, lastly.



**D. Fractions.** A half, or half a, ein halber, eine halbe, ein halbes, or ein halb; a third part; ein drittel; a fourth, ein viertel; a quarter, ein Viertel; a fifth, ein fünfel; a twentieth, ein zwanzigstel; a millonth part, ein Milliontheil. These are compounds of the numeral and Theil, a part.

**Note 1.** Die halbe Welt, half the world; mein halbes Leben, half of my life; but halb London, half London; halb Europa, half Europe.

**Note 2.** Instead of the compound fractions, ein ein halb,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ; zwei ein halb,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ; drei ein halb,  $3\frac{1}{2}$  &c. in which halb is declined, there occur the expressions *anderthalb*, i. e. one whole and the other half ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ); *dritthalb*, i. e. two whole and of the third but a half ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ ); *vierthalb*,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , &c., in which halb is not declined.

**Note 3.** The expressions a *twelvemonth* and a *sixmonth* are rendered by ein Jahr, a year and by ein halbes Jahr, half a year; likewise ein Vierteljahr, three months; drei Vierteljahr, nine months.

**Note 4.** In dividing the hours of the day, the expressions ein Viertel, a quarter, halb, half, and drei Viertel (three quarters), a quarter to, are employed in the following manner: — The minutehand is assumed as starting from the full hour (12), and moving onwards to the next; as, ein Viertel auf eins, one quarter towards one, i. e., a quarter past twelve, (also, ein Viertel nach Zwölf); halb eins, (Scottish, half one), half past twelve; drei Viertel auf eins, the hand has completed three quarters of its course towards one, i. e., a quarter to one; zehn Minuten bis or vor eins, ten minutes to one; zwanzig Minuten nach eins, twenty minutes past one. Railway time is marked as in English.

**E. Distributive Numerals.** Je zwei, each two; je drei, each three, every three; je vier, each four, every four; zu zweien, by twos, by couples; zu dreien, three by three; (zu hundert), in hundreds.

**F. Multiplicative Numerals.** Zweifach and zweifältig, twofold; dreifach and dreifältig, threefold; einfach, simple, single; (einfältig, simple, artless); hundertfältig, hundredfold, vielfältig, manyfold.

**G. Variative Numerals.** Einerlei, all of one kind, the same; zweierlei, of two different kinds; zwanzigerlei, of twenty different sorts; mancherlei, various; vielerlei, of many sorts. These are not declinable.

**H. Reiterative Numerals.** Einmal, one time, once; zweimal, two times, twice; dreimal, three times, thrice; viermal, four times, &c.; vielmal, many times; (niemals never). Dreimal drei ist neun. ( $3 \times 3 = 9$ ). *Three times three are nine.*

Of these numerals declinable adjectives are formed by the suffix *ig*; as, ein dreimaliger Angriff, *a thrice repeated attack.*

The adverb einmal *once, some day, sometime, only*, has the accent on *mal*, by which it is colloquially expressed; as, *Stehen Sie (ein)mal still! Stand still, please!*

**I. The indefinite Numerals** have been noticed in the following places: Alle, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 5; — 82, Note 2 & 3; — 102, Notes; — 100, 6; — andere, pp. 80; — 84, 10; — 104, 10; — 1, a 134; — einige (not to be confounded with the adjective *einig* *united, agreed, one*) and etliche, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 10; — 104, 10; — jeder, pp. 84, 6; — 102, 6; — jeglicher and jedweder, p. 72, 5. *d*; — fein, feiner, pp. 72, *c*; — 85; — 107, *e*; — mancher, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 7 and 10; — 102, 7; — mehrere, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 10; — 127, E; — die meisten, p. 127, E; — viele, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 10; — 104, 10; — 127, E; — 128, Note 5 welche, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 10; — 104, 9 wenige, pp. 80, 10; — 84, 10; — 104; — 127, E.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

### Deutsche Literatur.

#### II. Die althochdeutsche (Old-high-German) Periode (period).

(Numbers given in figures must be pronounced in German.)

Karl der Große (Charlemagne), der vom Jahre 768 bis 814 in Deutschland, Frankreich und Italien regierte und in diesen drei Ländern das Christenthum (Christianity) befestigte (to confirm), vertheidigte (to defend) und ausbreitete (to extend), war ein Deutscher von dem Stamme (race) der Franken (Franconians) welcher dem alten Gallien den Namen „Frankreich“ gegeben hat. Es ist uns höchst interessant

(XIII. D.) daß dieser weiseste und mächtigste Fürst des Mittelalters (middleages) in dem großen Werke der Begründung (establishment) der Gesittung (civilization) und Bildung (culture) des Abendlandes (Western-Europe) von einem Engländer unterstützt (supported) wurde. Dieser war sein erster Rathgeber (adviser) Alcuin, geb. (p. 22) 736 zu York, einer der berühmtesten (celebrated) Gelehrten (scholar) seiner Zeit und gründete i. J. (p. 22) 796 die gelehrten Schulen zu Tours, Paris, Laon, Metz u. s. w. aus denen die Wissenschaften (branches of knowledge) sich im Reiche verbreiteten (to spread). Karl der Große liebte seine Deutsche Muttersprache und soll (is said) selbst den ersten Versuch (attempt) zu einer Deutschen Sprachlehre (Grammar) gemacht haben. Er ersann (st. to think out) deutsche Namen für die Monate (months) und Winde (winds), befahl daß dem Volke deutsch gepredigt (to preach) werden sollte (should) und ließ (st.) die alten Heldenlieder (hero-legends) niederschreiben (to commit to writing) von denen das Hildebrandslied das bekannteste (best-known) ist. Alcuins bedeutendster (important) Schüler Rabanus Maurus, der Gründer der großen Schulen zu Fulda, Osnabrück, Minden, Paderborn u. a. m. im J. 802 war besonders für das Studium der weltlichen (secular) Wissenschaften und der Deutschen Sprache thätig (active) die er der Lateinischen gleichstellte (to place on an equal footing with). Die Sprache in ihrer damaligen (then, of that time) Form war die fränkische oder althochdeutsche, eine Schwester des älteren Gothischen (gothic) in welcher letzteren wir noch große Theile (portions) der Uebersetzung (translation) der Bibel durch den Bischof (bishop) Hilflas aus den Jahren 360 bis 380 besitzen und die mit dem Untergange (downfall) des gothischen Reiches verschwand (to disappear). Das Althochdeutsche (for die althochdeutsche Sprache) hat seinen Namen von seiner hohen gebirgigen (mountainous) Heimath im Süden (South) Deutschlands am Fuße (foot) der Alpen und sollte (ought) eigentlich (properly) die „oberdeutsche“ (Uppergerman) heißen im Gegensatze (opposition) zu dem Niederdeutschen (Nethergerman) des flachen (low) Landes im Norden (in the north) welches noch heute (to day) unter dem Namen des „Plattdeutschen“ (patois) fortlebt (to

continue living) und in welcher später der berühmte „Reineke der Fuchs“ („Renard the fox“) geschrieben wurde, den Göthe in das heutige Hochdeutsch übersetzt hat.

Das Althochdeutsche starb (st.) in Frankreich nach dessen Trennung von Deutschland unter Karls schwachen (weak) Nachfolgern (successor) bald aus, blieb aber fast noch drei Jahrhunderte unter fränkischen und sächsischen Kaisern die herrschende (predominant) Mundart (dialect) in Deutschland und wir besitzen in derselben schriftliche (in writing) Denkmäler (monument, record; XVII. L. 5) aus dem siebenten bis zur Mitte des zwölften Jahrhunderts. Die Verfasser (author) sind meistens (XIII. B. a,2) Mönche (monk), welche zuerst höchstens (XIII. B. a,2) Uebersetzungen aus dem Lateinischen machten, namentlich (especially) von Theilen der heiligen Schrift (Scriptures), Klosterregeln (monastic rules), Gebeten (prayers), Predigten (sermons) u. dgl.; bald (XIII. E) aber auch von philosophischen Werken [wie des Boetius, Aristoteles u. s. w.] Endlich (at last) gebrauchten (to employ) sie die Deutsche Sprache unabhängig (independantly) in poetischer Form und wir erwähnen (to mention) hier zweier Evangelien-Harmonien (Gospel Concordances) aus dem 9ten Jahrhundert, — „Kriem“ das erste Gedicht (poem) in Reimen (rhymes), (welche eine Deutsche und christliche (christian) Erfindung (invention) sind), — und „Heliand“ oder „Heiland“ (saviour) in alliterirenden Versen (m.), — die noch der alten heidnisch-germanischen (Pagan-germanic) Dichtung angehören (to belong to) ferner das „Ludwigslied“ auf den Sieg eines Deutschen Königs Ludwig über die heidnischen Normannen (Norsemen) [i. J. 881], endlich die Weltchronik (chronicle of the world) und die Kaiserchronik (chronicle of the Emperors), Versuche einer Weltgeschichte (Universal-History) aus dem 12ten Jahrhundert, Legenden u. s. w. Von einem sehr schönen alten Gedichte „Walthar von Aquitanien“ ist nur eine Lateinische Uebersetzung in Hexametern, von dem Mönche Gahard von St. Gallen aus dem 12ten Jahrhundert erhalten (preserve).

## SECTION XV. — NOUNS. — GENDER.

**Leading Remarks.** 1. Every German noun is either of the masculine, feminine or neuter gender; as, Baum masc. *tree*, Blume fem. *flower*, Kraut neut. *herb*. A few nouns have two genders, each, however, with a different meaning; as, Reis masc. *rice*, Reis neut. *sprig* (See p. 152) The grammatical gender depends only in some cases on the natural gender, *i. e.* on the gender of the sex; as, Vater m. *father*, Mutter f. *mother*; (but Mensch m. *human being*, Waise f. *orphan*, Weib n. *woman*. See p. 151, 1). On the other hand the natural gender is extended to a vast number of abstract nouns, and of common nouns denoting inanimate things, which thereby receive a peculiar significance apart from their meaning; as, Geist m. *spirit*, Sprache f. *language*, Leben n. *life*, Kopf m. *head*. Brust f. *breast*, Herz n. *heart*.

Not that this feature is peculiar to the German language which shares it with the most ancient languages of the East, with the classical Greek and Latin, as well as with all modern languages, except the English, the latter having preserved but few traces of that imaginative life of which the free use of the genders is the expression.\*

2. The form and meaning of a German noun only afford a sure indication of its gender in the cases stated in the rules pp. 146—149. In other cases the dictionary must be consulted.

\* There can be no doubt that the English language has by the present arrangement of its genders obtained certain advantages with regard to brevity and ready use, in as far as, in clearing away every admixture of the imaginative, it has, as it were, laid bare every idea in its practical and definite reality. But it is at least questionable whether such advantages outweigh the loss, evidently caused by the conflict between its Anglo-Saxon and Norman-French elements, whilst it will appear from the above remarks, that the German language can never, as it occasionally insinuated, follow its example in this respect.

Complete lists of the genders are of little practical value, as the numerous exceptions defy the memory which may be more profitably concentrated upon the lists connected with the declension of nouns, these to a great extent serving the same object.

3. The declension of the article (pp. 84, 85) shows that the Nom. Sing. masc. and the Gen. and Dat. Sing. fem. are alike (*der*), that the Nom. and Acc. Sing. fem. are the same as the Nom. and Acc. Plur. of any gender (*die*), and that the Gen. *der* and the Dat. *den* of the Plur. of any gender cannot by themselves be distinguished from the same forms in the Sing. This suffices to show how anxiously the pupil should endeavour to ascertain and to fix in his memory the gender of each noun with which he has to deal, as reliance on the article alone would lead to utter confusion.

4. At the same time the above facts show that the gender of the German nouns very materially tends to keep the forms of declension within moderate limits, various cases, identical in form, being clearly distinguished by the gender to which the nouns belong; as, *der Ritter*, Nom. Sing. masc., *the knight*; *der Zither*, Gen. or Dat. Sing. fem., *of or (to) the cithern*; *der Gitter*, Gen. Plur. neut., *of the railings*; — *den Bogen*, Acc. Sing. masc., *the arch*; *den Bogen*, Dat. Plur. fem., *(to) the waves*.

5. Of far greater importance, however, is the advantage which the grammatical structure of the German language derives from the distribution of the genders. When it is considered that the English pronouns *it*, *this*, *that*, *which*, *who*, can be properly used only in reference to the last noun preceding them, whilst the threefold form of the pronouns in German admits of an extension of their reference, according to the gender, to one noun out of several of different genders, it will be conceived how vastly the genders contribute to that free play and precision of construction which distinguish the German language.

Those prolonged periods, indeed, and those involutions of clauses so trying to the patience of the English reader, can by no means be always attributed to a want of taste in the German writers: for what would appear an unwieldy conglomeration in a language **without** genders, is by their agency rendered very generally a comprehensive and well organized tissue, exhibiting definite and lucid relations or at all events relieved of much of its seeming obscurity and unshapeliness.

6. Lastly, the extension of the natural gender to abstract nouns and inanimate objects, constitutes an essential element in **German poetry** and in all compositions aspiring to beauty. It must not be confounded with the personifying and **allegorizing** application of gender to abstract ideas in English poetry, as in the case of *time, death, nature, hope*, but probably finds a complete analogy only in the feminine gender of the English word *ship*, and in the use of the same gender by the mechanic in speaking of engines, implements &c., the working of which supports and gratifies him, whilst they obey his will. It rather **unconsciously**, but not the less powerfully awakens ideal associations of thought and feeling in the mind of the reader or listener; **masculine** nouns coming in more or less with a touch of the **strong**, active, aggressive &c., whilst the **feminine** nouns are calculated to suggest the mild and gentle, latent and yielding and the **neuter** represents the **general** and **whole**, as may be illustrated by a comparison of the genders of the following nouns:

NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Leben, life.	Trieb, the impulse.	Ruhe, rest.
Bewußtsein, conscious- ness.	Geist, the spirit.	Seele, the soul.
Gemüth, mind, dis- position.	Wille, the will.	Neigung, inclination.
Gefühl, feeling.	Muth, courage.	Furcht, fear.
Licht, light.	Haß, hatred.	Liebe, love.
Feuer, fire.	Strahl, beam, ray.	Selle, brightness.
Land, land.	Tag, day.	Nacht, night.
	Funke, spark.	Gluth, the glow, heat.
	Blitz, flash, lightning.	Flamme, flame.
	Berg, mountain.	Ebene, plain.

NEUTER.	MASCULINE.	FEMINE.
Feld, field.	Acker, ploughed field.	Wiese, meadow.
Wasser, water.	Strom, current.	Fluth, flood.
Glied, member of the body.	Fuß m. foot. Arm, arm.	Hand, f. hand.
	Kopf, head.	Brust, chest, breast.
	Löwe, lion.	Gazelle, gazelle.
Thier, animal.	Stier, bull.	Maus, mouse.
	Adler, eagle.	Taube, dove.
Gewächs, vegetable.	Stamm, stem.	Wurzel, root.

If it is farther considered that besides the above distinctions, the gender is expressive of many other relations of imagination; for inst. *der Wille the will*, *die That the deed*; *der Entschluß the resolve*, *die Ausführung the execution*; *der Wunsch the wish*, *die Hoffnung the hope*; *der Fels the rock*, *die Quelle the fountain, spring*; *der Stamm the trunk*, *die Wurzel the root*, *die Rante the tendril, creeper*; *der Sturm the tempest*, *die Stille the calm*; — and farther that synonyms are often distinguished by the gender according to the slightest shade of meaning, it will be conceived what resources the system of genders affords to the poet and the orator and how it imparts to his compositions a subtle charm of life and motion in addition to the poetical combination which he introduces to the mind. (Comp. *J. Grimm, Deutsche Grammatik, Vol. III., p. 346*).\*

The following passage, translated from *Hebel's 'Allemannische Gedichte'*, may serve as a specimen of this poetical use of the gender. Although a production of this century, it reflects in a truly wonderful manner the naïveté of the primitive sentiment to which the German

\* *Becker*, indeed, (Ausführl. Gramm. Part. I, § 120) refers the gender of nouns exclusively to their *etymological formation*. This, however, cannot affect the use which the imaginative genius of the people would make of the genders as existing, whilst it would be easy to prove that *B.* in pointing to facts, not sufficiently appreciated, was led to a onesidedness characteristic of the grammarian rather than of the poet. The incontrovertable fact, that Gender largely owes its origin to ancient mythological notions as for instance in the case of the Gender of trees, as connected with the myth of the *Dryads* or of the Saxon "*sun*" and "*moon*" &c. &c.; is in itself sufficient to settle the question.



language owes the application of the natural gender to inanimate objects.

Derweil kämmt sich die Sonne und sauber gekämmt und gewaschen  
Kommt mit dem Strickzeug sie hervor aus den Bergen gegangen,  
Wandelt ihren Weg hoch an der himmlischen Landstraf;  
Strickt, und sieht herab; gleichwie eine freundliche Mutter  
Nach den Kindern sieht. Sie lacht dem Reimchen entgegen,  
Und das thut ihm so wohl bis tief an die Wurzeln herunter:  
Solche schöne Frau, und doch so gütig und freundlich!  
Aber was strickt sie denn nur? Gewolt aus himmlischen Düften. —  
Da! schon tröpfelt's, ein Sprügerchen kommt, drauf regnet es tüchtig;  
Reimchen trinkt sich satt.

In the meanwhile the sun\* combs herself, and tidily washed and  
combed,

Comes walking forth from the mountains with her knitting,  
And takes her walk aloft on the heavenly highway;  
She is knitting and looks down, like a kindly mother  
Looking after her children. She smiles upon the little sprout,  
And that does it ever so much good down to its very roots:  
Such a beautiful lady, and yet so generous and kind!  
But what is she knitting, I wonder? Why, clouds of heavenly vapours.  
There comes already a sprinkling and then it rains smartly;  
My little sprout drinks its fill.

The following rules will aid the pupil in remembering the gender of German nouns.

**Compound nouns**, of course, have the gender of their last component; as, der Birnbaum *the pear-tree*, die Bruderstochter *the niece*, das Vaterhaus, *the home*.

The only exceptions are der Mittwoch *Wednesday* (*middle of the week* — Woche fem.), and the following feminine Compounds of der Muth *spirit, mood*; die Anmuth *grace*, Demuth *humility*, Großmuth *magnanimity*, Langmuth *longsuffering*, Sanftmuth *meekness*, Schwermuth *melancholy*, Wehmuth *mild sadness*, (die Armuth *poverty* is not a Compound, but a Derivative —) and lastly, die Heirath *marriage* with der Rath *council*.

**A. Masculine** are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 36, d. 1, and Derivatives chiefly denoting individual actions formed of verbs without an

\* The masculine gender of the English word *sun* is a foreign importation. The Anglo-Saxon '*sunne*' is feminine; '*mona*' *the moon* being masculine as in all Teutonic dialects.

addition to the stem, except those with the prefix *Ge*, (see C. Neuter); as, *der Beginn the beginning*, from *beginnen to begin*; *der Ertrag the produce*, from *ertragen to bear, to yield*; *der Fall the fall*, from *fallen to fall*; *der Sprung the spring*, from *springen* (Past Part. *gesprungen*) *to spring*; *der Schuß the shot*, from *schießen* (Past Part. *geschossen*) *to shoot*; *der Verstand the understanding*, from *verstehen* (Imp. *verstand*) *to understand*; *der Entwurf the scheme, sketch*, from *entwerfen* (Past. Part. *entworfen*) *to scheme, to sketch*. Feminine is *die That the deed*, from *thun* (Imp. *that*) *to do*. The neuter exceptions are: *das Bad the bath*; *das Band the tie*; *das Bünd the bunch*, from *binden to bind*; *das Floß the raft*, from *fließen to flow*; *das Grab the grave*, from *graben to dig*; *das Leid the sorrow*, from *leiden to suffer*; *das Lob the praise*, from *loben, to praise*; *das Maas the measure*, from *messen to measure*; *das Schloß the lock, the castle*, from *schließen to lock*; *das Spiel the game, play*, from *spielen to play*; *das Theil the portion share*, from *theilen to divide*; — *das Begehrt the desire*, from *begehren to desire*; *das Bestck the set of instruments*, and *das Versted the hiding place*, from *setzen to put*; *das Verbot the prohibition*, from *verbieten to forbid*; *das Verdeck the deck*, from *decken to cover*; *das Verdienst the merit*, from *verdienen to deserve*; *das Verhör the trial*, from *hören to hear*; *das Verließ the dungeon*, probably from *lassen* (Imp. *ließ*) *to leave*.

Compounds with monosyllabic forms of verbs are very numerous and the rules given with regard to these are of importance for the advanced pupil.

**Masculine** are farther, **Seasons**, (except *das Jahr the year* and *die Nacht the night*), months, (never used without the article), **days**, **mountains**, **stones**, **winds**, **the non-European rivers**, (except those of the Russian empire, in a); the rivers of **Great Britain**, (except *die Themse, Isis, Duse, and Saverne*); the rivers of the **Peninsula**, those of **Italy** in s, those of **France** not ending in e, (only *Alde* and *Indre* are masculine), and the

following German rivers: der Bober, Elbing, Inn, Roder, Lech, Main, Neckar, Pregel, Regen and Rhein. The names of some mountains have the gender of the last component, viz. die Jungfrau, die Schneefoppe, (also die Furfa) das Schredhorn, das Wetterhorn; (likewise, das große Rad).

B. Feminine are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 36, d. 2, and those formed with the stems of verbs as stated p. 34, 7 — also Derivatives in e formed of adjectives and denoting an abstract quality; as, die Ferne *the distance*, from fern *far*; die Fremde *foreign land*, from fremd *foreign, alien*; die Höhe *the height*, from hoch *high*; die Nähe *the vicinity, nearness, presence*, from nah(e) *near*; sometimes highly poetical: as die Reine (Goethe) *the pureness*, die Schöne *beauteousness*, die Trübe (Goethe) *the dimness*.

Feminine are farther: All rivers not mentioned above as masculine, the names of countries ending in au, (Moldau, Moldavia, Wetterau); in ei (Lombardei, Türkei, Wallachei); in ie (Normandie, Picardie); in z (Lausitz Lusatia, Pfalz Palatinate, Schweiz Switzerland); which are always used with the article as also die Krimm, Crimea; Levante, Levant, Provence and Ukraine; most flowers, fruits (except der Apfel, der Pfirsich), trees, if not used in composition with -baum (m.); as, die Eiche *the oak-tree*, die Linde *the lime-tree* (but der Eichbaum). Exceptions are der Ahorn *the maple-tree*, der Lorbeer *the laurel*.

C. Neuter are: The Derivatives formed with the suffixes stated p. 37, 3 (chiefly Diminutives); — all infinitives used as nouns and rendered by participles in English; as, das Kommen und Gehen, *the coming and going*; im Leben und Sterben, *in living and dying*, (Leben und Tod, *life and death*); das Wiedersehen *the meeting again*; — further those Derivatives formed with the prefix Ge having a collective meaning; as, das Gebirge *the range of mountains*, from der Berg *the mountain*; das Gebiß *the set of teeth*, from beißen *to bite*; das Gewölk *accumulated clouds*, from die Wolke

*the cloud*; das Gewässer *the flood*, from das Wasser *the water*; das Gerede *the talk, rumour*, from reden *to talk*; das Gewissen *the conscience*, from wissen *to know*; das Gerippe *the skeleton*, from die Rippe *the rib*; — and Derivatives formed by the prefix Ge from stems of verbs; as, das Gebet *the prayer*, from beten *to pray*; das Gedicht *the poem*, from dichten (denken *to think*) *to write poetry*; das Gericht *the judgment*, from richten *to judge*; das Gesäß *the seat*, from sitzen *to sit*; das Gesicht *sight, face* from sehen *to see*. The exceptions of this class are, a. masculine, der Gebrauch *the use, custom*, from brauchen *to use*; der Gedanke *the thought*, from denken *to think*; der Gehalt *the value, capacity*, from halten *to hold, to contain*, (but das Gehalt *the salary*); der Gemahl *the consort*, (das Gemahl, *quaint, the spouse*); der Genos the associate and der Genuß *the enjoyment*, from genießen *to enjoy*; der Geruch *the odour*, from riechen *to smell*; der Geschmack *the taste*, from schmecken *to taste*; der Gesell and der Gefährte *the companion*; der Gestank *the stench*, from stinken *to stink*; der Gewinn and der Gewinnst *the earning, gain*, from gewinnen *to gain*; b. feminine, die Gebühr *the due*, from gebühren *to be due*; die Geburt *the birth*, from gebären *to give birth*; die Geduld *the patience*, from dulden *to suffer*; die Gefahr *the peril*, from fahren *to fare (perire)*; die Gestalt *the figure, stature*, from stellen *to place*; die Gewähr *guarantee*, from gewähren *to grant*; die Gewalt *power, force*, from walten *to prevail*.

Neuter are likewise, nouns in e and es derived from adjectives and not denoting abstract qualities but things possessing such qualities; as, das Große *the great, all that is great*, (die Größe *greatness, magnitude*); das Alte *the old, Etwas Altes, something old*; das Schöne *the beautiful, all that is beautiful, viel Schönes much that is beautiful*.

Denn wo das Spröde mit dem Zarten,  
Wo Starkes sich und Mildes paarten,  
Da giebt es einen guten Klang. (Schiller).

*For where the brittle and the tender,  
Where the strong and mild unite,  
There will be a good tone.*

Other parts of speech (except the names of figures which are feminine); as *das Ja* und *das Nein*, *das Hier* und *das Dort*, (*das Unten* und *das Oben*) and the letters of the *Alphabet* are neuter when used substantively with an abstract meaning; as, (*das*) *Recht* und (*das*) *Unrecht*, *right and wrong*; *das Mein* und *Dein*, *mine and thine*; *das große A*, *the capital A*. *Ich bin das A* und *das O*. *I am the Alpha and Omega*. „*Der Mann, der das Wenn und das Aber erdacht, hat sicher aus Häckerling Gold schon gemacht.*“ (*Bürger*). *The man who invented the 'if' and the 'but', surely made gold of chopped straw.*

**Neuter** are farther: Countries and towns, except *der Haag* the *Hague*. Feminine, however, are the names of countries ending in *au*, *ei*, *ie*, and *z*, (See B. b. above) whilst *der Peloponnes* and the Compounds of *Gau* (*district*); as, *der Aargau* *Aargau*, *der Breisgau* are masculine. **Neuter** are **metals**, except *der Stahl* *steel*, *der Tombak* *pinchbeck*. *Kobalt*, *Nickel*, *Wismuth* and *Zink* are masculine in common language, but remain neuter in scientific language.

**Note 1. Natural Relations of Man.** *Der Mensch* the human being, mankind, *homo* (contemptuously, the *fellow, individual*), *die Person* the person, *der Mann* the male (sex), *das Weib* the female (sex), *der Gatte*, *die Gattin*, the husband, the wife; (Used only in a dignified sense as applying to true and venerable people, — mate — help mate), *die Eltern* (Pl.) the parents, *das Kind* the child, *der Bruder* the brother, *die Schwester* the sister, *die Geschwister* (Pl.) the family (brothers and sisters), *die Gebrüder* (Pl.) brothers, *der* or *die Verwandte* the male or female relative, *die Waise* the orphan, *der Knabe* the boy, *der Jüngling* the youth, *das Mädchen* the girl, *die Jungfrau* the virgin, maiden, *das Frauenzimmer* the female person, *das Weib* woman (in the natural and mostly noble sense), but also *das böse, alte Weib* the wicked old woman, *das Mannweib* *virago*. „*Die Frauen*“ is also used in speaking of the sex in General as being mainly represented, by the married ladies.

**Note 2. Social Relations.** *Die Frau* the married woman, *mein Mann* my husband, *meine Frau* (sometimes *mein Weib*) my

wife, der Herr the gentleman, die Dame the lady, (these terms cannot be used to indicate character in society, as in the English, '*He is a Gentleman*', '*she is a Lady*' &c., instead of which ein Mann, and eine Frau von Erziehung [of education], or ein gebildeter Mann, eine gebildete Frau, ein gebildetes Mädchen, are in use), der junge Herr Master, das Fräulein the young lady, Miss; Hr. W. Mr W., Frau or Madame W. Mrs W., Fräulein W. Miss W. The children in a family having equal privileges, except in high aristocracy, none of them bear the family name exclusively as in the English '*Master Jones*, *Miss Smith*', but are all alike distinguished by their christian names, der Rath the councillor, die Rätin the councillor's wife, der Graf the count, die Gräfin the countess, (the vowel being modified only in nouns of German origin), therefore, der Baron the baron, die Baronin the baroness, der General the general, die Generalin the general's wife. As in French: *Monsieur le Duc*, *Madame la Duchesse*, the Germans, when speaking ceremoniously, place Herr and Frau or Madame before the title; thus also, Ihr Herr Vater, Ihre Frau Mutter, Ihr Fräulein Schwester your father, your mother, your sister, like the French, *Monsieur votre père*, &c., for which the English employ in formal language the family-name; as, *May I see Mr W.*? (meaning *your husband, father* &c.); German: Darf ich Ihren Herrn Gemahl, Ihren Herrn Vater &c. sprechen?

**Note 3. The Names of Species of Animals** are generally **masculine**: as, der Löwe *the lion*, der Hund *the dog*, whilst the **sexes** are distinguished by das Männchen *the male*, and das Weibchen, *the female*; the latter also by the suffix *in*, with. The vowel modified: der Hase *the hare*, die Hsin *the female hare*; der Löwe *the lion*, die Löwin *the lioness*. Some names of species are **feminine**; as, die Ziege *the goat*, and then the male is expressed by a different word, der Bock *the he-goat*, die Katze *the cat*, der Kater *the tom-cat*; and many others especially the smaller species of birds and fishes are **feminine**: die Lerche *the lark*, das Lerchenhähnchen *the male lark*, die Taube *the pigeon*, der Tauber or Täuberich *the male pigeon*, die Gans *the goose*, der Gänserich *the gander*. The adjectives der, das männliche *the male* and die, das weibliche *the female*, are also used for distinguishing the sex. Some species of animals are expressed by a **neuter common name**; as, das Eichhorn *the squirrel*, das Kamel *the camel*, among which the following express the sexes by a **different name**: das Huhn *the fowl*, der Hahn *the cock*, die Henne or das Huhn *the hen*, das Küchlein *the chicken*; das Rind *neat-cattle*, der Stier or Bulle *the bull*, der Ochse *the ox*, die Kuh *the cow*, das Kalb *the calf*; das Pferd or Roß *the horse*, der Hengst *the stallion*, die Stute or Mähre *the mare*, das Füllen *the foal, colt*; das Schaf *the sheep*, der Bock *the ram*, das Lamm *the lamb*. The terms Stier, Kuh, Kalb, Hengst, Stute, Füllen, Bock are also applied to the sex and offspring of similar species; as, der Zebrahengst, die Zebra Stute, das Eselsfüllen; der Hirsch *the stag, deer*, die Hirschkuh *the hind*, das Reh *the roe*, der Rehbock *the roebuck*, die Rehziege *the female roe*, das Rehkalb

the fawn; das Elephantenfäls; das Schwein the swine, der Eber the boar, die Sau the sow, das Ferkel the young pig.

NOUNS VARYING IN MEANING ACCORDING TO THE GENDER.

Band,	der, volume.	das, ribbon, tie (die Bände, the gang).
Bauer,	der, peasant.	das, bird's cage.
Büdel,	der, hump.	die, boss.
Bund,	der, federation, bond.	das, bundle.
Chor,	der, chorus.	das, choir.
Erbe,	der, heir.	das, inheritance.
Erkenntniß,	die, knowledge.	das, judicial sentence.
Gehalt,	der, value, pith, contents.	das, salary.
Geißel,	der, hostage.	die, scourge.
Gift,	die, dowry.	das, poison.
Gaß,	der, clasp, handle. das, day-fly	die, imprisonment.
Harz,	der, the Harz, mountains.	das, resin.
Heide, *	der, heathen, pa- gan.	die, head, moor.
Hut,	der, hat.	die, heed, protection.
Kaper,	der, privateer.	die, (bot.) caper.
Kiefer,	der, jaw.	die, pine.
Kunde,	der, customer.	die, intelligence.
Leiter,	der, leader, con- ductor.	die, ladder.
Lohn,	der, reward.	das, wages.
Mandel,	die, almond.	das, number of 15.
Mangel,	der, want.	die, mangle.
Mark, die	{ boundary, mar- graviate; merk 8 ounces, of gold or silver.	das, marrow.
Marſch,	der, march.	die, cultivated marsh.

Mast,	der, the mast of a vessel.	die, fattening of cattle, &c.
Mensch,	der, man, mankind.	daß, wench.
Messer,	der, meter, measurer.	daß, knife.
Onkel,	der, uncle.	die, awn.
Reis,	der, rice.	daß, twig.
Schild,	der, shield.	daß, signboard.
Schwulst,	der, bombast.	die, swelling, tumour.
See,	der, lake.	die, sea.
Sprosse,	der, shoot, sprout, scion,	die, step of a ladder.
Steuer,	die, tax.	daß, helm.
Stift,	der, tack, stile ( <i>stilus</i> ).	daß, foundation, cathedral.
Theil,	der, part.	daß, share.
Thor,	der, fool.	daß, gate.
Verdienst,	der, profit, earning.	daß, merit.
Wehr,	die, defence, militia.	daß, wear, sluice.
Weih(e),	der, kite, vulture.	die, consecration.

## SECTION XVI. NOUNS. — DECLENSION.

## Suggestions on the nature of German Declension.

(For Teachers and Scholars).

Declension consists in appending to a word certain letters or syllables by which its bearing on some other word is expressed. Originally these appended letters or syllables were complete words, which gradually were abridged, into the present so-called terminations.

As each such appended word or termination serves always the same purpose, it is clear that in an unmixed language there can be only one declension, somewhat modified indeed according to the stem-endings, but on the whole recognisable as the same in all declined words. So it is in German and the word in which the original declension has been most completely retained is the demonstrative *Der, Die, Das*, now used



as the article (see p. 74 A. to end of p. 75). All other declined words can have, more or less completely, only the endings of *Der*, *Die*, *Das*. Most completely these appear in Pronouns, and in Adjectives when declined without a preceding Pronoun. In most nouns at present only the consonants *s* for the Gen. Sing. and *n* for the Dat. Pl. have been retained, the *e* being now euphonic. In the nouns of the N-Declension as well as in adjectives preceded by pronouns the terminations *s* and *n* have been quite dropped and a euphonic *n* is substituted uniformly in all cases except the Nom. The process by which the above form of declensions has been brought about is the following.

In the earlier forms of the German language, *viz*; in the *Gothic* and *Old-High-German*, declension in nouns and adjectives was very complete, having a special termination for nearly each of the principle cases as in *Latin* and *Greek*.

In the *Gothic* and *Old-High-German* *Der*, *Die*, *Das* was used mainly as a pronoun and there the nouns and adjectives, being used independently of it, had of course to rely on their own terminations *to show the case*. But *Der*, *Die*, *Das* gradually came into use as an article *viz*. into constant connection with the noun and in the *Middle-High-German* (from the 13<sup>th</sup> Century onward) was quite established as such.

Now the Language following a lucky instinct at once took advantage of the presence of the article and, making it the chief indicator of the cases, dropped the consonant-terminations of nouns and adjectives to the present extent and reduced the vowel endings to a mere euphonic element represented by the soft *e* (see p. 4 G, „An ALMOST MUTE *e*”) which has remained adhering to all the cases (except the acc. sing.) of monosyllables and such other nouns as do not already (like *Wasser*, *Vogel*, *Garten*) possess a soft *e* in their last syllable.

The question now arises, why the present consonant terminations, viz. *§* in the gen. sing. and *tt* in the dat. pl., were not also dropped like those of other cases. This probably would have happened had nouns been declined with *Der*, *Die*, *Das* only, when there would have been no difficulty in distinguishing a genitive neuter *Des Thal* from the nom. *Das Thal* or even the neuter Gender *Das Land* from a Gen. masc. *Des Land*. The frequent use however of the noun with some other pronoun such as *Dieses*; *jenes*, the Genitives of which show no difference from the nom. and acc. neuter, seems to have necessitated the retaining of the *§* in the Gen. of the noun itself (thus; nom. *Dieses Thal*, Gen. *Dieses Thal-es*; nom. *jenes Feuer*, Gen. *jenes Feuer-§*) so that not only the Genitives but also the important nom. and acc. are now separate and distinct forms.

The so-called Indefinite Article *ein* (the numeral *one*) and the possessive pronouns, have indeed at present a distinct Genitive but they could not affect the above arrangements as they but later and gradually assumed pronominal endings; the *ein* in Old-German standing itself in need of the demonstrative *Der* for the cases, and the possessive pronouns having altogether adjective forms.

How consistently this economising with the terminations has been carried through appears strikingly in forms like *Allenfalls*, for *Alles Fallest*; *Jedenfalls*, for *Jedes Fallest*; *solchen Benehmens* (*of such behaviour*); *manchen Kummer* (*of many a sorrow*), in which the pronoun itself abandons the *§* in the Genitive, that case being fully expressed by the *§* of the noun (compare p. 79 and the Note p. 80). It is clearly everywhere the necessary distinctness that the Language seems alone to care for and it even does this occasionally by giving the *§* to feminine nouns where these are combined with forms not sufficiently indicating the Genitive, as; *allerseits*, on all hands; *beiderseits*, on both sides; for *aller Seite*, *beider Seite* etc. etc.

The only case termination retained besides the **s** in the Gen. Sing. is the **n** in the Dat. Pl. (gradually contracted and transformed from **Amas** into **Ajis** [Lat. *ibus*] into **m** and **n**). Here also the necessity of distinguishing between the Acc. Sing. Masc. **Den Finger** and **Den Fingern** is the evident reason for retaining the **n** with the noun. It is true that the Gen. Pl. **Der Finger** is the same as the Nom. Sing. **Der Finger**; but any confusion of the two cases is guarded against by their position in the sentence.

The last, though not less decisive, proof for the correctness of the Author's views on, what he has termed "*The economy of grammatical forms in modern German*" is supplied by the so-called **Weak- or N. Declension**. The nouns of this form have, except the Nom. in **e**, an indifferent **n** in all the cases and thus have altogether dispensed with the **s** in the Gen. Sing., (Nom. **der Hase** Gen. **des Hasen**, formerly Gen. **Hasens** still more strikingly **der Hirte**, **des Hirten**; M. H. G. **des Hirtes**). The reason why they could dispense with this **s** is explained at once by two facts. Firstly they are, in the Sing. **never** and in the Pl. rarely used without an article or pronoun, so that their case is fully pointed out by these. Secondly, as they all signify *male* persons or animals there can be no question as to their gender and **dieses** etc. **Hirten** can never be mistaken for a Neuter form.

The practical outcome of the above is that in German Declension the use of terminations is confined mainly to the Pronoun and is superfluous with Nouns and Adjectives (see p. 76 B.) in so far as the pronouns afford the necessary distinctness and that there is only one real declension of nouns *viz*: the S.-Declension, and that here the **s** in the Genitive Sing. and the **n** in the Dat. Pl., identical with the same terminations of the Pronoun, are the only true case-terminations; the **e** being merely a euphonic element

and the enlarged *er* a plural suffix. These facts, once clearly set forth by the teacher, must reduce the learners difficulties to a minimum.

In the following the arrangement adopted in the second Edition is retained as best suited for beginners.

### LEADING REMARKS.

The Table, p. 176 must throughout be kept in view.

1. The declension of nouns consists in **adding** to the **nominative**, that is to the full form, the terminations of case, *viz.* the consonants *n* and *s*.

2. Nothing but these consonants is added to all nouns containing in the **last syllable** of the **nominative** a soft *e*, or formed with the suffix *lein*. Ex. *Anker* anchor, *Anker-s*, *Anker-n*; *Rose* rose *Rose-n*; *Blümlein* floweret, *Blümlein-s*. Only the few nouns in **end** take another *e* exceptionally for the sake of euphony, particularly before the termination *n*; They are *Gegend district*, neighbourhood *Gegenden districts*; *Tugend virtue*, *Tugenden virtues*; — also *Abend evening*, *Abende*, *Abenden*; and *Elend misery*, *Dat. Elende*.

In *Elend* **end** is **not a suffix** but *lend* is the second component and therefore slightly accented whilst the main stress lies on the first syllable. The word was originally; alien land, foreign land, exile.

3. To all nouns, on the other hand, which do **not contain** in their suffix the soft *e*, an *e* is added in all the cases Sing. and Plur., to supply the euphonic syllable. (Comp. p. 23. A.) The terminations *n* and *s* are placed after the *e*. Nouns taking *es* in the Gen. Sing. do not, however, add an *e* in the Acc. Sing.; and in many plurals the *e* is accompanied throughout by an *r* to render them more distinct. (See List 5. p. 174). Ex. *Arm* arm, *Arm-e*, *Arm-es*, *Arm-en*. *Kind*

child, *Kind-e*, *Kind-eſ*, *Kinder* (children), *Kind-ern*. *Balsam* balm, *Balsam-e*, *Balsam-(e)ſ*. *Jüngling* youth, *Jüngling-e*, *Jüngling-(e)ſ*, *Jüngling-en*.

4. There are but two declensions in German, the one taking *n* in all the cases and hence called the N-declension, the other only taking *ſ* in the Gen. Sing. and *n* in the Dat. Plural and called the S-declension.

(The *n* is not added in the dative plural of nouns ending in *en* or *lein*. The nouns in *e* given in List 3, formerly ended in *en* and are declined by the S-declension like the other nouns in *en*.)

5. Modification of the vowel in the plural, analogous to the English *man, men; mouse, mice; foot, feet*, takes place in the S-DECLENSION only. As a rule only nouns signifying the **most primitive** things and notions, and only such Derivatives as are formed of the **stems** of verbs without the addition of a suffix, undergo modification of the vowel. (Exceptions, see lists 6 & 7). Examples: *Vater father*, *Väter fathers*; *Bock ram*, *Böcke rams*; *Mann man*, *Männer men*; *Fuß foot*, *Füße feet*; *Gans goose*, *Gänse geese*; — *Fall fall*, *Fälle falls*, from *fallen to fall*; *Fluß a river*, *Flüsse rivers*, from *fließen to flow*.

6. There are nouns forming the Sing. according to the S- and the Plur. according to the N-form (see List 9); and there are nouns forming **different plurals** with different meanings (see List 10). **Proper names** have some peculiarities in declension. (See D, Declension of proper names).

7. Nouns of **foreign origin** are declined like German nouns. Exceptions are stated at the foot of Lists 1, 3, in List 8 and at the foot of List 9. (For *Christus Christ*, *Jesus Jesus*, and *Gott God*, see D, proper names, p. 135).

8. **Feminine** nouns remain altogether unchanged in the Sing., except in the following quaint expressions: die Kirche unsrer lieben Frauen (also Frauenkirche), *the church of our Lady*; auf Erden (scriptural), *on earth*; zu Ehren, *in honour of*; mit Freuden, *with pleasure*; vor Freuden, *for joy*; in and zu Gnaden, *in favour*; Euer Gnaden, *your Grace*; zu Gunsten, *in and into favor (of)*; zu Schanden machen, *to spoil, to frustrate*; zu Schanden werden, *to fail disgracefully*; von Seiten, *on the part of*; bei Zeiten, *in time*. The termination **en** in the cases is a relic of former declension. It also occurs in poetry, particularly in Ballad-style; as, das Licht der Sonnen, *the light of the sun*.

Fest gemauert in der Erden

Steht die Form, . . .

*Firmly walled within the earth*

Stands the mould, . . .

(Schiller's „Lay of the bell.”)

## A. THE N-DECLENSION.

(Analogy in English, *ox*, *oxen*).

Grammarians call this form the weak or modern form. Strictly speaking, it is as little a declension as that of the adjectives. Indeed, the nouns comprised under this form, are much like adjectives in their origin, denoting qualities rather than objects. As in the adjective the **n** does not point out case and is obviously euphonic.

Nouns declined by the N-form take in all the cases Sing. and Plur. **n**, and never alter their vowel.

### SINGULAR.

N. der Knabe the boy.

G. des Knaben of the boy.

D. dem Knaben (to) the boy.

A. den Knaben the boy.

### SINGULAR.

N. der Ochse the ox.

G. des Ochsen of the ox.

D. dem Ochsen (to) the ox.

A. den Ochsen the ox.

## PLURAL.

N. die Knaben the boys.

G. der Knaben of the boys.

D. den Knaben (to) the boys.

A. die Knaben the boys.

der Löwe, *the lion*.

## PLURAL.

N. die Ochsen the oxen.

G. der Ochsen of the oxen.

D. den Ochsen (to) the oxen.

A. die Ochsen the oxen.

Der Mensch *man*, (the human being).

## Ex. IX. Sprache und Geist. Language and Mind.

(Embracing the pl. of fem. nouns. (p. 164))

The N-Declension is also that of the adjective after the masc. article *Der*, which must be committed to memory beforehand. Adjectives and participles used as nouns are declined like adjectives.

Strong verbs are explained S. XXI and a number of them must be committed to memory each lesson. Their impf. and p. p. as well as their meaning will accordingly no longer be given in the exercises but are marked „st.“ and must be looked up in the alphabetical list as a most useful practice.

Der fleißige (diligent) Knabe des Fremden (stranger, foreigner) hat dieses Buch (book) geschrieben (st. written). Der Sehende (pres. part. of *sehen* used as a noun, the one that sees.) hat dem Blinden geholfen (aided XVIII. the Dative List 2). Das Werk (work) des aufrichtigen (sincere) Deutschen (German) soll (is to) dem fleißig Lernenden (learning Student) nützen (XVIII the Dat. List 2). Die Sprache (language) ist das Mittel (medium) des Geistes (gen. mind). Die Gebildeten (the well educated) lernen die fremden (foreign) Sprachen, um die Werke (pl.) der Gelehrten (learned, philosopher) und Poeten (poets) anderer (of other) Nationen (nation f.) zu studiren (study). Nationen sind Schwestern, welche einander (each other) dienen (XVIII. the Dat. List 2). Die Nationen haben materielle (material) und geistige (intellectual) Interessen (interests). Die letzteren (latter) sind der Zweck (end), die ersteren (the former) nur (only) die Mittel (means).

To the **N-Form** belong: 1. All nouns signifying **male beings and ending in e**, and the following nouns which formerly ended in **e** (or a similar vowel), but of late have dropped it in the Nom. as **Ōðs** above. Apart from a few derivative names of animals, these denote qualities of men, not of a primitive nature, like *father, brother, son*, but developed at an advanced stage of history, such as names of *nations*, and terms like *sovereign, prince, count, gentleman, ancestor, hero, fop*, &c.

**LIST 1, (Table p. 128, column 1).**

**Masc. nouns, signifying male beings, formerly ending in e in the Nom. and declined like Ōðs p. 159.**

der Bär, bear.	der Leopard, Leopard.
der Baier, the Bavarian.	der Magyar, Magyar.
der Barbar', the barbarian.	der Mensch, man, a human
der Bauer, peasant, boor.	being.
(see Note 1.)	der Mohr, Moor.
der Christ, the Christian.	der Nachbar, neighbour (see
der Elephant', elephant.	Note 1.)
der Fink, finch.	der Narr, fool.
der Fürst, prince, sovereign,	der Nerv, nerve.
monarch.	der Ōðs, ox.
der Gefe, fop.	der Prinz, prince, son of a
der Gesell', companion, fellow, journeyman.	sovereign.
der Graf, count.	der Rebell', rebel.
der Greif, griffin.	der Rekrut, recruit.
der Held, hero.	der Schenk, cupbearer.
der Herr, lord, gentleman,	der Spaz, sparrow.
master (see Note 2).	der Tartar', Tartar.
der Hirt, herdsman.	der Thor, fool.
der Husar, Hussar.	der Tyrann', tyrant.
der Kaffer, Kaffir.	der Ungar, the Hungarian.
der Kamerad', comrade.	der Unterthan, subject.
der Kroat, Croatian.	der Vorfahr, ancestor.



**Note 1.** Bauer *peasant*, boor, and Nachbar (which latter is a contraction of nahe *nigh* and Bauer, boor and therefore adds like Bauer only n) have always n in the Pl., but would take more correctly only s in the Gen. Sing. Especially Nachbar however is considered more elegant with n throughout except in phrases like Nachbars Kinder, neighbours children; Nachbars Frits, neighbours Freddy etc.

**Note 2.** Herr (originally the comparative of her, high and hence „a superior“, master, lord) takes in the Sing. only n to distinguish it better from the Pl. Herren, Mess<sup>rs</sup> which in addition is commonly used with the article as den Herren N. to Mess<sup>rs</sup> N. (acc. Sing. Den Herrn N. Mr. N.)

**Note 3.** Some nouns formerly declined by the N-form now take the S-Declension; as, Der Hahn *the cock*, Des Hahnes, but show the n in compounds; as, Der Hahnenstamm *cockscow*; Hahnenstrei, *cockscrow*, etc: Others still show the N-form in the Plural; see List 9.

### EX. X. Die Menagerie und die Gesellschaft. The Menagerie and Society.

On the N-Declension in connection with the above List embracing also the Sing. of fem. nouns. Learn Article and pronouns. See pp. 84, 85.

Ihr Knaben seht gerne (are fond of seeing) den Fürsten der Thiere (of beasts), den großmüthigen Löwen. Die Großmuth (generosity) dieser größten Katze (cat) ist wohl (likely) Fabel (fable) wie diejenige von (like that of, Dat.) dem indischen Elephanten, welcher die Erde (earth, globe) trägt (to carry). Warum (why) hat man den Elephanten nicht den König (King) genannt (to call)? Weil der Mensch ihn regiert (to rule). Vielleicht (perhaps) sollte (should) man die Leoparden Prinzen, die Tiger Grafen und die Bären große Herren nennen. Und als die Unterthanen dieser Tyrannen würden ferner (farther) die dummen (stupid) Ochsen, die Affen (ape) und die feigen Hasen (hase, hare) gelten. Zum Glück (fortunately) ist die menschliche Gesellschaft besser eingerichtet: Unsre Vorfahren waren keine Thoren und ehrten die Natur des Menschen indem (indem sie gaben, in giving) den Edelsten (ed. noble) eine hohe (high) Stellung (position) gaben.

By the N-form are declined also such nouns of Greek and Latin origin signifying male occupations as have the *accented* suffixes or components indicated by the following examples: Veteran, Protestant, Sergeant, Monarch, Fantast, Potentat, Soldat, (soldier, from the German *Soldat* *poy*), Pharmaceut, Student, Prophet, Präsekt, Geognost, Kalligraph (*graph* signifying *the writer*), Aristokrat, Catholic, Sophist, Eremit, Profelyt, Philolog, Theolog, Astronom, Starost, (Sclavonic), Patriot, Anthroponom, Philosoph, Architect.

Also the following signifying things: Diamant, Foliant, Consonant, Quadrant, Quartant, Sertant, Octant, Quotient, Recipient, Komet, Planet, Hippogryph, Paragraph, Telegraph.

2. To the N-form form belong also all feminine nouns in the Plur. (the Sing. *remaining unaltered*, see p. 159, 8), except those in *niss* (Plur. *nisse*) and the following, these exceptions adding the euphonic *e* in all the cases and taking *n* in the Dat. only. Those in the list modify the vowel in the Plur. because they all signify things or notions of a very primitive nature.

LIST 2. (Table p. 176; column 2, 2<sup>d</sup> Division).

The only fem. nouns not declined by the N-form, but like the specimen *Gans*, p. 164.

die Angst, anguish, alarm.	die Gruft, grave, tomb, pit.
die Ausflucht, evasion.	die Hand, hand.
die Art, axe.	die Haut, hide, skin.
die Braut, bride, betrothed.	die Kluft, cleft, gulf.
die Brunst, in the compound	die Kraft, power.
Feuerbrunst, conflagration.	die Kuh, cow.
die Brust, breast, chest.	(die Zusammenkunft, meeting).
die Faust, fist.	die Kunst, art.
die Frucht, fruit.	die Laus, louse.
die Gans, goose.	die Luft, air.
die Geschwulst, tumor, swelling.	die Lust, lust.

die Macht, might.	die Sau, sow.
(Vollmachen, Ohnmachten).	die Schnur, string, cord.
die Magd, maidservant.	die Stadt, town.
die Maus, mouse.	die Tochter, see below.
die Mutter, see below.	die Wand, wall, partition.
die Nacht, night.	die Wurst, sausage.
(Weihnachten, Christmas).	die Zunft, corporation.
die Naht, seam.	die Kriegsläufe, warlike times.
die Noth, need, distress.	die Zeitläufe, conjunctures.
die Nuß, nut (Nüsse nuts).	die Einfünfte income, Zusammenfünfte meetings.
and the compound plurals:	

Die Mutter *mother*, and die Tochter *daughter*, are the only dissyllabic feminine nouns declined in the plural by the S-form (p. 176, third column); as, Mütter *mothers*; Töchter *daughters*; dative; Müttern, Töchtern.

Feminine nouns are accordingly declined as follows:

N-FORM.		EXCEPTIONS. (List 2.)
<i>Singular.</i>		
N. die Blume the flower.	die Art the kind.	die Gans the goose.
G. der Blume of the flower.	der Art of the kind.	der Gans of the goose.
D. der Blume (to) the flower.	der Art (to) the kind.	der Gans (to) the goose.
A. die Blume the flower.	die Art the kind.	die Gans the goose.
<i>Plural.</i>		
(e supplied).		(e supplied).
N. die Blumen the flowers.	die Arten the kinds.	die Gänse the geese.
G. der Blumen of the flowers.	der Arten of the kinds.	der Gänse of the geese.
D. den Blumen (to) the flowers.	den Arten (to) the kinds.	den Gänse-(to) the geese.
A. die Blumen the flowers.	die Arten the kinds.	die Gänse the geese.
(die Wachtel the quail).	(die Schlacht the battle).	(die Nacht the night).

**Note.** The feminine Derivatives formed with the suffix *in* (see p. 37, 2); as, Freundin *fem. friend*, Nachbarin *fem. neighbour*, Königin *queen*, double in the Plur. the *n* of the suffix; as, Freundinnen, Nachbarinnen, Königinnen.

## Ex. XI. Die drei Geschlechter. The three Genders.

On the declension of feminine nouns in connection with the relative pronoun, (for which see pp. 84, 113 and 117.) (The attributive adjective after a feminine article or pronoun takes *e* in the nom. and acc. sing. but *en* in all the other cases. Without any article or pronoun it takes throughout the endings of the article. — Repeat the fem. suffixes p. 37, 2.)

Sehr geehrte Frau! (Dear Madam,)

Sie sind keinesweges (by no means) die Einzige (the only one) die über die Schwierigkeiten (difficulty) klagt (to complain), welche die eigensinnige (stubborn) Eintheilung (division) der deutschen Substantiven in drei Geschlechter (three genders) verursacht (to cause). Indem ich (Indem ich sehe — seeing) Sie aber mit (dat. with) einer so großen (so great a) Energie und seltenen (rare) Beharrlichkeit (perseverance) damit (with it) kämpfen (to struggle — to cope) sehe, will ich Ihnen mit einigen (a few) Andeutungen (hint) zu Hilfe kommen (to aid) die (welche) unsere neuere (recent) Forschung (research) mir an die Hand giebt (suggests). Zunächst (first) werden Sie wissen (to know), daß die deutsche Sprache keinesweges die einzige Sün-derin (i. sinner) ist, die mit der lebenswürdigen (amiable) Geduld (patience) einer so thätigen (active) Schülerin (pupil) ihr Spiel treibt (to dally). Das Sanskrit, die Griechische, (Greek), Lateinische (Latin), Französische (French), Spanische und die Italienische Sprache, kurz (in short) alle europäischen wie die edleren (noble) Sprachen Asiens (Asia), machen (to give) Ihnen mehr oder weniger (more or less) dieselbe (p. 84) Mühe (trouble). Nur die Englische, sagen (say) Sie, ist so vernünftig (sensible) gewesen, dem Unfuge (mischievous) ein Ende zu machen (to put an end to). Ja freilich (true) aber was werden Sie sagen, wenn ich behaupte (affirm), daß diese gepriesene (extolled) Vernünftigkeit (common sense) wahrscheinlich (probably) eine Handlung (act) der reinen (pure, sheer) Verzweiflung (despair) war. Wenn man sich denkt (sich denken to imagine), daß die Germanischen Sachsen in diesem

Lande (country) schon Mühe genug (enough) hatten, ihre normannischen Unterdrücker (oppressor) zu verstehen (to understand) wenn diese übermüthigen (haughty) Herren für das Fleisch (flesh) der Ochsen, Kühe (cow) Schweine (pig - swine) und Schafe (sheep) *du boeuf, du porc und du mouton* forderten (demand) weil sie die guten Sachen (thing) zwar (indeed) essen (st.) aber sich mit der Zucht (rearing) keine Mühe geben wollten. Wie (how) groß muß die Verwirrung (confusion) geworden sein, wenn die Normannen nach (dat. for) einer Sache „sie“ oder „er“ riefen (to cry), welche die armen Sklaven (slaves, serfs, thralls) sonst „he“ „she“ oder „it“ genannt (named) hatten. Denn (for) Sie müssen (must) wissen, daß die klassisch gebildeten (educated) Normannen für sehr viele Sachen z. B. für Sonne (sun), Mond (moon) u. s. w. ein anderes Geschlecht hatten als die nordischen (northern) Sachsen. Da (since as) aber die Sprache der Letzteren (latter) endlich (in the end) die Oberhand behielt, (to maintain the upper-hand) aber durch französische Formen umgebildet (modified) wurde, so wird es wohl den französischen Priestern (priest), Juristen (Lawyer), und Schreibern (clerk) am besten gelungen haben, den ganzen Krieg (war) der Geschlechter über Bord zu werfen (to cast over board) und jedes unbelebte (inanimate) Ding (thing) „it“ zu nennen (to designate). Ich gebe zu (to admit) daß die Sprache dadurch (through this) an Einfachheit (simplicity) gewann (st.); was sie aber auf der andern Seite (side) verlor, können Sie an (from) dem Beispiele (example) des Wortes (word) „ship“ sehen. Es bedeutet (signifies) dem sturmgeprüften (weather-beaten) Seemann (seaman) nicht bloß (merely) das fahle (sorry, bald) Ding. Es bedeutet seinem Gemüthe (mind, feeling, heart) noch etwas mehr (something more) wenn er es „she“ nennt, wie einen Gegenstand (object) seiner zärtlichen (tender) Neigung (affection). Damit (with this) haben Sie das Geheimniß (secret) unserer Geschlechter, denn Eine Rose (rose) bedeutet uns auch zugleich (at the same time) die zarte (delicate) Königin der Blumen (flower); Sie ist weiblich (feminine). Woher (whence) aber haben (have got) die Sprachen die Geschlechter? „Das wissen die Götter!“ — sagen die Deutschen wenn Niemand (nobody) es weiß.

### Ex. XII. Die Götter und Sprache. The Gods and Language.

On the Decl. of fem. Nouns including those in List 2. p. 163. Verbs marked „st“ are strong and their meanings are to be found in the List following Sect. XXII.

Aber diesmal (this time) wissen es die Götter wirklich. die Geschlechter der Namen der Dinge entsprangen (entspringen st. to spring from) zum guten Theile (part) aus den mythischen (mythological) Vorstellungen (notion) der uralten (most ancient) Nationen. Wir glauben (to believe) dies (p. 92 A.) kaum (scarcely), weil (because) wir die Wirkungen der Natur (as fem. nouns do not decline in the Sing. they are mostly used with the article) auf das Gemüth des unbeschränkten (untutored) Menschen nicht mehr fühlen (to feel). Die Herrlichkeit (glory) der Sonne, die Pracht (splendour) der Sternenhimmel (starry-world) und die Schönheit (beauty) der Erde (earth) bewegten (to move) die Seelen (soul) zu Bewunderung (admiration), Liebe (love) und Dankbarkeit (gratitude). Die Schrecken (terrors) der Elemente (Gen. Pl.), die Gefahren (dangers), Mangel und Noth des Lebens erfüllten (to fill) sie mit Furcht. Diese Erscheinungen (phenomenon) und die Kräfte der Natur, welche sie nicht begriffen (begreifen st. to comprehend), schienen ihnen sittliche (moral) Mächte und göttliche (divine) Geheimnisse (mystery), und bald (soon) nannten (Sect. XXII.) sie diese selbst (these themselves) Gottheiten (diety). Diese Gottheiten dachten (Sect. XXII.) sie sich (sie denken to imagine) immer (always) menschlich (humanlike) und gaben (st.) ihnen menschliche Eigenschaften (quality); namentlich (particularly) männliche (masculine) und weibliche (feminine). So waren in kurzer Zeit (time) der Himmel (heaven), die Lüfte, die Erde und die Gewässer voll von Göttern und Göttinnen (goddess). Allmählich (gradually) schwanden (st.) diese Träume (dreams) aber die Namen der Dinge (of things) blieben (st.) männlich oder weiblich. Die Erde war nicht mehr die Göttin aber sie blieb die „Mutter“ Erde. In den Bäumen lebten nicht mehr die zarten Dryaden (dryads) aber die Eiche, die Buche (beech), die Fichte (pine), die Tanne (fir) u. s. w. blieben weiblich. Ebenso die Blumen wel-

die einst Nymphen waren. Bei (with) den Orientalen war die Sonne ein gewaltiger (violent) zerstörender (destroying) Gott und so blieb sie den Normannen männlich und heißt daher im Englischen „he“. Der griechische Jupiter fiel (st.) wie (like) der nordische „*Thór*“; aber der Himmel, der Bliß (lightning) und der Donner (thunder) sind männlich. Aeolus fesselte (to fetter) nicht mehr die Stürme (m. tempest); aber es blieb der Nord wie der Süd, der Ost wie der West. Die keusche (chaste) Diana oder Luna machten den Mond, — den schwachen Abglanz (weak reflex) der Sonne, — zu einer „*she*“. Die Sachsen wie ihre Brüder im hohen Norden fühlten, daß (that) die besten Segnungen (blessings) von den Frauen (say: woman —) kommen. Die Sonne brachte (Sect. XXII.) in ihre rauhe (raw) (st.) Heimath (native land) Licht (light) Wärme (warmth) und Leben. So war sie die älteste Tochter der Erde, mit goldenen Haaren (n. hair), die auf die erstarrte (benumbed) Welt liebevoll (kindly) herablächelt (to smile down upon), die feindliche (hostile) Nacht verjagt (to chase away) und den garstigen (nasty) Nebel (mist) zerstreut (to disperse). Und der Mond? Er war der kleine (little) bleiche (pale) Bruder der Sonne, welchen der Nebelriese (Giant of the mist) fressen (st.) wollte. Die treue Schwester nahm (st.) ihn mit sich (herself) in den Himmel. Da ist er noch heute (today) und noch heute singen die Deutschen:

Guter Mond du gehst (st.) so stille,

Durch die Abendwolken (evening clouds) hin (along).

Einer Dame (lady), die es so gut weiß, welche Macht die Association der Ideen hat, darf (need) ich kaum weiter erklären (farther explain) wie (how) die Anwendung (application) der Geschlechter sich (itself) auf die Welt der Thiere (n. animal) übertrug (transfer st.), — warum (why) unsern Vorfahren (List 1.) von dem Herrn Löwen, von dem Meister (master) Braun, (Bruin), dem Bären, von dem bösen (wicked) Megrimm (wolf) und dem Meister Reinide (Renard); Dagegen aber (but on the other hand) von der Frau Nachtigall (nightingale), der Mutter Henne (hen) und von der ewig schnatternden (cackling), dummen Frau Gans (goose) redeten (to talk); ja (nay) warum es endlich einen männlichen Braten (roast) und Wein, aber eine weibliche Suppe (soup)

und Milch (milk) giebt (es giebt there is). In der Hoffnung, daß Sie die Länge dieser Abhandlung (treatise) nicht ermüdet hat (to tire) bin ich mit der größten Verehrung

Der Verfasser (The Author).

## B. THE S-DECLENSION.

(Ancient or strong form).

The pupil has first to ascertain by the rules under A. whether a noun belongs to the N-form. All nouns which he finds do not belong to the N-declension, are declined by the S-form. (Notice, however, List 9, and also List 10, pp. 183, 184).

It will be found that **all neuter nouns**, all **masculine nouns** not signifying male beings and ending in *e*, or not given in List 1, and of **feminine nouns**, only **the plurals** of those given in List 2, belong to the S-form.

The S-form is properly termed the ancient or strong form, because it has preserved the characteristic features of the most primitive declension.

The modification of the vowel in the Plur.\* is peculiar to it, and the pupil may notice, that the more ancient a noun according to its meaning (denoting, for instance, objects of nature and of primitive life), the more certainly may it be expected to assume the modified vowel in the Plur.; whilst very few abstract nouns undergo Modification in the Plur., and among these chiefly such **primary Derivatives** as are formed of **stems of verbs** without the addition of a suffix; as, *Gang walk*, *Gänge walks*, from *gehen* (Past. Part. *gegangen*) *to go*; *Brauch usage*, *Bräuche usages*, from *brauchen to use*; *Stoß toss*, *thrust*, *Stöße thrusts*, from *stoßen to toss*, *to push*; *Spruch saying*, *Sprüche sayings*, from *sprechen to speak*. The Exceptions in point of Modification are given in Lists 6 and 7 pp. 181, 182.

\* See pp. 5, 32 A. and also footnote p. 122.



The only terminations of this form are *s* the Gen. SING. and *n* in the Dat. PLUR. (The same as in *der* and *das*).

The pupil should proceed as follows:

1. (See Table p. 176, column 3.) Add only *s* in the Gen. Sing. and *n* in the Dat. Plur. to all nouns of this form which contain in their last syllable the unaccented *e*,

Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Dat. Plur.
Der Finger.	Des Fingers.	Den Fingern.
Das Segel.	Des Segels.	Den Segeln.
but do not add the <i>n</i> in the Dat. Plur. to nouns ending in <i>en</i> or <i>lein</i> ; as,		
Der Haden.	Des Haden.	Den Haden (not Hadenen).
Das Blümlein.	Des Blümleins.	Den Blümlein.

All the other cases are like the Nom. Sing.

(It may be remarked that the suffixes containing the soft *e* are: *e*, — *el*, — *en*, — *er*, — *en*; — also, — *em*, — *el* and *lein*. Notice *Abend* and *Uend* p. 157, 2).

The infinitives of verbs which are used as neuter nouns; as, *das Reisen travelling*, *das Leben living, life*, and the following masc. nouns ending in *e*, but also occurring with the Nom. Sing. in *en* are declined like nouns in *en*; as, Nom. *Funke* or *Funken spark*, Gen. *Funken*, the rest of the cases *Funken*.

### LIST 3.

Nouns with the Nom. in *e* for *en*, Gen. *en*s.

der Buchstabe, letter.	der Haufe, the multitude,
der Fels, (also Acc. Fels),	heap.
rock.	der Name, name, fame.
der Friede, peace, treaty.	der Same, seed.
der Funke, spark.	der Schade, detriment, Plur.
der Gedanke, idea, thought.	modified, Schäden.
der Glaube, faith, creed.	der Wille, the will.

The declension of these nouns has an analogy in the Latin *sermo* for *sermon*, *sermonis*. (Compare; *nomen*, *semen*.)

Of all the nouns containing the soft *e* in their last syllable, only the following very ancient ones modify the vowel in the Plur., (the rest being derivatives or having vowels not liable to Modification); for instance Bruder, Plur. Brüder.

LIST 4. (Table p. 176, col. 3. Specimen Nagel p. 177.)

The only *dissyllabic* simple nouns of the S-form in which the vowel is modified in the Plur.

der Ader, ploughed field.	der Mangel, deficiency, want.
acre.	der Mantel, mantle, cloak.
der Apfel, apple.	der Nabel, navel.
der Boden, bottom, loft.	der Nagel, nail.
der Bruder, brother.	der Ofen, stove, oven.
der Faden, thread.	der Sattel, saddle.
der Garten, garden.	der Schaden, damage.
der Graben, ditch.	der Schnabel, beak.
der Hafen, harbour.	der Schwager, brother-in-
der Hammel, wether, mutton.	law.
der Hammer, hammer.	der Vater, father.
der Handel, affair.	der Vogel, bird.
der Laden, shop.	der Zagel, tail.
der Magen, stomach.	

Das Kloster, *the cloister*, Plur. die Klöster, and the plurals of Mutter and Tochter — Mütter *mothers*, Töchter *daughters*, are the only other nouns with the soft *e* suffix modifying the vowel in the plural.

2. (See Table p. 176 column. 4). add the euphonic *e* in all the cases Sing. and Plur., except the Acc. Sing., to all nouns of the S-form which do not naturally

possess an *e* in their last syllable, or which have not the suffix *lein*. The terminations *s* in the Gen. and *n* in the Dat. Plur. are made to follow the euphonic *e*. The nouns given in List 5. and also the nouns in *thum* take the enlarged plural in *er* Dat. *ern*, which is invariably accompanied by the modification of the strong root-vowel, and of *-thum* to *-thümer*.

## EXAMPLES.

*Singular.*

	ball,	toll,	foot,	beam, tree,	king,	destiny.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ball m.,	Roll m.,	Fuß m.,	Baum m.,	König m.,	Schicksal n.
<i>Gen.</i>	Balles,	Rolls,	Fußes,	Baumes,	König(e)s,	Schicksal(e)s.
<i>Dat.</i>	Balle,	Roll,	Füße,	Baume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Acc.</i>	Ball,	Roll,	Fuß,	Baum,	König.	Schicksal.

*Plural.*

	balls,	tolls,	feet,	beams,	kings,	destinies.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bälle,	Rollen,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Gen.</i>	Bälle,	Rollen,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.
<i>Dat.</i>	Bällen,	Rollen,	Füßen,	Bäumen,	Königen,	Schicksalen.
<i>Acc.</i>	Bälle,	Rollen,	Füße,	Bäume,	Könige,	Schicksale.

**Note 1.** The *e* is not added in the acc. sing., because all neuter nouns must be alike in the Nom. and Acc. Sing., and the masculine nouns seem to have been influenced by this rule.

**Note 2.** The *e* before the *s* in the Gen. Sing. is generally dropped in nouns of more than one syllable, and also in those which occur as last components, on account of the reduced accentuation of the suffix or last component (see p. 24 B. 2., 3.) and owing to the termination *s* conveying by itself a certain amount of sound; as, *des Königs of the king*, *des Jünglings of the youth*, *des Balsams of the balm*, *des Schicksals of the destiny*, *des Spielballs of the playing-ball*. Observe the compounds of *Stein* and *Eisen*, which take the *e* in no case; as, *des Daseins*, of existence; *des Wohlthuns*, of benevolence. In compound nouns ending in *s*, *ß*, *z*, or *sch*, the *e* in the Gen. is always preserved to make both the final consonant and the termination audible; as, *des Futtergrases of the green-fodder*, *des Vorderfußes of the fore-foot*, *des Wortwizes of the word-wisdom*, *des Steinfisches of the sea-fish*. In other cases the preservation of the *e* is euphonic; as, *des Seebades of the sea-bath*, (not

des Seebades); des Felsengraves of the grave in the rock (not des Felsengrabs).

**Note 3.** The euphonic e is by many writers very commonly omitted in the Dat. Sing.; it must be so when the noun is governed by a preposition immediately preceding it; as aus Haß, from hatred; mit Grund, with reason; nach Verlauf, after the lapse of; chiefly in idiomatic expressions; as, mit Weib und Kind, with wife and children; von Haus und Hof, from hearth and home; mit Gut und Blut, with life and property. When an adjective, article &c. intervenes, the e is retained; as, aus altem Hass, from ancient hatred; mit gutem Grunde, with good ground; nach dem Verlaufe, after the lapse. Exceptions are the following phrases: nach Hause, (going) home; zu Hause, at home; zu Fuß, on foot; vor Tisch, before the meal; bei Tisch, at table; zu Tisch, to table, dinner etc.; nach Tisch, after table.

**Note 4.** Nouns in ß and those in niß either change or do not change the ß into ff according to the rules laid down under ß and ff pp. 15 and 16; hence der Fuß, des Fußes; but, der Guß, des Gusses; der Fluß, des Flusses.

**Note 5.** If doubled vowels undergo modification, only the single modified vowel is written; as, Saal hall, Säle halls; Boot boat, Böte boats. The diphthong au only modifies the a — äu; as, Baum tree, Bäume trees.

**Note 6.** A number of nouns, of the masculine and neuter gender, taken from modern languages, retain the plural in § in all cases; as, Cousins cousins (male), Couplets couplets, Details details, Fauteuils easy-chairs, Genies geniuses, Clubs, Casinos, Dominos, Banquiers, Rentiers, Forts, Lieutenants, Fonds, Lords, Agios, Hotels, &c. &c., and especially such in ment, as have retained the French pronunciation (mang) in that suffix; as, Abonnements (subscriptions), Arrangements (arrangements), Amendements, Bombardements, Etablissements, Falsifications, Gouvernements, &c., &c. The following, however, have German pronunciation and declension; as, Plur. Elemente, Sakramente; — Aliment, Argument, Compliment, Connoissement, Element, Emolument, Extremum, Experiment, Fiment, Filament, Firmament, Fundament, Liniment, Monument, Parliament, Pergament, Pigment, Postament, Sakrament, Segment, Supplement, Testament.

**Note 7.** The foreign nouns Diadem', Emblem', Extrem', Problem', and Phänomen', add the euphonic e. Likewise Charakter in its etc. Plur. Charaktere.

**3.** The following most ancient nouns take, in the Plur. throughout, the suffix er (Dat. ern), and

invariably modify the strong vowel.\* Nouns with the suffix *thum* take in the Plur. *thümer*. In committing to memory the nouns of this list, the pupil may notice, that of all nouns in the language these are the most ancient, and in fact, with the exception of a very few stray words, represent the objects of life in its most primitive condition.

LIST 5. (Table, p. 176, column 4, 2<sup>d</sup> Division).

72 Nouns with the enlarged plural in *er*, and vowel modified. Specimen  
*Thal*, p. 177.

The nouns marked\* have double plurals. (See List 10, p. 184).

das <i>Wag</i> , carrion.	das <i>Denkmal</i> , (sometimes
das <i>Amt</i> , office.	pl. <i>Denkmale</i> ), monu-
das <i>Augenlid</i> , eyelid.	ment.
das <i>Bad</i> , bath,	das <i>Dorf</i> , village.
* das <i>Band</i> , ribbon.	* der <i>Dorn</i> , thorn-bush.
das <i>Bild</i> , picture, (idol).	das <i>Ei</i> , egg.
das <i>Blatt</i> , leaf.	das <i>Fach</i> , compartment.
das <i>Brett</i> , board.	das <i>Faß</i> , cask.
das <i>Buch</i> , book.	das <i>Feld</i> , field.
das <i>Dach</i> roof.	das <i>Gastmahl</i> , banquet.

\* The nouns which receive in the Plur. the suffix *er* (O. H.-G. *ir*) together with the modified vowel, seem to be characterised as most ancient in the Gothic by the absence of the usually developed consonantic termination in the Nom. and Acc. Plur. They end, Nom. *a*, Gen. *e*, Dat. *um*, Acc. *a*, and lose this apparently feeble *a* in the old High-German, thus becoming open to the hitherto unexplained addition of the *ir* which may have found its way into the German from the North to supply a practical want. The ancient Frisian and Anglo-Saxon show distinct traces of this form of plural; as, Fr. *kindern* children. Ang. S. *ægern* eggs (*Eier*), *cēalfru* calves (*Kälber*), *lambru* lambs (*Lämmer*).

It seems doubtful whether Schleicher's („die deutsche Sprache" p. 249.) explanation of these plurals in *er*, in analogy to the Latin *verbera*, quite meets the point. The corresponding *verbera* shows nowhere the *er* and the German *Körper* is the Sing.

(mahl, feast).	der Leib, body.
der Geist, spirit.	das Licht, light.
das Geld, money.	* das Lied, song.
das Gemach, apartment.	das Loch, hole.
das Gemüth, mind.	* der Mann, man.
das Geschlecht, sex.	das Maul, mouth.
* das Gesicht, face.	das Nest, nest.
das Gespenst, spectre.	* der Ort, place.
das Gewand, garment.	das Pfand, pledge.
das Glas, glass.	das Rad, wheel.
das Glied, limb.	der Rand, margin.
der Gott, the god, idol.	das Reis, twig.
das Grab, grave.	das Rind, neat-cattle.
das Grabmal, tombstone.	* das Schild, signboard.
das Gras, grass.	das Schloß, lock, castle.
das Gut, estate, (goods).	das Schwert, sword.
das Haupt, head.	* das Stift, ecclesiastical
das Haus, house.	foundation.
das Holz, wood.	* der Strauch, shrub, copse.
das Horn, horn.	das Thal, valley.
das Huhn, fowl.	das Tuch, cloth.
das Kalb, calf.	das Volk, people.
das Kind, child.	der Vormund, guardian.
das Kleid, garment.	der Wald, forest.
das Korn, grain.	das Wams, jacket, doublet.
das Kraut, herb.	das Weib, woman.
das Lamm, lamb.	* das Wort, word.
* das Land, country.	der Wurm, worm.

and the foreign nouns das Capital capital (of a pillar); das Hospital or Spital' hospital; and das Regiment the Regiment.

The plurals *Gewande garments*, *Land lands* and *Thal valleys* occur in poetry. Mann, *man* has, besides the Pl. *Männer*, an old form, *Mannen vassals, retainers*, and in Compounds *Leute men of a class*; as, *Seemann, Pl. Seeleute seamen*.

In using the following table of declension, the pupil has to ascertain, firstly, whether the noun comes under the head of col. 1, secondly whether it is a feminine noun, (when the exceptions in the second subdivision of the plural require to be considered). All other nouns belong to the 8-form, and require simply to be classed

according to the headings of col. 3 and 4, the terminations being throughout added to the Nom., that is, to the full word.

*Compound Nouns*, see p. 185; *Nouns of foreign origin* see p. 157, 7.

N-DECLENSION. (modern weak or adjective-form), admitting no modification of vowel in the plural.		S-DECLENSION. (ancient or strong form), attended by the modification of the vowel in the plural of nouns of a primitive meaning, and comprising all neuter nouns, and all masculine nouns not accounted for in col. 1.	
Masc. nouns, signifying male beings and ending in t, and those given in List 1. p. 161, as having formerly ended in t.	Feminine nouns remaining unaltered in the singular, except in the quaint phrases given p. 159, 8.	When containing a soft t in their last syllable, or ending in tein	When not containing a soft t in the last syllable.
Singular.		Singular.	
Nom. —(t)		_____	_____
Gen. —n(or en)		_____ ð	_____ eð
Dat. —n		_____	_____ t
Acc. —n		_____	_____
Plural.		Plural.	
	vowel mod. List 2.	The vowel is modified only in the nouns of List 4.	
Nom. _____ n	— n (or en) — t	_____	Excp'ts. See p. 181. List 5.
Gen. _____ n	— n — t	_____	_____ t — er
Dat. _____ n	— n — en	_____ n	_____ en — ern
Acc. _____ n	— n — t	_____	_____ t — er
	To the 2 <sup>d</sup> division belong also a few fem. Derivatives in niß. Pl. niße.	See List 3. The n in the Dat. Plur. is not added to nouns ending in n. The Sing. of foreign nouns in or, um & ium belong to this column.	To the second subdivision belong also the Derivatives in thum, Plur. thümer.

**Observe also** 1. The eleven nouns declined by the S-Declension as ending in en but having in the Nom. only t see List 3 p. 170; —

2. 32 nouns forming the singular according to the S- and the plural according to the N-form, (see List 9, p. 183); and

3. 18 nouns, forming *different plurals with different meanings*, (see List 10, p. 184). See also declension of proper names, p. 186 and the Notes pp. 172, 173.

The lists in connexion with the declensions should be gradually committed to memory according to their order.

#### EXAMPLES OF THE S-DECLENSION IN ITS THREE FORMS.

<i>the nail.</i>	<i>the pole.</i>	<i>the valley.</i>
(natural e).	(e supplied).	(er supplied in the Plur.)
<i>Singular.</i>		
Nom. der Nagel.	der Pfahl.	das Thal.
Gen. des Nagel-s.	des Pfahl-es.	des Thal-es.
Dat. dem Nagel.	dem Pfahl-e.	dem Thal-e.
Acc. den Nagel.	den Pfahl.	das Thal.
<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. die Nägel.	die Pfähel-e.	die Thäl-er.
Gen. der Nägel.	der Pfähel-e.	der Thäl-er.
Dat. den Nägel-n.	den Pfähel-en.	den Thäl-ern.
Acc. die Nägel.	die Pfähel-e.	die Thäl-er.

Decline like **Nagel**: der Vogel, *the bird*, der Bruder, *the brother*; der Garten, *the garden*; (nouns in **en** and **lein** add no **n** in the dative Pl.

Decline like **Pfahl**: der Baum, *the tree*, der Strom, *the stream*; das Jahr, *the year*; (neuter monosyllables taking the Pl. in **e** do not modify. Exc. p. 181 b.

Decline like **Thal**: (always modifying) der Mann, *the man*, der Dorn, *the thornbush*; das Kind, *the child*.

The other Exercises illustrating the Declension of nouns are to be found pp. 45, 44, 41, 46.



## EXERCISE XVI. a.

. On the nouns forming the enlarged plural in *er*;  
specimen *Thal* above. These nouns are given in List 5.  
p. 174.

**Die Deutschen auf der Heerfahrt. The Germans  
migrating.**

Jetzt will ich die alten Deutschen schildern<sup>1</sup>,  
Wie<sup>2</sup> sie in mächtigen<sup>3</sup> Völkerwogen<sup>4</sup>  
Mit Heiligthümern<sup>5</sup> und Götterbildern<sup>6</sup>  
Durch Europa's Thäler und Wälder zogen (st.),  
Da<sup>7</sup> sie nach neuen Ländern strebten<sup>8</sup>,  
Bis<sup>9</sup> die Gallier<sup>10</sup> flohn (st.) und die Römer<sup>11</sup> behten<sup>12</sup>.

Von<sup>13</sup> starken Gliedern und reissigen<sup>14</sup> Leibern,  
Goldhaarig<sup>15</sup>, blauäugig<sup>16</sup>, mit edeln<sup>17</sup> Gesichtern  
Folgt<sup>18</sup> sie, Männer mit Kindern und Weibern,  
Von Osten<sup>19</sup> nach Westen den himmlischen<sup>20</sup> Lichtern.  
Sie suchten<sup>21</sup> nicht Güter, Pfänder und Gelder,  
Nur<sup>22</sup> gute Weiden<sup>23</sup> und fruchtbare<sup>24</sup> Felder.

Sie zogen just nicht in modernen Regimentern; —  
Ganze<sup>25</sup> Völker auf Karren<sup>26</sup>, zu Fuße<sup>27</sup>, zu Rosse<sup>28</sup>,  
Waren's<sup>29</sup> mit fürstlichen<sup>30</sup> Häuptern und Aemtern  
Ordnung<sup>31</sup> zu halten (st.) im furchtbaren<sup>32</sup> Trosse<sup>33</sup>.  
Wo<sup>34</sup> fanden (st.) sie selten<sup>35</sup> gastliche<sup>36</sup> Dörfer, —  
Meist<sup>37</sup> wilde Thiere und feindliche<sup>38</sup> Schwärmer.

<sup>1</sup> to picture, to describe, <sup>2</sup> as, <sup>3</sup> mighty, <sup>4</sup> waves (of races), <sup>5</sup> sacred things (all nouns in *thum* take the Plr. *thümer*), <sup>6</sup> images f. Gods, <sup>7</sup> when, as, <sup>8</sup> to strive, to seek to get, <sup>9</sup> until, <sup>10</sup> the Gauls <sup>11</sup> Romans, <sup>12</sup> to tremble, <sup>13</sup> of, <sup>14</sup> gigantic, <sup>15</sup> of golden hair, <sup>16</sup> blue-eyed, <sup>17</sup> noble, <sup>18</sup> to follow, <sup>19</sup> east, <sup>20</sup> heavenly, <sup>21</sup> to seek, <sup>22</sup> only, <sup>23</sup> pasture f., <sup>24</sup> fertile, <sup>25</sup> entire whole, <sup>26</sup> m. cart, <sup>27</sup> on foot, <sup>28</sup> on horseback, <sup>29</sup> for waren es, they were, <sup>30</sup> princely <sup>31</sup> order, <sup>32</sup> fearful, formidable, <sup>33</sup> host with baggage, <sup>34</sup> indeed, <sup>35</sup> seldom, <sup>36</sup> hospitable, <sup>37</sup> mostly, <sup>38</sup> hostile.

Da war unermesslich<sup>1</sup> das Blößen<sup>2</sup> der Kinder,  
 Der Kälber, der Lämmer, das Knarren<sup>3</sup> der Räder  
 das Schelten (st.) der Weiber, das Schreien (st.) der Kinder,  
 Wenn sie Tränken<sup>4</sup> suchten und frische<sup>5</sup> Bäder,  
 Und der Bäche<sup>6</sup> und Flüsse grüne<sup>7</sup> Ränder,  
 Zum Trocknen<sup>8</sup> der reinlich<sup>9</sup> gewaschenen (st.) Gewänder.

Denn<sup>10</sup>, oft aus der Wälder Höhlen<sup>11</sup> und Löchern  
 Vertrieben (st.)<sup>12</sup> von häßlichen<sup>13</sup> Würmern und Aesern,  
 Gewannen (st.) sie dürstigen<sup>14</sup> Schutz<sup>15</sup> unter Dächern  
 Von Holzern, Brettern und Reifern und Gräsern.  
 So<sup>16</sup> waren nicht immer<sup>17</sup> zu sauber<sup>18</sup> leider<sup>19</sup>  
 Die Tücher und Wämser, die Bänder und Kleider.

Im Kampfe<sup>20</sup> verschmähten<sup>21</sup> sie Bogen und Pfeile<sup>22</sup>,  
 Meist nur gewaffnet<sup>23</sup> mit Spießen<sup>24</sup> und Schilden<sup>25</sup>  
 So drangen (st.) sie vorwärts<sup>26</sup> in furchtbarem Reile<sup>27</sup>  
 Und schreckten<sup>28</sup> den Feind<sup>29</sup> mit dem rauhen und wilden<sup>30</sup>  
 Getöse<sup>31</sup> der grimmigen<sup>32</sup> Schlachtenlieder<sup>33</sup>  
 Und warfen (st.) die Reihen<sup>34</sup> der Römer nieder<sup>35</sup>.

Auf erobertem<sup>36</sup> Boden<sup>37</sup>, mit ragenden<sup>38</sup> Dächern  
 Erbauten<sup>39</sup> sie Dörfer in friedlichen<sup>40</sup> Thälern;  
 Die Häuser gezimmert<sup>41</sup> mit manchen Gemächern  
 Getrennt<sup>42</sup> den Geschlechtern gemeinsam<sup>43</sup> den Wäldern<sup>44</sup>.  
 Sie säten<sup>45</sup> die Felder mit Kräutern und Körnern,  
 Umhegten<sup>46</sup> sie sorgsam<sup>47</sup> mit Sträuchern und Dörnern.

<sup>1</sup>immense, <sup>2</sup>lowing, bleating, <sup>3</sup>creaking, <sup>4</sup>f. watering place,  
<sup>5</sup>fresh, refreshing, <sup>6</sup>burn, brook, <sup>7</sup>verdant, <sup>8</sup>for drying, <sup>9</sup>cleanly, <sup>10</sup>for,  
<sup>11</sup>f. cave <sup>12</sup>to expell, <sup>13</sup>ugly, <sup>14</sup>scanty, <sup>15</sup>protection, <sup>16</sup>thus, <sup>17</sup>always,  
<sup>18</sup>too tidy, <sup>19</sup>alas, <sup>20</sup>battle. fight, (adverbs and adverbial expressions  
 invert the order of the Nom. and the verb) <sup>21</sup>to despise, <sup>22</sup>bows and  
 arrows (*"neque arcu, nec venenatis gravida sagittis faretur."*  
*Horace.*), <sup>23</sup>armed, <sup>24</sup>spear, <sup>25</sup>shield (the custom of traveling knights  
 to exhibit their shields, *Schilder*, outside of the inn where they put  
 up probably gave rise to the use of signboards, *Schilder*; as, *"Royal  
 arms"* etc.), <sup>26</sup>forward, <sup>27</sup>m. wedge, <sup>28</sup>to frighten, <sup>29</sup>enemy, <sup>30</sup>harsh,  
<sup>31</sup>n. sound, <sup>32</sup>fierce, <sup>33</sup>Schlacht f. battle, <sup>34</sup>f. rank, <sup>35</sup>down, <sup>36</sup>con-  
 quered, <sup>37</sup>soil, <sup>38</sup>towering, lofty, <sup>39</sup>to build, <sup>40</sup>peaceable <sup>41</sup>zimmern to build  
 of timber, <sup>42</sup>separate. (for), <sup>43</sup>common, <sup>44</sup>Mahl, n. the meal (see *Gastmahl*),  
<sup>45</sup>to sow, <sup>46</sup>to fence in, <sup>47</sup>carefully.

Geräumig<sup>1</sup> waren die Fächer der Scheuern<sup>2</sup>  
 Bequem<sup>3</sup> die Ställe<sup>4</sup> den Rossen und Kindern,  
 Vergnüglich<sup>5</sup> die Nester der Hühner mit Eiern  
 Den wirthlichen<sup>6</sup> Weibern und spielenden<sup>7</sup> Kindern.  
 Und schmunzelnd<sup>8</sup> füllte<sup>9</sup> aus Fässern in Hörner  
 Der Wirth<sup>10</sup> sich<sup>11</sup> den Saft<sup>12</sup> der Trauben<sup>13</sup> und Körner<sup>14</sup>.

Doch nimmer<sup>15</sup> genügte<sup>16</sup> an irdischen<sup>17</sup> Gütern  
 Der Sinn sich des Volkes. Ob<sup>18</sup> hold<sup>19</sup> ob verderblich<sup>20</sup>,—  
 Sie ehrten<sup>21</sup> die Götter in tiefen<sup>22</sup> Gemüthern  
 Und priesen (st.) die Geister der Helden unsterblich<sup>23</sup>.  
 Sie hörten<sup>24</sup> im Rauschen<sup>25</sup> der Eichenblätter<sup>26</sup>  
 Ueber den Gräbern den Willen<sup>27</sup> der Götter.

Doch die Götter wurden zu<sup>28</sup> düstern<sup>29</sup> Gespenstern,  
 Als sie Kirchen<sup>30</sup> bauten, Stifter und Dome<sup>31</sup>  
 Mit gothischen Säulen<sup>32</sup>, Capitälern und Fenstern<sup>33</sup>.  
 Aus farbigem<sup>34</sup> Glase, am Rhein- und Elbstrome<sup>35</sup>  
 Und sie schmückten<sup>36</sup> mit allerlei<sup>37</sup> Heiligenbildern  
 Und mit Edeler Geschlechter Wappenschildern<sup>38</sup>.

Zu<sup>39</sup> Vormündern setzten sich<sup>40</sup> ihnen die Pfaffen<sup>41</sup>  
 Und stopften<sup>42</sup> die Mäuler<sup>43</sup> den dummen<sup>44</sup> Laien<sup>45</sup>.  
 Auch die Ritter<sup>46</sup> machten dem Volke zu schaffen<sup>47</sup>  
 Auf festen<sup>48</sup> Schlössern durch Räubereien<sup>49</sup>  
 Bis die fleißigen<sup>50</sup> Städte<sup>51</sup> empor sich schwangen<sup>52</sup>  
 Und im Licht und der Freiheit<sup>53</sup> den Sieg<sup>54</sup> errangen<sup>55</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>spacious, roomy, <sup>2</sup>barns, <sup>3</sup>comfortable, <sup>4</sup>Stall m. stable, byre, <sup>5</sup>pleasing, <sup>6</sup>thrifty, <sup>7</sup>playing, <sup>8</sup>smirking, <sup>9</sup>to fill, <sup>10</sup>husband, host, <sup>11</sup>for himself, <sup>12</sup>juice, <sup>13</sup>Traube grape. <sup>14</sup>Gerstenforn, barley-corn, <sup>15</sup>never (*emphatic*), <sup>16</sup>der Sinn des Volkes genügte sich an the mind of the people satisfied itself with, <sup>17</sup>earthly, <sup>18</sup>whether, <sup>19</sup>gracious, <sup>20</sup>pernicious, <sup>21</sup>to worship, <sup>22</sup>deep, <sup>23</sup>say as immortal, <sup>24</sup>to hear, <sup>25</sup>rustling, <sup>26</sup>Eiche the oak, <sup>27</sup>will, <sup>28</sup>werden zu to become, <sup>29</sup>gloomy <sup>30</sup>Kirche f. church, <sup>31</sup>List 6., <sup>32</sup>Säule f. pillar, <sup>33</sup>n. window, <sup>34</sup>coloured, <sup>35</sup>Strom m. river, <sup>36</sup>to adorn, <sup>37</sup>all kinds of, <sup>38</sup>Escutheons <sup>39</sup>as, <sup>40</sup>set themselves up, <sup>41</sup>Pfaffe priest, <sup>42</sup>stopfen to stuff, <sup>43</sup>Maul n. usually applies to beasts but is also rudely used of the mouth of man, which is otherwise der Mund, as in Vormund, *one the speak for his ward*, <sup>44</sup>stupid, <sup>45</sup>layman, <sup>46</sup>m. knight, <sup>47</sup>zu schaffen machen to give trouble, <sup>48</sup>strong, <sup>49</sup>f. robbery, <sup>50</sup>industrious, <sup>51</sup>List 2., <sup>52</sup>sich empor-schwingen (st.) to rise to power, <sup>53</sup>liberty, <sup>54</sup>victory, <sup>55</sup>erringen (st.) to win for.

So<sup>1</sup> sind die alten Deutschen gewesen  
 Von reinen<sup>2</sup> Gemüthern, von wahren<sup>3</sup> Worten<sup>4</sup>  
 Ihr könnt<sup>5</sup> in des Tacitus Büchern es lesen (st.),  
 Im Cäsar und an andern Orten<sup>6</sup>  
 Und was sich die Väter gewannen an Ehren<sup>7</sup>  
 Das werden die Enkel<sup>8</sup> erhalten<sup>9</sup> und mehren<sup>10</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> thus, <sup>2</sup> pure <sup>3</sup> true, <sup>4</sup> List 10, p. 184, <sup>5</sup> you may, <sup>6</sup> List 10, p. 184,  
<sup>7</sup> an Ehren in honours, <sup>8</sup> descendant <sup>9</sup> maintain, <sup>10</sup> to increase.

### EXCEPTIONS IN POINT OF MODIFICATION.

a. Of nouns, containing in their last syllable a soft *e*, only those stated in List 4. p. 171 modify the vowel in the plural.

b. Of neuter nouns only those forming the plural in *er*, given in List 5, p. 174 and these three monosyllables forming the plural in *e* are modified in the Plur. das Boot *the boat*, Pl. die Böte; das Floß *the raft*, Pl. die Flöße, and das Rohr *the tube, barrel*, Pl. die Röhre; of neut. dissyllabics only Kloster, Pl. Klöster.

c. The following masculine nouns forming the plural in *e*, do not modify the vowel.

#### LIST 6.

Some primitive nouns contained in this List, formerly did modify the vowel; as, Arm *arm*, Hund *dog*; &c.

der Aal, eel.

der Aar, eagle.

der Amboß, anvil.

der Arm, arm.

der Born, well, spring.

der Dachs, badger.

der Docht, wick.

der Dolch, dagger.

der Dom, cathedral.

der Druck, { pressure, print, (modified in its compounds.)

der Fund, discovery.

der Grad, degree.	der Pol, pole (of the earth, &c.)
der Gurt, girth, belt.	der Puls, pulse.
der Stalm, stalk blade, of grass.	der Punkt, point.
der Hauch, breath.	der Ruf, call, cry.
der Huf, hoof.	der Schacht, shaft, pit.
der Hund, dog.	der Schacht, { shaft, (sometimes mo-
der Kobold, { hobgoblin, and other	der Schacht, { difed).
der Kork, cork.	der Schuft, scamp.
der Lachs, salmon.	der Schuh, shoe.
der Lack, lac.	der Staar, starling.
der Laut, sound.	der Stoff, stuff.
der Luchs, lynx.	der Sund, sound, strait.
der Molch, salamander.	der Tag, day.
der Monat, month.	der Tact, tact, bar (in music).
der Mond, moon, month.	der Thron, throne.
der Mord, murder.	der Todt, death, (manner of death)
der Ort, { meaning place, room,	(Todesfälle cases of death.)
der Ort, { (locus).	der Unhold, { mischievous being,
der Park, park.	der Unhold, { wicked spirit.
der Plan, the scheme (also modif.)	der Viefelfrag, glutton.
der Pfad, path.	der Wiedehopf, hoopoe.
der Pfau, peacock.	der Zoll, meaning inch.

d. Also the following masculine Derivatives do not modify the vowel, being exceptions to p. 158, 5.

## LIST 7.

Beuf behoof, purpose, Beruf calling, Befuch visit, Erfolg success, Effect, Erlaß manifesto, Verdacht suspicion, Verhaß and Verhau abattis, Verlust loss, Versuch attempt. Der Verrath treason, and der Betrug fraud, if referring to single actions, assume the plural of the feminine nouns Verrätherei treasonable action, Betrügerei fraudulent action; and der Verzug delay, assumes the plural of die Verzögerung, and der Verdruf trouble, annoyance, the plural of die Verdrüßlichkeit.

e. Nouns of foreign origin do not modify the vowel, except the following, of which it is interesting to observe that they are chiefly terms connected with the church and apparently carefully germanized.

## LIST 8.

der Abt, abbot.	der Marsch, march.
der Altar, altar.	der Morast, morass.
der Bischof, bishop.	der Palast, palace.
der Chor, chorus, (das) choir.	der Papst, pope.
der Chora', choral, hymn.	der Propst, prebendary.
der Canal, canal, channel.	der Vogt, bailiff, protector of a
der Kaplan, chaplain.	convent.
der Kardinal, cardinal.	

## ANOMALIES.

The following masculine and neuter nouns are declined in the singular by the S-form, and in the plural according to the N-form; as, das Auge, des Auges, Plur. die Augen; das Ohr, des Ohres, Plur. die Ohren.

## LIST 9.

(Notice the accent in the nouns of foreign origin.)

der Ahn, ancestor.	der Pantoffel, slipper.
das Auge, eye.	der Pfau, peacock.
der Bauer, peasant.	der Psalm, psalm.
das Bett, bed.	das Quadruped, the quadruped.
der Con'sul, consul.	der Schmerz, pain, grief.
der Dorn, thorn, sting.	der See, lake.
das Ende, extremity, end.	der Sporn, spur.
der Fasan', pheasant.	der Staat, State.
der Forst, forest.	der Stachel, sting.
der Gau, district.	das Statut', statute.
der Gevatter, godfather.	der Strahl, ray, beam.
das Hemd, shirt.	der Strauß, ostrich.
das Insekt', insect.	das Stück, fragment.
der Kapu'n', capon.	der Vetter, (male) cousin.
der Lorbeer, laurel.	der Zeh, toe.
der Mast, mast.	der Zierrath, ornament.
das Ohr, ear.	der Zins, rent, interest.

Farther, such foreign nouns, signifying **male occupations**, as end in an unaccented **or**; as, Director, Pl. Directoren; neuter nouns in **um** or **tum**, Pl. **en** and **ten**; in **il**, Pl. **ilien** (Krokolil, Profil, Reptil have **e** in the Pl.); and the following in **al'** Pl. **alien**.

das Bacchanal, bacchanal.  
 das Capital, capital, stock.  
 das Cereal, cereal.

das Material, material.  
 das Mineral, mineral.  
 das Regal, crown-income.

And the plurals: die Repressalien, die Saturnalien, saturnalia. die Victualien, victuals.

**Note 1.** The masc. nouns in *ismus* and *ius* are not declined in the Sing., but in the Pl. change *us* into *en*; as, Anglicismus, Paroxismus; Genius, Rhabius; Pl. Anglicismen, Paroxismen; Genien. Rabien.

The neuter nouns, das Dogma, das Drama, das Prisma, das Schisma, take only *s* in the Gen. Sing. but in the Pl. change the *a* into *en* throughout; as, die Dogmen, Prismen, etc.; das Thema and das Schema take likewise *s* in the Gen. Sing. but leave the Pl. Themata, Schemata; yet in the Dat. Pl. Thematen, Schematen. Gramen, examination and Volumen, a mass, quantity have the Latin Pl. Gramina, Volumina.

**Note 2.** The noun das Herz combines the terminations of the S- and N-form in a peculiar manner; as, Nom. Sing. Herz; Gen. Herzens; Dat. Herzen; Acc. Herz; Plur. Herzen, throughout.

## LIST. 10.

Nouns forming different plurals with different meanings.

(Those in *et* have the more original signification).

das Band, Bänder, ribbons.  
 der Band, Bände, volumes.  
 die Bank, Bänke, benches.  
 das Bett, Betten, beds, bedding.  
 das Ding, Dinger, } fig; as, poor  
                                   } things.  
 der Dorn, Dörner, } thorny bushes  
                                   } briars.  
 das Gesicht, Gesichter, faces.  
 der Laden, Läden, shops.  
 das Land, Länder, countries.  
 das Licht, Lichter, lights.  
 Mann, Männer, men, — mann in  
 compounds denoting a class as  
 Kaufmann, merchant; Seemann,  
 seaman; Bergmann, miner;

Bande, ties.  
 (Bande, fem. a gang).  
 Banken, banks.  
 Bette, channels (of rivers).  
 Dinge, things, objects.  
 Dornen, thorns, single prickles.  
 Gesichte, visions.  
 Laden, shutters.  
 Lande, territories.  
 Lichte, candles.  
 Mannen, retainers.

takes in the Plr. *Leute* as *Kauf-  
leute*, *merchants*, *Landleute*  
*country people* etc.

der Ort, Dörfer, towns, &c.

Estrauch, Sträucher, copse, thicket.

der Schild, Schilde, shields.

der Strauß, Straßen, } *ost-  
riches.*

das Stück, Stücke, pieces.

das Wort, Wörter, } *a number  
of words.*

der Zoll, Zölle, inches.

Orte, places, regions.

Sträucher, shrubs.

neut. Schilder signboards.

Sträße, nosegays.

Stücken, fragments.

Worte, } *words quoted (from a  
speech, &c.)*

Zölle, tolls, customs.

## C. COMPOUND NOUNS.

Compound nouns follow the declension of the last component; as, *des Vaterlandes*, of the fatherland; *der Morgengabe*, of the morning-gift; *Landwehrmänner*, militiamen; *des Hauseigenthümers*, of the house-owner.

But besides this declension, compound substantives often exhibit in their first component the genitive terminations of the original attributive combination; as, *Staatsmann*, statesman, (for *Mann des Staates*), *Landsmann* fellow-countryman; *Erdensohn* earthling, (for *Sohn der Erden*, — see p. 159, 8); *Glaubensartikel* article of faith; *Waffenschmied* armourer, (for *Schmied der Waffen*, smith of weapons); *Häuserreihe* row of houses.

Note. The pupil has been advised, pp. 32, Obs. and 37, Note, to abstain from forming Derivatives, and this advice holds good also with regard to the formation of compound nouns, owing to the following peculiarities.

a. The genitive termination is sometimes added to the first component, and sometimes not; as, *Ackermann* husbandman, *Ackerbauer* cultivator of the soil, *agriculturist*; *Landsmann* fellow-countryman, *Landmann* countryman, *peasant*.

b. The termination *s* is often added to first components of the feminine gender; as, *Geburtstag* *birthday*, (for *Tag der Geburt*), *Liebesdienst* *act of kindness*, *Liebesgabe* *gift of love*, *Heirathsgut* *marriage-portion*, *Hochzeitstag* *wedding-day*, *Religionslehren* *doctrines of*



*religion*. The *ß* is always added to feminine Derivatives in *Heit*, *Zeit*, *Muth*, *Schaft*, *ung*, *ion* and *tät*, and with these the formation of Compounds is comparatively safe; as, *Freundschaftsbündniß* friendly alliance, *Hoffnungstrahl* ray of hope, *Universitätslehrer* academic teacher.

c. In some cases a euphonic *e*, *i*, *I*, *r* is inserted between the two components.

d. The first component has often the plural form with a Singular meaning; as, *Gänsetiel* *goose-quill*; particularly in the Compounds with *braten* *roast*; as, *Gänsebraten* a roasted goose, *Rinderbraten* roastbeef, *Schweinebraten* roast-pork.

e. The compound noun has often a significancy not possessed by the components in the attributive combination; as, *ein Taubenpaar*, a pair of pigeons, *ein Paar Tauben*, two pigeons; *die Bruderhand*, the brotherly hand, *die Hand des Bruders*, the hand of the brother. (See p. 198 2).

#### D. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

A. Proper names, except those stated in Note 1 and 2, are not declined when preceded by an article (see p. 190, B) or pronoun; as, *des Ganges*, *des Nil*, *des Po*, *des Mississippi*; *des Archipelagus*; *des Erie*, *des Lago Maggiore*; *des Sinai*; *des Libanon*, *des Speßart*. Farther, *des Achill*; *der Ernst eines Dante*, the earnestness of a Dante; *die Werke unseres Goethe*, the works of our Goethe; *das Schicksal jenes Manfred*, the fate of that Manfred; *der Fleiß meiner Sophie*, the diligence of my Sophy.

**Note 1.** *Neuter* names of countries and places are declined like common nouns, as also are the names of some German rivers of the masculine gender, and of some masculine and neuter Compounds with common nouns signifying districts, lakes, seas, mountains, which are always used with the definite article; as, *des einigen Italiens*, of united Italy; *des schönen Frankreichs*, of fair France; an den Ufern des Rheins und des Mains, on the banks of the Rhine and the Main; d. s. Bodensees, of the Lake of Constance; des Eismeer, of the Polar-sea; des Schwarzwaldes, of the Black Forest. The genitives des Brodens, of the Brocken; des Harzes, of the Harz-mountains, are formed in analogy with the common names Brocken crumb; Harz, resin. The genitives des Beltes, des Sundes, des Kattegats take the *ß* from the same reason as the above.

**Note 2.** A proper name, preceded by an adjective, must always be used with the definite article or with a pronoun. When, in such a combination it is used as the attribute in the genitive case before another noun, it receives the termination *s*, unless it is of the feminine gender or ends in a vowel or in *s*, or another sibilant; as, *des kühnen Tells That*, the deed of bold Tell; *des großen Alfreds Leben*, great Alfreds life; *des stolzen Albions Siege*, proud Albion's victories; On the other hand, *der kleinen Marie Wünsche*, little Mary's wishes; *des geliebten Goethes Lieder*, the poems of beloved Goethe; *des häßlichen Therpsites Schmähungen*, the reviling of ugly Thersites.

**Note 3.** After a possessive pronoun, the genitive in *s* of masc. Christian names is not uncommon in colloquial language; as, *der Brief meines Karls*, the letter of my (son) Charles; *die Ankunft unsers Friedrichs*, the arrival of our Frederick.

**B. Proper names not preceded by an article or pronoun are declined as follows:**

*a.* Names of females terminating in *e* assume *ns* in the genitive, and *n* in the rest of the cases; as, Nom. *Marie*, Gen. *Mariens*, Dat. *Marien*, Acc. *Marien*. The same occurs with names of male persons ending in *sch*, *ß*, *r* and *z*; as, *Vossens „Louise“*, the poem "Louise," by Voss.

*b.* All other proper names, assume *s* in the genitive; as, *Alexanders*, *Didos*, *Annas*, *Scipios*, *Berlins*, *Englands*, *Preußens*. The dative is sometimes pointed out more distinctly by the same case of the definite article: *dem Socrates*, *der Elisabeth*. The same is done in the genitive with proper names in *s*; as *des Socrates*, of Socrates; *des Mars*, of Mars. With places, especially when they end in *s* and *z*, *von* is used to point out the genitive; as *von Paris*, of Paris.

**Note 4.** No genitive is, however, formed of the name of a country or place after the terms expressing its nature or rank; as, *der Insel Madeira*, of the island of Madeira; *des Königreichs Sachsen*, of the kingdom of Saxony; *des Großherzogthums Baden*, of the grand-duchy of Baden; *des Erzbisthums Köln*, of the Archbishopric of Cologne; *der Universität Berlin*, of the university of Berlin; *des Regierungsbezirks und der Stadt Magdeburg*, of the governmental district

and the city of Magdeburg; der Festung Königstein, the fortress of Königstein. — (die City von London is used to denote that particular part of the metropolis).

c. When Christian names precede the family-name, the latter only is declined; as, der Geist Martin Luthers, the spirit of Martin Luther; Leopold Ranke's Geschichte von England, Leopold Ranke's history of England; Gustav Freytag's Schriften, the writings of Gustav Freytag.

d. If the proper name of a person is preceded by a title, &c., without the article; as, König Friedrich, King Frederick, Capitain Coof, the genitive of the proper name only is expressed; as, König Friedrich's, of King Frederick; Kaiser Albrechts Tod, the death of the Emperor Albrecht; Lord Broughams Wohnsitz, the residence of Lord Brougham; Vetter Michel und Nachbar Hansens Kinder, Cousin Michael's and neighbour John's children.

With a preceding article, however, the title &c. is declined, and the proper name remains unchanged; as, der Tod des Prinzen Albert, the death of Prince Albert; die Denkwürdigkeiten des Kaisers Napoleon, the memoirs of the Emperor Napoleon. The British titles Earl, Lord, remain unchanged even after the article and are only declined, when no proper name follows; as, das Leben des Earl von Clarendon, 'the life of the Earl of Clarendon'; die Gemahlin des Lord Byron, the spouse of Lord B.

e. Plurals of names generally agree with those of common nouns. With families and distinguished houses mentioned collectively, an s occurs as in English; as, Brauns sind gute Leute. The Browns are good people. Die Rothschilds charakterisiren unsre Zeit. The Rothschilds characterize our age. The article is used in speaking of families of a public character, as, artists, performers &c.

*f.* Christus Christ and Jesu<sup>s</sup> Jesus have retained the Latin declension.

<i>Nom.</i> Christus, Christ,	Jesu <sup>s</sup> , Jesus.
<i>Gen.</i> Christi, Christ's, of Christ.	Jesu, of Jesus.
<i>Dat.</i> Christo, (to) Christ.	Jesu, to Jesus.
<i>Acc.</i> Christum, Christ.	Jesum, Jesus.

When preceded by *der Herr the Lord* or *Lord* they are not declined; as, *des Herrn Christus*; *dem Herrn Jesu*. Yet the accusative in *um* occurs; as, *unsern Herrn und Heiland Jesum Christum*, our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. — *Gott God, the Lord*, drops the *e* in the dative, but retains it when used in the sense of a *deity*; *Götter gods*.

## SECTION XVII.

### ON THE USE OF THE ARTICLE.

As a rule the article is employed where it is employed in English, except in the following phrases:

*Er ist Vater*, He is a father. *Sie ist Mutter*, She is a mother. *Er hat Familie*, he has a family; in *Wuth*, in a passion; in *Eile*, in a hurry; *mit schwacher u. Stimme*, with a faint &c. voice. *Ich habe Kopfschmerz*, I have a headache. *Ich habe Lust*, I have a mind. *Ich fand Gelegenheit*, I found an opportunity. Likewise: *Er wurde Soldat*, General, Kaufmann; *Sie wurde Schauspieler*, He became a soldier, a General, a merchant; she became an actress, &c. &c. Likewise *aus*, *von*, — *gen*, *nach Norden*, *Osten*, *Süden*, *Westen*, *from*, — *towards*, *from the N.*, *E.*, *S.*, *W.*; — *but im Norden*, *zum Norden* &c. Lastly, *einige*, *hundert* &c. *Schritte*, *Dinge*, &c., a few hundred, &c. *steps*, *things*, &c.; *tausend mal* a thousand times.

The article is used in German where it is not in English.

**A. Before any Substantive**, the case of which is not sufficiently distinguished by its termination. This occurs chiefly with proper names ending in *s* or a similar consonant, with the singulars of feminine nouns, and in those cases of the plural which cannot by themselves be recognized. Here the article serves instead of the English *of* and *to*; as, der Tod des Sokrates, the death of Socrates; des Ajax, of Ajax; dem Ulyßes, to Ulysses. Ich habe es dem Hans gegeben, I have given it to Johnny; Reinheit der Seele, purity of soul; das Glück der Freundschaft, the happiness of friendship. Er zieht Wein dem Wasser und der Milch vor, He prefers wine to water or milk.

The **genitive**, however, is rendered far more extensively than in English by the formation of compounds; as, Seelenreinheit *purity of soul*; ein Lebensbild, *a picture of life*; die Naturgesetze, *the laws of nature*; Religionslehren, *doctrines of religion*, or *religious doctrines*; (comp. p. 185, and p. 198. 2).

#### B. THE ARTICLE BEFORE PROPER NAMES

cannot be omitted. **1.** When they are preceded by adjectives; as, das lustige England, *merry England*; das schöne Venedig, *beautiful Venice*; der große Friedrich, *Frederick the Great*; die kleine Marie, *little Mary*.

**2.** Before feminine names of countries; as, die Normandie Normandy, die Pfalz the Palatinate, die Schweiz Switzerland, die Türkei Turkey, also before the plurals die Niederlande, the Netherlands, die Hochlande or das Hochland the Highlands; and the compounds of der Gau the county; as, der Argau, der Genènegau, der Breisgau; likewise das Elsaß Alsace, and das Arelat the dukedom of Arles. (See p. 148.)

**3.** Before the names of mountains; as, *Mount*

*Zion*, der Berg *Zion*; *Mount Sinai*, der Berg *Sinai*; and rivers, lakes, and seas; as, der *Rhein*, the Rhine, die *Elbe*, the Elbe.

4. Before the names of months and seasons; as, der *August* the month of August, im *März*, in March; zum *September*, for September; für den *Juli*, for July; im *Sommer*, in summer; während des *Winters*, during winter. Wir erwarten den *Frühling*. We await spring. When the season is used as the predicate after the verbs *es ist*, *it is*; *es wird*, *it becomes*, &c., the article is omitted; as, *Es war Herbst*. *It was autumn*. *Es wurde Winter*. *It became winter*.

The English *of* is not rendered when the name of the month is preceded by the noun *Monat*, and after this noun the article is **not** used; as, der *Monat Mai*, the month of May; im *Monate Juni*, in the month of June.

**Note.** Sometimes the article denotes the **work of an author or artist**; as, ein *Bandste*, a painting of *Vandyke*. Ich habe den *Goethe*. I possess the works of *Goethe*. In speaking of **friends or members of a family**, the article is **not** used, but it is sometimes employed in speaking of **inferiors**. Der *Johann* soll das Pferd bringen. John (the coachman) is to bring the horse. Die *Marie* soll hereinkommen. Let Mary (the servant) come in.

**With titles** preceding the name, the article is **less frequently dropped** than in English; as, der *Statthalter Hastings* Governor Hastings; der *Admiral Napier*, Admiral Napier; der *Feldmarschall Blücher*, Fieldmarshal Blücher; die *Königin Victoria*, Queen Victoria.

#### C. THE ARTICLE BEFORE ABSTRACT NOUNS OR NOUNS USED ABSTRACTLY.

The article **cannot be omitted** in speaking of any particular faculty, power, quality, in an **absolute sense**; as, Die *Zeit* ist flüchtig. Time is fleeting. Wenn die

Gewalt herrscht, verbirgt sich das Recht. When might prevails, right hides herself. Die Jugend ist die Zeit der Saat. Youth is the time of sowing. Das Geld ist eine alte Erfindung. Money is an ancient invention.

The same is the case with common nouns, if denoting the whole genus or class; Nicht der Zufall beherrscht das Geschick des Menschen. It is not chance that rules the destiny of *man*. Das Weib ist nicht geringer als der Mann, nur sein Beruf ist ein verschiedner. *Woman* is not inferior to *man*, only her mission is a different one. Here sometimes in German the plural is used where the English put the singular, and *vice versa*; as, „Der Frauen Schicksal ist beklagenswerth,“ (*Goethe's Tasso*). The lot of woman is pitiable; on the other hand: Der Arme hat keine Freunde. The poor have no friends.

Where two or more nouns of this description are used in connexion as a whole, the article is generally dropped; as Jugend und Schönheit vergehen. Youth and beauty pass away. Kämpft für Vaterland und Ehre! Fight for country and honour! Tugend und Gerechtigkeit sind nicht immer beliebt. Virtue and justice are not always well liked. Er handelt gegen Gesetz und Sitte. He acts contrary to law and custom. Gold und Silber sind edle Metalle. Gold and silver are precious metals.

Common names, however, even when connected, retain the article in the singular; as, das Rind und das Schaf sind die wichtigsten Hausthiere. Cattle and sheep are the most important domestic animals. Die Eiche und die Buche sind die edelsten Waldbäume. The oak and the beech are the noblest forest-trees. Der Adler und der Löwe leben einsam, während Krähen und Wölfe in Haufen schwärmen. Eagles and Lions dwell in solitude, whilst crows and wolves flock together in crowds.

If, however, **abstract** nouns are used **relatively**, (in application to particular cases) or **partitively**, the **article** is dropped; as, Dieser Mann hat Verstand. This man has (a great deal of) common sense. Jugend und Güte sprachen aus ihren Zügen. Her features bespoke youth and kindness. Geld macht nicht glücklich. (Much) money does not make one happy.

#### D. THE ARTICLE BEFORE COMMON NOUNS.

1. Nouns of different gender, when used in connexion, require, in the singular, **their respective articles** or pronouns; as, Ich habe den Mann und die Frau gesehen. I have seen the man and the woman. Er reiste mit seinem Bruder, seiner Frau und seinen Kindern ab. He departed with his brother, wife, and children.

2. In **enumerating** objects and **distinguishing** them from each other, the article is repeated, even if their gender be the same; as, Der Bär, der Wolf, der Luchs und der Fuchs sind die Raubthiere Europas. *The bear, the wolf, the lynx and the fox are the beasts of prey of Europe.* In the same manner, der Vater und der Sohn, *the father and son*; die Mutter und die Tochter, *the mother and daughter*; der Kaiser und der König, *the Emperor and the king*. In which the article must be **repeated** unless one individual is meant to represent more than one character; as, der Kaiser und König, *the Emperor-king*; der König und Herr, *the king and lord*.

3. The article must be used **contracted with the preposition zu** after the verbs *machen to make, to create, ernennen to nominate, to appoint, erwählen to elect, berufen to give a call (to a pastor, &c.), weihen to ordain, stempeln to stamp, stigmatize*; (see p. 47, B.) as,

Er machte sich zum Kaiser. He made himself emperor. Er wurde zum Offizier ernannt. He was appointed officer. Er ist zum Präsidenten erwählt. He has been elected president. Er ist zur Professur berufen. He has been chosen professor. Er ist zum Bischof geweiht. He has been ordained bishop. Dies stempelt ihn zum Betrüger. This stigmatizes him as a cheat. Sie ist zur Ehrendame ernannt. She has been appointed maid of honour. Also, Er nahm sie zur Frau, zum Weibe. He took her to wife.



In the plural, however, the article is omitted; as, *Er machte sie zu Knechten*. He made them slaves, (reduced them to servitude). *Sie wurden zu Råthen ernannt*. They were appointed councillors.

Before possessive pronouns *zu* is used, of course, without the article; as, *Sie machten sie zu ihrer Königin*. They made her their queen. *Ich machte ihn zu meinem Diener, zu meinem Freunde, &c.* I made him my servant, my friend, &c. *Zu* is also used with the indefinite article; as, *Sie machen mich zu einem glücklichen Menschen*. You make me a happy man.

4. After the verb *werden to become*, the article is used as above, contracted with *zu*, chiefly when the idea of a *reducing to, turning or changing into something bad*, is conveyed; as, *Er wurde zum Bettler*. He became a beggar, (was reduced to begging). *Er wurde zum Betrüger, zum Verråther, zum Schurken*. He became, or turned, a cheat, traitor, villain. — Before the names of materials the article is omitted; as, *der Wein wurde zu Essig*. The wine turned vinegar. *Diese schönen Hoffnungen wurden zu Wasser*. These fine hopes vanished, went up in smoke.

5. The article is used, sometimes in contraction, with prepositions in phrases like the following: *In der Stadt*, in town; *nach der Stadt* or better *in die Stadt*, to town; *nach der (zur) Schule*, to school; *in der Kirche*, at church; *in die (zur) Kirche*, to church, (see p. 47, B.) and in similar cases; as also, *zur Vertheidigung*, in defence; *in der Gegenwehr*, in self-defence; *zum (zu dem) Troß*, in defiance; *im Gegensatz zu*, in opposition to; *in der Zeit*, in time of need, in case of necessity; *in der Absicht*, on purpose; &c., &c.

6. The article cannot be omitted with the following terms, unless, as in *Himmel und Erde, heaven and earth*, several of them are used in connexion:

die Aristokratie aristocracy, das Frühstück breakfast, die Christenheit, Christendom, das Christenthum Christianity, die Sitte, custom, der Tod death, das Mittagessen dinner, die Erde earth, das Schicksal fate, das Glück fortune, die Regierung Government, der Himmel heaven, die Hölle hell, der Ehestand matrimony, die Monarchie monarchy,

die Nachwelt posterity, das Paradies paradise, das Parlament Parliament, das Fegefeuer purgatory, das Abendessen supper, der Thee tea, die Vorsehung providence. *Some* breakfast, *some* dinner is simply, Frühstück, Mittag. Exclamations, as, Himmel! Heavens! **have no article.**

7. The definite article is used for the English indefinite article before nouns denoting weight, number, measure in the singular; as, *sixpence a piece*, fünf Groschen das Stück; *three shillings a pound*, einen Thaler das Pfund; *twice a-week*, zweimal die Woche, *half a guinea an ell*, einen Dufaten die Elle; einen Gulden das Hundert, *one florin a hundred*; zehn Thaler das Tausend, *thirty Shillings a thousand*. In the plural the article is omitted as in English: *You can buy them in dozens*. Sie können sie zu Duzenden kaufen.

---

## SECTION XVIII.

### ON THE USE OF THE CASES.

#### APPPOSITION.

A noun in apposition takes the same case as the noun or pronoun to which it refers; as, *Nom.* Der Vater, ein wahrer Landmann, begrüßte mich herzlich. The father, an honest farmer, gave me a hearty welcome. *Gen.* Der Ruf dieser Dame, einer Freundin des Herzogs von Orleans, war nicht der beste. The reputation of this lady, a friend of the Duke of Orleans, was not the best. *Dat.* Sie können ihm, als einem geschickten Advokaten, Alles vertrauen. You can confide to him everything as to a clever advocate. *Acc.* Er verrieth den Unglücklichen, den Bruder seiner Frau und seinen frühern Freund. He betrayed the unfortunate man, brother to his wife, and formerly his friend.

## 196 XVIII. USE OF THE CASES. THE NOMINATIVE.

The *ordinal numbers* following the names of *sovereigns* take the case of the name. (See p. 137, Note 1).

### THE NOMINATIVE.

Like the verb *sein to be*, a number of other verbs denoting different forms or modifications of *existence*, are followed by the *nominative*; as, *Er ist (wird, bleibt, heisst, scheint, &c.), ein rechtschaffener Mensch*. He is (becomes, remains, is called, seems, &c.) an upright man.

**Note 1.** The verb *werden to become*, is sometimes construed with *zu* and the *dative*. (See p. 194, 4).

**Note 2.** The phrase *es giebt, there is, there are, one gets, (il y' a)* which is used where vagueness with regard to locality is expressed, changes the English nominative into an *accusative*; as, *Es giebt irgendwo einen Mann. There is a man somewhere*. This is owing to the verb *geben* (of which *giebt* is the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. Sing. Pres. Indic.) governing the *accusative*.

### THE GENITIVE (POSSESSIVE).

This case, sometimes represented by *von* with the *dative*, is used, A, as an *Attribute*, B, as *Partitive*; C, as the *object* governed by adjectives and verbs; D, in *adverbial expressions*, with or without the *preposition*.

#### A. THE ATTRIBUTE.

A noun joined to another by *of*, to show what particular person, thing, quality etc., is meant, is called the *Attribute*; as, *Das Herz meines Kindes*, the heart of my child; *der Bruder meiner Frau*, the brother of my wife; *die Güte des Herzens*, the goodness of heart. These examples show that the attribute is a simple genitive, *of* not being expressed by a preposition.

1. Where, in English, the preposition *of* indicates relationship, possession, authority, or agency, in German the mere genitive suffices; as *der Vater des Knaben*, the father of the boy; *die Schwester der Dame*, the

sister of the lady; das Buch des Freundes, the book of the friend; der Besitzer des Gartens, the proprietor of the garden; der Befehlshaber der Truppen, the commander of the troops; das Wort Gottes, the word of God; die Wirkung des Feuers, the effect of the fire.

**Present Participles** preceded by *of*, when employed as nouns, are rendered by the **genitive of the infinitive** used as a neuter noun; as, die Freude des Wiedersehens, the joy of meeting again; die Furcht des Verlierens, — the fear of losing, — des Sterbens, of dying. But when the participle has the force of a verb governing an object, it is treated as stated in Section XXV, D, 4, *d* and *e*.

Chiefly with proper names and nouns indicating persons, the **genitive** may be placed first, as in English: Heinrichs Freunde, Henry's friends; Edwards Buch, Edward's book; Wilhelms Vater, William's father; Mariens Schwester, Mary's sister; and even more extensively; as, Wellingtons Thaten, the deeds of Wellington; Karls des Zweiten Tod, the death of Charles the Second; Jacobs des Ersten Regierung, the reign of James the First; likewise des Vaters Zimmer, the father's room; meines Bruders Arbeit, my brother's work; auf ihrer Mutter Bitte, at her mother's request.

**Note 1.** *Schiller's* poems, especially, abound with **genitives preceding** their complements, of which latter the **article is omitted**, and must in translating be supplied; as, in der Bräute Locken, in the locks of the brides; mit Feuers Hülfe, with the help of fire; in Schlafes Arm, in the arms of sleep; der Mutterliebe zarte Sorgen, the tender cares of maternal love.

By the **mere genitive** also, expressions like the following are rendered: *Sister to my wife*, meiner Frau Schwester; *Purveyor to the Queen*, Lieferant der Königin; (*purveyor of* is expressed by a compound; as, *purveyor of wine*, Weinslieferant).

**Note 2.** Expressions like, *a father to the poor*, *an enemy to cunning* &c., may be rendered by the **genitive**; as, ein Vater der Armen, ein Feind des Truges; but the **dative**, den Armen ein Vater,

dem Truge Feind is more impressive. Sometimes the **dative** is even **necessary** to make a certain distinction as in the English *a friend to*, and *a friend of*: Dem Verfolgten ein Freund, *a friend to the persecuted man*; ein Freund des Verfolgten, *a friend of (one of the friends of) the persecuted man*.

2. The genitive is very extensively rendered by the formation of compounds, (see Compound Nouns p. 186), with regard to which, however, the pupil is reminded that they frequently do not represent the ordinary sense of the two nouns in the attributive combination; as, Religionslehren, *dogmas, doctrines* of some religion (which may not even be of a truly religious nature); Lehren der Religion, *teachings of religion*; — das Vaterhaus *home*, das Haus des Vaters, *the house of, or simply, belonging to, the father*; — der Landes-herr, *the native prince, sovereign*; der Herr des Landes, *the master (perhaps conqueror) of the land*. The above might be termed **genuine** compound nouns, whilst others, like Zettelankleber *billposter*, Bärenfell *bear-skin*, are mere contractions of an attributive combination, and may be freely resolved into such; as, Ankleber von Zetteln, *sticker of bills*; Fell eines Bären, *skin of a bear*.

### 3. THE POSSESSIVE EXPRESSED BY von WITH THE DATIVE.

a. The preposition *of* must be rendered by the German **von** with the **dative**, if the noun in the possessive stands without any article or pronoun; as, im Besitze von Geld, *in possession of money*; in einem An-falle von Zorn, *in a fit of passion*; in einem Meere von Banne, *in a sea of joy*; Erbe von großen Gütern, *heir to large estates*.

b. If however, the noun without the article is preceded by an adjective, *of* may be expressed either by the mere genitive, or by **von** with the dative; as,

eine Reihe glücklicher, or eine Reihe von glücklichen Tagen, a succession of happy days; ein Schatz weiser Lehren, a treasure of wise rules; also, Vater von drei Kindern, or Vater dreier Kinder, father of three children.

c. The Possessive expressing the character or quality of the complement, or the material out of which a thing is made, is rendered by *von* with the dative; as, ein Mann von Grundsätzen, von Urtheil, a man of principles, of judgement; ein Herr von hohem Range, a gentleman of high rank; ein Ereigniß von größter Bedeutung, an event of the greatest importance; ein Buch von geringem Verdienste, a book of little merit; ein Gefäß von geschliffenem Crystall, a vessel of cut crystal; ein Wammes von Gemäseleder, a doublet of chamois-leather; ein Kranz von Feldblumen, a wreath of field-flowers.

d. The cardinal numerals from vier *four*, upwards are indeclinable, and their possessive can be expressed by *von* only; as, ein Gefolge von sechs Dienern, a retinue of six servants; die Hälfte von siebenzehn, the half of seventeen; der dritte Theil von zehn, the third part of ten.

**Note 3.** The mere genitive of the substantive, however, is used after der Theil *the part*, die Hälfte *the half*, and after fractions; as, ein Theil des Jahres, Monats &c., a part of the year, month &c.; die Hälfte des Landes, the half of the land; ein Viertel der Zeit, the fourth part of the time.

**Note 4.** After the word *Monat* and in dates, the name remains unaltered; as, im Monat Mai, in the Month of May; den dreizehnten März, the thirteenth of March; am fünfundzwanzigsten Juni, on the twentyfifth of June. (Compare p. 136 *b*.)

e. Proper names of places, especially those, ending in *s* or *z* form the possessive with *von* (See p. 187 *b* and Note 4); as, die Umgebung von Paris *the environs of Paris*, von Dresden or Dresdens *of Dresden*.

Der Commandant von Graudenz, von Stralsund, the Commandant of Graudenz of Stralsund. (Compare p. 187, Note 4.)

*f.* With the rulers and governments of countries *von* is used: as, *die Königin von Großbritannien*, the Queen of Great Britain; *der Kaiser von Deutschland*, the Emperor of Germany; *der Statthalter von Irland*, the Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. (*Die Könige Rom's*, the kings of Rome). (Before the Family-name, *von* is the sign of nobility; as, *Adolph von Randow*, *Herr von B.* (*M. de B.*)

**Note 5.** In poetical and rhetorical language, however, the name of the country in the genitive often precedes the title of the ruler; as, *Englands Königin*, *Englands Queen*; *Deutschland's Fürsten*, *Germany's rulers*.

*g.* **Feminine names of countries** (which always must be preceded by the article) express the Possessive by the **genitive**; as, *der große Rath der Schweiz*, the Grand Council of Switzerland; *der Kaiser der Türkei*, the Turkish Emperor; *der Divan der hohen Pforte*, the Divan of the Sublime Porte. Notice also, *der Kaiser der Franzosen*, the Emperor of the French; *der Selbstherr aller Russen*, the Autocrat of all the Russias; *der König der Belgier*, the King of the Belgians, which are diplomatic forms.

## B. THE PARTITIVE.

There is in German no Partitive in the strict sense of the French "*Donnez moi du pain et de la viande.*"

1. Nor is the Partitive of names of materials expressed in common language after the terms stating the amount, measure, weight of a substance, or after the expressions by which articles are commonly counted, (such as pair, dozen, score) the name of the material or article remaining altogether unaltered; as, *eine Menge*, *ein Haufen Nüsse*, a large number, a heap of nuts; *eine Menge Honig*, a quantity of honey; *eine*

Anzahl Kartoffeln, a number of potatoes; ein Glas Wein, a glass of wine; ein Trunk Wasser, a drink of water; eine Tasse Kaffee, a cup of coffee; ein Sack Mehl, a bag of flour; eine Tonne Kohlen, a ton of coals; ein Korb Kirſchen, a basket of cherries; drei Pfund Zucker, three pounds of sugar, (see Section XIX, Use of the Numbers, 3); drei Ellen Band, three ells (two yards) of ribbon; ein Paar Handschuhe, a pair of gloves; ein Duzend Servietten, a dozen of table-napkins; ein Trupp Soldaten, a troop of soldiers; ein Pack, Stoß, Bücher, a parcel of books.

Even after *Art, Gattung, species, kind*, the noun remains occasionally unaltered; as, jede Art Menschen, every kind (manner) of men; eine gewisse Gattung Insekten, a certain species of insects; dieser Schlag Leute, this set (class, race) of people.

The less definite, however, such terms of numbering are, the more common is the use of *von* with the dative; as, eine Gruppe, ein Haufe, eine Menge, eine Art, eine Classe, ein Schlag von Leuten; and this applies also to nouns used after the pronominal numerals given p. 84, 10.; as, Viele der Anwesenden and viele von den Anwesenden many of those present.

**Note 1.** In poetical and solemn language, however, and when a (poetically) descriptive adjective is used with the noun the Partitive is frequently expressed by the genitive; as, Laß mir den besten Becher Weins im purem Golde reichen, (*Goethe*). Let them reach to me the best beaker of wine in pure gold. Ein Trunk frischen Wassers, a drink of fresh water; eine Schale süßer Milch, a bowl of sweet milk; eine Menge reifer Äpfel, a number of ripe apples; ein Korb köstlicher Trauben, a basket of delicious grapes.

**2.** The adjective *voll, full of* is used with any of the above forms of the Partitive; as, die Taschen voll Geld, the pockets full of money. Er ist voll Zuversicht, He is full of confidence; voll Eifer, full of zeal; voll des heiligen Geistes, (full of) filled with the Holy Ghost. Sie sind voll süßen Weins. These men are full of new wine (Acts II). Voll von expresses abundance; as, eine Wiese voll von Blumen, a meadow full



of flowers; voll von Fehlern, full of mistakes. (See below C, 1).

3. The partitive possessive of the personal pronoun, as expressed by von with the dative, is fully explained p. 71, 3 and 4. Other pronouns also are used in the partitive with von and the dative; as, viele von denjenigen, many of those. Soll ich einen von diesen oder von jenen nehmen? Shall I take one of these or of those?

4. The demonstrative der-, die-, dasselbe often representing the personal pronoun, expresses the Partitive by the genitive; as, Viele derselben, many of them; genug derselben, enough of them; or, in the shorter form, deren genug, enough of them. (See p. 69, 1. and 71, 59, 2, 3).

5. With nouns preceded by an article or pronoun, either the genitive or von may be used to express the Partitive, but von is more common before a pronoun; as, einer der Knaben, one of the boys; einer von diesen Knaben, one of these boys; — particularly after a pronoun ending in er; as, welcher von jenen Männern, which of those men, — not, welcher jener Männer.

## C. THE GENITIVE AS THE OBJECT

is governed.

1. By the following adjectives when used as predicates of the verbs sein to be, bleiben to remain, werden to become, scheinen to seem, etc.; (see p. 77, b.) The Adjective then generally precedes the predicate; as, des Glaubens bar, void of faith. Sind Sie Ihrer Sache sicher? Are you sure of the thing?

## LIST 1.

anſichtig, getting or having sight of.	unfundig, ignorant of.
bar, void of.	ledig, free of.
bedürftig, in need of.	* loß, (with the Gen. of the pers. Pron., else with the Acc.), rid. of.
beſſen, engaged in the study of.	mächtig, master of.
benöthigt, in want of.	* müde, tired of.
beruſt, conſcious of.	quitt, quit of.
eingeſent, mindful of.	* ſatt, satiated, sick of.
ungeeignet, forgetful of.	ſicher, ſure of.
fähig, capable of.	ſchuldig, guilty of.
unfähig, not capable of.	theilhaft, { participant of, par-
ſroh, glad of, enjoying.	theilhaftig, { taking in.
* gewahr, aware ſenſible of.	* überdrüſſig, weary of.
gewärtig, in expectation of, ready for.	verdächtig, ſuſpected of.
gewiß, certain of.	verluſtig, forfeiting, deprived of.
* gewohnt, accuſtomed, inured to.	* voll, full of, (ſee p. 201 2).
habhaft, getting or having poſſeſſion or hold of.	* werth, worth.
* inne, alive to, ſenſible of.	würdig, worthy of.
fundig, to know, to be well acquainted with.	unwürdig, unworthy of.

The adjectives marked \*, govern **also the accusative**, and on the whole the adjectives and verbs given in the following lists are not precluded from being variously construed. Sometimes they occur only in one or two phrases with the case stated in the list. The pupil should, therefore understand that the lists in this section are mainly for grammatical reference in reading and that for the purposes of composition he cannot dispense with the careful use of a good dictionary.

The genitive after the adjectives *genug* enough, *viel* much, and *zu viel* too much is partitive; as, *genug des Geredes*, enough of talking; *mir ward des Lärmens zu viel*, the noise became too much for me; *deſſen*, deren *genug*, enough of it, of them; (*genug davon*, enough of that).

2. The genitive as the only object is required by the following verbs of which those marked \* are commonly used with the accusative. — *e. g.* *Genieße nun des Werks*, das uns erfreut! (*Goethe*). *Enjoy*

*then the work which delights us.* Or with the accusative, das Glück, das wir genießen, *the happiness we enjoy.* Likewise, Er hat keinen Bissen genossen. *He has not enjoyed (eaten) a morsel.* Ich achtete des Schmerzes (or den Schmerz) nicht. *I did not heed the pain.* Diese Behauptung ermangelt des Grundes. *This assertion is void of foundation.*

(These verbs govern the genitive only when used in the sense here given).

## LIST 2.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| * achten, to heed.                              | * genießen, to enjoy, (something morally, else with Acc.). |
| Acht haben, to attend to.                       | harren, to wait, hope for.                                 |
| bedürfen, to need, to require.                  | lachen, to laugh at, to scorn.                             |
| * begehren, to desire, to covet.                | * pflegen, to take care of, to cherish.                    |
| * brauchen, (impers.) to use, to need.          | * schonen, to spare, to treat leniently.                   |
| * entbehren, to be without, to be destitute of. | spotten, to scorn.   |
| entzihen, to dispense with.                     | * versehen, to miss.                                       |
| ermangeln, to be without, to be void of.        | * vergessen, to forget, to be forgetful of.                |
| * erwähnen, to mention.                         | * wahrnehmen, to avail oneself of.                         |
| denken, { to remember, to                       | * warten, to attend to, to wait.                           |
| gedenken, { mention.                            |  |

3. The genitive of the thing along with the **ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON** is required by the following verbs mostly in the sense of *accusing of, divesting of, depositing, freeing from.* With some of them the dative, governed by *von*, is more commonly used instead of the genitive. When this is the case, *von* is marked in the List. Examples: Man beschuldigte, bezüchtigte, zieht ihn der Unredlichkeit. *They (one) charged him with dishonestness.* Er wurde des Diebstahls angeklagt. *He was accused of theft.* Dies würde mich der Verantwortlichkeit entheben, entladen, entlasten. *This would free me from the responsibility.* Er entband ihn seines Eides und Versprechens. *He released him from his oath and promise.* Er wurde seines Amtes entlassen or entsetzt. *He*

*was dismissed from, deposed, his office; der Fälschung überführt, convicted of forgery.*

## LIST 3.

anklagen, to accuse of.	entledigen, to ease, free from, acquit of.
belehren (eines Andern, Bessern) to disabuse.	entsetzen, to depose.
berauben, to deprive of.	entwöhnen, to disaccustom.
beschuldigen, to accuse of.	überführen, to convict of.
bezüchtigen, to accuse of.	überheben, to excuse from, to spare.
entbinden (von), to release from.	überzeugen (von), to convince of.
entblößen (von), (in the past Part.) destitute of.	versichern (von), to assure of.
entheben, to exempt, to free.	verweisen (des Landes), to banish the country.
entkleiden, to divest.	würdigen, to deign, to honour with.
entladen (von), to discharge, free from.	zeihen, to accuse, to impute.
entlassen (von), to dismiss.	
entlasten, to exonerate.	

## LIST 4.

4. The genitive as the object is required by the following reflexive verbs, several of which cannot be used reflectively in English; *e. g.*, Wir nahmen uns des Kindes an. *We interested ourselves in (we protected) the child.* Ich beuge mich meiner Rechte. *I waive my claims.*

sich annehmen, to interest oneself in, to assist.	sich entäußern, to give up, to resign.
sich bedienen, to make use of, to avail oneself of.	sich entbrechen, (quaint), to refrain from.
sich befeßigen, to apply oneself to, to study.	sich enthalten, to abstain from.
sich begeben, to give up, to waive.	sich entschlagen, to free, rid oneself of (thoughts etc.).
sich bemächtigen, to make oneself master of, to seize.	sich entsinnen, to recollect.
sich bemeistern, to make oneself master over.	sich erbarmen, to have mercy upon.
sich befinnen, only in the phrase, sich eines Andern, Bessern befinnen, to bethink oneself better.	sich erfreuen, to enjoy.
	sich erinnern, to remember.
	sich erwehren, to keep off, to resist.
	sich freuen, to rejoice in.
	sich getrösten, to expect hopefully.

sich rühmen, to boast of.	sich wehren, to resist (sich seiner
sich schämen, to be ashamed of.	Haar —, to defend one's life).
sich überheben, to uplift oneself, to be vain of.	sich weigern, to refuse.
sich vermaßen, to profess boastingly (a deed).	sich wundern, only in the phrase,
sich versehen, to expect (something) of.	sich des Lobes wundern, to wonder beyond measure.

The following, which have all nearly the same meaning, occur only with *wissen*, in rather awkward phrases like the following: *Wissen erdreissen sie sich?* What liberty are you taking? What do you presume? *sich erdreissen*, *sich erschrecken*, *sich erkönnen*, *sich unterfangen*, *sich unterwinden*.

5. The Genitive is used rather predicatively with the verbs *sein* to *be*, *bleiben* to *remain*, *werden* to *become*, *scheinen* to *seem* etc.; in the phrases, *der Ansicht*, *der Meinung sein* &c., to be &c., of opinion: *des Glaubens*, *der Ueberzeugung*, *der Zuversicht sein* &c., to be &c. of the belief; persuasion, to be confident.

#### D. THE GENITIVE IN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

a. The Genitive is governed by the prepositions stated p. 40.

b. By the adverbs *hinsichts* or *hinsichtlich*, and *rücksichtlich*, with regard to, regarding, as to; *inmitten*, in the midst of; as, *hinsichtlich deines Besuches*, regarding your visit; *rücksichtlich des Geldpunktes*, as to the money-question. *Inmitten dieser Pläne* ereilt ihn der Tod. In the midst of these projects death overtook him.

c. Indefinite time when is put in the genitive; as, *des Morgens*, in the morning; *des Abends*, in the evening; in analogy *des Nachts*, by night; *des Sommers*, in the summer; *des Winters*, in winter; also *eines Morgens*, one morning; *eines Nachmittags*, one afternoon. (Comp. p. 54, b.).

d. The Genitive is used to indicate adverbially mood and manner; as, *reinen Herzens*, with a pure heart; *leichten Muthes*, with an easy mind; *stolzen Ein-*

nes, with a high spirit; unverzagten Geistes, with an undaunted spirit &c. Farther, allen Ernste, in all earnest, meinerseits and meines Theils, on my part; Ihrerseits on your part, &c.; meines Erachtens or Dafürhaltens, according to my opinion; meines Wissens, to my knowledge, so far as I know; unverrichteter Sache, without effecting one's purpose; stehenden Fußes, immediately "as I was;" geradeß Wegeß, straightway, directly, unhesitatingly; verabredeter Maßen, according to agreement; glücklicherweise, fortunately. Also vorfommenden Falls, in the event; möglichen Falls, possibly; schlimmsten Falls, at the worst; besten Falls, at the best; Allenfalls, at all events; Jeden Falls, at any rate.

e. The genitive occurs in exclamations of lament, (formerly governed by *ob* *about*); as, O, dieses Zwists! Alas, this discord! O, dieser Leidenschaft, Alas, this passion!

f. The genitive occurs in idioms; as, des Glaubens, der Hoffnung leben, to live in the belief, in the hope; der Ueberzeugung sterben, to die in the conviction; des Todes verbleichen, to depart this life; eines &c. Todes sterben, to die a, &c. death; du bist des Todes, you are a dead man; des Wegeß kommen, to come along the road; seiner Wege gehen; to walk off.

## THE DATIVE.

The dative is also called the person-case, because, in German, there is understood by it the person (or being &c.), to whose advantage or prejudice the action expressed by the verb tends. As this definition is not applicable to the English language, the pupil must carefully ascertain the use of the dative from the following rules and lists).

### 1. The DATIVE AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

(The pupil will do well to study at once, in connection with this, Sect. XXX. C.)

**Transitive verbs\*** generally speaking, are such as require an object, usually in the accusative; as, Ich fand

\* As the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs in German Grammar is rather a nice one, (transitive verbs, strictly

**den Ring.** *I found the ring.* Sentences like this are logically complete, wanting no essential element.

But sentences, formed with the verbs expressing **giving**, would not be complete with only one object; as, *I gave a ring*, because those verbs of **giving**, and in many cases their opposites, expressing a **taking from**, require besides the direct object or thing given or taken, a **second object**, the **PERSON** (being &c.), **to whom** the thing is given, or **from whom** it is taken. This indirect or remote object is in the **dative case**.

Verbs of this kind are the following, many of which in German have the force of the English verb taken in connexion with the preposition adjoined in the List:

## LIST 1.

## AFFIRMATIVELY.

geben, to give.  
 leihen, { (indiscriminately).  
 borgen, { to lend or to borrow.  
 senden (elegant) }  
 schicken (common) } to send.  
 (language)  
 bringen, to bring, to take (some-  
 thing to some one).  
 schenken, to present with.  
 versprechen, { to promise.  
 zusagen, }

## NEGATIVELY.

nehmen, to take from.  
 holen, to fetch.  
 stehlen and entwenden, to steal  
 from.  
 rauben, to rob from.  
 verweigern, to refuse.

speaking, being only such as govern an accusative, whilst the object of many verbs called transitive in English, such as, *to thank, to threaten, to believe, to obey, to follow, to answer* (see List I), would be a German dative; and these verbs themselves Intransitives in German), the author has used the terms transitive and intransitive in the English acceptation, the former for verbs requiring an object, the latter for such as do not ordinarily govern an object. This arrangement has the advantage of saving the pupil unnecessary confusion whilst serving all practical purposes. The difficulty, however, would be altogether avoided, were English Grammars to adopt the terms *objective verbs* for verbs requiring an object, and *subjective verbs* for those which have no object, as already in use in German Grammar.

zeigen, } to show.	bergen, } to conceal from.
weisen, }	verbergen, }
sagen, when in the sense of to tell.	verschweigen, to keep silence about, not to tell.
erzählen, to narrate, to tell.	
mittheilen, to tell, communicate.	verheimlichen, to keep secret from.
anvertrauen, to entrust.	verbieten, to forbid.
erlauben, } to allow, to permit.	
gestatten, }	vorenthalten, to retain, withhold.
bieten, } to offer.	abschlagen, to refuse.
anbieten, }	
gewähren, to grant, to afford.	
zuwenden, to bestow upon.	entziehen, to deprive of.
zudenken, usually with perfect tenses, to intend to give, to have in store for.	
gönnen, not to envy, (but rather) to rejoice in some ones happiness.	mißgönnen, to grudge (some one something).
vorziehen, to prefer.	nachsehen, to consider inferior.
hoch anrechnen, to give much credit for.	vorwerfen, to rebuke with, (lit. to throw before).

Other verbs of this kind, or verbs, only occasionally used with a direct and an indirect object, the pupil will readily construe, guided by their analogy with the above. — (About *lehren* to teach, *nennen*, *heißen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen* to call, to call abusively, and *lassen* to let, see p. 223, Note 1 and 2).

a. The direct object in the accusative, and the indirect object in the dative are simple cases, that is, they are not introduced by prepositions; as, *Ich gab meinem Freunde den Ring*. I gave (to) my friend the ring. (As to their position, see Section XXX, C).

b. When a sentence, the verb of which expresses *giving* &c., is construed in the passive voice, the direct object in the accusative is changed into a nominative, the subject is expressed by *von* (*by*) with the dative, but the indirect object remains unaltered in the dative case; as, *Der Ring wurde dem Kinde von seinem Vater gegeben*, the ring was given to the child by his father; for, *Der Vater gab dem Kinde den Ring*, the father gave (to) the child the ring. The pupil will see, that, owing to the strict preservation of this dative



in the passive voice, constructions like the following, occurring in English, are impossible in German; I was promised a gift. (*Mir wurde ein Geschenk versprochen*). He was offered a situation. (*Ihm wurde eine Stelle angeboten*). She was told, advised, (*Ihr wurde gesagt, gerathen*); &c. &c.

c. The above rules explain the use of the dative with many **reflective** verbs, the reflective pronoun of which in the accusative represents the direct object; as, *Ich unterzog mich diesem Gesäfte*. I undertook (devoted *myself* to) this task. Napoleon *ergab sich* den Engländern. Napoleon surrendered (gave *himself* up) to the English. Here den 'Engländern' is the indirect object in the dative.

In other reflective verbs, the reflective pronoun represents the indirect object in the dative; as, *Er maßte sich den Thron an*. He arrogated to *himself* the throne; den Thron, in the accusative, being the direct object. *Ich nahm mir diesen Schritt vor*. I proposed to *myself* this step; mir being the indirect, and diesen Schritt the direct object.

Reflective verbs of this kind are, *sich aneignen* to acquire, to appropriate, *sich anmaßen* to arrogate to oneself, *sich ausbitten* to ask for oneself, *sich denken* (*sich einbilden*, *sich vorstellen*) to fancy, to imagine, *sich erwerben* to acquire, to earn, *sich herausnehmen* to presume, (to take a liberty), *sich vornehmen* to propose to oneself, *sich zueignen* to appropriate to oneself.

2. The dative of the person &c. acted upon, is required as the object by the following transitive (objective) verbs, which admit of being construed in the passive voice in which case the dative is strictly preserved; as, *Mein Kind, gehorche deinem Vater*. *My child, obey thy father*. — *Man dankte mir nicht*. *They did not thank me*. Passively: *Mir wurde nicht gedankt*. *I got no thanks*. — *wer dem Vaterlande dient, dient der Menschheit*. *He who serves his country, serves mankind*. Passively: *durch nationalen Dünkel wird weder*

dem Vaterlande, noch der Menschheit gedient. *By national conceit neither one's country, nor mankind is served.*

(The verbs in the List govern the dative mainly in the application indicated by the English verb, but are differently construed, when used with another meaning.)

(A few verbs, contained in the List are liable to be construed both with the thing in the Acc. and the person in the Dat., but are introduced here because they more generally occur with the Dat. of the person only; such are danken *to thank*, which occurs in the sense of verbanken *to owe*; as Ich danke dir mein Leben, *I owe you my life*; but is more generally used in sentences like, Danke dem Herrn. Praise the Lord. Ich danke Dir. I thank you; — raten *to advise*, erlauben *to permit*, glauben *to believe* &c.).

## LIST 2.

abbitten, to beg pardon (for an insult).	eintwenden or werfen, to make objections.
abhehlen, to remedy, correct (a fault a want).	erlauben, to permit.
abrathen, to dissuade.	fluchen, to curse.
anliegen, to solicit, to sue.	folgen, to follow.
antworten, to answer (a person); auf, Acc. a letter &c.	fröhnen, to be a slave to, to indulge in.
aushelfen, to help up, aid.	gebieten, to command.
auslauern, to waylay.	gehordchen, to obey.
aufpassen, to watch, spy.	glauben, to believe.
auswarten, to wait on, serve.	grollen, to bear a grudge.
aushelfen, to help, accommodate with.	helfen, to help, aid.
ausweichen, to give way, avoid.	huldigen, to do homage.
begegnen, to treat (kindly, barshly), to meet.	lauschen, to listen (admiringly or secretly).
beipflichten, to agree with (in an opinion).	lächeln (zulächeln), to smile on.
beispringen, to succour.	leuchten, to light, hold a light, to shine on.
beistehen, to aid.	lohnern, to reward.
beistimmen, to assent, consent.	nachahmen, to imitate, copy.
beitreten, to join, assent.	nachäffen, to ape, mimic.
bürgen (für), to guarantee, to answer for.	nachbeten, to repeat after, echo.
danken, to thank, to owe.	nachdenken, to reflect upon (a subject).
dienen, to serve.	nachforschen, to search after, (investigate).
drohen, to threaten.	nacheifern, to emulate (a pattern).
einstehen (für), to be surety for, to answer.	nachgeben, to yield.
	nachrufen, to call out after.

nachsehen,	} to look after some object gone past.	vorstehen, to rule, superintend, to manage.
nachblicken,		wahr- and weiffagen, to prophesy.
nachschauen, &c.		wehren, to hinder, to check.
nachsetzen, to pursue, to give chase.		weichen, to yield, give way.
nachspüren, to trace, to track.		widersprechen, to contradict.
nachspotten, to repeat mockingly, to mimic.		widerstehen, to resist.
nachstellen, to lay snares for.		widerstreben, to strive against.
nähen, to approach, to run near.		willfahren, to yield to.
nützen, to be of use, to do good.		winken, to beckon, to motion to.
rathen, to advise, to counsel.		wohlwollen and übelwollen, to wish one well or ill.
rufen, to call, to cry.		zublinzeln, to wink to.
schaden, to harm, injure.		zuhören, to listen to.
schmeicheln, to flatter.		zusauchen and zujubeln, to hail with shouts, to cheer.
steuern, to repress, to check (a mischief) — to pay contributions.		zureden, to try to persuade.
(ver-) trauen, to trust in.		zunicken, to greet with a nod.
tögen, to defy.		zuspreden, to talk encouragingly, — to do justice (to a dish &c.).
versichern, (sometimes with the Acc.) to assure.		zürnen, to be angry with.
verzeihen, to pardon.		zusehen, to watch, look at (some one's doings).
vorarbeiten, to pave the way for.		zuseßen, to importune.
vorbauen and } to prevent,		zutrinken, to drink some one's health.
vorbeugen (a danger) { obviate.		zuvorkommen, to forestall.
vorgreifen, to forestall, anticipate.		zuwinken, to motion to.
vorleuchten, to shine before, to set an example.		

**Note.** Many of the verbs in the above and in the following lists are used with the **prefix be** and then require the **accusative**. The prefix, however, often alters the meaning; as, folgen, (Dat.) *to follow* either a person or a rule (&c.), befolgen (Acc.) *to follow* (rules, principles, but **not** persons or objects); antworten (Dat.) *to answer, to reply* (to a person), beantworten, (Acc.) *to answer* (a letter, question, request &c., but **not** a person). •

The pupil is reminded that the following verbs are construed with the dative, only when used in the sense given in the Lists; these are placed beside each other to facilitate reference.

## LIST 3.

The following verbs, (of which no passive voice can be formed), govern the **dative of the person**; (often the English Nominative; as, *Ich begegnete ihm* or *Er begegnete mir auf der Straße*. *I met him* or *He met me in the street*. *Du fehlst mir überall*. *I miss you everywhere*. *Er gefällt mir nicht*. *I do not like him*.)

absterben, to become dead to.  
 ähneln, to resemble slightly.  
 angehören, to belong to.  
 anhängen, to adhere, stick to.  
 anschließen (sich), to attach oneself to, to join.  
 auffallen, to strike, to appear strange.  
 begegnen, to meet, (to treat).  
 behagen, to please, to gratify.  
 beifallen, to side with.  
 beikommen, to get at.  
 beiwohnen, to be present at, to be inherent in.  
 bleiben, to be left, to remain.  
 büßen, (für) to pay for, (to smart for).  
 entteilen, to hasten away from, to disappear rapidly.  
 entfliehen, to flee from, to run away from.  
 entgehen, to escape, to elude.  
 entgelten, to pay for, (to smart for).  
 entkommen, to escape.  
 entlaufen, to desert, to run away.  
 entsagen, to renounce, to resign.  
 entschweben, { to soar away  
 entschwingen (sich), { from.  
 entschwinden, to vanish from.

## LIST 4.

The following impersonal verbs (see Section XXVII) and verbs used only in the third person, govern the **dative**, generally of the person, which is frequently rendered by a nominative in English; as, *Ich fehlt Geld*. *He lacks money*. *Es glückte, gelang mir ihn zu finden*. *I succeeded (was lucky) in finding him*.

entspringen, { to escape.  
 entweichen, {  
 entweichen, to escape, to withdraw from, and other verbs, *expressing motion* and formed with the prefixes. *ent* and *entgegen*, as:  
 entgegenen, to hasten to meet.  
 entgegengehen, to go to meet.  
 entgegenkommen, to come to meet, &c. &c.  
 abgehen, es geht mir ab, I want, (I lack).  
 es ahnt mir, I have a presentiment.  
 es schwant mir, (quaint), I forebode.  
 anheimfallen, to fall to, to devolve upon.  
 anstehen, to stick to, to adhere to (a fault).  
 (ankommen). Es kommt mir (auf das Ding) an. (The thing) matters to me.  
 anstehen, to suit, to please.  
 aufstoßen, to light on.  
 es bangt mir (vor), I am afraid, anxious about.  
 es begegnet mir, it happens to me.

\***es fällt mir (bei)**, it occurs to me, I recollect.

**es bekommt mir**, it agrees with me.

**es beliebt mir**, I chose, please.

**bevorstehen**, to be near or impending.

**es deutet mir**.

**es dünkt mir (or mich)**, } methinks.

\***es fällt mir ein**, it occurs to me.

**es geht mir (nicht) ein**, it does (not) take with me.

\***es leuchtet mir ein**, it is clear, obvious to me.

**es eßelt mir (or mich) vor**, I loathe.

**entfallen**, to fall from, out of.

**es entfällt mir**, I forget.

**entfahren**, to slip out of, (words, sighs).

**entfließen**, -quellen, -rauschen, -rollen, -strömen, &c. to flow, gush, rush, roll, stream, &c. from, out of.

**erliegen**, to succumb to.

**erscheinen**, to appear, to seem.

**fehlen**, to be wanting.

**fügen (sich)**, to accomodate oneself to.

**gefallen**, to please.

**genügen**, to suffice, to satisfy.

**gleich**, to be like, to resemble.

**gleichkommen (or sein)** to be equal to.

**mißfallen**, to displease.

**nacharten**, to take after, to resemble.

**nacheilen**, to hasten after.

**nachgehen**, to go after, to follow, to prosecute.

**nachhängen**, to give oneself up to (a frame of mind &c.).

**nachkommen**, to come after, up with, to comply with.

**nachlaufen**, to run after, and other

verbs with the prefix **nach** and expressing motion.

**nachstehen**, to be inferior to.

**obliegen**, — to apply oneself to, to study.

**scheinen**, to seem.

**sein (Einem Etwas)**, to be (something to some one).

**unterliegen**, to succumb.

**verfallen**, to fall to, to become liable to.

Verbs expressing motion, composed with **voran** & **voraus** at the head of, **voraus** in advance, before, and **vorbei** & **vorüber** past; as.

**voran**, **vorausgehen**, to march at the head of.

**vorausgehen**, to go before.

**vorbei**, **vorüber**, **vorüber**, **vorüber**, to hasten or come past.

**vorkommen**, to appear to.

**vorleuchten**, to shine before, to set an example.

**werden (Einem Etwas)**, to become something to some one.

\***es fällt mir schwer (leicht)**, I feel, find it difficult (easy).

\***was fehlt dir?** what ails you? what is the matter with you?

\***es fehlt mir an**, I want (I lack).

**fehlschlagen**, to prove a failure.

\***es steht mir frei**, I am at liberty to, I am free to.

**es gebricht mir an**, I want (I lack), I am deficient in.

**gebühren**, to be due to.

**es gefällt mir in**, I like (a country, place).

**es geht mir gut (schlecht)**, I am faring well, getting on well, (badly).

**gehören**, to belong to, to be requisite to.

\*The parts given in bold type form prefixes to the infinitives; as, **beifallen**, **einfallen** &c.

gelingen, to succeed, to turn out a success.

(eine Sache [Nom.] gelingt, glückt, geräth einer Person [Dat.], a person succeeds, is successful in a thing).

genügen, to suffice.

gerathen, see gelingen.

gerathen, to turn out, to redound.

es geschieht mir, it happens to me.

es geschieht mir recht, it serves me right.

es geziem mir, it befits, behoves me.

es glückt mir, I am lucky in a thing, I succeed, (see gelingen.).

es graut (grauß) mir vor, I have an aversion to (horror of).

es kommt mir zu statten, &c., it is of use, of service to me.

es läßt mir, (colloquially, of dresses), it becomes me.

es liegt mir daran, it matters to me, is of consequence to me.

(es liegt an, the fault is).

es liegt mir fern, it is far from me (to do &c.).

es mangelt mir an, I want, (I lack).

wohlthun, to do good, to be beneficial to.

gehören, to belong to.

The dative occurs also in the following idioms: wenn dem so ist, if so; wie dem auch sei, or sei dem nun wie ihm wolle, however that may be; Heil (sei dir): hail (to you)! likewise Wohl (dir)! well (for you)! Wehe (mir)! woe (is me)!

**Note 1.** Besides the above verbs, there are a number of **compound verbal expressions** governing the dative, the first component or adverbial portion of which is used

mißglücken, } to prove a failure, to  
mißlingen, } miscarry.  
mißrathen, }

es liegt mir ob, it is incumbent upon me.

es paßt mir, it fits me well, it suits me.

es schaudert mir vor, I shudder at.

es schwindelt mir (bei), my head turns at.

(schmecken, to be of [some] taste).

es schmeckt mir, I like (a dish, &c.).

schwanen, see ahnen.

(sein), es ist mir als ob, I feel as if.

es ist mir gut, schlecht zu. Nutze,

I feel well, ill, &c. &c. mir ist kalt, warm, I feel cold, warm.

sitzen and stehen, (of dresses) to suit, to fit.

(thun) es thut mir leid, I am sorry for.

es thut mir weh, it pains, grieves me.

es thut mir wohl, it does me good, it gratifies me.

träumen (also personal, and also impers. with the Acc.) to dream.

es vergeht mir (die Lust, der Muth &c.), I lose my relish, courage &c.

es verschlägt mir Nichts (viel), It matters to me nothing, (much); it makes no difference.

vorhergehen, to precede.

es kommt mir vor, It seems to me, I have some notion.

es schwebt mir vor, I have a vague idea.

werden (es wird mir), mir wird, I feel, or rather, I begin to feel; as, warm, warm, kalt, cold, übel, sick, angst und bange, alarmed, in great trepidation; mir ward (ein Glück, ein Freund), there fell to my lot, was granted to me (a happiness, a friend).

widerfahren to happen to.

like a separable prefix, (see Section XX, e, and Section XXX, D); *as*, *den Hof machen*, to pay court, to curry favour with; *Jemanden (Dat.) zu Hülfe kommen*, to succour, to come to the rescue of some one; *zur Last legen*, to charge with; *zu Leibe gehen*, to attack; *zu Munde reden*, to speak to any one's liking; *Jemanden (Dat.) Rede stehen*, to give an answer, explanation to some one; *Jemanden (Dat.) zur Seite stehen*, to assist, to support; *zu Theil werden*, to fall to one's lot; *Troß bieten und Hohn sprechen*, to defy, to scoff at; *das Wort reden*, to advocate; *zuwider handeln*, to contravene; &c. &c.

The dative, in such expressions, partly bears the character of an indirect object, and partly is governed by the preposition; *as*, *in*, *zu Hülfe kommen*, *zu Leibe gehen*.

*eß widersteht mir*, it loathes me.  
*eß ziemt mir*, it befits, behoves me.  
*zufallen*, to fall to one's lot, share.  
*zufießen*, to flow in abundantly.  
*zugehen and zukommen* to reach,  
 (of letters, news).  
*eß kommt mir zu*, it behoves me  
 I have a right or duty to.  
*zustehen*, to be competent to.

**Note 2. THE DATIVE OF THE PERSON** instead of the English **possessive or possessive pronoun**. By the dative of the person, as a secondary object, in German, the relation to the conscious individual of such acts as seem to affect more directly his **parts or property**, is more precisely established than in English, where the possessive case of the noun, or the possessive pronoun, is used for this purpose. Compare, *Sie legt den Kranz derranken Freundin auf das Bett* (which involves the absolute presence of the sick friend in the bed) to, *Sie legt den Kranz auf derranken Freundin Bett*, she puts the wreath on the sick friend's bed, (the sick friend being possibly absent); *Der Arzt untersuchte ihm die Brust* with, *Der Arzt untersuchte seine Brust*, the physician examined his chest, (the latter possibly referring to a *post mortem* examination, the idea of which is decidedly excluded by the former). Similarly, *Er lief seinem Herrn fort*. He ran away from his master. *Ich wasche mir die Hände*. I wash my hands. (But figuratively, as in *Matth. XXVII, 24*, *Ich wasche meine Hände*.) *Er läßt sich die Haare schneiden*. He gets his hair cut. *Wer hat mir den Stod zerbrochen?* Who has broken my stick?

**Note 3. THE ETHICAL DATIVE.** The dative of the first and second person is sometimes used to express the **moral interest** which the speaker takes in an action, or which he wishes to excite in the hearer for an action expressed by a verb otherwise not re-

quiring the dative, somewhat similar to the English phrase; Do me that nicely! *Mache mir das recht hübsch!* Compare "Numbers, XX, 6: Curse me this people". Examples. *Stirb mir nicht!* Don't die! (I want you to live). *Seid mir recht artig, ihr Kinder!* Be very good, ye children! (I heartily wish you to be so). *Daß mir Keiner auf's Eis geht!* (I am anxious) lest one of you should go on the ice. *Das war Ihnen ein Spaß!* I assure you it was capital fun! *Da gab es Euch ein Spektakel!* there was a row, I tell you! *Das soll Ihnen ein Fest werden!* we will make that a feast, I assure you!

Special attention is directed to the verbs *sein* and *werden* in Lists 3 and 4, particularly when used impersonally (p. 215, L. 4.); as, *mir ist, I feel, ihm war, he felt;* and *mir wird, I begin to feel; mir wurde or ward, I began to feel, got, became,* these verbs may be construed with all adjectives expressing sensations; as, *mir ist kalt, I feel cold; mir wird warm, I begin to feel warm, I am getting warm;* and then, the subject of the sensation is in the dative. List 5. contains a few examples of this kind also.

5. The dative of the person &c. is required.

a. By the participles of the verbs, given in the above lists, when used as adjectives.

b. By the superlative of any adjective or adverb formed with the particle *zu* too? as, *Das ist mir zu hoch. That is too high for me. Das dauert mir zu lange. That takes too much time, (is too long for me). Du kommst mir zu oft. You come too often. Der Hut ist mir zu groß. The hat is too large for me.*

c. By the following adjectives, (among which will be found some participles, of verbs otherwise requiring the accusative), and by their negatives formed with the prefix *un* *un, in;* as, *gelegen* convenient; *ungelegen* inconvenient.

The following list contains a number of adjectives with which the dative is used only when they are specially applied to a person, and when they are construed in English with the preposition *to;* as, *Die Sache war mir ärgerlich. The affair was vexing to me. Das ist mir dunkel. That is obscure to me.* Such adjectives are chiefly given to illustrate a marked tendency of the German language to limit an assertion by special reference to the subject who thinks



or feels a thing to be vexing, obscure, &c., whilst it may not be absolutely so. The English more commonly say: "*That is vexing, obscure, ridiculous,*" — taking for granted that it is so to the subject. In order not to extend this long list too much, the author has omitted many adjectives of the class here described, particularly as the list contains synonymous adjectives, leaving it to the pupil to construe them with the dative, in analogy with those given. All those adjectives, however, which absolutely govern the dative, or such as are in English construed with another preposition (for inst. *for*), are given in the list. The pupil must remember that they govern the dative, only when used in the sense indicated, and that they follow the dative, when they are used as the predicate.

## LIST 5.

abgeneigt, averse to.	beliebig, any you like.
abhold, unfavorable, disinclined.	bequem, comfortable, convenient.
abtrünnig, apostate.	beschwerlich, troublesome, burdensome.
abspänstig, alienated, estranged.	beweislich, provable.
abwändig, alienated, turned off.	bewußt, known.
achtungswerth, } estimable.	sich bewußt, (Dat.) conscious.
achtungswürdig, }	billig (recht), fair, just.
ähnlich, resembling.	dankbar, grateful.
(analog, analogous).	deutlich, distinct.
angeboren, innate, inborn.	dienlich, conducive, beneficial.
angeerbt, hereditary, inherited.	dienstbar, subject, serving.
angehörig, belonging to.	dunkel, obscure.
angelegen, interested in.	(egal, all the same).
angemessen, adequate, suitable.	ehrwürdig, venerable.
angenehm, agreeable.	eigen, proper, peculiar.
angestammt, innate.	eigenthümlich, peculiar.
angst (und bange), greatly alarmed.	ekelhaft, loathsome.
anhängig, pertaining to.	empfindlich, vexing.
annehmbar, acceptable.	(ennuyant, tedious, annoying).
anschaulich, clear, as if seen.	entbehrlich, dispensable.
anverwandt, related, kindred to.	entsetzlich, horrible.
drgerlich, annoying.	erfreulich, gratifying.
auffällig, bearing ill will.	ergeben, devoted.
bange, apprehensive (eerie)	ergötzlich, diverting.
bedenklich, critical, doubtful.	erinnerlich (mir), I remember.
befremdend, (sich), strange, odd.	erkenntlich, grateful.
befreundet, friendly.	erklärlich, conceivable.
befriedigend, satisfactory.	erlaubt, allowed.
begreiflich, conceivable.	ersichtlich, evident.
behaulich, comfortable, cosy.	ersprießlich, salutary, useful.
beihilflich, assisting.	erwünscht, welcome, opportunely.
bekannt known.	

(fatal, sadly annoying).

feil, for sale.

feind (gram), hostile to.

fern, far from.

flau, faintish.

förderlich, conducive, expedient.

frei, free.

fremd, strange, foreign.

fußbar, felt by.

gebeilich, beneficial.

gefährlich, dangerous.

gefällig, pleasing (Was ist Ihnen

gefällig? What do you wish?)

gegenwärtig (mir nicht gegenwärtig, I don't recollect).

gebißig, spiteful.

gehorsam, obedient.

geläufig, familiar.

gelegen, convenient, opportune.

mir ist daran gelegen, it matters me.

gemäß, in conformity with.

gemein,

gemeinsam, { common to.

genehm, agreeable.

geneigt, favourably inclined.

genug, enough.

gerecht (werden), to do justice to.

geständig (sein), to confess.

gesund, good for.

getreu, true to.

gewachsen, a match for, up to.

gewiß, secured, certain.

gewogen, affectionate.

gleich, equal, quite the same.

gleichgültig (-gültig), indifferent.

gnädig, merciful.

günstig, favourable.

gut (ich bin dir), I like, love thee,

heilig, sacred.

heilsam, salutary.

hinderlich, impeding.

hold, gracious, loving.

klar, plain, clear.

kund, known.

leicht, easy (for).

lieb (mir), I am glad of; dear to.

mißfällig, displeasing.

möglich, possible for.

nachtheilig, injurious.

nahe, near.

natürlich, natural.

neu, new.

nützlich, useful.

offen, open.

offenbar, manifest.

peinlich, awkward, painful.

(plausibel, plausible).

rätiselhaft, mysterious, a mystery.

recht (mir), agreeable, convenient.

sauer, hard (of work, duty).

schädlich, injurious, noxious.

schmeichelhaft, flattering, gratifying.

schmerzlich, painful.

schuldig (sein), to owe.

schwer, hard, difficult.

sicher, sure, assured to.

störend, disturbing, inconvenient.

streitig (machen), to contest.

taub (better with gegen) deaf to.

theuer, dear.

tödtlich, deadly, fatal.

treu, true, faithful to.

tröstlich, consoling.

übel, sick, ill.

überlegen, superior to.

überraschend, surprising.

übrig, left, remaining.

unbenommen, unforbidden, open to.

unerseßlich, irreparable.

unerwartet, unexpected.

unterthänig, subject to (a sovereign).

unvergeßlich, never to be forgotten by.

unverloren, not lost to.

unverwehrt, unforbidden.

verantwortlich, responsible to.

verbunden, obliged to.

verderblich, ruinous to.

verdrießlich, vexing, annoying.

vergönnt, granted, allowed.

verhaßt, hateful, hated.

verschlossen, shut, closed, against.	wohl (mir ist —), I feel well, easy.
verwandt, related to, akin to.	zugänglich, accessible.
vorthellhaft, advantageous.	zugehörig, belonging to.
werth, dear to, of value.	zugehan, attached, devoted to.
wesentlich, essential to.	zuständig, due to.
wichtig, (weighty) important.	zuträglich, beneficial, conducive to
willkommen, welcome.	health.

### 6. The DATIVE IN ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

The dative is required by the prepositions given p. 43, 2. and by those governing both the dative and accusative (p. 45, 4. under the circumstances stated there.

---

### EXERCISE XXIX.

#### On Section XVIII.

#### Ein Empfehlungsbrief. A letter of introduction.

The Lists referred to are those of verbs etc. governing the dative.

Leipzig, den 30sten Juli 1870.

Hochgeehrter Herr Geheimrath<sup>1</sup>

Mein Vater hat mir aufgetragen<sup>2</sup> Ihnen zu schreiben.  
Es thut ihm sehr leid (List 4.) daß es ihm nicht möglich ist

<sup>1</sup>*literally*: highly honoured Mr. Privy-councilor; *In English*, Dear Sir. (See *Appendix to the Author's "New Conversational Exercises."* "German Life and Manners,") <sup>2</sup>to commission,

(List 5.) sich Ihnen selbst zu empfehlen<sup>3</sup>, indem<sup>4</sup> ihm der Unfall<sup>5</sup> begegnet ist (List 4.) daß ein Freund ihm auf der Jagd<sup>6</sup> den Arm (XVI List 6) verwundete<sup>7</sup> (p. 216 Note 2). Die Sache<sup>8</sup> war ihm sehr ungelegen (p. 217, c.) es geht ihm jedoch<sup>9</sup> jetzt besser (List 4). Was ihm nun am Herzen<sup>10</sup> liegt (p. 216, Note 2.), ist, Ihnen in dem Ueberbringer<sup>11</sup>, dem Dr. Walther, (p. 195, APPPOSITION.) einen Freund zu empfehlen (st.) dem es darauf<sup>12</sup> ankommt (List 4.) einigen Gelehrten ihrer Stadt persönlich<sup>13</sup> bekannt zu werden (List 5.) und einigen Geschäften<sup>14</sup> nachzugehen (List 3.) bei denen Sie, Hochgeehrter Herr Geheimrath, ihm gütigst behülflich sein wollen. Ich darf<sup>15</sup> Ihnen nicht sagen (List 1.) wie sehr mein Vater Ihnen für Alles danken wird, worin<sup>16</sup> Sie seinem Freunde beistehen (List 2.) können und wie gern<sup>17</sup> er Ihnen bei jeder Gelegenheit<sup>18</sup> wieder dienen wird. Ich habe Ihnen noch mitzutheilen (List 1.) daß meinem ältesten Bruder die Ehre<sup>19</sup> zutheil geworden ist (List 4.) der Kaiserlichen Gesandtschaft<sup>20</sup> am Hofe zu St. James beigegeben<sup>21</sup> zu werden. Es war ihm gelungen (List 4.) sich früher<sup>22</sup> das Vertrauen<sup>23</sup> seiner Excellenz des Gesandten zu erwerben, der ihm wohlwill (List 3.) und ihm bei dieser Gelegenheit den Vorzug<sup>24</sup> gegeben hat. Gestatten Sie mir mich in größter Hochachtung<sup>25</sup> zu nennen (Sect. XXII.) Ihnen

ganz gehorsamsten

Hermann M.

<sup>3</sup>to pay his respects to you himself, <sup>4</sup>as, <sup>5</sup>accident, <sup>6</sup>whilst hunting, <sup>7</sup>to wound, <sup>8</sup>the affair, <sup>9</sup>however, <sup>10</sup>am Herzen liegen; to have a heart List 4., <sup>11</sup>the bearer, <sup>12</sup>for the compounds with da and their use see p. 93, c. and p. 94.; <sup>13</sup>personally, <sup>14</sup>business-matters, <sup>15</sup>dürfen to need, <sup>16</sup>see p. 109, 4; 114, Note 2, <sup>17</sup>how gladly, <sup>18</sup>opportunity, <sup>19</sup>honour, <sup>20</sup>Embassy, <sup>21</sup>to attach, <sup>22</sup>formerly, <sup>23</sup>confidence, <sup>24</sup>preference, <sup>25</sup>high esteem, <sup>26</sup>obedient.

## EXERCISE XXX.

## Dank für Empfehlungen. Thanks for Introductions.

Berlin, den 10ten August 1871.

Geehrter Herr Professor!

Erlauben Sie mir Ihnen auf's Wärmste<sup>1</sup> für die Empfehlungen an Ihre hiesigen Freunde zu danken. Sie sind mir bereits<sup>2</sup> sehr nützlich (List 5.) und besonders<sup>3</sup> die- (jenige) an den Geheimrath W. ist mir so angenehm (List 5) als wichtig (List 5.) Meine Befürchtungen (XIX, 1.), daß es mir schwer fallen (List 4.) werde<sup>4</sup> ein Interesse für mein Vorhaben<sup>5</sup> zu erwecken<sup>6</sup> zeigten sich<sup>7</sup> als unbegründet<sup>8</sup>. Es glückte mir (List 4.) bald die rechten Leute<sup>9</sup> zu finden und man hat mir Alles leicht (List 5.) gemacht. Es war mir höchst erfreulich (List 5.) daß mehreren (p. 84, 10.) der Herren meine Arbeiten<sup>10</sup> schon bekannt (List 5.) waren, und daß man dem Fremden so willig rieth (List 2.) und half (List 2.). Ich halte es für (p. 224, Note 3. a.) möglich,<sup>11</sup> daß ich mit der Hülfe<sup>12</sup> des Geheimraths, der für den ersten Mann in seinem Fache<sup>13</sup> gilt (p. 224, Note 3. a.) und dessen Rathe<sup>14</sup> ich unbedingt<sup>15</sup> folge (List 2.), in Kurzem<sup>16</sup> meinen Zweck<sup>17</sup> erreichen<sup>18</sup> werde. Er ist mir augenscheinlich<sup>19</sup> gewogen (List 5.). Ich werde es immer als das größte Glück betrachten (p. 224, Note 3, b.) diesem Manne empfohlen (st.) worden zu sein (Pass. V.) und Sie werden mir glauben (List 2.) daß Ihnen stets<sup>20</sup> dafür (p. 69, 1 and p. 70) dankbar (List 5.) sein wird.

Ihr hochachtungsvoll ergebener<sup>21</sup>

H. Walther.

<sup>1</sup>warm, p. 125, B. 3, <sup>2</sup>already, <sup>3</sup>especially, <sup>4</sup>would, <sup>5</sup>Undertaking, <sup>6</sup>to awaken, <sup>7</sup>sich zeigen, to appear, <sup>8</sup>unfounded, <sup>9</sup>the right people, <sup>10</sup>of. labour, work; <sup>11</sup>possible, <sup>12</sup>aid, <sup>13</sup>department, <sup>14</sup>m. advice, <sup>15</sup>unconditionally, <sup>16</sup>shortly, <sup>17</sup>object, aim, <sup>18</sup>to attain, <sup>19</sup>obviously, <sup>20</sup>ever, always, <sup>21</sup>most respectfully.

## THE ACCUSATIVE (OBJECTIVE).

The Accusative, as the object of the verb, agrees in general with the objective in English; as, *Ich lobe ihn*. I praise him. *Wem suchst du?* Whom seekest thou? *Gieb mir den Arm*. Give me your arm.

If the transitive verb is used in the passive voice, the accusative becomes the nominative of the sentence; as, *Es wird von mir gelobt*. *He is praised by me*; and, in this respect, the difference between the German accusative and the English objective is important, as the objective, if expressed by a dative in German, cannot be changed into a nominative when the sentence is construed in the passive voice; for inst. *Man bot mir an* —, They offered me —. *Mir* (not *ich*) *wurde angeboten*. I (to me) was offered. (See pp. 209 *b*, 210, 2.)

The English objective is often rendered by a genitive, and, still more frequently, by a dative in German, and the rules on these cases (See pp. 202 C, and 207 — 216, Note 2, 3), contain complete information with regard to the points of difference.

**Note 1.** *Lehren* to teach has both its objects in the accusative; as, *Lehre mich dieses Lied!* *Teach me this song!* but here, as well as in the case of *heißen* to bid, and *lassen* to let, to allow, the second object is in fact the object of a verb understood, governed by *lehren*, *heißen* or *lassen*; viz. *Lehre mich* *Teach me* *dieses Lied* (singen) (*how to sing*) *this song*. *Er hieß mich es bringen*, *He bade me bring it*. *Laß mich allow me es thun* (*to do it*). *Let me do it*. *Er lehrt ihn die deutsche Sprache* (*sprechen, verstehen* &c.) *He teaches him (to talk, to understand) the German language*. *Lehren* is used neither passively nor reflectively in German.

*Sprechen* (*to speak*), when used in the sense of *to see*, is used with the simple accusative; as, *Wollen Sie meinen Vater sprechen?* Do you wish to see my father? — In phrases like *bittere* &c. *Thränen weinen*, to weep bitter &c. tears; *den Schlaf des Gerechten schlafen*, to sleep the sleep of the just, in which the subjective verb is used objectively, the languages agree.

**Note 2.** With the verbs *heißen*, *nennen*, *to call*, *taufen*, *to christen*, and *schelten*, *schimpfen*, *to call abusively*, the second accusative bears rather the character of an apposition; as, *Er nannte ihn seinen Freund*. He called him his friend.

**Note 3.** On the construction of the verbs, expressing *appointing, choosing making* &c. which require two objectives in English, see p. 193, 3.

Verbs of *declaring* and *considering*, when used with two objects, are construed as follows.

*a.* The second object is introduced by the preposition *für*, after *erklären* to declare, *halten* to consider, to think, *aussehen* to take to be, *nehmen* to take as, *erkennen* to own, *ausgeben* to give out, pass off; as, *Sie erklärten ihn für einen Propheten. They declared him a prophet. Er gab sich für einen Propheten aus. He gave himself out for a prophet. Ich halte ihn für einen Mann von Grundsätzen. I consider him a man of principles. Er nahm ihn für einen Neuling, Er sah ihn für einen Neuling an. He took him for a novice, thought him a novice. Similarly: Er gilt für einen Gelehrten. He is considered a scholar.*

*b.* The second object is introduced by the conjunction *als*; after *achten* to regard, esteem, *ansetzen* to look upon, *betrachten* to consider, *darstellen*, to represent, *einführen* and *vorstellen* to introduce, *empfehlen* to recommend &c.; as, *Ich achte ihn als einen wahrheitsliebenden Menschen. I esteem him as a truth-loving person. Sie sieht sie als Schwester an. She looks upon them as sisters. Er betrachtete und stellte es als einen Zufall dar. He considered and represented it as an accident. Er führte ihn als seinen Schwager ein. He introduced him as his brother-in-law. Er empfahl den Mann als einen erfahrenen Führer. He recommended the man as an experienced guide.* — With the verbs mentioned under *b*, the second accusative bears the character of an apposition, and, hence, both accusatives appear as nominatives, if the sentence is construed in the passive voice.

(*Für* is used with the verbs given under *a*, and *als* with those under *b*, even when they refer to an adjective instead of a second object; as, *Ich hielt es für unpassend. I thought it unbecoming. Ich betrachte es als nicht der Rede werth. I consider it not worth mentioning).*

**Note 4.** The REFLECTIVE PRONOUN in generally in the accusative. (See, however, p. 66, p. 210 c. and Section XXVI, Reflective verbs 1.).

**Note 5.** By the IMPERSONAL FORM of the verb, a sensation experienced by the subject is represented as acting upon the subject, which, consequently, generally stands in the accusative; as, *Mich hungert* for *Es hungert mich. I am hungry; (hunger acts upon me, troubles me). Mich durstet* for *Es durstet mich. I am thirsty. Mich dünkt. Me thinks.* In p. 213 List 4, the impersonal verbs are given which are construed with the dative of the person. (See, also Section XXVII, Impersonal form).

2. The accusative is used in connexion with adjectives or adverbial expressions denoting **measure, weight, age, or value**; as, *einen Fuß, einen Zoll lang*, one foot, one inch long; *einen und einen halben Centner an Gewicht*, one and a half cwt. in weight; *einen Monat alt*, a month old; *einen Thaler werth*, worth a dollar; *drei und einen halben Schritt in der Breite*, three paces and a half in breadth.

*Of*, in phrases like *at a distance of, height of*, is rendered by *von* with the Dative; as, *in der Entfernung von einer Meile, at a distance of a mile.* —

After *gelten* and *kosten* to cost, *messen* to measure and *wiegen* to weigh, the object is in the **accusative**; as, *Ein Block von diesem Material, der einen und einen halben Fuß mißt, und einen halben Centner wiegt, kostet einen Gulden.* A block of this material, measuring one foot and a half, and weighing half a cwt., costs one florin.

3. In connexion with the adverb *genug, enough* and similar adverbial expressions referring to **quantity**, transitive verbs like *besitzen, kaufen*, which otherwise require the accusative, take their object in the **genitive**; as, *Ich besitze genug solcher Dinge*, I have got enough of such things; or relatively, *An der See finden Sie deren so viel Sie mögen.* On the shore you find as many of them as you like.

4. **TIME DEFINITE** *when* and *during* is expressed by the **accusative**; as, *diesen Monat*, this month; *den dritten Juli*, the third of July. *Er ging jenen Morgen weg und kommt diesen Abend wieder.* He went away that morning, and is to come back to-night. *Er spielt den ganzen Tag*, he plays all day. (Compare however p. 54, 2.).

Dates are frequently introduced by the preposition *an* contracted with the dative of the article; as, *am zweiten Mai*, on the second of May. Also *an jenem Morgen*, on that morning, &c. This form, however, seems to be used narratively rather than in fixing the date.. (Comp. p. 54, *a — d*).



## SECTION XIX.

## ON THE USE OF THE NUMBERS.

1. Certain abstract nouns denoting dispositions of the mind, &c., have in German no plural as such; *Furcht*, for instance, *fear, dread, awe*; *Verrath*, *treachery, treason*, *Betrug*, *deceit*. They are, however, frequently identified with acts proceeding from such dispositions; and since such acts may be repeated, as in English, *fears, apprehensions, treacheries*, it is necessary to express them in the plural, and such plurals then are derived from other nouns, expressing exactly the single act; as, *die Befürchtung* the apprehension, *die Verrätherei* the treachery, *die Betrügerei* fraud; — *plurals*: *Befürchtungen* apprehensions, *fears*, *Verräthereien*, *treacheries*, *Betrügereien* *frauds*. Likewise, *der Zant* the quarrel, *Zänkereien* quarrels; *der Streit* the dispute, altercation, plural, *die Streitigkeiten*; *der Wahn* illusion, but *illusions* *die Täuschungen*, from *die Täuschung* illusion; *das Lob* the praise, *Lobeshhebungen* praises; *thanks* *der Dank*, pl., *Danksgungen* expressions of gratitude; *Schuld* guilt, *Ver Schuldigungen* trespasses.

Others like *Vorsicht* *precaution*, *Sicherheit* *safety, security*, form the plural by compounds with *Maßregeln* *measures*, as, *Vorsichtsmaßregeln*, *Sicherheitsmaßregeln*.

*Zorn*, *wrath, anger*, *Ärger* *fret, chagrin*, *Schreck*, *fright*, *Tadel* *blame*, take for the plural *wiederholter Ärger* *repeated anger*, *wiederholter Schreck* *frights*, *wiederholter Tadel* *censures*. *Die Schrecken* is the plural of *der Schrecken* *the terror*.

2. The following peculiarities may be noticed.

a. The noun *die Sache* *thing*, is in the singular always used in a moral sense and has the force of *the cause, the affair, the case*; as, *die Sache* *ist sehr unangenehm*, *The thing, the affair is very unpleasant*; whilst *das*

**Ding** *the thing*, is generally used to denote a material object; as, Sehen Sie jenes Ding dort? *Do you see that thing yonder?* These two nouns, however, interchange their plurals in such a manner, that Sachen means *material objects*, whilst Dinge refers to *moral things, affairs*; as, Nehmen Sie diese Sachen hier weg. Take away these things here. Wo sind meine Sachen? Where are my things, (luggage &c.)? — Wer kann heute sagen, wie die Dinge in Europa und Amerika sich gestalten werden? Who can tell to-day what shape things in Europe and America may assume? Mischen Sie sich nicht in Dinge, die Sie Nichts angehen! Dont meddle with things which dont concern you! (See the colloquial form Dinger p. 184 List).

**b. Compounds of Mann**; as, Kaufmann *merchant*, Landmann *peasant*, form their plural in Leute (*people*) when a class is to be denoted; as, Kaufleute *merchants*, Landleute *peasants*. (Ehemann pl., Ehemänner, *husbands*; but Eheleute *married people*). Eltern *parents*, has no singular like *the parent* in English.

**c. Das Volk** *the people*, forms the plural Völker when it means *a nation*; as, die Völker Europas, *the nations of Europe*. Volk also means *the people, populations (of a city)*, especially when assembled in masses, but it becomes a contemptuous term, when applied to the inhabitants of a house, or to any small gathering. For such die Leute must be used; as, die Leute in diesem Hause, *the people in this house*; die Leute sagen, *people say*.

**d. Collectives in the singular**; as, das Volk *the people*, die Familie *the family*, der Ausschuss *the committee*, der Rath *the council*, cannot take the verb or the possessive pronoun in the plural; as, dieses Volk liebt seine Königin. *This people love their queen*; (not, dieses Volk lieben ihre Königin). Die Familie ist verreist. *The family are from home*.

**e. For nouns used in the plural only, see below**

4, and for English plurals used as singulars in German, see 5. p. 230 —.

3. *a.* Terms used in measuring, weighing, counting &c. when stating an actual amount, remain unaltered in the plural if they are of the masculine or neuter gender; (nor do they take the possessive of the name of the material, article &c., as expressed by *of* in English); as,

Dreißig Fuß (m.), sechs Zoll (m.) (30' 6") hoch thirty feet and six inches high; Drei Maß (n.) Milch, six quarts of milk; sechs Pfund (n.), vier Loth (n.) Zucker, six pounds, two ounces of sugar; drei Paar (n.) Strümpfe, three pairs of stockings; drei Duzend (n.) Teller, three dozen of plates; zwei Schuß (n.) drei Mandel (n.) Eier, two times sixty and three times fifteen eggs; drei Rieß (n.), neunzehn Buch (n.) zwanzig Bogen (m.) Papier, three reams, nineteen quires and twenty sheets of paper; 6000 Mann (m.) Fußvolf und 1500 Reiterei, 6000 infantry and 1500 cavalry; mit einer Mannschaft von 16 Mann, with a (ship's) crew of 16 hands; neun Stück (n.) Wild, nine heads of game. Observe: drei Gläser Wein, three glasses of wine.

*b.* All feminine terms of this kind, however, form the usual plural in *en*. These can be readily distinguished, as they alone end in *e*, except die Last *a burden of two tons*, Pl. Lasten, and die Mark *the mark (silver)*, Pl. unchanged, 50 Mark 50 marks (Klafter *fathom*, is sometimes neuter; but mostly feminine; Pl. Klastern).

Examples: zwei deutsche Meilen, two German miles, nearly  $4\frac{1}{2}$  English miles each); fünfzehn Ellen Leinwand, fifteen ells or 10 yards of linen; sechs Unzen, six ounces; zwei Drachmen, two drachms; zwei Flaschen Wein, two bottles of wine; zwei Tassen Kaffee, two cups of coffee; vier Tonnen und drei Kannen Bier, four barrels and three quarts of beer.

Note. After a fraction, the numerator of which is *ein*, *eine* *one*, and which in German is made to precede the term of weight, measure &c. the latter is always used in the singular; as, drei und eine halbe Elle, three ells and a half; sechs und eine viertel Meile. Six miles and a quarter. (See p. 138).

*c.* The names of coins are treated like the above terms; as, sechzehn Mark, acht Schilling hamburgisch, sixteen mark, eight Shillings hamb. (= £ 1 Sterl.); zwölf Dublonen, twelve doubloons; dreißig Zechinnen,

30 sequins; — of der Pfennig ( $\frac{1}{4}$  penny), the plural is commonly Pfennige.

d. All the terms given in this paragraph are used in the plural if no definite amount is stated; as, Wir verkaufen es nur in ganzen Pfunden (poundwise). We sell it only in whole pounds. Ich habe sie zu Duzenden gesehen (Duzendweise). I have seen them in dozens. Mit ein paar Thaler kann man nicht viel machen. With a few thalers one can't do much.

e. The terms of time, Jahrhundert *century*, Jahr *year*, Monat *month*, Woche *week*, Tag *day*, Stunde *hour*, Minute *minute*, Secunde *second*, form the ordinary plurals after a number preceding them, except after fractions, the numerator of which is ein, eine *one*, which are made to precede the term; as, drei und ein halbes Jahr, three years and a half; fünf und einen halben Monat, five months and a half; zwei und eine Viertelstunde, two hours and a quarter. (See p. 138, Notes 1, 2, 3, 4.)

4. Nouns used in the plural only, are less numerous than in English. The pupil may notice the following which have the Verb in the plural, except occasionally the church-feasts. Ostern *easter*, Pfingsten *pentecost*, and Weihnachten *Christmas*, consist each of two days observed by the Christian churches, and hence are *plurals*. In Compounds, they are singulars; as, der Ostertag *the easterday*, der Pfingstmorgen *the morning of pentecost*, der Weihnachtsabend *Christmas-eve*. These and other church-feasts are called Feiertage; as, der erste und zweite Feiertag, *the first and second day of the (church-) feast*; whilst days of festive occasions are Festtage; and Ferien means *holidays, vacations* (of the schools, courts &c.). A single day of the latter kind is called ein freier Tag, or ein Spieltag, *a playday*.

Farther, die Fasten *Lent*, and the following: die Alpen, Andes, Apenninen, Ardennen, Cordilleren, Karpaten,

Pyrenäen, Ebnennen, Sudeten and Vogesen. The singular *die Alp* occurs with adjectives; as, *die rauhe Alp*, *die fränkische Alp*, *die schwäbische Alp* for minor ranges, and also means an *alpine meadow, pasture*. *Briefschaften* letters, papers, *Geräthschaften* utensils, *Eltern* parents, *Geschwister* the children of a family, brothers and sisters, *Gebrüder* brothers joined in business, *Einkünfte* income, revenue, *Gefälle* duties, rates, *Kosten* expense, and *Unkosten* expenses, (one item of expense *eine Ausgabe*), *Gebühren* and *Sporteln* fees of office, fees of court, *Gliedmaßen* limbs, *Laren* lares, *Leute* (some) people, *Manen* manes, *Masern* or *Rötheln* measles, *Molken* wheys, *Penaten* penates, *Ränke* and *Umtriebe* cabal, *machination*, *Trümmer* ruins, *Zeitläufte* junctures, *Kriegsläufte* warlike times, *Träber* and *Trestern* husks.

5. From the above complete list of plurals, the pupil will perceive that a great many nouns used only as plurals in English must be used as singulars in German, or both in the singular and plural. Of the former kind are for inst. all the names of sciences ending in *ics*, such as *mathematics* *die Größenlehre* or *Mathematik*, *metaphysics* *die Metaphysik*, *politics* *die Politik*; and of the latter kind are many names of implements &c., consisting of two equal parts joined together, and hence generally used with a *pair of*, in English; as, spectacles *die Brille*, Pl. *die Brillen* several pairs of spectacles; nippers *die Kneifzange*, scissors *die Schere*, compasses *der Zirkel*, breeches *die Hose*, the colours *die Fahne*, &c.

---

## SECTION XX.

## THE VERB\*.

## CONJUGATION. — A. UNIVERSAL FORMS.

(These are the forms which are the same in all verbs).

a. The **infinitive** terminates in **en**, and the **root**, or better the **stem** is found by dropping this suffix; as, *lernen to learn*, **stem lern**. To the stem the inflectional terminations (see p. 236, B.) are added.

The infinitives in **eln** (often diminutive), and **ern** (frequentative) [see p. 38, e.] are contractions of **elen**, **eren**, and only **n** is to be dropped in order to find the portion of the verb to which the inflectional terminations must be added; as, *lächeln to smile*, for *lächelen*; *wimmern to whimper*, for *wimmern*; 2<sup>d</sup> pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. *lächelst*, *wimmerst*. When only **e** is to be added to verbs in **eln** and **ern**, the **e** preceding the **l** or **r** is **dropped**; as, *lächle*, *wimmre*.

There are derivatives in *ischen*, *igen* etc.; as, *berechtigen* to entitle, and verbs of foreign origin in *ieren* (*ieren*) (p. 39.); as, *musiciren to make music*. To these, the inflectional termination is added after dropping the **en** of the infinitive; as, *berechtigt*, *musicirt*.

When the Infinitive is used as a noun it is of the **neuter** Gender and takes only **s** in the Gen.; as, *das Singen*, singing, Gen. *des Singens*. Also stems are used and declined as nouns, see p. 158, 5.

b. The **present participle** is formed by adding **d** to the infinitive; as, *lernend learning*.

The present Participle is used and declined as an Adj., the forms of which it retains also when used as a noun.

c. The **past participle** (see S. XXI) takes the **prefix ge**; as, *gelernt learned*, unless the infinitive has

\*In treating of the verb, the author has deliberately set aside as confusing and not practical all theories not strictly bearing on the relation of the forms of the English verb to those of the German. The arrangement of the tenses, &c., and the rules with regard to their use, &c., whilst exhausting the subject, are therefore given in as close analogy to the English arrangement, as is compatible with their peculiarities.

already one of the unaccented inseparable prefixes **be**, **emp**, **ent**, **er**, **ge**, **ver**, **zer**, **hinter** and **wider**, or is used inseparably with one of the doubtful prefixes **durch**, **über**, **um**, **unter**, **voll** and **wieder**. See Note 2, below, as, *erlernen to acquire by learning*; past part. *erlernt acquired*; *verlernen to unlearn, to forget*, past part. *verlernt forgotten*. Hence **ge** is not always the sign of the Past Part.

Verbs of foreign origin in *iren* and *ieren* likewise form the past participle *without ge*; as, *musici'eren to make music*, p. part. *musici'ert*; *regie'eren to govern*, p. part. *regie'ert*; *spazie'eren to promenade*, p. part. *spazie'ert*.

d. In verbs with **separable prefixes**, the **ge** is placed between these and the verb; as, *aus'lernen to serve one's apprenticeship*, p. p. *aus'gelernt*; *dazu'lernen to learn in addition*, p. p. *dazu'gelernt*.

e. If the **infinitive** of the verb is used with **zu** to, this particle must likewise be placed between the separable prefix and the verb; as, *aus'zulernen to finish learning*, *dazu'zulernen to learn in addition*.

**Separable compound verbs and combinations of verbs**, the adverbial portion of which can be detached and placed at the end of the clause, are treated like verbs with separable prefixes; as, *theilnehmen, to take part*. *Ich nehme an dem Werke Theil, wie ich lange daran Theil genommen habe und immer Theil zu nehmen wünsche*. I take part in the work, as I have long taken part in it and as I always wish to do. *Zu Stande bringen, to accomplish*. *Sie brachten das schwierige Werk glücklich zu Stande*. They successfully accomplished the difficult task. *Sie hatten das Werk glücklich zu Stande gebracht*. They had successfully accomplished the task. *Man hofft das Werk glücklich zu Stande zu bringen*. They hope to accomplish the task successfully.

Such separable combinations often have a **meaning vastly different** from that which would result from a literal translation of the combining portions severally;

as, *zu Stande bringen*, not to *bring to a stand*, but to *accomplish*, and their signification must be carefully ascertained from the dictionary, in which it is generally given with either of the portions, (either with *Stand* or with *bringen*, &c.).

## DETAILS REGARDING THE PREFIXES.

(See Section IV, p. 27.)

1. (For the position of the separable prefixes, see Section XXX, D.) Besides the prepositions given p. 64, E, where the statement regarding the use of *her* and *hin* is of particular importance, the following adverbial particles are used as separable prefixes: — *ab* off, (disconnexion); *da* there, (*Dasein* existence); *dar*, (offer, display); *ein* (preposition in) in, into; *empor* up, upward; *fort* away, (also expressing *continuation*); *her* hither; *hin* thither, (passing away); *nieder* down; *ob* only in the verbs *obliegen* to apply one's self, *obstehen* to be pending, *obliegen* to triumph, *obwalten* to prevail, and in the past participle *obgedacht* above-mentioned; *weg* away; *wieder* again, (repetition, return); *zurück* back; *zusammen* together. *Auf* up, (opening), and *zu* (closing).

2. WORDS USED BOTH AS SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE PREFIXES are the following: *durch* *through*, *über* *over*, *across*, *um* *around*, *over again*, *down*, *unter* *under*, *down*, *voll* *full* and *wieder* *again*, *back*. The particulars with regard to these must be studied in p. 30, C. When these are used *figuratively* and hence *inseparably* and *unaccented*, the verb does not take the prefix *ge* in the past part., and when the particle *zu* is required, it is placed before the compound infinitive; as, *übertreten* *to transgress*, *to trespass*, p. part. *übertreten* *trespassed*, inf. *zu übertreten* *to trespass*. But when they are used in a *literal sense*, and hence *separably* and then *accented*, the prefix *ge*, as well as the particle *zu* are placed between the prefix and the verb; as, *übertreten* *to tread or go over*, p. part. *übergetreten*, inf. (with *zu*) *überzutreten*. (The author has observed that, as in the above example, the translation by words of Latin origin, as, *transgress*, is common with the inseparable forms having a figurative meaning, whilst those verbs in which the prefix is separable with a more literal or primitive meaning are generally rendered by Saxon words; as, *to tread or go over*; compare *unterhalten* *to maintain*, *to support*, with *unterhalten* *to hold under*).

3. (See p. 28, A). One *unaccented inseparable* prefix can never be combined with another. Yet an *unaccented inseparable* prefix is frequently met with *before* or *after* an *accented* prefix;



as, 1. **before** the accented prefix: beant'worten (be-ant'worten) to reply, überant'worten to deliver up, verant'worten to answer, befür'worten to support a request, bevor'worten to premise, beun'ruhigen to trouble, verun'einigen to separate, to disagree, to fall out, beur'theilen to criticise, verur'theilen to condemn, benach'theiligen to injure, bevor'theilen or übervor'theilen to defraud; or 2. **after** the accented prefix: an'befehlen (an-befehlen) to enjoin, an'empfehlen to recommend, an'erkennen to acknowledge, anvertrauen to entrust, aufbewahren to preserve, mit-empfinden to sympathize, auermählen to select, angehören to belong to, eingestehen to confess, zugestehen to grant, mißverstehen to misapprehend, wiedervergelten to retaliate.

Only in verbs of the latter kind the **separable** accented prefix can be detached; as, Er befahl den Truppen Schweigen an, *He enjoined silence upon the troops*; Ich gestehe Ihnen das zu, *I grant that to you*; — and the particle *zu* of the infinitive is inserted after the **separable** prefix; as, Es wurde nöthig, es strenger anzubefehlen. It became necessary to enjoin more strictly. Er weigert sich es mir zuzugestehen. He refuses to grant it to me.

The **PAST PARTICIPLE** of neither kind is formed with *ge*; as, beantwortet *p. part.* beantwortet; verunehren, *p. part.* verunehrt; or, mißverstehen, mißverstanden, zugestehen, zugestanden.

4. The following few verbs, with **accented inseparable** prefixes, take the prefix *ge* in the **past participle**: — antworten to reply, geantwortet replied; urtheilen to judge, geurtheilt judged; mißachten to despise, mißbilligen to disapprove, mißbrauchen to abuse, mißdeuten to misinterpret, mißhandeln to maltreat, mißtrauen to distrust; — as, gemißbilligt disapproved, gemißbraucht, abused, &c. In the past participle of misarten to degenerate, the *ge* is placed **after the prefix**. All other verbs with the prefix *miß* form the past participle **without** *ge*.

5. The following **inseparable compound verbs**, which have the accent on the **first** component, form the past participle by prefixing *ge*; as, handhaben, to handle; gehandhabt, handled. The particle *zu* in the infinitive precedes the whole Compound; as, zu frühstücken, to breakfast. These verbs being Derivatives, follow the **weak** conjugation; as, willfahren, willfahrte, gewillfahrt. (See Section XXI.)

abenteuer'n, { to lead an adventu-  
rous life.  
argwöhnen, to suspect.  
frühstücken, to breakfast.  
handhaben, to handle.  
hofmeister'n, to act the tutor.  
keelholen, to keelhaul.

langweilen, { to be *ennuyé*, to be  
tedious.  
liebäugeln, to look fondly on.  
lieblosen, to caress.  
lustwandeln, to walk for pleasure.  
nachtwandeln, to walk in the sleep.  
brandmarken, to stigmatize.

<i>brandschlagen</i> , to extort contributions.	<i>schulmeistern</i> , to teach a school.
<i>dolmetschen</i> , to act as interpreter.	<i>wallfahrten</i> , to go on a pilgrimage.
<i>radebrechen</i> , to murder a language.	<i>wegelegen</i> , to waylay.
<i>rathschlagen</i> , to deliberate.	<i>weisagen</i> , to prophesy.
<i>rechtfertigen</i> , to justify.	<i>wetteifern</i> , to emulate.
<i>schriftstellern</i> , to write for publication.	<i>willfahren</i> , to comply with.

6. As to the force of the inseparable prefixes, which are originally prepositions, the following may be observed: —

a. *be*, (*bei*) much like the English *be-* indicates the directing of an activity **upon**, or the extending of an influence or condition **all over**, and therefore makes the verb **transitive**. generally with the object in the accusative; as, *beschleßen* to bombard, *belachen* to laugh at, *bewundern* to wonder at, to admire, *belagern* to beleaguer, *bedrängen* to put to anxiety, *beschämen* to put to shame.

b. *ent*, generally like the English *e* (*ex*), indicates a passing forth from **within**, or taking out of, consequently, making independent, disconnecting; as, *entschuldigen* to excuse (from *die Schuld* *guilt*), *entfallen* to fall out of, *entfesseln* to unfetter, *entfallen* to unfold, *entfliehen* to flee from, *entspringen* to spring forth (a fountain), to escape (from a prison), *entbinden* to set free, to deliver, *entlassen* to dismiss, to let out of. Compare *beschuldigen* to accuse, *entschuldigen* to excuse, *bevölkern* to people, with *entvölkern* to depopulate; *bedecken* to cover, with *entdecken* to discover; — *ent* changes into *emp* in *empfinden* to feel, *empfangen* to receive, *empfehlen* to recommend.

c. *er*, (*ur*, *aus*) indicates developing from within, and a pervading thoroughly; as, *erbleichen* to grow pale, to change colour, *erröthen* to blush, *erblühen* to develop into flower, *erwachsen* to accrue, *erleuchten* to enlighten, to illuminate, *erglänzen* to shine forth, *erbeben*, *erzittern* to shake to quake, *erquiden* to pervade with freshness, to refresh; — therefore often merely the thoroughness of a process as **leading to the result**; as, *erforschen* to find out, to explore, *suchen* (to search) *erschöpfen* to exhaust, (*schöpfen*, to draw [water]) *erobern* to conquer, *erretten* to rescue, *erringen* to gain by a struggle, (*ringen*, to wrestle), *erlangen*, to obtain, (*langen*, to stretch out for), *erfrieren*, to freeze to death (*frieren* to feel cold), *ertrinken*, to be drowned (*trinken*, to drink), *ertränken*, to drown, (*tränken*, to make drink), *erschießen*, to shoot dead, (*schießen*, to shoot).

d. *ge* the same as the Latin *cum*, *col-*, *com-*, *con-*, *cor-* in the infinitive is intensifying and confirming, as in *gedeihen* to thrive, *gelingen* to reach, to accede, *gelingen* and *gerathen* to succeed, *gewinnen* to gain. In nouns *ge* denotes collectiveness, or gathering

into one body; as, *Gebirge*, a range of mountains (*Berg*, a mountain,) *Gemeinde*, community, *Gewebe*, tissue, *weben* to weave; *Gebäude*, a building, system, from *bauen* to build, *Gebiß*, set of teeth, *beißen*, to bite, *Gerippe* a skeleton, from *Rippe* a rib, *Gestirn*, a constellation, from *Stern* a star p. 34, 8.

*e. ver* (akin to the English *far* Latin *per*) has in the first place the force of *farther* before verbs derived from adjectives in the comparative degree; as, *verlängern* (from *lang*, *länger* longer) *to lengthen*, *vergrößern* (from *größer* larger) *to enlarge*, *verbessern* (from *besser* better) *to improve*, *verfeinern* *to refine*. — Hence, with verbs indicating a negative process, *ver* denotes its completion; as, *verbluten* to bleed to death, *verdammten* to condemn, *verzweifeln* to despair, (from *zweifeln* to doubt), *verrinnen* to elapse, *verschwinden* to vanish, (from *schwinden* to diminish), *verenden* to die. In the second place and **more commonly**, *ver* has the force of *too far*, indicating that the action of the verb is turned *beyond*, and *altogether away* from its proper object, and leads to a negative result; as, *verbringen* to squander, *vergehen* to trespass, *verleiten* to mislead, *vergeben* to give away, *versagen* to deny, *verwesen* to decay, to decompose, from the old *wesen* to be, to exist. In English *ver* is sometimes represented by *for* as, *forbear*, *vertragen* (now commonly *ertragen*); *forbid*, *verbieten*; *forfeit*, *verwirfen*; *forgive*, *vergeben*; *forget*, *vergeßen*; *forsake*, *verlassen*.

*f. zer* (Gothic *tis*) indicates **dissolution or destruction**; as, *zerrinnen*, *zerfließen* to melt away; *zersetzen* to decompose, *zerstreuen* to disperse, *zerbrechen* to break to pieces, *zerschlagen* to smash, *zerschmettern* to dash to pieces.

The preceding definitions are, of course, only of a general character, but with a sufficient insight into the language they will be found to hold good even in instances contradictory at first sight.

## B. INFLECTIONAL TERMINATIONS.

Only the Present, Imperfect, and Imperative of the active voice undergo inflection, the others being compound tenses, in which only the **Auxiliary** is inflected. (For the Imperative, see p. 40, 4.).

The first person singular, Present takes *e*; as, *Ich lern-e*. *I learn*. *Ich berechtig-e*. *I entitle*. Only a few auxiliary verbs (see Sect. XXIII and XXIV) form exceptions to this rule.

The second person *Sing.* invariably takes *st*; as, *Du lernst*. *Thou learnest*. *Du lernestst*. *Thou learnedst*.

The third person *Sing.* of the *Present Indicative* takes *t*, which thus corresponds to the English *s* in the 3<sup>d</sup> p. S. Pres. Ind.; as, *Er lern*t. *He learns.* *Es berech*-tig-t. *It entitles.* For exceptions, see auxiliary verbs, Section XXIII & XXIV and the List of strong verbs.

The first and third pers. *plural* invariably take *en* or *n*; as, *Wir lern*-en. *We learn.* *Sie lern*-en. *They learn.* *Wir lern*te-n. *We learned.* *Sie lern*te-n. *They learned.* The verb *sein* *to be*, is excepted, *Wir find*. *We are.* *Sie find*. *They are.*

The second pers. *Plur.* invariably takes *t*; as, *Ihr lern*-t. *You learn.* *Ihr lern*te-t. *You learned.*

An *e* before *ft* and *t* is regularly introduced in the *Conjunctive*; as, *Du lern*-e-ft, *That thou learnest.* *Ihr lern*-e-t, *That you learn.* *Du berich*tig-e-ft. *Ihr berech*-tig-e-t. The 3<sup>d</sup> pers. *Sing. Pres.* ends in *e*; as, *Er lern*e, *That he learns.*

The insertion of the *e* in the indicative takes place before the *ft*, if the stem ends in *f* or a similar consonant; as, *f*ch, *ff*, *ß*, *z* and *ß*, in order to make both the stem-consonant and the termination distinctly audible; as, *reis*-e-ft *travellest*, *fisch*-e-ft *fishest*, *reis*-e-ft *tearest*, *reiz*-e-ft *irritatest*, *sitz*-e-ft *sittest*. The *e* is also inserted after *b* and *t* ending the stem, not only before *ft*, but particularly before *t*; as, *bind*-e-ft *bindest*, *bitt*-e-ft *beggest*; *bind*-e-t *binds*, *bitt*-e-t *begs*.

The above rules are given chiefly to explain the terminations of conjugation in the tables and specimen.

---

## SECTION XXI.

STRONG OR ANCIENT, AND WEAK (MODERN)  
FORM OF CONJUGATION.

(The pupil is particularly referred to Sect. V. p. 32.; Leading Remarks, 1.) Specimens of both forms are given p. 241.

L. R. 1. About 180 primitive verbs, (*expressing the principal functions of life*), and their Compounds form the imperfect and past participle by changing the vowel of the root analogously to the English *begin, began, begun*. These radical verbs are given in the list p. 243 in which the few compounds, not conforming to the rule, (see p. 234, 5.) are also stated. The changing of the vowel renders it unnecessary to distinguish those tenses by a termination; (not *begin, beganned*) so that the past participle can be known as that of a strong verb from its ending in *en* like the infinitive; as *beginnen to begin, begonnen begun*.

The Imperfect, however, drops the *en*, as, *begann began*, because in many verbs the vowel is only changed once, so that the absence of *en* distinguishes the imperfect; as, *bewegen to induce, bewog, did induce, bewogen* P. P. *induced*.

(The *past participle*, moreover, is generally distinguished by the prefix *ge*; as, *binden to bind, band did bind, gebunden bound*, which *ge* does not occur in the above instances, as the infinitive has the unaccented prefix *be*. See p. 231 c.)

2. The weak verbs, on the other hand, which cannot change the vowel require the termination *te* in the imperfect and *t* in the past participle;

thus *lernen, lernte, gelernt*  
*to learn, learned, learned*.

Like the termination *ed* in English, where it is the remnant of the word *did*, the *te* and *t* are the remnant of the word *that* (*tat*) (*did*) formerly appended to the stem. Every verb, not contained at all, in the list of strong verbs or not being a compound of any such verb (see however, below, Note 1 and 2) has the weak conjugation.

When the stem ends in *b* or *t*, the termination *t* is preceded by an *e* to keep it audible; as, *blend-en* to blind, *blend-ete*, *geblend-e-t* (*blenden*, *blendete*, *geblendet*) *falt-en* to fold, *faltete*, *gefaltet*.

All derivative verbs and a number of radical verbs which have lost their ancient character are conjugated by the weak form.

**Note 1.** Ten verbs both change the vowel and take *te* and *t*; see p. 242. MIXED FORM.

**Note 2.** The auxiliary verbs of mood (Section XXIII) and the auxiliary verbs of tense (Section XXIV) deviate from the ordinary conjugation.

3. In the strong form the vowel changes not only in the Imperfect and past participle, but also in the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person singular present indicative in which *a*, *au* and *o* of the root are modified, whilst *e* short changes into *i*, and *e* long into *ie* (the root-vowel remaining unaltered in the plural as well as in the Present Subjunctive).

Hence the *Sing.* of the *Pres. Ind.* of strong verbs is thus conjugated.

#### *Singular.*

1 <sup>st</sup>	ich	fallē,	laufe,	stoße,	sehe	werfe.
2 <sup>d</sup>	du	fällst,	läufst,	stößest,	siehst,	wirfst.
3 <sup>d</sup>	er	fällt,	läuft,	stößt,	sieht,	wirft.

#### *Plural.*

1 <sup>st</sup>	wir	fallen,	laufen,	stoßen,	sehen,	werfen.
2 <sup>d</sup>	ihr	fallt,	lauft,	stößt,	seht,	werft.
3 <sup>d</sup>	sie	fallen,	laufen,	stoßen,	sehen,	werfen.

The **exceptions** to this rule are marked\* in the list p. 244 — where also some obsolete changes of **ie** into **eu** are given.

4. The imperative, speaking familiarly to one person coincides with the 1<sup>st</sup> person S. Pres.; as, *fall!* *fall!* *Laufe!* *run!* (Exception; *sei!* *be!*) In emphatic language the ending *e* is dropped (*fall!* *halt!* *lauf!*). Such strong verbs, however, as have the root-vowel **e** and change the same into **ie** or **i** in the Sing. Present; as above, *sehe*, *siehst*; *werfe*, *wirfst*; form this Imperative by dropping the **st** of the 2<sup>d</sup> pers. Hence: *Sieh!* see! *Wirf!* throw! exception *werde!* become!

In speaking to several persons familiarly the imperative coincides with the 2<sup>d</sup> pers. Pl. Pres. Ind.; as, *lauft!* run (ye)! *seht!* look (ye)! In the rest of the Persons the Imperative agrees with the **Conjunctive**; as, *lasse* *er!* let him fall! *Sehe* *er!* let him see! *Sehen* *wir!* let us see! *Sehen* *sie!* let them see!

In speaking conventionally to one or several persons, **Sie** you is used along with the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. Pl.; as, *laufen* *Sie!* run! *Sehen* *Sie!* see!

5. The imperfect **Conjunctive** (see p. 241) of strong verbs adds an **e** throughout to the Imperfect Indicative and also modifies the vowel (**a**, **o** or **u**) of the same, (*warf*, *würfe*); whilst in the weak verbs the Imperfect Indicative and **Conjunctive** are alike, (*lernte*, *lernte*). This tense is very important, as it is used very extensively for the **Conditional**, so that Becker actually calls it *the conditional*. (See Sect. XXXI).

6. Irregularities in the final consonants of the root are rendered prominent in the list beginning p. 244.

## SPECIMENS.

## STRONG FORM.

Analogy in English: *begin, began, begun.*

werfen *to throw*;  
(*werfend throwing*)  
warf *throw*; geworfen  
*thrown.*

## WEAK FORM.

Analogy in English: *learn, learned, learned.*

lernen *to learn*;  
(*lernend learning*);  
lernte, *learned*; gelernt  
*learned.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Indicative. Conjunctive.*

Sing. 1. ich werf-e	ich werf-e
2. du werf-st	du werf-est
3. er wirf-t	er werf-e
Plur. 1. wir werf-en	wir werf-en
2. ihr werf-t	ihr werf-et
3. sie werf-en	sie werf-en

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Indicative. Conjunctive.*

Sing. 1. ich lern-e	ich lern-e
2. du lern-st	du lern-est.
3. er lern-t	er lern-e
Plur. 1. wir lern-en	wir lern-en
2. ihr lern-t	ihr lern-et
3. sie lern-en	sie lern-en

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Indicative. Conjunctive.*

Sing. 1. ich warf	ich wärf-e
2. du warf-st	du wärf-est
3. er warf	er wärf-e
Plur. 1. wir warf-en	wir wärf-en
2. ihr warf-t	ihr wärf-et
3. sie warf-en	sie wärf-en

(CONDITIONAL.)  
ich würf-e &c.  
ich

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Indicative. Conjunctive.*

Sing. 1. ich lern-te	ich lern-te
2. du lern-test	du lern-test
3. er lern-te	er lern-te
Plur. 1. wir lern-ten	wir lern-ten
2. ihr lern-tet	ihr lern-tet
3. sie lern-ten	sie lern-ten

## IMPERATIVE.

Singular, wirf! Plural, werf-t!

## IMPERATIVE.

Singular, lern-e! Plural, lern-t!

A separate form for the conditional like *würf* above, occurs only in a few verbs of the strong form, and is marked in the list beside the imperfect.

The rest are compound-tenses and are simply formed as shown by the specimen *loben* given 276. For List of Strong Verbs see p. 244.



## SECTION XXII.

## MIXED FORM.

The ten verbs conjugated according to this form combine the change of vowel in the imperfect and past participle peculiar to the strong form, with the terminations of the weak, some of them changing also the final consonant of the root, as, bringen to bring, Imperf. brachte, P. P. gebracht brought; denken to think, Imperf. dachte, P. P. gedacht thought.

nennen, to call, to name; pres. part. nennend, calling; past. part. genannt called.

## SPECIMEN OF THE MIXED CONJUGATION.

PRESENT TENSE.				IMPERFECT TENSE.			
<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Conjunctive.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Conjunctive.</i>	
Sing.	1. ich nenne	ich nenne		Sing.	1. ich nannte	ich nennte	
	2. du nennst	du nennest			2. du nanntest	du nenntest	
	3. er nennt	er nenne			3. er nannte	er nennte	
Plur.	1. wir nennen	wir nennen		Plur.	1. wir nannten	wir nennten	
	2. ihr nennt	ihr nennet			2. ihr nanntet	ihr nenntet	
	3. sie nennen	sie nennen			3. sie nannten	sie nennten	

## IMPERATIVE

Singular, nenne!

Plural, nennt!.

## LIST OF VERBS CONJUGATED ACCORDING TO THE MIXED FORM.

(None of these verbs change the radical vowel in the present indicative.)

The vowel of the Imperfect Conjunctive is given in parentheses.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
To burn,	brennen	brannte (e)	gebrannt
" bring,	bringen	brachte (ä)	gebracht

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To think,	denken	dachte (ä)	gedacht
	(Derivatives of denken are the weak verbs dünken to fancy, dichten to compose poetry, and the impersonal mich dünkt it seems to me).		
„ know, with an objective	kennen	kannte (e)	gekannt
„ call to name	nennen	nannte (e)	genannt
„ run,	rennen	rannte (e)	gerannt
„ send,	senden	sandte (e)	gesandt
„ do, to act,	thun	that (ä)	gethan
„ turn,	wenden	wandte (e)	gewandt
„ know, (when construed with a clause)	wissen	wußte (ü)	gewußt

**Note 1.** *Senden* and *wenden* are often used according to the weak form: past part. *gesendet*, *gewendet*. — (*Gesandt*, *gewandt* rather adjectively). The *Imperf. Conj.* always *sendete*, *wendete*.

**Note 2.** *thun* (*rarely auxiliary*) has in the *Present Ind.* *ich thue*, *du thust*, *er thut*, *wir thun*, *ihr thut*, *sie thun*, *Imperf. Conj.* *thäte*.

**Note 3.** *wissen* has in the *Present Ind.* *ich weiß*, *du weißt*, *er weiß*, *wir wissen*, *ihr wißt*, *sie wissen*. *Pres. Conj.* *ich wisse*. *Imperf. Conj.* *ich wüßte* (*ich weiße*, *du weißest*, *er weißt*, &c. I white-wash).

**Note 4.** *kennen* and *wissen* correspond with the Latin *noscere* and *scire*; French *connaître* and *savoir*.

To refer the pupil to these, is, however, of little use as those Latin and French verbs are variously, and often imperfectly interpreted. The author is glad to be able to offer the following rule for the rendering in German of the English verb *to know*.

a. Use *kennen*, when *to know* is construed with an **objective** simply; as, *Ich kenne Sie*, I know you; *Kennen Sie ihn?* Do you know him? *Gott kennt die Empfindungen und Gedanken der Menschen*, God knows the feelings and thoughts of men. *Wer den Werth der Freundschaft kennt*, whoever knows the value of friendship. — *Kennst du diesen Stod?* do you know this stick.

b. Use *wissen*, when the Object of *to know* is expressed by a **sentence** (by a dependent clause) or by the pronouns *it*, *that*, *what*, &c. whenever they **imply** a sentence; as, *ich weiß*, *wer Sie sind*,

I know who you are. Ich weiß was für ein Mann Sie sind, I know what sort of a man you are. Wissen Sie, wer dieser Herr ist? Do you know, who this gentleman is? Ich weiß es nicht, I don't know it (*who he is*). Ich sah Ihre Schwester in Wien; „ich weiß das, sie hat es mir erzählt.“ I saw your sister at Vienna. 'I know *that* (*that you saw her*); she told me so'. Was wissen Sie davon? *What* do you know about it? (*tell me what you know about it*). Gott weiß, was wir empfinden und denken, God knows what we feel and think. Wer es weiß, was Freundschaft ist, — whoever knows what friendship is. —

In comparing the examples given with kennen and wissen, it will be seen that there is scarcely any difference in the *force* of these verbs, and that the usual interpretation, *connaître une personne; savoir une chose*; would be misleading in these and in similar cases.

3. With the nouns Name *name*, Straße, Wohnung, Haus, Weg, Ort, street, *dwelling-place, house, road, place* both kennen and wissen are used since to know a name, a street &c. may mean two things; viz. 1. to know (to be familiar with) a name, to know a street from its peculiarities, or 2. to know, **what is the name of a certain person and where a street &c. is situated**. In the latter case a *sentence* is implied on account of which wissen must be used. e. g. Kennen Sie einen solchen Namen? „Ich kenne viele englische Namen, aber diesen Namen kenne ich nicht.“ Do you know such a name? I know many English names (such as *Jones, Black, Smith, Brown*) but this name I do not know. *On the other hand*; ich kenne diesen Herrn, aber ich weiß seinen Namen nicht. I know this gentleman but I don't know his name (*how he is called*). Ich muß schon einmal hier gewesen sein, denn ich kenne diesen Weg, diesen Bach, diese Felsen, diese Bäume. I must have been here once before, for I know this road, this brook, these rocks, these trees. Dieser Mann will nach N. gehen, aber er weiß den Weg dahin nicht. This man wishes to go to N., but he does not know the road thither (*which road to go*). Der Dieb kannte das Haus genau, da er in demselben gedient hatte. The thief knew the house thoroughly as he had been a servant in it. Wissen Sie die Straße, das Haus? Do you know the street, the house? (in which *street, house* he lives).

#### ALPHABETICAL LIST TO SECT. XXI. OF THE STRONG OR RADICAL VERBS.

The alphabetical arrangement greatly facilitates reference to the many points of detail connected with these verbs, and it will also be found to ensure the necessary familiarity with their forms, if the pupil

will commit to memory a limited number of the verbs each lesson from an early stage of his studies.

For those who wish to adopt the seemingly easier course of learning the strong verbs according to their agreement in the vowels, the author has added to this alphabetical list another in which the Infinitives are divided into the usual classes and subdivisions see p. 252.

Explanations. 1. The weak verbs given in parentheses in this list are such as are apt to be confounded with forms of the strong verbs from which most of them are derived. The strong verb then has generally a **passive meaning**, whilst the weak verb has an active and causative force; compare *bleichen*, *erschrecken*, *liegen*, *sitzen* &c.

2. Of the verbs with inseparable prefixes contained in the list (such as *beginnen*, *empfehlen*, *erschrecken*, *gewinnen*, *verlieren*) no simple form exists, except *fehlen*, which is weak. The simple verbs, on the other hand, occur in numerous forms of composition conjugated by the strong form, except in the cases stated in parentheses, which may be referred to without requiring to be committed to memory.

3. Verbs, the tenses of which are given in bold type, show irregularities in the root-consonants.

4. Verbs marked with an *asterisk* do **not** alter the radical vowel in the second and third person Sing. **present** Indicative. Other changes in the Present are marked along with the Infinitive.

5. If there exists, besides the regular modified form of the Imperfect Conjunctive, a separate form for the Conditional, the vowel of the latter is given in parentheses along with the Imperfect.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To bake, (being baked)	<i>baden</i> (weak, <i>baden</i> , <i>badte</i> , <i>gebadt</i> ; to bake trans.)	<i>bat</i>	<i>gebaden</i>
„ command, to order	<i>befehlen</i> (weak, <i>fehlen</i> to be wanting, <i>verfehlen</i> to miss).	<i>befahl</i> (ö)	<i>beföh!</i>
„ apply oneself to,	( <i>sich</i> ) <i>befleissen</i>	<i>beftß</i>	<i>beftiffen</i>
„ begin,	<i>beginnen</i>	<i>begann</i> (ö)	<i>begonnen</i>
„ bite,	<i>beißen</i>	<i>biß</i>	<i>gebiffen</i>
„ conceal,	<i>bergen</i>	<i>borg</i>	<i>geborgen</i>
	(weak, <i>berbergen</i> or <i>beherbergen</i> to shelter, to harbour, to lodge: <i>der. from die Herberge</i> the inn, lodging).		

246 LIST OF STRONG VERBS TO SECT. XXI. *berſten*.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To burst,	*berſten	barſt or ɔ (ō)	geborſten
„ induce,	*bewegen (from <i>wiegen</i> ) (weak, deriv. <i>bewegen</i> (from <i>Weg</i> ) to move; also to affect).	bewog	bewogen
„ bend,	biegen (deriv. weak, <i>beugen</i> , to bend morally, bow down).	bog	gebogen
„ offer, to bid,	bieten, ( <i>beutſt beut obs.</i> )	bot	geboten
„ bind,	binden	band	gebunden
„ ask, to beg,	bitten (deriv. weak, <i>beten</i> to pray, to say prayers).	bat	gebeten
„ blow,	blaſen	blies	geblaſen
„ remain, to stay,	bleiben	blieb	geblieben
„ blanch, to fade,	bleichen (weak, <i>bleichen</i> to bleach, to make white).	bließ	gebleichen
„ roast, to fry,	braten, bräſt, briet brät (weak, <i>braten</i> ought to be used transitively, but is not usual).	briet	gebraten.
„ break,	brechen (deriv. weak, <i>radebrechen</i> to murder a lan- guage).	brach	gebrochen
„ hire, to	dingen ( <i>bung</i> ) dingte (weak, <i>bedingen</i> to condition, to qualify).		gedungen
„ thresh, to thrash,	dreſchen	draſch or ɔ	gedreſchen
„ penetrate, to press,	bringen (weak, <i>drängen</i> to throng, to urge).	brang	gedrungen
„ recommend, intro- duce,	empfehlen	empfohl (ō)	empfohlen
„ become extinguished	erlöſchen (erlöſcheſt, erlöſch erlöſcht) (weak, <i>löſchen</i> and <i>auflöſchen</i> to extinguish).		erlöſchen
„ get a fright,	erſchrecken (weak, <i>erſchrecken</i> to frighten <i>zusammen- ſchrecken</i> to shrink from fright, forms the past Part. <i>zusammengeschreckt</i> ).	erſchrak	erſchrocken
„ deliberate, consider,	erwägen	erwog	erwogen
„ eat,	eſſen, iſſeſt, iſt	aß	gegeſſen
„ go in a conveyance,	fahren (weak, <i>führen</i> to conduct, <i>willfahren</i> to comply, <i>wallfahren</i> to make a pilgrimage).	fuhr	gefahren
„ fall,	fallen (weak, <i>fällen</i> to fell).	fiel	gefallen
„ catch,	fangen	fang	gefangen
„ fight,	echten, ſichſtſt, ſicht, ſocht		geſochten

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To find,	finden	fand	gefunden
" twine, to braid, to plait	flechten, flechtst, nicht flogen	flocht flog	geflochten geflogen
" fly,	(fliegst, fliegt obs.)		
" flee,	fliehen, (fliehst, flieht obs.)	floh	geflohen
" flow	fließen (fließt obs.)	floss	geflossen
" to inquire, to ask	*fragen also fragst, fragt. This verb is more correctly weak.	frug	gefragt
" eat (said of beasts)	freßen, frisst	fraß	gefressen
" to freeze	frieren	fror	gefroren
" ferment	gähren (weak, gähren to be agitated, to ferment politically &c.).	gohr (ä)	gegohren
" bring forth	gebären, gebierst, gebiert	gebar	geboren
" give,	geben (gibst, gibt also giehst, giebt).	gab	gegeben
" thrive, to prosper,	gedeihen	gedieh	gediehen
" go, to walk, to pass,	*gehen (O. H. G. gangan).	ging gieng	gegangen
" succeed with,	gelingen	gelang	gelungen
" be of the value of, to pass for	gelten, giltst, gilt	galt (ö)	gegolten
" recover from illness,	*genesen	genas	genesen
" enjoy,	genießen	genoß	genossen
" happen, to be done	geschehen (geschicht obs.)	geschah	geschehen
" win, to gain.	gewinnen	gewann (ö)	gewonnen
" pour, to shed,	gießen, (geußest, geußt obs.)	goß	gegossen
" be like to,	gleichen	glich	geglichen
" glide,	gleiten (weak, begleiten, to accompany from leiten to lead).	glitt	geglitten
" glimmer, to smoulder,	glimmen	glomm	geglommen
" dig,	graben	grub	gegraben
" grasp, to touch,	greifen	griff	gegriffen
" hold, keep,	halten, hältst, hält	hielt	gehalten
" be suspended, to cling,	hängen (weak, hängen make hang).	hing hieng and hängen, to hang, to	gehangen
" hew, to strike,	*hauen	hieb	gehauen

248 LIST OF STRONG VERBS TO SECT. XXI. *heben.*

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To heave, to lift,	* <i>heben</i>	<i>hob (ü)</i> ( <i>hub an &amp;c. obs.</i> )	<i>-gehoben</i>
„ be called, to call, to bid,	<i>heißen</i>	<i>hieß</i>	<i>geheißen</i>
„ help, to aid, to avail,	<i>helfen</i>	<i>half (ü)</i>	<i>geholfen</i>
„ scold,	<i>teifen (better weak)</i>	<i>tiff</i>	<i>getiffen</i>
„ choose, to espouse.	( <i>er-</i> ) <i>tiefen</i> , ( <i>erfüren</i> )	<i>erfor</i>	<i>erfören</i>
„ climb,	<i>klimmen</i>	<i>klomm</i>	<i>geklimmen</i>
„ sound, to ring,	<i>klingen</i>	<i>klang</i>	<i>geklingen</i>
„ pinch, to nip,	<i>kneifen (kneipen)</i>	<i>kniff</i>	<i>gekneiffen</i>
„ to come, to reach,	* <i>kommen</i> ( <i>weak, bewillkommen, better bewillkommen to welcome from the Adj. willkommen</i> ).	<i>kam</i>	<i>gekommen</i>
„ shriek, to screech,	<i>kreischen</i>	<i>kriech</i>	<i>getrischen</i>
„ creep,	<i>kriechen</i> , ( <i>kreuchst, kreucht obs.</i> )	<i>tröch</i>	<i>getrochen</i>
„ load, to invite,	* <i>laden</i>	<i>lud</i>	<i>geladen</i>
„ let, to permit, to cause, to leave,	<i>lassen</i> ( <i>weak, veranlassen to occasion</i> ).	<i>ließ</i>	<i>gelassen</i>
„ run,	<i>laufen</i>	<i>lief</i>	<i>gelaufen</i>
„ suffer,	<i>leiden</i> ( <i>weak, bemitleiden to pity from das Mit-leid compassion; verleiden to mar, to make dislike</i> ).	<i>litt</i>	<i>gelitten</i>
„ lend, to borrow,	<i>leihen</i>	<i>lieh</i>	<i>geliehen</i>
„ read, to pick, to gather,	<i>lesen</i>	<i>las</i>	<i>gelesen</i>
„ lie, to rest upon,	<i>liegen</i> ( <i>weak, legen to lay, to make lie</i> ).	<i>lag</i>	<i>gelegen</i>
„ lie, to tell a falsehood,	<i>lügen</i>	<i>log</i>	<i>gelogen</i>
„ grind (corn &c.)	* <i>mahlen</i> ( <i>weak, malen to paint</i> ).	<i>mahlte</i>	<i>gemahlen</i>
„ avoid, to shun,	<i>meiden</i>	<i>mied</i>	<i>gemieden</i>
„ milk,	* <i>melken (also weak)</i>	<i>molk</i>	<i>gemolken</i>
„ measure,	<i>meßen</i>	<i>maß</i>	<i>gemessen</i>
„ take,	<i>nehmen</i> , <i>nimmst, nimmt</i>	<i>nahm</i>	<i>genommen</i>
„ whistle,	<i>pfeifen</i>	<i>pfiff</i>	<i>gepfiffen</i>
„ keep up, to tend, to hold (council &c.)	* <i>pfelegen</i> ( <i>weak, pflegen to use to, to nurse</i> ).	<i>pflog or a</i>	<i>gepflogen</i>
„ praise, to extol,	<i>preisen</i>	<i>pries</i>	<i>gepriesen</i>

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To spring forth, to well,	quellen	quoll	gequollen
„ revenge,	rächen (better weak)	roch	gerochen
„ advise, to counsel,	rathen (râth) (weak heirathen to marry).	rieth	gerathen
„ rub,	reiben	rieb	gerieben
„ tear,	reißen	riß	gerissen
„ ride (on horseback),	reiten	ritt	geritten
„ smell,	riechen	roch	gerochen
„ struggle, to wrestle,	ringen (weak, umringen (from Ring) to surround).	rang	gerungen
„ run (of fluids) to flow,	rinnen	rann	geronnen
„ cry out, to call	*rufen	rief	gerufen
„ drink (said of beasts),	saufen	soff	gesoffen
	(weak, er säufen to drown beasts).		
„ suck,	*säugen	sog	gesogen
	(weak, säugen to nurse, to suckle).		
„ create,	*schaffen	schuf	geschaffen
	Except erschaffen to create and umschaffen to remodel all compounds are formed of the weak verb schaffen, to busy oneself, to procure; as, besorgen, an- and herbeischaffen to procure, ab-schaffen to abolish fort- and weg-schaffen to remove and others denoting removing).		
„ sound, to resound	*schallen	scholl	geschollen
	(strong only in its Compounds).		
„ part, to separate,	scheiden	schied	geschieden
	gescheidt, discreet, sensible, clever).		
„ shine, to seem,	scheinen	schien	geschienen
„ scold, to chide,	schelten, schiltst, schilt	schalt	gescholten
	(Observe schälte Imperf. from schälen weak, to peel; also schalten [weak] to dispose).		
„ shear,	*scheren	schor	geschoren
	(weak, sich scheren to vex one's self, to be off, bescheren to give a gift).		
„ shove, to push,	schieben	schoß	geschoben
„ shoot,	schießen	schuß	geschossen
„ slay, to skin,	schinden,	schund	geschunden
„ sleep,	schlafen	schlieff	geschlafen
„ beat, to strike,	schlagen	schlug	geschlagen
	(weak, rathschlagen to counsel, to deliberate).		
„ tread softly, to steal, to sneak,	schleichen	schlich	geschlichen
„ sharpen, to polish,	schleifen	schliff	geschliffen
	(weak, schleifen (schleppen) to trail, to drag, to raze a fortress).		
„ slit (little used)	schleißen	schliß	geschliffen



## 250 LIST OF STRONG VERBS TO SECT. XXI. schließen.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To lock, to close, to con- clude	schließen (schließt obs.)	schloß	geschlossen
"wreath, to twine, to swallow,	schlingen	schlang	geschlungen
"fling,	schmeißen	schmiß	geschmissen
"melt, (being melted)	schmelzen (weak, schmelzen to melt, to make melt).	schmolz	geschmolzen
"snort, to blow,	*schnauben	schnob	geschnoben
"cut,	schnneiden	schnitt	geschnitten
"screw,	*schrauben (also weak)	schrob	geschroben
"write,	schreiben	schrieb	geschrieben
"cry aloud,	schreien	schrie	geschrien
"stride, to pace,	schreiten	schrift	geschritten
"fester,	schwären	schwor	geschworen
"be silent,	schweigen	schwie	geschwiegen
"rise, to swell,	schwellen (weak, schwellen to make swell, to expand).	scholl	geschwollen
"swim	schwimmen (weak schwemmen to wash away, to bathe horses).	schwamm	geschwommen
"vanish (being con- sumed),	schwinden (weak, verschwenden to squander, to waste).	schwand	geschwunden
"swing, to soar,	schwingen	schwang	geschwungen
"take an oath, to swear,	schwören	schwor or u (ü)	geschworen
"see,	sehen	sah	gesehen
"be, (to have),	sein (seyn, wesen obs.)	war	gewesen
"seethe, to boil ( <i>pass.</i> )	sieden (weak, sieden to make boil, to cook; also to be boiling).	kochte	gekocht
"sing,	singen	sang	gesungen
"sink, to settle down- ward,	sinken (weak, senken to sink, to make sink, to lower).	sank	gesunken
"meditate, to muse,	sinnen	sann	gesonnen
"sit (being seated),	sitzen (weak, setzen to seat, to make sit, to put).	sass	gesessen
"split, to slit ( <i>pass.</i> )	*spalten (also weak)	spaltete	gespalten
"spit, to spew,	speien	sprö	gespien
"spin,	spinnen	spinn (ö)	gesponnen
"split, to slit,	spleißen	spließ	gesplissen
"speak,	sprechen	sprach	gesprochen
"sprout,	sprossen	sproß	gesprossen
"spring, to crack,	springen (weak, sprengen to blast, to gallop).	sprang	gesprungen

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To sting, to stab,	ſtechen (weak, ſtecken to fix, to put into).	ſtach	geſtochen
" stand,	*ſtehen( <i>Goth. standan</i> )	ſtand (ü)	geſtanden
" steal,	ſtehlen	ſtahl (ö)	geſtohlen
" step (up or down), to climb, to rise,	ſteigen	ſtieg	geſtiegen
" die,	ſterben	ſtarb (ü)	geſtorben
" fly about in atoms,	ſtieben	ſtob	geſtoben
" smell badly, to stink,	ſtinken	ſtank	geſtunken
" toss, to push, to knock against,	ſtoßen	ſtieß	geſtoßen
" stroke, to paint,	ſtreichen	ſtrich	geſtrichen
" contest, to dispute,	ſtreiten	ſtritt	geſtritten
" do (see p. 243),	*thun	that	gethan
" bear, to carry, to wear,	tragen (weak, beantragen to petition for, beauf- tragen to commission.)	trug	getragen
" hit, to meet with, to happen,	treffen	traf	getroffen
" drive, to push, to study,	treiben	trieb	getrieben
" tread, to step,	treten, trittſt, tritt	trat	getreten
" drip, to run,	triefen (träuſtſt, träuſtſt obs.)	troff	getroffen
" drink,	trinken (weak, tränken to give to drink, to water).	trank	getrunken
" deceive,	trügen	trug	getrogen
" spoil, (being spoiled, to rot),	verderben * (weak, verderben to spoil <i>trans.</i> , to corrupt, to vitiate P. P. <i>sometimes</i> verderben).	verdarb (ü)	verdorben
" vex, to annoy,	verdrießen (verdreußtſt obs.)	verdroß	verdroffen
" forget,	vergessen	vergaß	vergeſſen
" lose,	verlieren	verlor	verloren
	verlöſchen see erlöſchen.		
(to wax), to grow, to in- crease,	wachſen	wuchs	gewachſen
" wash,	waſchen	waſch	gewaſchen
" weave, to make a tissue.	*weben (weak, weben to weave, to move, gewebet Zeug woven cloth).	wob	gewoben
" yield, to waver,	weichen (weak, weichen to soften, to soak, to steep).	wich	gewichen
" shew, to direct,	weiſen	wies	gewieſen

## 252 TO SECT. XXI. STRONG VERBS CLASSIFIED.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
To sue, to seek, to enlist,	werben	warb (ü)	geworben
„ become, to grow, to turn,	werden	(ward <i>Sing.</i> ); wurde	geworden
„ throw, to fling,	werfen	warf (ü)	geworfen
„ weigh, to have a weight,	wiegen (weak, wägen to weigh, to ponder. (wiegen to rock, to cradle).	wog gewogen	gewogen
„ wind, to writhe,	winden	wand	gewunden
„ accuse of, to blame with,	zählen	zähl	gezählt
„ draw, to rear, to move,	ziehen	zog	gezogen
to pass, to migrate,			
„ force, to compel,	zwingen (weak, zwingen to force, to press, to constrain).	zwang gezwungen	gezwungen

### THE STRONG VERBS CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THE VOWELS.

By referring to the preceding alphabetical list, the pupil will be enabled to write out a complete table of the verbs, which may serve the purpose of an exercise in revision.

#### *First Class.*

a. binden, bingen, bringen, finden, gelingen, klingen, ringen, schinden, schlingen, schwinden, schwingen, singen, sinken, springen, stinken, trinken, winden, zwingen.

b. befehlen, beginnen, bergen, bersten, brechen, empfehlen, erschrecken, gebären, gelten, gewinnen, helfen, kommen, nehmen, rinnen, schelten, schwimmen, sinnen, spinnen, sprechen, stehen, stehlen, sterben, treffen, verderben, werden, werden, werfen.

c. bewegen, biegen, bieten, brechen, ertiefen, ertüben, erschallen, fächeln, fächeln, fliegen, fliehen, fließen, frieren, gähnen, genießen, gießen, glimmen, heben, klimmen, kriechen, erlöschten, verlöschen, lügen, melken, pflegen, quellen, rächen, riechen, saufen, saugen, schallen, scheren, schieben, schießen

schließen, schmelzen, schnauben, schrauben, schwären, schwellen, schwören, siedeln, sprießen, stieben, triefen, trügen, verdrießen, verlieren, verschallen, weben, wiegen, wägen, erwägen, ziehen.

d. bitten, essen, fressen, geben, genesen, geschehen, legen, liegen, messen, sehen, sein or wesen, sitzen, treten, vergessen.

### *Second Class.*

a. (sich) befehlen, befehlen, bleichen, gleichen, gleiten, greifen, heilen, kneifen, kreischen, leiden, pfeifen, reifen, reiten, schleichen, schleifen, schleissen, schmeissen, schneiden, schreiten, spleissen, streichen, streiten, weichen.

b. bleiben, gedeihen, leihen, meiden, preisen, reiben, scheiden, scheinen, schreiben, schreien, schweigen, speien, steigen, treiben, weissen, zeihen.

### *Third Class.*

a. blasen, braten, fallen, fangen, gehen, halten, hangen, hauen, heißen, lassen, laufen, rathen, rufen, schlafen, spalten, stoßen.

b. baden, fahren, fragen, graben, laden, mahlen, schaffen, schlagen, stehen, tragen, wachsen, waschen.

## SECTION XXIII.

### AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

(Instead of speaking of a "*Potential Mood*" German Grammar simply treats the verbs *can*, *may*, *dare*, *must* &c. as verbs auxiliary to an Infinitive and as denoting the mode of action.)

There are six auxiliary verbs of mood, which require the infinitive of the principal verb without *zu* (*to*) and have a conjugation peculiar to themselves,

(see p. 259). Also the verb *lassen* to *let*, to *cause* (see below 7) and a few other verbs are used in the capacity of auxiliary verbs of mood.

As to their logical force, the first three of these verbs may be said to express **POSSIBILITY**, *viz.*

- a. können (*can*), possibility simply (absolute).
- b. mögen (to *like* to) possibility, as determined by the **subject**, often implying the **consent of the speaker** (subjective).
- c. dürfen (*dare*), possibility, as determined by **some other person** or by **law** (objective).

The other three express **NECESSITY**.

- a. müssen (*must*), necessity simply (absolute).
- b. wollen (*will, wish*), necessity, as determined by the **subject** (subjective).
- c. sollen (*shall*), necessity, as determined by **some other person**, or by **law** (objective).

(The leading meaning of each verb is given in bold type, its **idiomatical** application in small print).

1. können to be able to, to know how to, to know (a language, a lesson); e. g. Er kann lesen, He can, (knows how to) read, Sie kann Deutsch, She knows German. Kannst du die Regeln? Do you know (to say) the rules?

können does not merely express ability or power, but also *liberty and possibility*: Sie können es thun, You may do it. Er kann gehen, He may go. Das kann sein, That may be. Du kannst fallen, you may fall. (*I could not but* &c.; see müssen).

If können or any of the other verbs has for its main verb *gehen* to go or *reisen* to travel this main verb is generally omitted; as, wohin wollen Sie? where do you wish to go? Ich muß nach Leipzig (reisen) und Sie sollen mit (gehen), I must go to Leipzig and you shall go with me. Ich kann jetzt nicht nach Leipzig (gehen), I can't go to Leipzig now. Mögen Sie nicht dahin? do you not like to go there? Nein ich darf nicht nach Leipzig (gehen), I may not go to Leipzig (Compare the Scottish saying: "Who will to Cupar maun to Cupar").

2. **mögen to like to**, to be likely to; e. g. Ich mag nicht mehr trinken, *I don't like to drink any more.* Er mag zu Hause sein, (often: Er wird zu Hause sein). *He is likely to be at home, he is probably at home.* In the sense of *to like to*, mögen, is chiefly used in **negative phrases**; as, Ich mag nicht spielen, *I don't like to play.* Affirmatively it generally stands with the **Infinitive understood**; as, Mögen Sie Fische? (essen), *Do you like (to eat) fish?* Ich mag ihn gern; (sehen, sprechen), *I like (to see, to speak with) him.* (The Adverb **gern**, along with the verb of the clause, expresses *being fond of*, or *liking*; as, Ich esse gern Kirschchen, *I am fond of cherries.*)

a. mögen also expresses **ACQUIESCENCE**; as, Du magst ausgehen, *You may go out.* Mag es sein, *Let it be*; Often with the idea of indifference: Er mag thun, was er will, *He may do as he pleases*; or contempt; Mögen Sie flatschen, *Let them gossip.* Mag er doch, *Let him!* And even menace: Er möge sich hüten, mich zu reizen, *Let him take care not to provoke me.*

b. Phrases like the following imply **LIKING**, similar to the English 'May it please your Grace'; Möchten Sie so gut sein, *Would you be so good!* Ich bat ihn, er möchte kommen. *I asked him (to be so good as) to come.* Möchte es nun sein (likelihood), daß er abgehalten worden war, oder daß er nicht kommen möchte, — Whether it was that he was detained, or that he did not like to come.

3. **dürfen to be permitted to**, to be at liberty to; Darf ich kommen? *May I come?* Du darfst ihm Alles sagen, *You may tell him all.* The English: *I (Thou &c.) must not* — is often rendered by nicht dürfen; as, Es darf nicht angerührt werden, *It must not be touched.* Kinder dürfen nicht Alles hören, *Children must not hear everything.* Wir durften Das nicht wagen, *We durst not venture that.*

dürfen used in connexion with the negative adverbs **nur only**, **kaum scarcely**, nicht **not**, occurs with the force of the verb **brauchen to need**, which is construed with the Infinitive **with zu**. Thus, instead of: Sie brauchen nur zu klingeln! It is often said: Sie dürfen nur klingeln, *You need only ring.* Du darfst es kaum erwähnen, *You scarcely need to mention it.* Sie dürfen sich nicht so anstrengen,

*You need not exert yourself so much. That is: You are at liberty to exert yourself less.*

Note. Compare the conditionals *es könnte regnen, it might rain.* (It is simply possible). *Es möchte regnen, it might rain.* (It is likely). *Es dürfte regnen, it might rain,* (which is a rather positive assertion expressed with deference).

4. **müssen must**, expresses necessity: to be obliged to, to be compelled to, (to have to, to require to); as, *ich muß arbeiten, I must work. Ich mußte arbeiten, I had to work. Dazu muß man ein Mikroskop haben, For this one requires to have a microscope.*

Notice: *Ich mußte lachen, I could not but laugh, I could not help laughing.*

a. **müssen** is, as in English, used with an apparent or inferred necessity; as, *Er muß reich sein, He must be rich. Das muß unangenehm sein. That must be disagreeable. Es mußte sein, daß &c., Unless &c.*

b. **müssen** occurs in elliptical phrases; as, *Ich muß fort, (gehen) I must go away, (leave)! Es muß heraus (gesagt werden)! It must be said! It must be confessed! Er muß auf's Land (gehen) He must go to the country!*

c. **Must not** is rendered by *nicht dürfen* (see above 3), the German *nicht müssen* (having the force of **not to be compelled to** especially in the 1<sup>st</sup> person; as, *Ich muß nicht gehen, I am not compelled to go. Wir müssen nicht dienen, wir thun es freiwillig. We are not forced to serve, we do it voluntarily.*

(To 5. **wollen**, 6. **sollen**,) the verbs **wollen** (Lat. *velle*; Fr. *vouloir*) and **sollen** (Lat. *debere*; Fr. *devoir*) do not denote mere futurity; this is expressed by the auxiliary verb of tense **werden** (See p. 270, 2 a).

5. **wollen to be willing to, to be going to, to wish, to be inclined to, to want to, to intend to, to mean to**, e. g. *ich will kommen, aber ich werde nicht dürfen, I wish to come (I have the will to come), but I shall not be permitted. Wir wollen nicht hingehen, aber wir werden es müssen. We are not inclined to go there, but we*

shall be forced to do so. Wann willst du abreisen?  
When do you intend to start? Ich wollte eben schreiben.  
I was just going to write. Was wollen Sie damit sagen?  
What do you mean (to say) by that?

a. *wollen*, is used elliptically as in: Wohin wollen Sie (gehen, reisen)? Where are you going to? Whither bound? Ich will nach Berlin, I am going to Berlin. Was will er damit? What is he going to do with it? Was willst du dort? What do you wish to do there?

b. *wollen* sometimes occurs in the sense of **alleging**; as, Er will es gefunden haben, He alleges (means to say), that he has found it. Er will in London gewesen sein, He will have people believe, that he has been in London. Er wollte ihn erst gar nicht kennen, He at first pretended not to know him at all.

c. *wollen* expresses **ability**; as, Wie wollen Sie das heut' noch vollenden? How can you accomplish that to-day yet? Wer will das ergründen? Who can fathom that?

Note 2. A distinction must be made between this **auxiliary** verb of mood and the verb **absolute** *wollen* to *will*, as used in sentences like: Gott will es, *God wills it*. Der Herr hat es gewollt, *The Lord has willed it*. Du wolltest es so, *It was your own will*. Used absolutely *wollen* often means *to want, to wish*, (see Sect. XXV. C.), *to like, may*; as, Gott will, daß wir frei seien, God wants us to be free. Wir wollen, daß unsere Kinder gut werden, We wish our children to become good. Thu', was du willst, Do what you like. Sei dem wie ihm wolle, Be that as it may. Komme was will! Come what may.

6. *sollen* expresses **duty**; to be bidden to; as, Du sollst nicht falsch Zeugniß reden, Thou shalt not bear false witness. Die Gesellschaft sollte die Kunst fördern, Society should (ought to) promote art. Wer soll das thun? Who is (bidden) to do that? Ihr sollt jetzt in die Schule gehen, You are to go to school now. Die Brücke soll in einem Jahre fertig werden, The bridge is to be finished in a year.

a. *sollen* is often used with an appointment or destination; as Die Kirche soll reparirt werden, The church is to be repaired. Er soll nach Paris gehen, He is to go to Paris.



b. Elliptically: Er soll aus dem Hause, He is to leave the house. Sage mir, was soll ich, Tell me what I have to do. Wo soll das hinaus? Where is that to end? Was soll ich damit? What am I to do with that? also: Was soll mir das? (understood nützen, helfen), Of what use is that to me? Was sollen diese Thränen? What is the meaning (the use) of these tears? Was soll das? *for*: Was soll das heißen? What is the meaning of that.

c. sollen is used in indefinite statements with the force of *people say*, — *it is reported*; as, Er soll ein reicher Mann sein, He is said to be a rich man. Sie soll sehr liebenswürdig sein, People say she is very amiable. Der Feind soll sich zurückziehen, The enemy is reported to be retreating.

7. The verb *lassen* *to let* and the following verbs, are used in the capacity of auxiliary verbs of Mood; and are then in the compound tenses both *conjugated and construed* like these, as stated p. 260, they are:

*fühlen* to feel, *hören* to hear, *sehen* to see, *heißen* to bid, *helfen* to help, *lehren* to teach, *lernen* to learn, *machen* to make. *Examples*: Ich habe ihn kommen sehen or hören, I have seen or heard him coming. Ich habe ihn achten lernen, I have learned to esteem him.

a. *lassen* *to let, to leave, to cause to, to order to, to allow to, to permit to, to suffer to, to make, to get or have* (something done, sent, &c.), the most important of the above verbs, is always construed with the main Infinitive in the *Active voice*; as, Laß es bringen, where in English the *Passive voice* is used, *Let it be brought. Cause, order, suffer, &c. it to be brought.* *Heißen, hören and sehen* can likewise be construed with the main verb in the *infinitive Active*. Ich sah ihn fort-führen I saw him being led away; Ich hörte ihn Georg nennen I had him called George. The reason for this construction is given p. 286, a.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXIL. VERBS OF MOOD.

The tenses, of which only the first person is given, are conjugated regularly:

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

INFINITIVE.	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	ich	du	er, sie, es	wir	ihr	sie
können	kann	kannst	kann	können	könnt	können
mögen	mag	magst	mag	mögen	mögt	mögen
dürfen	darf	darfst	darf	dürfen	dürft	dürfen
müssen	muß	mußt	muß	müssen	müßt	müssen
wollen	will	willst	will	wollen	wollt	wollen
sollen	soll	sollst	soll	sollen	sollt	sollen

## PRESENT CONJUNCTIVE, \*

(retains the vowel of the Infinitive, and has *e* throughout, as, *ich könne*, *du könntest*, *er könne*, *wir können*, *ihr könntet*, *sie können*).

<i>ich könne</i>	<i>ich möge</i>	<i>ich dürfe</i>	<i>ich müsse</i>	<i>ich wolle</i>	<i>ich sollte</i>
that I can	that I may	that I am	that I am	that I want	that I shall
or may,	or might.	or was per-	or was ob-	to or would.	or should.
might or		mitted to.	liged to.		
was able,					
that I may					
be able.					

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

(The vowel is not modified).

<i>ich konnte</i>	<i>ich möchte</i>	<i>ich dürfte</i>	<i>ich mußte</i>	<i>ich wollte</i>	<i>ich sollte</i>
I could,	I liked to.	I durst,	I was obli-	I intended	I was (bid-
was able.		was per-	ged to, <i>had</i> to.	den) to.	
		mitted to.	<i>to.</i>		

## IMPERFECT CONJUNCTIVE, GENERALLY USED AS CONDITIONAL. †

(Formed by modifying the vowel of the Imperfect Indicative, except in *wollte* and *sollte*).

<i>ich könnte</i>	<i>ich möchte</i>	<i>ich dürfte</i>	<i>ich müßte</i>	<i>ich wollte</i>	<i>ich sollte</i>
I could, I	I might, I	I were per-	I should be	I would, I	I should, I
should be	should, or	mitted to.	compelled	should or	ought to.
able. I	would like	I might.	to, I would	would be	
might.	<i>to.</i>		have to.	inclined to.	

Only *wollen* has an imperative: *wolle!* pl. *wollt!* The compound tenses are formed as stated p. p. 260, 261).

\* See on the use of the Conjunctive. Sect. XXXI.

† See on the use of the Conditional. Sect. XXXI.

**Present Participles** of these verbs occur only in the adjective compounds *vermögend, influential, wealthy; bedürftend, requiring, in need of; wohlwollend, wellwishing; mißwollend* and *übelwollend, malevolent* and in the abstract noun *der Wollende, the one that wills.*

English Present Participles; *being able to, liking to, being permitted to, compelled to etc.*; must be rendered by finite tenses in a complete clause because they are stating a **reason**, which in German can never be done by a participial clause. Hence for "*I, being able to etc.*;" say: "*As I (am) was able to etc.*;" etc. etc. Most Grammars mislead the Pupils by overlooking this fact.

The **Past Participles** of the auxiliary verbs of mood are not formed in the usual way with the prefix *ge* (not *gekonnt* etc.) but the Infinitives serve also as past participles; as, *ich habe können* I have *been* able to:

The same is the case with the verb *lassen* and the other verbs given p. 258, 7. when used as auxiliary verbs of mood.

Only when used **absolutely**, and in a few instances only, the forms *gekonnt, gemacht* and *gewollt*, occur; as, *daß habe ich nie gekonnt*, I never was able to do that. *Er hat es nicht gemocht*, he didn't like (relish) it. *Gott hat es gewollt*, God has willed it. *Gedurft, gemußt, gefolgt* are never used.

#### ACCORDINGLY COMPOUND TENSES, ARE FORMED AS FOLLOWS.

(The Perfect Generally with the force of the English Past).

1. *Ich habe (kommen) können.* I was (have been) able (to come).

2. *Ich habe nicht (kommen) mögen.* I did not like (to come).

3. *Ich habe (kommen) dürfen.* I was (have been) permitted (to come).

4. *Ich habe (kommen) müssen.* I was (have been) compelled (to come).

5. *Ich habe (kommen) wollen.* I was (have been) inclined (to come).

6. *Ich habe (kommen) sollen.* I was (to come).

## PLUPERFECT

(used as in English).

Ich hätte (kommen) können &c. &c. I had been able &c. &c. (to come.)

Particular attention should be paid to the application of the PLUPERFECT CONJUNCTIVE (chiefly used as *Conditional Past*, see Sect. XXXI the Conditional, 2 d).

1. Ich hätte können *I might have*, that is: *I would have been able*.

2. Ich hätte mögen. *I should have liked to*, *I would fain have*.

3. Ich hätte dürfen. *I might have*, that is: *I would have been permitted*.

4. Ich hätte müssen. *I would have been compelled to*, (*I ought to have*).

5. Ich hätte wollen. (Used in quotations.) *that I had intended*.

6. Ich hätte sollen. *I ought to have*, that is: *It would have been my duty to*.

The Future tenses are formed as in other verbs of the Infinitive Present and Past construed with the Present of the auxiliary verb of tense *werden* (See p. 270, 2, a); as,

## FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde (kommen) können &c. &c. I shall be able &c. &c. (to come).

## SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde haben (kommen) können &c. &c. I shall have been able &c. &c. (to come).

Note. In the RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES XXX, A. 5. a and b the peculiar arrangement of the various parts of the compound tenses of auxiliary verbs of mood is fully explained.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

On the auxiliary verbs of mood.

(The figures, 1 to 7, refer to this Section.)

## Ein ärztlicher Besuch. The Doctor's visit.

Bitte!<sup>1</sup> können Sie mir sagen wo hier ein Arzt<sup>2</sup> wohnt?<sup>3</sup> — Ich bedaure.<sup>4</sup> Ich kann es Ihnen nicht sagen. Ich bin selbst<sup>5</sup> ein Fremder<sup>6</sup>. Wollen Sie nicht den Nachtwächter<sup>7</sup> fragen (st.)? Der wird es Ihnen sagen können. Aber man kann diese Leute<sup>8</sup> nie finden wenn man sie braucht<sup>9</sup>. Dieser Herr möchte es Ihnen sagen. Darf (3)<sup>10</sup> ich Sie bitten (st.) mir die Wohnung<sup>10</sup> eines Arztes zu bezeichnen<sup>11</sup>. Der Medizinalrath<sup>12</sup> Heim muß in dieser Straße wohnen. Er soll (6) der beste Arzt hier in der Nähe sein. Da kommt ein Herr; fragen Sie ihn! Verzeihen<sup>13</sup> Sie! Ich suche die Wohnung des Medizinalraths Heim. Der bin ich selbst. Das ist ja ein großes Glück<sup>14</sup>. Möchten (2) Sie die Güte<sup>15</sup> haben Sich nach meiner Wohnung zu bemühen<sup>16</sup>. Ein Reisegefährte<sup>17</sup> ist plötzlich<sup>18</sup> heftig<sup>19</sup> erkrankt<sup>20</sup>. Wollen Sie gefälligt<sup>21</sup> einen Augenblick<sup>22</sup> hier warten<sup>23</sup>. Ich bin gerade<sup>24</sup> <sup>25</sup> vor meiner Thür<sup>26</sup> und muß dem Diener<sup>27</sup> sagen daß er mich erwarten (to await) soll. Jetzt steh ich zu Ihren Diensten<sup>28</sup>. Möchten Sie sich diese Treppe hinauf<sup>29</sup> bemühen. Hier ist mein Freund. Es muß etwas Außerordentliches<sup>30</sup> sein. Ich mußte ihn zu Bett bringen<sup>31</sup> und konnte ihn kaum<sup>32</sup> auskleiden<sup>33</sup>. Es muß ein Schlaganfall<sup>34</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Pray! <sup>2</sup>physician, <sup>3</sup>to dwell, <sup>4</sup>to be sorry, to regret, <sup>5</sup>myself, <sup>6</sup>stranger, <sup>7</sup>night-watchman, <sup>8</sup>persons, people, <sup>9</sup>to require, <sup>10</sup>dwelling, house, <sup>11</sup>to point out. <sup>12</sup>a title given to superior physicians, <sup>13</sup>I beg your pardon, <sup>14</sup>very fortunate, <sup>15</sup>kindness, <sup>16</sup>to trouble, <sup>17</sup>travelling-companion, <sup>18</sup>suddenly, <sup>19</sup>violently, severely, <sup>20</sup>to fall ill, <sup>21</sup>please literally *most obligingly*, see absolute Superlative p. 125, 1, <sup>22</sup>moment, <sup>23</sup>to wait, <sup>24</sup><sup>25</sup>exactly; say here: I happen to be, <sup>26</sup>door, <sup>27</sup>servant, footman, <sup>28</sup>m. service, <sup>29</sup>up this stair, <sup>30</sup>extraordinary p. 87, 2, <sup>31</sup>to put to bed, <sup>32</sup>hardly, <sup>33</sup>to undress, <sup>34</sup>fit of apoplexy,

sein. Wir wollen sehen. Wo fehlt<sup>35</sup> es Ihnen? Willst Du dem Herrn Doctor nicht antworten<sup>36</sup>? Wollen Sie das Licht ein wenig näher<sup>37</sup> bringen. Sie dürfen (3) sich wegen des Patienten<sup>38</sup> nicht ängstigen<sup>39</sup>. Er muß Etwas Nachtheiliges<sup>40</sup> genossen (st.)<sup>41</sup> haben. Ich will ihm ein Brechmittel<sup>42</sup> geben und er soll sich im Bette halten(st). bis ich ihn Morgen<sup>43</sup> wieder<sup>44</sup> sehe. Ich mag (2) keine Arznei (medicine). Niemand (p. 73, s.) mag sie; aber schon Mancher (p. 84.) hat sie schon nehmen müssen. Wenn Sie sie nicht nehmen wollen, werden Sie kränker werden und nicht fort (1. p. 254, away) können. Wir wollten (5) Morgen nach Berlin. Ich müßte mich irren<sup>45</sup> wenn er Morgen Mittag<sup>46</sup> schon wieder wohl<sup>47</sup> wäre. Ich hätte das Zimmer wohl<sup>48</sup> heizen<sup>49</sup> lassen sollen. (foot of p. 260). Sie hätten es thun können wenn Sie hätten aufbleiben<sup>50</sup> müssen. Sonst<sup>51</sup> ist es besser ihn kühl<sup>52</sup> zu halten. Wollen Sie mich rufen (st.) lassen (7) wenn Etwas vorfällt (st.)<sup>53</sup>. Ich hoffe<sup>54</sup> ich werde Sie nicht stören<sup>55</sup> dürfen (3). Sie mögen es immer<sup>56</sup> thun. Gute Nacht. Verzeihen Sie die Störung. Ich habe Nichts versäumen<sup>57</sup> wollen und habe mir<sup>58</sup> nicht helfen (st.) können. Sie hätten nicht unterlassen<sup>59</sup> dürfen Beistand<sup>60</sup> zu suchen. Ich mag solche Dinge<sup>61</sup> nicht anstehen<sup>62</sup> lassen. Ich will Ihnen leuchten<sup>63</sup>. Sie hätten sich nicht bemühen sollen; ich kenne das Haus. Ich empfehle (st.) mich bestens<sup>64</sup>.

<sup>35</sup>fehlen to ail, <sup>36</sup>to answer, <sup>37</sup>p. 127 E., <sup>38</sup>patient. <sup>39</sup>to be concerned, <sup>40</sup>injurious, <sup>41</sup>to eat, drink, take, <sup>42</sup>emetic, <sup>43</sup>tomorrow, <sup>44</sup>again, <sup>45</sup>to be mistaken, <sup>46</sup>at noon, <sup>47</sup>well, <sup>48</sup>perhaps, <sup>49</sup>to warm, <sup>50</sup>to stay up, <sup>51</sup>else, <sup>52</sup>cool, <sup>53</sup>to occur, <sup>54</sup>to hope, <sup>55</sup>to trouble, <sup>56</sup>immer ever, <sup>57</sup>always, sometimes confidently, <sup>58</sup>to neglect, <sup>59</sup>myself, <sup>60</sup>omit, to fail to do, <sup>61</sup>assistance, <sup>62</sup>things, matters, <sup>63</sup>to delay, <sup>64</sup>to see one to the door with a light, <sup>65</sup>Good bye.

## SECTION XXIV.

THE THREE AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE, *sein*,  
*werden*, *haben*.

These are: *sein* to *have* (*sein* to *be* is absolute), *haben* to *have* and *werden* *shall*, *will* for the FUTURE; (but *to be* for the PASSIVE VOICE).

(Of the use of the verb *thun* to *do* as an Auxiliary but few traces have remained especially in ballad style; as in Goethe's 'Der König von Thule'. Die Augen *thäten* ihm *sinken*. *His eyes did sink*. Or in Schiller's 'Wallenstein's Lager'. War's doch nicht ärger und trauſter hier, als der Sach's im Lande *thät* pochen. *For surely, it was not worse and wilder here, when the Saxons were boasting in the land*. So ritt ich hinüber zu den Sigiſten, ſie *thäten* ſich juſt gegen Magdeburg rüſten. *Thus I rode over to the Leaguer's, they were then making preparations against Magdeburg*. Sometimes in conditional clauses: *Thätſt* du zu rechter Zeit dich regen, *hätt'ſt* du's bequemer *haben* mögen. (Goethe.) *Hadst thou bestirred thyself at the right time, thou mightst have had it more easily*. Also in idioms of the vulgar; as, wenn et man dauen dhuen dhäte! If it only did do thaw! for: Wenn es nur thauen wollte! If it only would thaw!

The conjugation (see p. 272 etc.) of these verbs is the same whether they are used absolutely or as auxiliary verbs but there is a difference in their meaning according to their application as will be seen from the following.

A. The absolute verb *sein* (formerly spelt *seyn*; originally *wesen*) *war*, *gewesen* to *be*, to *exist*.

As an Auxiliary *sein* must not be rendered by *to be*, nor to *be* by *sein*; except in the idioms *he is come, gone*; (see p. 263 1 c). In Gerund phrases, such as, *It is to be seen, he was to be pitied the is, was* etc. are not auxiliary.

## EXERCISE I.

See Directions subjoined to Table of Contents.

On the Pres. Indic. of the absolute verb *sein*, *to be*; On Section IX. B. 1, 2, p. 76. Nouns used as the predicate of the verb *sein to be* are in the nominative; as, *Ich bin ein Mensch! I am a human being.*

*Sing.* Ich bin I am. Du bist thou art, (p. 56, 1). Er ist he is. Sie ist she is. Es ist it is. Man ist one is.

*Plur.* Wir sind we are. Ihr seid you are. Sie sind they are. — *der, die, das* the; *Plur. die* they.

## Die Familie. The Family.

Ich bin alt (old) und du bist jung (young). Du und dein Bruder (your brother), Ihr seid Knaben (boys). Er ist älter (older) und größer (taller; from groß tall, big) als Du. Deine Schwester (sister) ist ein gutes (good) Mädchen (girl). Sie ist noch ein Kind (child). Sie ist jünger und kleiner (smaller); aber (but) artiger (better behaved) als (than) Du. Das (that) ist gut (good, well). Sie ist die Tochter (daughter) und du bist der Sohn (son). Du, dein Bruder und deine Schwester Ihr seid Kinder (children) und zusammen (together) seid Ihr Geschwister (brothers and sisters jointly). Der Vater (father) und die Mutter (mother) sind die Eltern (parents). Eltern und Kinder sind die Familie. Onkel und Tante (aunt) sind liebe (dear) Verwandte (relations). Wer (who) ist da (there)? Ich bin es (p. 68, 5). Seid Ihr es? Ja (yes) wir sind es. Es sind die Freunde (friends). Wir sind alle Menschen (human beings, men).

---



## EXERCISE II.

On the Impf. Indic. of the verb *sein* *to be* in connection with the ADJECTIVE, Sect. IX. B. 1, 2, p. 76. and Sect. XIII. 1. and 2. pp. 122, 124. MODIFICATIONS AND TERMINATIONS.

**Sing.** Ich war I was. Du warst thou wast. Er war he was. Das war that was.

**Plur.** Wir waren we were. Ihr wart you were. Sie waren they were.

### Göthe und Schiller. Göthe and Schiller.

Göthe wurde (was; pass. voice) siebenzehn Hundert neun und vierzig (1749) geboren (born). Er war zehn Jahre (ten years) älter als Schiller. Ich war noch nicht (not yet) geboren als (when) Schiller starb (died). Es war im Jahre achtzehn Hundert und fünf (1805). Göthe war ein Frankfurter (Frankfortman), Schiller ein Schwabe (Swabian). Du warst noch nicht geboren als Göthe starb. Das war im Jahre Ein Tausend acht Hundert drei und dreißig (1833). Ich war damals (at that time) vierzehn (14) Jahre alt. Göthe's Vater war Rath (councillor) seine (his) Mutter war weise (wise) und geistreich (spirited). Sie waren reich (wealthy). Schiller's Vater war Arzt (physician). Seine Mutter war sanft (gentle) und fromm (pious). Göthe und Schiller waren die größten (greatest) Dichter (poets) Deutschlands (of Germany). Ihr Kinder wart in Deutschland als Ihr klein (little) wart; aber Ihr wart nicht am Rhein. Wir waren in Hamburg und Berlin. Wir waren auch an der Ostsee (on the Baltic); das war schön (beautiful).

---

B. The absolute verb *werden*, *ward* or *wurde*; *ge-* *worden* *to be created, to become, to arise, to grow, to turn, to get*, (all in the sense of *to become*).

C. The absolute *haben* *to have* (in the sense of *to possess*).

## EXERCISE V.

The main clause following the dependent begins with the verb. Translate Infinitives used as nouns by the Pres. Part. (see pp. 272 etc.)

**Ueber Sein, Werden und Haben. On being, becoming and having.**

Der da (he who) ist, war und sein wird sprach (spoke):  
 "Es werde (Imperative) Licht" (n. light) und es ward Licht.  
 Was (that which) geworden ist, ist nach (according to) Gottes Willen (Gods will) geworden. Die Wahrheit (truth) ist das Licht des Geistes. (of the spirit intellect). Was wir sind und werden, sind und werden wir nicht durch uns selbst (our-selves). Wenn du groß, stark (strong) und schön bist, ist das ein Geschenk (n. gift). Sei (Imper.) dafür dankbar (thankful). Wenn du treu (faithful), gütig (kind) und weise wirkst, ist das eine Gnade (grace). Wir haben das Leben (n. life) nicht nur (not only) um es zu genießen sondern um Gutes zu wirken (to work). Es ist natürlich (natural), daß die Menschen mehr (more) an (of) das Haben denken (to think) als an das Sein und Werden. Wenn man einen Knaben fragt: "Was wirst du werden?" so denkt er meistens (mostly): "was wirst du haben?" und er antwortet (answers) "ich will (wish to) ein reicher (rich) Mann werden". Denn (for) das Haben reizt (charms) die Sinne (senses) und darum sagten die Alten (the ancients): "selig (blessed) sind die Habenden" (Those having something). — Was wir haben wollen ist uns noch interessant (still interesting) und wenn wir es haben (have it) beglückt (makes happy) oder (or) dient (serves) es uns. Aber Haben heißt (implies) nicht immer (not always) haben "*to have*". z. B. ich habe Viel (much) verloren (lost). Du hast es vergessen (forgotten), er hat es verkauft (sold). Besser (better) ist es: wir haben gefunden (found). Ihr habt erhalten (received), sie haben gewonnen (won). Das Beste ist wenn Einer sagen kann: — Ich habe Etwas tüchtiges (worthy) geleistet (accomplished).

1. THE AUXILIARY *sein to have*.

The English auxiliary *to have* is mostly expressed by *haben* (see 3, p. 271) but it must be expressed by *sein* with the following three classes of intransitive verbs.

a. With the verbs *sein to be*, *bleiben to remain* and *erscheinen to appear*; as, *Er ist gewesen*. He *has* been. *Ich war gewesen*. I *had* been. *Er wird geblieben sein*. He will *have* remained. *Sie müssen erschienen sein*. They must *have* appeared. (*These intransitive verbs denote existence, absolutely, Existence in time, Existence in space.*)

b. With all intransitive verbs, denoting transition or change in time; as, *Du bist groß geworden*. You *have* become (grown) tall. *Ich war ermüdet*. I *had* awoke (that is ceased to sleep). *Sie sind gestorben*. They *have* died. *Es kann nicht verschwunden sein*. It cannot *have* vanished.

c. With all intransitive verbs denoting locomotion or change in space; as, *Er war gekommen und ist wieder gegangen*. He *had* come and *has* (is) gone again. *Er ist aus dem Fenster gesprungen, ist durch den Garten gelaufen, ist entflohen*. He *has* sprung out of the window, *has* run through the garden, *has* fled. *Das Kind muß gefallen sein*. The child must *have* fallen.

Note 1. When by intransitive verbs of the last kind properly signifying locomotion, a farther meaning is to be expressed; as, *tänzen to dance*, *fahren to drive* (when meaning *to rein the horses or to carry*), *reiten to ride* (when meaning *to take exercise on horseback*), *reisen to travel* (when meaning *to enjoy or profit by travelling*) they are not conjugated with *sein* but with *haben*; see below).

Note 2. In combinations like: *Es ist (war) zu sehen*. It *is (was) to be seen*, the verb *sein* to be is *not auxiliary*, at any rate, not an auxiliary verb of tense.

## EXERCISE III.

On the auxiliary verb *sein to have*. (p. 272) For the construction see XXX COMPOUND SENTENCES; for the CONJUNCTIONS (marked C.) XXIX List 3. The English for words given in the examples to rules is not repeated in the exercise.

**Ein Unfall. An Accident.**

Ich bin bei (at the house of) unserm (our) Nachbarn (neighbour) gewesen. Du bist bald (soon) wieder gekommen (come back). Ich bin nicht lange (long) geblieben (to stay) weil (Conj.) Etwas (something) vorgefallen (occurred) ist. Was (what) ist geschehen (happened)? Der Nachbar ist verunglückt (met with an accident). Er ist mit (with) dem Pferde (horse) gestürzt (to fall heavily). Er lebt doch (lives I hope)? (See doch XXVIII List B.). Nein (no) er ist eben (just now) gestorben. Ach! Wie ist das zugegangen (to come to pass)? Er war in der Stadt (town) gewesen und weil es spät (late) geworden war ist er den kürzeren (shorter) Weg (road) gekommen (come). Es war sehr (very) dunkel (dark) geworden. Alles (everything) war gut gegangen (went well), bis C. er an (up to) die Mauer (wall) kam (came); da (there) ist das Pferd gesprungen, ist ausgeglitten (slipped) und ist gefallen. Er selbst (he himself) ist auf (upon) den Kopf (head) gefallen. Das Pferd war nach Hause (home) gerannt (run). Die Familie war sehr (much) erschrocken (alarmed). Die Leute (people) waren hingelaufen (run to the spot). Die Frau (wife) war ohnmächtig geworden (fainted). Der Diener (man-servant) war nach der Stadt geritten (to ride on horse-back). Der Arzt war bald erschienen. Er war sehr schnell (very fast) gefahren aber alle Hoffnung (hope) war entschwunden (vanished). Das Leben (life) war entflohen. Das ist sehr traurig (sad).

---

2. THE AUXILIARY *werden* forms:

*a.* The future tenses when its Present tense is used with the INFINITIVES present and past of the main verb; as, *Ich werde streben.* I *shall* or *will* strive. *Ich werde gestrebt haben.* I *shall* have striven. *Ich werde alt werden.* I *shall* become old. *Ich werde alt geworden sein.* I shall have become old.

*aa.* The imperfect Conjunctive *würde* joined to the infinitives of the main verb forms the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Conditionals; as, *ich würde streben,* I should or would strive; *ich würde gestrebt haben,* I should or would have striven.

*b.* *werden* (P. P. *worden*) forms the passive voice, when conjugated through all its tenses along with the past participle of the main verb; as, *Ich werde geliebt.* I *am* loved. *Ich wurde geliebt.* I *was* loved. *Ich bin geliebt worden.* I have *been* loved. *Ich werde geliebt werden.* I shall *be* loved.

## EXERCISE IV.

On the auxiliary *werden* as forming the future tenses (p. 272). The *Infinitive* is placed at the end; but followed by the auxiliary in dependent clauses.

Ein Brief. A letter. Marie an Anna. Mary to Anna.

Berlin, den 12ten März (March) 1871.

Liebe Anna!

Es wird Dich freuen (you will be glad) zu hören (to hear, learn) daß ich Euch alle bald wiedersehen (see again) werde. Mein Mann (husband), ich und die Kinder wir werden alle durch (through) Dresden kommen wenn wir nach Frankfurt reisen (to travel) werden, wo mein Mann einen Posten (appointment) bekommen hat. Wir werden eine Woche (week) bei Euch (with you) bleiben, Ihr werdet uns doch aufnehmen

(accommodate)? Ich hoffe Du wirst die Kinder artig finden (find). Georg wird später (later) ankommen (arrive) weil er Viel (much) zu thun (to do) haben wird. Ich werde mich nach Berlin sehnen (to long for) und Manches (many things) vermissen (to miss). Doch (still) wir werden am schönen Main leben (live) und auch dort Freunde haben. Wir werden auch Augusten besuchen (to visit) und hoffen die Eltern zu Hause zu finden. Grüße sie herzlich (give them kind love) von Deiner Dich liebenden (your very affectionate) Schwester Marie.

## EXERCISE IV a.

On werden *to be* forming the Passive Voice. See p. 270, 2 b. and p. 278; especially the "Observation." In dependent clauses the finite verb is placed last.

**Der Fortschritt der Menschheit. The Progress of Mankind.**

Das Land wird verbessert (improved). Die Städte (cities) werden verschönert (embellished). Thue (do) das Gute (the good), das (which) geboten (bidden) wird; so (thus) wirst du erzogen (educated). Ihr werdet besser (better) erzogen als (than) Eure Eltern worden sind. Die jüngeren Geschlechter (generations) werden besser erzogen als die ältern erzogen worden waren. Die kommenden (comming) Geschlechter werden immer (always) besser erzogen werden. Wenn (if) alle Menschen weise (wise) und gut gemacht (made) worden sein werden, wird eine neue Welt (world) geschaffen (created) worden sein. Wenn die Uebel (evils) erkannt worden sein werden, werden die Mittel (means) gefunden (found) werden, durch welche (through which) sie werden vermieden (avoided) werden.

## 3. THE AUXILIARY haben

is used in forming the compound Past tenses of the Active voice of all verbs transitive and reflexive and also of all intransitive verbs except those classes mentioned with sein a, b, c, p. 268.

## TABLE OF CONJUGATION.

**Note 1.** (The present of *sein* is derived from different roots. In *haben* and *werden* euphonic changes of the final consonant of the root occur, as, *du hast*, *hatteſt*, instead of *haſt*, *hateſt*, *wirſt* instead of *wirdeſt*, &c.

**Note 2.** Besides the Imperfect Indicative *wurde*, there occurs also, the singular only, *ich ward*, *du wardſt*, *er ward*, which is a purer and more elegant form.

**Note 3.** The Present Participles of *sein* and *haben* do not occur as parts of the verb; *daß Seiende* means *that which exists*, the existent. *Habend* forms compounds with *wohl*, *acht*, *hand*, and *ſtatt* viz. *wohlhabend well to do*, *wealthy*; *achthabend heeding*; *handhabend wielding*; *ſtathabend taking place*. *Werdeud* occurs in adverbial expressions of manner, as; *ärgerlich werdeud getting angry*; *daß Werdeude that which is arriving*. "*Der Werdeude wird immer dankbar ſein*" *he whose mind is still moulding will always be easily pleased.* *Gothe.*

<i>Sein</i> (formerly <i>weſen</i> ), <i>war</i> (formerly <i>waß</i> ), <i>had</i> ; ( <i>geweſen</i> <i>been</i> , <i>geweſen ſein</i> <i>to have been</i> ).	<i>Werden</i> shall, will (future), <i>to be</i> (passive voice); <i>wurde</i> <i>was</i> (passive voice); <i>worden</i> <i>been</i> (passive voice); <i>worden ſein</i> <i>to have been</i> (pass. voice).
---	---

Indicative.		Conjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>I have</i>	<i>that I have or had.</i>	<i>I shall, will</i>	<i>that I shall, will, or should, would, I am or was (p. v.)</i>
		<i>I am (passive voice).</i>	
Sing. <i>ich bin</i>	<i>ich ſei</i>	<i>ich werde</i>	<i>ich werde</i>
<i>du biſt</i>	<i>du ſieſt</i>	<i>du wirſt</i>	<i>du werdeſt</i>
<i>er iſt</i>	<i>er ſei</i>	<i>er wird</i>	<i>er werde</i>
Plur. <i>wir ſind</i>	<i>wir ſeien</i>	<i>wir werden</i>	<i>wir werden</i>
<i>ihr ſeid</i>	<i>ihr ſeiet</i>	<i>ihr werdet</i>	<i>ihr werdet</i>
<i>ſie ſind</i>	<i>ſie ſeien</i>	<i>ſie werden</i>	<i>ſie werden</i>

*Indicative.*

*Conjunctive.*

*Indicative.*

*Conjunctive.*

IMPERFECT.

IMPERFECT (Note 2. p. 272.)

*I had.*

*that I had; generally, would have.*

*I. was (e. g., praised).*

*I should or would; that I was, were or would be (praised).*

Sing. ich war  
du warst

ich wäre  
du wärest

ich wurde  
du wurdest

ich würde  
du würdest

er war

er wäre

er wurde

er würde

Plur. wir waren

wir wären

wir wurden

wir würden

ihr waret

ihr wäret

ihr wurdet

ihr würdet

sie waren

sie wären

sie wurden

sie würden

PERFECT (*absolutely*).

PERFECT.

*I have been, that I have or rather I was. had been, I was.*

*I have been rather I was had been or praised). was (praised).*

ich bin, du bist,  
&c. gewesen

ich sei, du seiest,  
&c. gewesen

ich bin, du bist,  
&c. worden

ich sei, du seiest,  
&c. worden

PLUPERFECT (*absolutely*).

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

*I had been, I should or would have been.*

*I had been I had been, or I (pass. voice). should or would have been.*

ich war, du warst, &c. gewesen  
ich wäre, du wärest, &c. gewesen

ich war, du warst, &c. worden  
ich wäre, du wärest, &c. worden

FIRST FUTURE.

FIRST FUTURE.

*I shall, will have that I shall or will have, would have.*

*I shall or will that I shall or be (pass. voice). will be (pass. voice).*

ich werde sein  
du wirst sein  
er wird sein, &c.

ich werde sein  
du werdest sein  
er werde sein &c.

ich werde werden  
du wirst werden  
er wird werden, &c.

ich werde werden  
du werdest werden  
er werde werden, &c.



## 274 XXIV. AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSE; CONJUGATION

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>
<b>SECOND FUTURE (absolutely).</b>		<b>SECOND FUTURE.</b>	
<i>I shall have.</i>	<i>that I shall,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>that I shall,</i>
<i>been.</i>	<i>should, or</i>	<i>praised).</i>	<i>should, or</i>
	<i>would have</i>		<i>would have</i>
	<i>been.</i>		<i>been (praised).</i>
ich werde	ich werde	ich werde	ich werde
gewesen sein, &c.	gewesen sein &c.	worden sein	worden sein
		&c.	&c.

### FIRST CONDITIONAL.

*I should or would have.*

ich würde sein  
du würdest sein  
er würde sein, &c.

### FIRST CONDITIONAL.

*I should or would be (p. v.).*

ich würde werden  
du würdest werden  
er würde werden, &c.

### (absolutely) CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should or*  
*would have*  
*been.*

ich würde  
gewesen sein &c.

*I should or*  
*would have*  
*\* been (p. v.).*  
ich würde  
worden sein,  
&c.

### IMPERATIVE (absolutely).

Sei ich! may I be! sei be thou!  
sei er let him be; seien wir let us  
be! seid be ye! seien sie! let them be!  
seien Sie be (you)!

### IMPERATIVE.

Werde ich may I be (praised)!  
werde be thou! werde er let  
him be! werden wir let us be! werdet  
be ye! werden sie let them be!  
werden Sie be (you)!

**haben to have; ich hatte I had; gehabt had.**

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>
<b>PRESENT.</b>		<b>IMPERFECT.</b>	
<i>I have.</i>	<i>that I have or</i>	<i>I had.</i>	<i>that I had, I</i>
	<i>had, I may have.</i>		<i>might or</i>
			<i>would have.</i>
Sing. ich habe	ich habe	ich hatte	ich hätte*
du hast	du habest	du hattest	du hättest
er hat	er habe	er hatte	er hätte
Plur. wir haben	wir haben	wir hätten	wir hätten
ihr habt	ihr habet	ihr hättet	ihr hättet
sie haben	sie haben	sie hätten	sie hätten

\* This is the only instance of modification of the vowel in a verb of the weak form and has its reason in the necessity of distinguishing *ich hatte I had*, from *ich hätte I might have*.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>I have had rather I had.</i>	<i>that I have had or had had.</i>	<i>I had had</i>	<i>that I had had, I would have had.</i>
ich habe, du hast, &c. gehabt	ich habe, du habest, &c. gehabt	ich hatte, du hattest, &c. gehabt	ich hätte, du hättest, &c. gehabt

FIRST FUTURE.		SECOND FUTURE.	
<i>I shall or will have.</i>	<i>that I shall or will have, I would have.</i>	<i>I shall or will have had.</i>	<i>that I shall or will have had, I would have had.</i>
ich werde, du wirst, &c. haben	ich werde, du werdest, &c. haben	ich werde, du wirst, &c. gehabt haben	ich werde, du werdest, &c. gehabt haben

FIRST CONDITIONAL.	CONDITIONAL PAST.
<i>I should or would have.</i>	<i>I should or would have had.</i>
ich würde, du würdest, &c. haben	ich würde, du würdest, &c. gehabt haben

## IMPERATIVE.

Singular, *habe (hab')! or haben Sie have! habe er, &c., let him, &c. have!*  
 Plural, *haben wir let us have! habt or haben Sie have (ye)! haben sie let them have!*

## SPECIMEN

illustrating the formation of the tenses of a verb. (For the use of the tenses see Sect. XXV).

Observation. The German verb has neither a progressive nor a negative nor an emphatically affirmative form. *Ich lobe* expresses both *I praise, I am praising, I do praise* and, *ich lobe nicht I do not praise*, the adverb *nicht*, being generally separated from the verb by other portions of the clause. (See Sect. XXX, D).

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Infinitives* : *Pres.* (zu) loben to praise; *Past*, gelobt (zu) haben to have praised.

*Participles* : *pres.* lobend praising; *past* gelobt praised.

*Indicative.**Conjunctive.*

## PRESENT.

*I praise, I am praising,  
I do praise.* (see p. 281, 1)

*that I praise or praised,  
I may praise.*

*Sing.* ich lobe  
du lobst  
er lobt  
*Plur.* wir loben  
ihr lobt  
sie loben

ich lobe  
du lobest  
er lobe  
wir loben  
ihr lobet  
sie loben

## IMPERFECT.

*I praised, was praising,  
did praise.* (see p. 282, 2)

*that I praised,  
I might, should, or would praise.*

*Sing.* ich lobte  
du lobtest  
er lobte  
*Plur.* wir lobten  
ihr lobtet  
sie lobten

ich lobte  
du lobtest  
er lobte  
wir lobten  
ihr lobtet  
sie lobten

## PERFECT.

*I have praised, I have been praising, I praised.* (see p. 283, 3)

*that I (have) praised  
that I had praised.*

*Sing.* ich habe gelobt  
du hast gelobt  
er hat gelobt  
*Plur.* wir haben gelobt  
ihr habt gelobt  
sie haben gelobt

ich habe gelobt  
du habest gelobt  
er habe gelobt  
wir haben gelobt  
ihr habet gelobt  
sie haben gelobt

*Indicative.*

*Conjunctive.*

PLUPERFECT.

*I had praised,  
I had been praising.*

*that I had praised,  
I might, should, or would have  
praised.*

Sing. ich hatte gelobt  
du hattest gelobt  
er hatte gelobt  
Plur. wir hatten gelobt  
ihr hattet gelobt  
sie hatten gelobt

ich hätte gelobt  
du hättest gelobt  
er hätte gelobt  
wir hätten gelobt  
ihr hättet gelobt  
sie hätten gelobt

FIRST FUTURE.

*I shall praise.*

*that I shall praise,  
I would praise.*

Sing. ich werde loben  
du wirst loben  
er wird loben  
Plur. wir werden loben  
ihr werdet loben  
sie werden loben

ich werde loben  
du werdest loben  
er werde loben  
wir werden loben  
ihr werdet loben  
sie werden loben

SECOND FUTURE.

*I shall have praised.*

*that I shall have praised,  
I would have praised.*

Sing. ich werde gelobt haben  
du wirst gelobt haben  
er wird gelobt haben  
Plur. wir werden gelobt haben  
ihr werdet gelobt haben  
sie werden gelobt haben

ich werde gelobt haben  
du werdest gelobt haben  
er werde gelobt haben  
wir werden gelobt haben  
ihr werdet gelobt haben  
sie werden gelobt haben

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should or would praise.*

*I should or would have praised.*

Sing. ich würde loben  
du würdest loben  
er würde loben  
Plur. wir würden loben  
ihr würdet loben  
sie würden loben

ich würde gelobt haben  
du würdest gelobt haben  
er würde gelobt haben  
wir würden gelobt haben  
ihr würdet gelobt haben  
sie würden gelobt haben

## IMPERATIVE.

Sing. lobe! (*do praise!*) loben Sie! *praise!* (polite); lobe er! *let him praise.*

Plur. loben wir! *let us praise!* lobt! or loben Sie! *praise (ye)!* loben sie! *let them praise!*

Also the *past participle* is frequently used *instead of the Imperative* in commanding, rousing, or encouraging.

Derived from the *Infinitive* is the **noun** das Loben *the praising*. The *Infinitive*, with the particle zu, is zu loben *to praise*, or *praising* after certain verbs, as, beginnen *to begin*; or prepositions, as, anstatt *instead of*; ohne *without*, &c. um zu loben *in order to praise*.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

(Notice: The Active Form for the Passive Voice p. 286.).

Observation. The Passive voice distinctly implies an **action** the object of which is the *Subject* of the sentence, and **never a mere state or condition**, which latter is expressed by the Past Participle used as an **adjective** along with the verb sein *to be*. Hence: Er wird getödtet means He is *being killed*; that is, *they are killing him now*. but Er ist getödtet means *he is killed, he is dead*.

*Infinitives: pres. gelobt (zu) werden to be praised;  
past, gelobt worden (zu) sein to have been praised.*

*Past Participle gelobt worden been praised.*

*Indicative.*

*Conjunctive.*

## PRESENT.

*I am (being) praised.*

*that I am or was praised,  
I may (might) be praised.*

Sing. ich werde gelobt  
du wirst gelobt  
er wird gelobt  
Plur. wir werden gelobt  
ihr werdet gelobt  
sie werden gelobt

ich werde gelobt  
du werdest gelobt  
er werde gelobt  
wir werden gelobt  
ihr werdet gelobt  
sie werden gelobt

*Indicative.**Conjunctive.*

## IMPERFECT.

*I was (being) praised.**that I was or were praised,  
I might, should, or would be  
praised.*

Sing. ich wurde gelobt  
 du wurdest gelobt  
 er wurde gelobt  
 Plur. wir wurden gelobt  
 ihr wurdet gelobt  
 sie wurden gelobt

ich würde gelobt  
 du würdest gelobt  
 er würde gelobt  
 wir würden gelobt  
 ihr würdet gelobt  
 sie würden gelobt

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was praised. that I have (had) been praised.*

Sing. ich bin gelobt worden  
 du bist gelobt worden  
 er ist gelobt worden  
 Plur. wir sind gelobt worden  
 ihr seid gelobt worden  
 sie sind gelobt worden

ich sei gelobt worden  
 du seiest gelobt worden  
 er sei gelobt worden  
 wir seien gelobt worden  
 ihr seiet gelobt worden  
 sie seien gelobt worden

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been praised.**that I had been praised,  
I might, should, or would have  
been praised.*

Sing. ich war gelobt worden  
 du warst gelobt worden  
 er war gelobt worden  
 Plur. wir waren gelobt worden  
 ihr wäret gelobt worden  
 sie waren gelobt worden

ich wäre gelobt werden  
 du wärest gelobt werden  
 er wäre gelobt werden  
 wir wären gelobt werden  
 ihr wäret gelobt werden  
 sie wären gelobt werden

## FIRST FUTURE.

*I shall be praised.**that I shall be praised,  
I would be praised.*

Sing. ich werde gelobt werden  
 du wirst gelobt werden  
 er wird gelobt werden  
 Plur. wir werden gelobt werden  
 ihr werdet gelobt werden  
 sie werden gelobt werden

ich werde gelobt werden  
 du werdest gelobt werden  
 er werde gelobt werden  
 wir werden gelobt werden  
 ihr werdet gelobt werden  
 sie werden gelobt werden

*Indicative.**Conjunctive.*

## SECOND FUTURE.

*I shall have been praised.**that I shall have been praised,  
I would have been praised.*

Sing. ich werde gelobt worden sein  
 du wirst gelobt worden sein  
 er wird gelobt worden sein  
 Plur. wir werden gelobt worden sein  
 ihr werdet gelobt worden sein  
 sie werden gelobt worden sein

ich werde gelobt worden sein  
 du werdest gelobt worden sein  
 er werde gelobt worden sein  
 wir werden gelobt worden sein  
 ihr werdet gelobt worden sein  
 sie werden gelobt worden sein

## FIRST CONDITIONAL.

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

*I should or would be praised.**I should or would have been praised.*

Sing. ich würde gelobt werden  
 du würdest gelobt werden  
 er würde gelobt werden  
 Plur. wir würden gelobt werden  
 ihr würdet gelobt werden  
 sie würden gelobt werden

ich würde gelobt worden sein  
 du würdest gelobt worden sein  
 er würde gelobt worden sein  
 wir würden gelobt worden sein  
 ihr würdet gelobt worden sein  
 sie würden gelobt worden sein

## IMPERATIVE.

Sing. werde gelobt! or werden Sie gelobt! *be praised!* werde er gelobt!  
*let him be praised!*

Plur. werden wir gelobt! *let us be praised!* Werdet or werden Sie ge-  
 lobt! *be praised!* werden sie gelobt! *let them be praised!*

By the infinitive are formed: gelobt zu werden to be praised,  
 being praised; um gelobt zu werden in order to be praised.

## SECTION XXV.

## ON THE USE OF THE MOODS TENSES AND PARTICIPLES.

(For the use of the Conjunctive and Conditional; see Sect. XXXI).

## A. The tenses of the Indicative.

The German verb has no special form to represent an action as progressing or continuing, nor can a safe

distinction be drawn between **absolute** and **relative** tenses. (See the specimen p. 275 &c). It therefore depends to a considerable extent on the context what force is to be given to the tense of the verb in each case. The tenses of the Indicative may in the first place be said to agree in sense with the corresponding tenses in English; as, *Ich lebe* I live (I am living). *Ich lebte* I lived (did live, was living). *Ich habe gelebt* I have lived (have been living). *Ich hatte gelebt* I had lived &c. *Ich werde leben* I shall live &c. *Ich werde gelebt haben* I shall have lived &c. With regard to the force of the Passive voice p. 278 Observation, may be referred to.

The following deviations, however, must be particularly noticed.

### 1. THE PRESENT

is used instead of the **Imperfect**, **Perfect** and **Future**:

*a.* as in English instead of the **Imperfect** when a **narrative** is to be made particularly vivid or impressive; as, in John XI. where Luther uses the Present more freely than the English text. Thus v. 20 *Als Martha nun hörte, daß Jesus kommt, geht sie ihm entgegen.* Literally: *When Martha now heard that Jesus is coming she goes and meets him.* (Then Martha, as soon as she heard that Jesus was coming, went and met him). Further v. 23. *Jesus spricht zu ihr. Jesus saith unto her.* v. 24. *Martha spricht zu ihm. Martha saith unto him;* — and v. 25. *Jesus spricht zu ihr. Jesus said.*

*b.* instead of the English **Perfect** when the latter is used in connecting the action expressed by the verb with the **Present moment**. This often occurs which the preposition *seit* (see p. 55 *i*, *Continuance*) which gives the German Present the effect of the English Perfect when used with an adverb or adverbial expression of time; as, *Ich bin seit dem 30. Juli in Berlin, I have*



*been in Berlin since the 30th of July. Ich wohne seit einem Monate hier. I have been residing here for a month. Sie arbeiten seit vorgestern, They have been working since the day before yesterday; The mere adverb or adverbial expression of time has often the same effect as, Wie lange sind sie hier? How long have you been here? Ich bin beinahe ein Jahr hier, I have been here nearly a twelvemonth.*

In sentences like the above the German Perfect must not be used, as it would denote a ceasing or at least a modification of the action or state (see the Perfect p. 283); e. g. Ich bin lange genug hier gewesen; ich muß fort, *I have been here long enough; I must away. Die Leute haben seit 5 Uhr gearbeitet, nun sind sie müde, The people have been working since five o'clock, now they are tired.*

c. The PRESENT takes the place of the Future with a sure expectation, decided intention, or immediate action more frequently than in English; as, Ich gehe heute Abend aus, *I go out to-night*, instead of Ich werde heute Abend ausgehen, *I shall go out to-night. Er kommt gewiß, He is sure to come. Ich halte Wort, I shall keep my word.*

For the phrases: *I am going to, I am about to*, see the Future p. 284.

## 2. THE IMPERFECT,

(the narrative tense) is used as in English both relatively and historically (see Note p. 284); e. g. Ich erkannte dich als du eintratest, *I recognized you when you entered. Er sagte dies, indem er sich erhob, He said this as he arose. Ich kam, sah und siegte (veni, vidi, vici), I came, saw and conquered; but it also occurs instead of the English perfect and sometimes instead of the conditional past. (XXXI. B. 4)*

a. When the English use the Perfect tense along with the adverbial expressions *This day, (morning, evening), week, month, year* etc., in stating a fact which has no farther connexion with the Present moment the Germans use promiscuously the Imperfect or the Perfect; as, Ich sah ihn heute Abend or ich habe ihn heute Abend gesehen, *I have seen him this evening. Quite in the same manner they say: Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen or Ich sah ihn gestern, I saw him yesterday.*

b. The Imperfect occurs **instead of the Conditional**, when in a narrative a supposition, as then formed, is to be represented in a vivid manner; as, *Ich konnte zweierlei thun: Entweder ich ging nach Weimar und traf meine Freunde dort oder ich wartete ihre Ankunft in Berlin ab.* I could (then) do either of two things: either I should (might) have gone to Weimar and met my friends there, or I should have awaited their arrival in Berlin.

Sometimes the Imperfect is used to make a supposition **more impressive**, although it does not occur in a narrative; as, *Kamst du nicht im rechten Augenblicke, so war Alles umsonst.* Had you not come at the right moment all would have been in vain.

### 3. THE PERFECT TENSE.

The Perfect differs from the English Perfect in so far as it does not necessarily convey the idea that the action expressed by it is connected through its effects or results with the present moment.

The German Perfect, whilst it may generally be used for the English Perfect, has much more frequently the force of the English Past\* as employed in stating a fact as absolutely completed and without reference to the present; as, *Ich habe ihn gestern gesehen,* I saw him yesterday. *Er hat im vorigen Jahre sein Haus verkauft,* He sold his house last year. *Ich habe Sie damals noch nicht gekannt,* I did not know you then. (*The English Perfect* expressed by the German Present, see p. 281 b).

Owing to this use of the Perfect tense for the English Past, Germans when speaking English are apt to produce erroneous impressions, and one would hear an enthusiastic admirer of the beauties of some locality say: *It is a splendid view! I have been sitting there last year on a rock and have been gazing etc. etc.*

The phrase *I forget* must be rendered by the Perfect *Ich habe es vergessen*, unless it has the meaning of *I usually forget* which is *Ich vergesse gewöhnlich*.

\* The Gothic has no compound tenses, the Present being used for the future, and the Imperfect for the past tenses. Even in the Old-High-German and in the Anglo-Saxon the use of compound tenses is limited, and this may explain to some extent the frequent use of simple tenses for the Perfect and Future in the modern German.

**Note.** In the higher *historical style* the Perfect is employed to distinguish facts and deeds as having had a great and lasting effect, and as being of universal importance; as, Nachdem dies in langen, schweren Kämpfen geschehen war, hat sie Julius Cäsar in ihrer Heimath aufgesucht und in jenen Feldzügen überwunden. After this had been accomplished by long and severe struggles, Julius Caesar sought them out in their own homes, and subdued them in those campaigns. Man könnte nicht sagen, daß es Heroen hervorgebracht hätte wie Karl Martell oder Pipin der König oder Karl der Große gewesen sind, auf deren Thun und Lassen das Schicksal der Welt beruhte. It could not be said to have produced such heroes as (were) Charles Martel, King Pepin, or Charlemagne, upon whose conduct depended the destiny of the world — (*Ranke, Französische Geschichte*). Dieses Ende nahm der große Tag der Sempacher Schlacht, in welcher Arnold Strutthaus von Winkelried mit Aufopferung seines Lebens die Blüthe der schweizerischen Mannschaft von ihrem Untergang, das Vaterland von äußerster Gefahr gerettet (hat). Thus ended that great day of the battle of Sempach, in which Arnold Strutthaus von Winkelried, at the sacrifice of his life, rescued the flower of the Swiss from destruction, and the fatherland from extreme danger. — (*Joh. v. Müller, Geschichte der Schweiz*). In the same manner: Amerika ist von Columbus entdeckt worden, America was discovered by Columbus. Gustav Adolph hat den Protestantismus in Deutschland gerettet, Gustavus Adolphus saved Protestantism in Germany.

#### 4. THE PLUPERFECT

agrees with the English; as, Ich hatte geschrieben als du kamst, I had written when you came. Er war eingetreten während ich schrieb, He had entered whilst I was writing.

The participial phrases *Having seen, written etc.*, and *After having seen, written, etc.*, are, when narrative, rendered by the *Pluperfect* introduced by the Conjunctions *als, da (when) or nachdem (after)*; as, Als (da) ich geschrieben hatte *Having written*, Nachdem ich geschrieben hatte, *After having written*.

#### 5. The FUTURE p. 270, a.

implies in itself neither intention nor duty (See p. 256, "To 5"); e. g. Du wirst ins Wasser fallen, You will fall into the water. Ich werde sterben, I shall die.

The English phrases, *I am going to (write)*, or *I am about to (write etc.)*, when the immediate performance of the act is indicated, are expressed by the Present or Future along with the

adverbs *sofort*, *sogleich* immediately; *augenblicklich*, *diesen Augenblick* this very moment, instantly; or *balb* soon; as, *ich schreibe sogleich*, or *ich werde sofort schreiben*, *ich werde augenblicklich schreiben*, *ich will eben schreiben* or *ich bin im Begriff zu schreiben*, etc.

As in English it expresses likelihood; as, *er wird krank sein*, he will be ill likely.

## B. THE IMPERATIVE.

For its formation see p. 240, 4.

The **Imperative** occurs, strengthened by the adverbs *einmal nur*, and *doch*. *Einmal* is merely *inviting*, as, *Sehen Sie einmal her*, Look here, please; *nur* is *encouraging* and *persuading*, *Komm nur*, Come by all means, Do come, only come; *doch* is *entreating* and *appealing*; as, *Verzeihe es mir doch*, Pray, forgive me: *Steht doch!* Make a stand! Yet there occur phrases like; *Hören Sie doch nur einmal!* Do only listen!

Instead of the regular form of the Imperative the **Past Participle** occurs as a sort of general command *e. g.* *Stillgestanden!* Stand still! *Vorgehen!* Look out! *Den Rappen gezäumt!* Bridle the steed! or *elliptically*: *Den Hut ab!* (genommen), Hat off! *Die Thür zu!* (gemacht), Shut the door! (Compare p. 278).

## C. THE INFINITIVE.

1. The **infinitive without *zu* (*to*)**, is used more extensively than in English, as it is always used **absolutely**; as, *Sein oder Nichtsein*, *To be or not to be*; and as the German auxiliary verbs of mood govern the *main Infinitive* by simple forms of their Past participles and Infinitives, which are given by phrases requiring *to* in English; as, *Ich habe nicht kommen können*, I have not been able *to* come. *Ich werde bleiben müssen*, I shall be compelled *to* stay. See p. 260).

**Note.** In the following **verbal combinations** the Infinitive is used **without *zu*** and has more or less the force of a separable component: *holen gehen*, *suchen gehen*, *to go to fetch*, *to seek*, *laufen*

## 286 XXV. USE OF TENSES, MOODS AND PARTICIPLES.

gehen to go *to beg*, schlafen gehen to go *to sleep* (sich schlafen legen to lie down *to sleep*) spazieren gehen to go *to walk*, (spazieren fahren, to take a drive, spazieren reiten to go out on horseback for recreation). Similarly sagen kommen to come *to tell*; e. g. Ich ging es suchen, I went to seek it. Ich werde ihn holen gehen I shall go to fetch him. Er ist schlafen gegangen, He is gone to sleep, to bed. Er ging jagen he went a-hunting — betteln a-begging.

Notice. Ich habe es zu Hause liegen I have it *lying* at home; er hatte es um den Hals hängen, he had it *hanging* round his neck.

2. The Infinitive without zu takes the place of the English present participle, and sometimes also of the past participle, after the verbs bleiben to remain, fühlen to feel, to perceive, helfen to help, to assist, hören to hear, lehren to teach, lernen to learn, sehen to see; as, Er blieb sitzen, He remained sitting. Sie bleibt stehen, She stops (walking.) Ich fühlte Nacht über mich kommen, I felt night coming over me. Ich hörte ihn nahen, I heard him approaching. Ich sah sie kommen, I saw her coming. Ich hörte dich tadeln, I heard you blamed (people blaming you). Ich habe ein Kind taufen sehen, I saw a child baptized (the minister baptizing).

3. The Infinitive without zu is used for the English present participle, when employed in the capacity of a **Nominative** (subject of the clause); as, Angreifen, die Schanze erstürmen, und Alles niederhauen, war das Werk einer Minute, Making the attack, taking the redoubt by storm, and massacring them all, was the work of a minute.

### THE ACTIVE FORM USED FOR THE PASSIVE.

The pupil may here particularly notice the following, respecting the use of the Infinitive and Participle of the

#### ACTIVE VOICE INSTEAD OF THE PASSIVE VOICE IN ENGLISH.

a. The auxiliary verbs lassen to let, to cause

*to, to order to, to allow to, to permit to, to suffer to, to get or have* (something done, sent &c.), *hören* to hear, *sehen* to see (and sometimes *heißen* to bid), see p. 258, 7 are by themselves transitive verbs with an object of their own. This is often indefinite (*some one, people, them*) and then it is generally omitted in German, whilst the English in such cases prefer a passive construction; e. g. *Laß Jemanden das Buch bringen*, Let *some one* bring the book, — is usually expressed: *Laß das Buch bringen*, Let the book be brought. *Ich ließ (die Leute) das Haus reinigen*, I caused (*the people*) to clean the house; *i. e.* I caused the house to be cleaned. *Ich hörte es sagen*, I heard (*them*) say it; *i. e.* I heard it said. *Ich sah die Thür öffnen*, I saw (*some person*) open the door; *i. e.* I saw the door being opened. *Der König ließ (seine Diener) ihn fortführen*, The king ordered (*his servants*) to conduct him away; *i. e.* The king ordered him to be conducted away. *Ich sah ein Kind taufen*, I saw *the minister* baptize a child; *i. e.* I saw a child baptized.

With a **definite object** the construction is alike in German and English; as, *Laß ihn das Buch bringen*, Let him bring the book. *Ich hörte den Mann sagen*, I heard the man say; or **intransitively**: *Laß ihn kommen*, Let him come. *Ich hörte ihn singen*, I heard him sing.

**Laßen** is therefore always construed with the Infinitive of the main verb **without zu** in the Active Voice.

*b.* With the Gerund-phrases: *Es ist zu — Es war zu —* (and, rather stiffly,) *es steht (stand) zu*, *It is to, it was to*, and with *es bleibt (bleib) zu*, *it remains (remained) to*, the Infinitive Active of the main verb is used where in English the Passive is employed; as, *Es ist zu hoffen*, It is *to be* hoped. *Es war zu fürchten*, It was *to be* feared. *Es stand zu erwarten*, It was *to be* expected. *Es bleibt zu beweisen*, It remains *to be* proved. *Es bleibt zu sehen*, It remains *to be* seen.

(Es ist nicht zu begreifen, It is not to be comprehended. The same personally: Er ist nicht zu sehen, he is not to be seen; Du bist zu bewundern, you are to be admired (deserve admiration).

*b. b.* This Active construction is extended even to present participles used attributively; as, Das zu hoffende Glück, The happiness to be hoped for. Die zu erwartenden Gäste, The guests to be expected. Der zu beweisende Satz, The thesis to be proved.

The reason for these constructions is likewise the omission of a phrase; as, It is *for us* to hope, it is *allowed* to see it, *i. e.* it is to be seen.

*c.* Phrases with the indefinite personal pronoun *man one, they*, are frequently rendered passively; as, Man wird finden, It is seen. Man sagt, It is said. Man wird denken, It will be thought (Compare the use of *sollen* p. 258, § c.)

*d.* The reflexive form is frequently rendered by the passive in English; as, Der Keim entwickelt sich rasch, The germ is quickly developed. Ihre Sinne verwirrten sich, Her senses became confused. Ich verspätete mich, I was delayed. (Ich irre mich, I am mistaken. Ich wundere mich, I am astonished.)

*e.* The intransitive verb *geschehen, to happen, to take place*, is rendered passively also *to be done*; as, Das Unheil war geschehen, the *mischief was done*.

*f.* The German passive voice used impersonally, as it occurs in indefinite statements like *es wird gesagt (dicitur) it is said*, etc., is extended even to intransitive verbs not admitting of such construction in English; Thus: Es wird getanzt, There is dancing going on; some people are dancing. In dem Saale wurde musiziert und gesungen, In the hall there was music and singing. Es wird Manches geschwätzt, People talk a great deal. Es wurde von beiden Seiten wüthend gekämpft, They were fighting furiously on both sides.

THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu* (*to*).

*Obs.* This form, needlessly and even incorrectly\* called the Supine, mainly serves, as the Infinitive with *to* in English, to express the purpose or object of an action and is occasionally strengthened by the preposition *um*, *in order*, which remains at the head of the clause whilst the Infinitive with *zu* always terminates it; as, *Er trank ein Glas Wein um sich zu dem Werke zu stärken*, he drank a glass of wine *in order to*, strengthen himself for the task. (See 3. below)

Clauses containing the Infinitive with *zu* are joined to other clauses in the same order as in English; but must, in translating, be dealt with separately, the Infinitive with *zu* being taken up first; as, *Es ist nicht leicht, mit Menschen Geduld zu haben, die schwach und zugleich anmaßend sind*, *It is not easy to have patience with persons who are weak and at the same time assuming*. They are separated by commas from other clauses when distinctness requires it, and they are inserted in other clauses only when they constitute the predicates or objects of these and when both clauses are short; as, *in Wissen Sie, wann er zu Hause zu finden ist?* Do you know when he is *to be found* (compare p. 287 b.) at home. *Sie glauben nicht wie oft ich Sie zu sehen wünsche*, You don't believe how often I wish to see you. *Er konnte Nichts zu essen finden*, He could find nothing to eat. *Sie wird Viel zu erzählen haben*, She will have much to tell.

**When writing German** the pupil should, except in cases like the last mentioned, always **finish** the leading clause up to the point where in English the Infinitive with "*to*" or the prepositional participial phrase (see 2. below) opens the new clause. Thus: He has never had the intention — *to* renew this acquaintance; *Er hat nie die Absicht gehabt diese Bekanntschaft zu erneuern*. When I shall have had the pleasure — *of* seeing your sister; *Wenn ich das Vergnügen gehabt haben werde, Ihre Schwester zu sehen*. If placed at the head the Infinitive clause inverts the following main clause; as, *diese Meinung zu bekennen, fürchtet er nicht*, to confess this opinion — he doesn't fear.

1. The Infinitive with *zu* can, generally speaking, be employed wherever the English Infinitive with *to* occurs. Excepted are the compound tenses of the Auxiliary verbs of Mood (see p. 260 etc.) and the cases stated p. 290, 4.

2. The Infinitive with *zu* is besides used instead of the English present participle after the prepositions *anstatt instead of* and *ohne without* if both the leading verb and the present participle have the same sub-

\* It is as often the Infinitive, Gerund, or Gerundive.



jact; as, Er floh **anstatt zu** fechten, He fled instead of fighting (*he fled, he did not fight*). Du darfst nicht gehen, ohne es mir **zu** sagen, You must not go without (*you*) telling me.

By the infinitive with **zu** also the English present participle must be rendered, if introduced by *of*, *with*, &c., after nouns, adjectives or verbs requiring these prepositions; as, The honour of being invited, die Ehre eingeladen zu werden. The pleasure of seeing you, Daß Vergnügen, Sie zu sehen. Farther: after verbs expressing *beginning*, *intending*, *wishing* or *purposing* or after nouns and adjectives expressing *necessity* and *possibility*, which are construed either with the **Pres. Part.** or with the Infinitive with *to* in English; as, *She began to cry*, Sie begann zu weinen; He intended going abroad, Er beabsichtigte ins Ausland zu gehen; The *possibility* of preventing it, Die Möglichkeit es zu verhindern; Es ist leicht es zu vermeiden, It is easy to avoid it; -Es ist schwer einzusehen, It is difficult to conceive. Die Nothwendigkeit das Land zu verlassen, The *necessity* of leaving the country. Man klagte ihn an den Umstand verborgen zu haben, He was accused of (charged with) having concealed the fact.

Note. "*As*" introducing the Infinitive in phrases like: "*so kind as to send*" is not rendered in German; as, Seien Sie so gut es zu schicken, be so good **as** to send it. For "*Whom to*" —, "*What to*" —, "*how (when, where etc.) to*", see p. 243, *h.* and *i.*

3. The infinitive with **um zu** ought to be used only in clauses retaining the nominative, or subject of the main sentence; as, Thust du es, **um** mich zu bewegen? &c., Do you do it in order to induce me? (*i. e.*, *Do you do it that you may induce me?*) **Um** always stands at the head of the clause, **zu** with the Infinitive at the end. Compare, Ich komme, **um** es zu nehmen, I come in order to take it, and the colloquial, Es ist zu schlecht, **um** es zu nehmen, It is too bad to take it; (*i. e.*, it is not worth taking.)

4. Excepted from the general rule are the following cases:

a. When the English construe certain verbs of *believing* and *wishing* with **another** verb in the Infinitive with *to*, and when both these verbs have the **same subject**, the Germans indeed use the **same construction**; as, *I expect to arrive*, Ich erwarte anzukommen (i. e. *I expect that I shall arrive*). Er wünscht zu gehen, He wishes to go (i. e. *He wishes that he himself should go*); or with an object: Ich erwarte Sie zu sehen, I expect to see you. Er wünscht mich zu sehen, He wishes to see me.

But when this construction is used in English along with an **objective** which is in reality a **different subject** of the Infinitive with *to*; as, *I believe him to be better* (i. e. *I believe he is better*); *He wishes her to go*; (i. e. *He wishes that she should go*), the German Infinitive with *zu* **must not be employed**, but the sentence must be divided into **two clauses**, in the second of which the Objective is changed into a **Nominative**, and the Infinitive into a **finite tense**, after the manner of the examples given in parentheses, above; thus: Ich glaube er ist wohler or Ich glaube, daß er wohler ist, I believe he is better; or *that* he is better. Er wünscht, daß sie gehe, He wishes that she should go. Er wünscht sie möchte gehen, He wishes she might go.

The author has observed that it is **not after all the verbs of believing and wishing** that the Infinitive with *to*, thus joined to an improper Objective, is changed into a separate clause, but that the English construction is retained\* after the verbs bitten to beg, to ask, einladen to invite, ersuchen to request, auffordern to call upon, bringen in, nöthigen to press, to urge etc., as, Er bat mich zu kommen, He asked me to come. Er drang in mich or nöthigte mich zu trinken, He pressed me to drink. The pupil therefore must notice the following list of verbs after which the Infinitive with *to*, construed with an **improper Objective** in English, must be rendered by a separate clause in German as above.

1. *Verbs of believing*: I believe ich glaube, I conceive ich sehe

\* It will be seen that the usual statement that there is no *Aoc. c. Inf.* in German does not solve the difficulty here dealt with.

ein, ich halte für, I expect ich erwarte, I fear ich fürchte, befürchte, I find ich finde, I hope ich hoffe, I know ich weiß, I perceive ich bemerke, finde, I suppose (suspect) ich glaube, vermuthe, I think ich glaube, denke, I understand ich nehme an, glaube, verstehe.

2. *Verbs of wishing*: I desire ich verlange, wünsche, I like ich mag gern, (I should like ich möchte gern), I tell ich sage, I want ich will, ich wünsche, I wish ich wünsche.

Examples: Ich glaube (fürchte, weiß, vermuthe), er irrt sich or daß er sich irrt, I believe (fear, know, suppose, suspect) him to be mistaken. Wir erwarteten, daß Sie früher ankommen würden, We expected you to arrive sooner. Du wirst einsehen, daß es unmöglich ist, You will conceive the thing to be impossible. Dein Vater verlangt, daß du nach Hause kommst, Your father desires you to come home. Sage ihr, sie soll sich beeilen, Tell her to make haste (she is to make haste). Ich möchte gern, daß Sie ihm sagten, er sollte warten, I should like you to tell him to wait. Wollen Sie, daß ich hingehe, Do you want me to go.

The reason why only the verbs in the lists 1 and 2 require the construction with daß etc. is obviously this, that they are liable to be construed with a simple Objective; as, *I believe him, He found his brother, She likes her sister, He wishes the book*; and that this may tend to a momentary ambiguity in phrases like: *I believe him—to be a rogue, He found his brother—to be absent, I expected you—not to come back again, He wishes the book—to be burnt*. In sentences on the other hand like: *I request you to come*, the object is unmistakeably *the coming*, and hence they are rendered with the Infinitive with zu; as, Ich bitte, ersuche, lade Sie ein zu kommen, I beg, request, invite you to come.

b. The personal verbs *I happen to, I chance to, sich treffen, sich zutragen, sich ereignen, geschehen*, are rendered in German either *impersonally*, and then they are followed by a clause introduced by *daß that*; as, Es traf sich, daß ich ihn bemerkte, *I happened to observe him*. Es trug sich zu, daß wir uns begegneten, *We chanced to meet*. Or their sense is expressed *adverbially*; as, Wir sahen uns zufällig an, *We happened to look at each other*. Wir trafen uns von ungefähr in Paris, *We chanced to meet at Paris*.

c. *I am (was) to do a thing*, is rendered by

sollen without zu; as, Er soll es mir senden, He is to send it to me. Ich sollte Ihnen sagen, I was to tell you. (See p. 257, 6.)

## EXERCISE XXXII.

On A. B. C. of this section in connection with Sect. XXIII. p 253.

## Erfundigungen nach dem Befinden eines Freundes.

Inquiry after the state of health of a friend.

Guten Morgen Herr W. Wie? Sie sind noch nicht<sup>1</sup> abgereist?! Leider<sup>2</sup> nicht und zwar<sup>3</sup>, wie es mir leid thut (p. 215) mittheilen<sup>4</sup> zu müssen, weil Ihr Freund H. krank ist. O, und ich habe Nichts davon gewußt! (p. 243) Ich wollte Ihnen schreiben, habe aber Ihre Adresse nicht finden können. Kommen Sie! ich will sogleich zu ihm. Wie geht es ihm? (p. 214, L. 4), wie ist es nur gekommen? Es ist mir lieb, (p. 219) melden<sup>5</sup> zu können, daß es wieder besser geht. Seit wann leidet (st.) er. Er ist (p. 281, l.) seit vorigem<sup>6</sup> Montag zu Bette. Wie hat sich das zugetragen?<sup>7</sup> er war doch so munter<sup>8</sup> als wir uns trennten<sup>9</sup>. Ja; denken Sie nur! wir gehen (p. 281, 1. a.) jenen Abend ganz heiter<sup>10</sup> nach Hause. Dicht<sup>11</sup> vor unsrer Wohnung wird ihm plötzlich übel<sup>12</sup>, er klagt<sup>13</sup> über Schwindel<sup>14</sup> und fällt (st.) fast<sup>15</sup> nieder<sup>16</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>not yet, <sup>2</sup>alas, <sup>3</sup>war (literally: *it is true*, indeed) often introduces the precise reason or circumstances inducing an action or state; Er ist unglücklich und zwar durch eigne Schuld, he is unhappy and that (or and he is so) through his own fault, <sup>4</sup>to impart to tell, <sup>5</sup>to announce, to state, <sup>6</sup>last, <sup>7</sup>to happen, <sup>8</sup>well, sprightly, <sup>9</sup>to part, <sup>10</sup>in good spirits, <sup>11</sup>close to, <sup>12</sup>p. 215 L. 4. werden, <sup>13</sup>to complain of; see über p. 60, e., <sup>14</sup>giddiness, <sup>15</sup>almost, nearly, <sup>16</sup>down,

Ich kann ihn kaum die Treppe hinaufbringen und auskleiden. Ich laufe (st.) auf die Straße, treffe (st.) zum Glück<sup>17</sup> einen Arzt, der mich begleitet und ihm ein Arznei giebt. Er glaubt, daß ihm die Trüffeln<sup>18</sup> geschadet (p. 212) haben, die ihm an jenem Abend so gut schmeckten (p. 215 L. 4). Wir hofften er werde<sup>19</sup> den nächsten Morgen aufstehen aber er liegt (st. p. 281. 1. b.) seit damals<sup>20</sup> im Fieber<sup>21</sup>, doch findet der Arzt daß es seit gestern besser geht. Schläft (st.) er? Er schläft seit gestern Morgen, genießt aber noch Nichts und klagt die ganze Zeit<sup>22</sup> über großen Durst. Weiß (p. 243, Note 3) seine Frau von seinen Zustände<sup>23</sup>? Ich will eben (p. 256, 5.) an sie schreiben. Ach ja! thun sie es doch (p. 285, B.) nur! der Brief geht diesen Vormittag<sup>24</sup>. Ich wollte sie nicht ängstigen und da (as) ich ihr bis jetzt<sup>25</sup> Nichts Befriedigendes<sup>26</sup> zu melden hatte (p. 87, 2.) unterließ (st.)<sup>27</sup> ich es lieber<sup>28</sup>. Bitte gehen Sie nur (p. 285, B.) hinauf, ich folge<sup>29</sup> (p. 282, 1, c.) Ihnen augenblicklich<sup>30</sup>; ich gehe erst nach der Apotheke<sup>31</sup> und bestelle etwas Selterwasser<sup>32</sup>. Hoffentlich<sup>33</sup> ist (st.) er auch bald wieder.

<sup>17</sup>fortunately, <sup>18</sup>truffles, <sup>19</sup>In stating indirectly what a person says or thinks, said or thought; the Conjunctive mood is used in German, <sup>20</sup>then, that time; <sup>21</sup>n. fever, <sup>22</sup>all the time, <sup>23</sup>condition, <sup>24</sup>forenoon, <sup>25</sup>till now, <sup>26</sup>nothing satisfactory, <sup>27</sup>to omit, not to do so, <sup>28</sup>rather, <sup>29</sup>p. 211, L. 2, <sup>30</sup>immediately, <sup>31</sup>Apothecary, <sup>32</sup>sodawater, <sup>33</sup>it is to be hoped.

## D. USE OF THE PARTICIPLES.

The participles govern the same case as the verb from which they are formed. The use of the PRESENT PARTICIPLE is more limited in German than in English.

### BOTH PARTICIPLES OCCUR

1. as **adjectives** declined compared and construed as such, (see XXX. Rules for the Construction of Sentences, E. Position of the Adjective etc.;) as, Daß singende

**Kind**, the singing child. **Das auf der Straße singende Kind**, The child singing in the street. **Eine treffendere Antwort**, An answer more to the point. **Die dringendsten Bitten**, The most urgent requests. **THE PAST PARTICIPLE**: **Der gesuchte, gesuchte, gesuchte Artikel**, the article sought for, more sought for, most sought for.

Participles used as adjectives in English may generally be employed as such in German. It is advisable, however, to consult the dictionary, on account of **certain deviations**; as, **INFIN.** **reizen** to irritate, to provoke, to charm; **PRES. PART.** **reizend**, used chiefly in the sense of *charming*; **PAST PART.** **gereizt**, used only for *irritated, enraged*; **schmeicheln** to flatter, yet not **schmeichelnde**, but **schmeichelhafte Berichte**, *flattering accounts*, whereas **schmeichelnd** means bland.

Notice the use of the German **PRES. PART. introduced by zu** as an attributive adjective as explained under b. b. p. 288. Examples: **Das zu singende Lied**, the song to be sung. **Ein sehr zu beklagender Verlust**, a loss much to be lamented.

**2. As substantives**, chiefly denoting *persons engaged in*; as, **Der Reisende** the travelling man, the traveller, **die Reisende** the travelling woman, **der (die) Eintretende** the entering man (woman); but also in the *neuter gender characterizing an act, &c.*; as, **Das Ueberraschende dieses Ereignisses**, The surprising *character* of this event. **Das Demüthigende dieses Auftritts**, The humiliating *nature* of this scene. **THE PAST PARTICIPLE**: **Der Gelehrte** the learned man, **der Getödtete** the killed person, **die Gerettete** the rescued woman, **das Uebertriebene dieser Behauptung** the exaggeration of this assertion, **das Geschehene** things done, **das Gesagte** the aforesaid.

Only past participles of **transitive** and of **such** intransitive verbs as are conjugated with the auxiliary verb **sein** (see p. 268, 1) can be used as adjectives or nouns.

**3. The present and past participles** are employed in German where they are used in English along with a verb in the same clause in order to express *adverbially the manner in which a thing is done*; as, **Er lernt es spielend**, *He learns it playing*. **Das Kind kommt singend**

durch den Garten, *The child comes singing through the garden*; or the condition in which the subject or the object of the clause is said to be; as, Du liegst hier träumend? You lie here dreaming? Er focht mit Wunden bedeckt, He fought covered with wounds. Ich glaubte dich davon unterrichtet, I believed you informed of it. Ich fand ihn schlafend or eingeschlafen, I found him sleeping or fallen asleep.

#### 4. NOTES RESPECTING THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

1. The past participle occurs **absolutely** as in English; as, unter uns gesagt, (said) between ourselves; zu Ihnen gesagt, said to you (only); zugegeben, granted; angenommen, (assuming) supposed; vorausgesetzt, premised (supposed); gesagt, gotten, said and done, no sooner said than done.

2. Sometimes it expresses a **command**; as, stillgestanden! stand still! vorgehen! take heed! losgelegt! let us begin! go on! zugefahren! drive on! (See p. 285. B.)

3. Its use, instead of the present participle, along with the verbs kommen and bringen, indicating the *manner of coming* and *bringing*, is remarkable; as, Er kommt geritten, gegangen, gelaufen, gefahren, He comes riding, walking, running, driving. Sie bringen ihn geführt, getragen, geschleppt, gefahren. They bring him, leading him, carrying, dragging him, driving him in a carriage.

4. The past participle is used more correctly than the present participle in English to **distinguish a condition** from a simple act in clauses like auf den Arm gestützt, *leaning on his arm*. On the other hand, reflectively, sich auf den Arm stützend, *assuming that posture*.

#### 5. THE ENGLISH PRESENT PARTICIPLE IS RENDERED BY DIFFERENT FORMS IN GERMAN.

a. The German present participle cannot be used like the English as an **abstract noun** denoting an occupation, art, &c., as, *the riding*, not das Reitend but das Reiten, formed of the Infinitive (see p. 148 C and p. 170, 1.); *painting* (occupation) das Malen, (the art); die Malerei, a painting ein Gemälde; *hunting* das Jagen; *fishing* die Fischei, das Fischen (occupation). See also p. 286, 3.

*b.* After the verbs *fühlen*, *heißen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *machen*, *sehen*, the English present participle must be translated by the Infinitive in German; as, I heard him saying, &c., *Ich hörte ihn sagen*, &c.; I saw him running, *Ich sah ihn laufen*. (See pp. 258, 7 and 286, 2).

*c.* When introduced by a preposition, and having the same subject (nominative) as the verb of the clause; as, *He* is accused of *having stolen*, (*i. e.*, *he* is accused that *he* has stolen). Here the present participle is rendered by the Infinitive with *zu*; *Er ist angeklagt gestohlen zu haben*. I saw him without *knowing* him, *Ich sah ihn ohne ihn zu kennen*. Instead of *waiting* for me he went off, *Anstatt auf mich zu warten ging er weg*. (Compare p. 289 2).

*d.* When introduced by a preposition along with a possessive or personal pronoun, and having a subject different from that of the leading verb; as *You reply without his asking you*. Here the participle must be resolved into a finite tense with the conjunction *daß*, *that*: *Sie antworteten ihm, ohne daß er Sie fragt*.

*e.* The English present participle, introduced by a preposition, is often used in contracting two clauses, the first of which may be understood as containing a demonstrative pronoun (see p. 93 *c*) which the preposition governs, and to which the second clause refers. Thus, "*I thank you for warning me*," must be rendered, *I thank you for this that you warn me*, *Ich danke Ihnen dafür, daß Sie mich warnen*. He was satisfied with having discovered the cause, *Er begnügte sich damit, die Ursache entdeckt zu haben*. (The Infinitive *zu haben* is explained by rule *c.* above). She is angry at your telling it, *Sie ist böse darüber, daß Sie es gesagt haben*.

In some cases the English present participle, introduced by a preposition, can be expressed in German by the Infinitive used as a noun, as, Excuse me for coming so late, *Entschuldige mich wegen meines Spätkommens*.



## f. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

are in German limited to adverbial expressions of **Manner** or **Condition**; as, Sie schwuren, die Hände erhebend, ihm zu folgen, they swore, *raising* their hands, to follow him. Sie feuern, im Dickicht verborgen, auf uns, the fire upon us, concealed in the thicket. (Compare p. 295, 3).

English participial clauses, expressing adverbially time, reason or cause, cannot be rendered Participially in German but must be resolved into dependent clauses introduced by such conjunctions as are or would be used in English if the participle were changed into a finite tense; as,

Expressing time, *When residing at Paris I often saw him*, Als ich in Paris wohnte, sah ich ihn oft (*When at Paris, &c., Als ich in Paris war, &c.*). (*After having dressed his wounds, she refreshed him with wine*, Nachdem sie seine Wunden verbunden hatte, erquidte sie ihn mit Wein. (*Whilst being thus engaged, I remarked*, Während ich so beschäftigt war, bemerkte ich. Before leaving town, Ehe ich die Stadt verließ.

Expressing reason or cause, *Being much occupied, I cannot write to you any more*, Indem (since), da (as), weil (because) ich sehr beschäftigt bin, kann ich dir nicht mehr schreiben. *The road being very bad, we moved but slowly*, Da or weil der Weg sehr schlecht war, bewegten wir uns nur langsam fort.

**Note 1.** Indem frequently expresses merely the simultaneousness of action, as, Indem er das Zimmer verließ, sagte er, In leaving the room he said.

**Note 2.** Da is substituted for als when, (referring to one single fact of the past), as, Da ich ein Kind war, hatte ich kindische Gedanken, When I was a child I thought as a child. This, however, ought to be done only when both time and reason are implied; viz. *When I was a child and because I was a child. Or in Isaiah LIII: Da er gestraft und gemartert ward, that er seinen Mund nicht auf.*

g. Participial clauses of an attributive character are either construed like adjective clauses, (see Sect.

**XXX E.** Position of the Adjective and Participle) or are resolved into relative clauses; as, *The man thus accosting me*, Der mich so anredende Mann, or der Mann, der mich so anredete. The man beating him mercilessly, der ihn unbarmherzig schlagende Mann, or der Mann, welcher ihn unbarmherzig schlug. The ship, being filled with water, sank, Das mit Wasser gefüllte Schiff sank, or Das Schiff, welches mit Wasser gefüllt war, sank. The troops, exhausted to the utmost, began to lose heart, Die auf's äußerste erschöpften Truppen, or die Truppen, welche auf's äußerste erschöpft waren, begannen zu verzagen.

---

## SECTION XXVI.

### THE REFLECTIVE FORM OF VERBS.

(In this section the paragraphs 2, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 are of particular importance.)

A verb in the reflective form expresses an activity affecting the person or thing from which it proceeds, as, *I feel (myself) well*, when the *feeling well* proceeds from and affects the same individual. A considerable number of verbs occur in the reflective form only, like the English, "*to betake one's self*" (sich begeben), "*to bethink one's self*" (sich bedenken). Yet almost any transitive verb may be used reflectively, as, Er schont sich, he spares himself.

1. A verb in the reflective form is construed with the accusative, sometimes with the dative of the personal pronoun which forms its nominative, as, present tense: Ich befinde mich *I feel myself* (well, ill, &c.), wir befinden uns *we feel ourselves*, du findest dich and

*ihr befinde* euch, *you feel yourself -selves*. In the third person singular of either gender and in the plural the reflexive pronoun *sich* (see p. 65, 3.) must be substituted for the accusative or dative, as the German *ihn* or *sie selbst* has not the force of the English reflexive, (see p. 72, 5, a.) therefore: *er* (*he*, *es*), *be findet sich*, *he* (*she*, *it*), *feels him-*, (*her-*, *it-*) *self*; *sie be finden sich*, *they feel themselves*; *Sie be finden sich*, *you feel yourself*. Imperfect: *Ich be fand mich*, *I felt myself*.

Accordingly a verb in the reflexive form is thus conjugated.

*Indicative Mood.*

PRESENT.

I rejoice, I am glad (happy).

Sing. *ich freue mich*  
*du freust dich*  
*er* (*sie*, *es*) *freut sich*  
 Plur. *wir freuen uns*  
*ihr freut euch*  
*sie freuen sich*

IMPERFECT.

I rejoiced, I was glad.

Sing. *ich freute mich*  
*du freustest dich*  
*er freute sich*  
 Plur. *wir freuten uns*  
*ihr freutet euch*  
*sie freuten sich*

PERFECT.

I have been (*was*) glad

Sing. *ich habe mich gefreut* etc.  
 Plur. *wir haben uns gefreut* etc.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been glad.

Sing. *ich hatte mich gefreut* etc.  
 Plur. *wir hatten uns gefreut* etc.

FIRST FUTURE.

I shall be glad

Sing. *ich werde mich freuen* etc.  
 Plur. *wir werden uns freuen* etc.

SECOND FUTURE.

I shall have been glad

Sing. *ich werde mich gefreut haben* etc.  
 Plur. *wir werden uns gefreut haben* etc.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

I should be glad

Sing. *ich würde mich freuen* etc.  
 Plur. *wir würden uns freuen* etc.

CONDITIONAL PAST.

I should have been glad

Sing. *ich würde mich gefreut haben* etc.  
 Plur. *wir würden uns gefreut haben* etc.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. *freue dich!* (and *politely*) *freuen Sie sich!* rejoice!  
*freue er* (*sie*) *sich!* let him (*her*) rejoice!

Plur. *freuen wir uns!* let us rejoice! *freuet euch!* (and *politely*)  
*freuen Sie sich!* rejoice ye! *freuen sie sich!* let them rejoice!

## INFINITIVE.

**Sich** (zu) freuen to rejoice, **sich** gefreut (zu) haben to have rejoiced.

The **compound Past tenses** of all reflective verbs are conjugated with the **auxiliary haben**, because reflective verbs are of a *transitive* or rather *objective* nature.

The tenses of the **CONJUNCTIVE MOOD** will be readily formed in analogy to the above.

## 2. POSITION OF THE REFLECTIVE PRONOUN.

*a.* If the finite verb, as in the above specimen, directly follows the **nominative** the reflective pronoun is placed immediately after it; *e. g.* **Ich** freue mich deinen Wunsch erfüllen zu können, I rejoice to be able to fulfil thy wish. **Wir** haben uns sehr gefreut, Sie zu sehen, We have been very glad to see you. **Der Vater** wird sich des Wiedersehens freuen, Your father will rejoice at meeting you again. **Man** muß sich nicht über das Unglück seiner Feinde freuen, One must not rejoice at the misfortune of one's enemies.

*b.* But the reflective pronoun is placed **immediately after its nominative** if the finite verb is removed to the beginning or the end of the clause; as, **Ich** höre, daß **er** sich heute besser befindet, I learn that he feels better to-day. **Wie** befinden Sie sich? How are you? **Hast** du dich über das Geschenk gefreut? Were you pleased with the present? **Ich** glaube nicht, daß **er** sich darüber sehr freuen wird, I don't think he will be very glad about it. (Compare Sect. XXX, Construction).

**Note.** The Reflective Pronoun is often placed even **before the Nominative expressed by a noun**. This is the case chiefly in **inverted** sentences; as, darüber hat sich der Vater sehr gefreut. *The father has much rejoiced at this.* Oft wundern sich die Menschen, *Often men wonder*, and always in **dependent** clauses having as their nominatives the indefinite substantives Alles, Vieles, Manches, Weniges, Nichts (p. 114, Note 2); as, Wenn sich Nichts ändert If nothing is changed (see XXX. B. 6.)

3. A number of reflective verbs, given p. 205, L. 4, have, besides the reflective accusative **an object in the genitive**; as, *sich erinnern* to remember; *Ich erinnere mich des Mannes*, I remember (of) the man.

4. The reflective dative (for which in the third person likewise *sich*, to *him*-, *her*-, *it-self*, is substituted) is used with verbs having besides a real object in the accusative; as, *Ich eignete mir diese Fertigkeit an*, I acquired (to myself) this facility. *Er verbittet sich alle Complimente*, He deprecates all ceremonies.

The reflective verbs of this kind are given p. 210, c. Other verbs taking their object in the dative (see p. 211, L. 2. &c.) of course retain that case when used reflectively; as, *Du schadest dir*, You injure yourself. *Er schmeichelt sich*, he flatters himself.

5. The meaning of common verbs is frequently altered by the reflective form, and in this respect particularly, the dictionary must be consulted; as, *denken* to think, to meditate, *sich denken* to fancy, to imagine, *fügen*, to join, to put together, *sich fügen* to submit, *schlagen* to strike, *sich schlagen* to fight, *betragen* to amount to, *sich betragen* to demean oneself, behave.

6. English verbs used with both a transitive and intransitive meaning are generally rendered by the reflective form when used intransitively; as, I open the door, *Ich öffne die Thür*. The door opens, *Die Thür öffnet sich*. I turn the key, *Ich drehe den Schlüssel*. The key turns, *Der Schlüssel dreht sich*. He assembled the people, *Er versammelte das Volk*. The people assembled, *Das Volk versammelte sich*. She gathers flowers, *Sie sammelt Blumen*. The water gathers, *Das Wasser sammelt sich*.

7. The English passive used impersonally, (or rather

without stating the agent, by whom the action is performed) is extensively rendered by the **Reflective** form in German; as, *The plant is developed*, Die Pflanze entwickelt sich. In a similar manner: *I am afraid* Ich fürchte mich, *I am mistaken*, Ich irre mich, *I am ashamed* ich schäme mich, *I am astonished*, Ich wundere mich, *I am vexed or grieved*, Ich gräme mich.

Sometimes the past tense is rendered by the aid of the verb **to become**; as, das Tau verwickelte sich, The rope became entangled.

8. **Reflective verbs** are frequently impersonal; as, **Es** ereignet sich, es trägt sich zu, es begiebt sich, It happens, it occurs, (*personally* ich begeben mich, I betake myself). **Es** gehört sich, es schickt sich, It is becoming, it is proper, **Es** fragt sich, it is questionable, to be questioned, **Es** handelt sich (um Etwas), (French: *Il s'agit*), The question is, it concerns, something is at stake, **Es** verlohnt sich, It is worth while, it repays the trouble; or rendered by the **English passive**, **Es** begreift sich it may be easily conceived, **Es** versteht sich, It is understood, (das versteht sich, of course), **Es** fand sich, zeigte sich, it will be found. Sometimes they are rendered by the **English PRES. PART.**: Das sagt sich leichter, als es sich thut, It is easier *saying* than *doing* that or that is more easily said than done.

9. The auxiliary verb of mood **lassen** (*to allow to*), when used reflectively and impersonally may be rendered as follows; **Es** läßt sich nicht ändern, It cannot be helped, things can not be altered. **Es** läßt sich denken, It can be imagined. **Es** läßt sich nicht sagen, It cannot be said. Das ließ sich erwarten, That might have been (was to be) expected. **Es** ließe sich Manches unternehmen, Many a thing might be undertaken. **Es** läßt sich hören, It is plausible. The pupil will remember that the verb **lassen** as an **Auxiliary** is always followed by the Infinitive of the active voice. (See pp. 258, 7 and 286. a. Which explains the above constructions).

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

## On Section XXVI.

The figures 1—9. refer to the paragraphs of this Section.

(The two travelling-companions address each-other in the familiar form which also is used in the Plural when another person is mentioned collectively with the friend. By and towards the visitor the conventional form is used),

**Aufmerksame Freunde. Attentive Friends.**

Ah sie da!<sup>1</sup> Du hast Dich ein Wenig<sup>2</sup> im Bette aufgerichtet<sup>3</sup>. Ich freue mich (1.) zu sehen daß Du Dich (2.) so weit<sup>4</sup> erholst<sup>5</sup> hast. Nun<sup>6</sup> ich habe mich gut ausgeschlafen<sup>7</sup>; ich fühlte<sup>8</sup> mich aber doch etwas matt<sup>9</sup> als ich mich erheben<sup>10</sup> wollte. Darüber (p. 94. Note) wundere ich mich nicht. Du kannst Dich freuen, daß Du Dich wieder rühren<sup>11</sup> kannst. Doch Herr F. befindet sich<sup>12</sup> draußen<sup>13</sup>. Wir trafen uns<sup>14</sup> auf der Straße und als er erfuhr<sup>15</sup> weshalb (p. 109, 4.) sich unsere Abreise verzögert<sup>16</sup> (7.) erbot<sup>17</sup> er sich mich zu begleiten um (p. 290, 3) sich selbst zu überzeugen<sup>18</sup> wie Du Dich befindest. Ich denke mir (5.) daß Ihr Euch (p. 65, 3.) ohne Bedenken<sup>19</sup> sprechen<sup>20</sup> dürft. Doch darfst Du Dich nicht aufregen<sup>21</sup>. Ihr dürft Euch nicht zu lange unterhalten<sup>22</sup>. Ihr müßt Euch den Umständen<sup>23</sup> fügen (5). Er wird sich bald verabschieden<sup>24</sup>. Hoffentlich<sup>25</sup> könnt Ihr Euch Morgen auf längere Zeit<sup>26</sup> wiedersehen. Bitte Herr F. wollen Sie sich hier herein bemühen<sup>27</sup>. Entschuldigen<sup>28</sup>

(When verbs acquire a special meaning by the refl. form (5.) they are marked *sich* —.)

<sup>1</sup>see now, <sup>2</sup>a little, <sup>3</sup>to raise, <sup>4</sup>so far, <sup>5</sup>sich erholen to recover, <sup>6</sup>well, <sup>7</sup>sich —, to take a good sleep, <sup>8</sup>to feel, <sup>9</sup>faint, feeble, <sup>10</sup>to raise, <sup>11</sup>sich —, to stir, <sup>12</sup>sich befinden is simply a somewhat refined expression for "to be" when this verb is used in reference to a particular state of health or place; as, Wie befinden Sie sich? *How are you?* Das Geld befand sich in der Börse, *the money was in the purse*; <sup>13</sup>outside, in the other room, <sup>14</sup>sich treffen, to meet, <sup>15</sup>st. to learn, <sup>16</sup>to delay, <sup>17</sup>to offer, <sup>18</sup>to convince, <sup>19</sup>hesitation, <sup>20</sup>sich —, to see, <sup>21</sup>to excite, <sup>22</sup>sich —, to have a conversation, <sup>23</sup>m. circumstance, <sup>24</sup>sich —, to take ones leave, <sup>25</sup>it is to be hoped, <sup>26</sup>a longer time, <sup>27</sup>(politely) to step in, <sup>28</sup>to excuse,

Sie wenn ich Sie habe warten lassen<sup>29</sup>. Bitte recht sehr<sup>30</sup>! das ist ja ganz natürlich<sup>31</sup>. Nun, lieber Freund, da sehen wir uns (2.) ja doch noch einmal. Es freut mich (XXVII, 3.), daß Sie sich besser befinden. Ich danke herzlich. Bitte setzen Sie sich<sup>32</sup>. Ich danke, ich muß mich sogleich<sup>33</sup>. wieder empfehlen<sup>34</sup>. Ich schäme mich (7.) nur, mich Ihnen im Bette zu präsentiren. Ach! Sie werden sich doch<sup>35</sup> vor mir nicht geniren<sup>36</sup>? Es versteht sich ja von selbst (8.). Ich fühle mich in der That<sup>37</sup> noch etwas schwach<sup>38</sup>. Das begreift sich (8.) leicht<sup>39</sup>. Es wird sich geben<sup>40</sup>, wenn Sie sich ein Wenig pflegen<sup>41</sup>. Ich ärgere<sup>42</sup> mich nur, daß ich meinen Kollegen<sup>43</sup> hier so lange aufhalte<sup>44</sup>. Beruhige<sup>45</sup> Dich nur! das ließ sich nun einmal nicht vermeiden (9.). Ich fürchte<sup>46</sup> nur, Deine Geschäfte<sup>47</sup> werden sich sehr verwickeln<sup>48</sup>. Das Meiste<sup>49</sup> hat sich brieflich<sup>50</sup> abmachen<sup>51</sup> lassen (9.) und das Uebrige<sup>52</sup> wird sich bald wieder ins Gleiche bringen<sup>53</sup> lassen (9.). Du kannst Dich darauf verlassen (you may rely upon it). Lieb Dich nur zufrieden<sup>54</sup>! es läßt sich doch nicht ändern (9.). Ja. Ruhen Sie sich nur recht ordentlich aus<sup>55</sup>. Stärken Sie sich gehörig<sup>56</sup> und machen Sie sich keine Gedanken<sup>57</sup>. Ich muß mich jetzt hinweg begeben<sup>58</sup> (1), werde mir aber das Vergnügen machen<sup>59</sup> Ihnen Morgen ein Paar Flaschen Wein (p. 135, Note 1.) zu schicken, der sich ohne Nachtheil<sup>60</sup> trinken läßt. Hernach<sup>61</sup> wollen wir uns noch einmal zusammen amüsiren. Halten Sie sich wacker<sup>62</sup>! Adieu!

<sup>29</sup>to keep waiting, <sup>30</sup>"don't mention it", <sup>31</sup>it is quite a matter of course, <sup>32</sup>sich —, to take a seat, <sup>33</sup>at once, immediately, <sup>34</sup>sich —, to bid one goodbye, <sup>35</sup>doch often means, surely, I trust, <sup>36</sup>sich —, from the Fr. *se gêner* to feel constrained, <sup>37</sup>indeed, <sup>38</sup>weak, <sup>39</sup>easily, <sup>40</sup>sich —, es giebt sich, it passes off, it will be all right again, <sup>41</sup>sich —, to take care of one's self, <sup>42</sup>sich —, to feel annoyed, to vex one's self, <sup>43</sup>colleague, <sup>44</sup>to detain, <sup>45</sup>sich —, to be at ease, <sup>46</sup>to fear, <sup>47</sup>(business) affairs, <sup>48</sup>sich —, to become confused, entangled, <sup>49</sup>the greater part, <sup>50</sup>by letter, <sup>51</sup>to settle, <sup>52</sup>the rest, <sup>53</sup>to put all right, <sup>54</sup>to set one's heart at rest, <sup>55</sup>to take a good rest, <sup>56</sup>to strengthen properly, <sup>57</sup>sich Gedanken machen, to trouble one's head about (a thing), <sup>58</sup>to betake one's self away, <sup>59</sup>to give one's self the pleasure, <sup>60</sup>injury, harm, <sup>61</sup>afterwards, <sup>62</sup>to be of good cheer.



## SECTION XXVII.

## THE IMPERSONAL FORM (see p. 68, 5.)

is in the first instance proper to verbs expressing an activity, which cannot be ascribed to a conscious individual and hence it occurs

1. With the phenomena of external nature; as, *Es dämmt, es tagt*, It dawns; *Es dunkelt*, It is growing dark; *Es blizt, donnert, regnet, hagelt, schneit und weht heftig*, It lightens, thunders, rains, hails, snows and blows violently; *Es reist*, there is hoar-frost; *Es friert*, It freezes, *Es thaut*, It thaws, *Es wettert*, It is boisterous. Likewise with the verbs *sein* and *werden* in *Es ist kalt*, warm, It is cold, warm; *Es wird dunkel*, It is growing dark, *Es wird Nacht*, Night is coming on; *Es ist aus*, It is all over, *Es ist über*, It has passed over.

2. The Impersonal form is farther used with phenomena or sensations of our own physical nature by which the person is sensible of being acted upon, and accordingly appears in the accusative (sometimes in the dative), the impersonal pronoun *Es* being the grammatical subject, as in the English phrase: It pains me. *i. e.* I feel pain; as, *Es friert mich, es ist mir kalt*, I feel cold, *Es schmeckt mir gut*, I like the taste of it (I have a good appetite); *Mir wird wohl, unwohl*, I begin to feel well, ill.

The English language generally substitutes a nominative for this objective accusative or dative, which in German often stands at the beginning of the phrase whilst the nominative *es* is often altogether omitted (as in the English *methinks*, *Mich dünkt*); as, *Mich friert*, I feel cold, *Mich hungert*, I am hungry (*ich bin hungrig*), *mich dürstet*, I am thirsty (*ich bin durstig*), *Mich schläft* I am sleepy, *Mir bangt (vor)*, I am anxious (about),

afraid (of); *Mich gelüftet* (nach), I desire; *Mir eselt* (vor) I loathe, *es eselt mich* an it makes n.e sick, it is loathsome to me; *Es träumte mir*, I dreamt.

3. **Moral and intellectual sensations** are also expressed impersonally; as, *Es ist mir*, als ob, I have a notion, I feel as if; *Es scheint mir*, It seems to me; *Es schmerzt*, *verdrückt*, *empört mich*, It grieves, annoys, provokes me; *Es reut mich*, It repents me, I rue; *Es fällt mir auf*, It surprises me; *es überrascht mich*, It takes me by surprise; *Es fällt mir ein* (literally, *It falls in to me*), It occurs to me; *Es kommt mir vor* (literally, *It comes before me*), *es dünkt mich*, It appears to me; *Mich dünkt*, methinks.

If the pronoun *es* is made to follow the verb it is often contracted with it, the *e* being elided; as, *Mir gebricht's* (an), I lack, have not; *Ich glückt's*, *ihm gelingt's*, He is lucky, he succeeds with; *Mir geht's* wohl, I am getting on well; *Wie geht's?* How do you do? *Uns gefällt's* hier, We like this place.

**Note 1.** Observe the following distinctions: *Ich bereue*, I repent; *Es reut mich* (it repents me), I am overcome with remorse; *Ich bedaure*, I pity; *Es dauert mich*, It moves me with compassion; *Ich wundere mich*, I wonder at; *Es wundert mich*, It makes me wonder; *Ich freue mich*, I rejoice; *Es freut mich*, It makes me rejoice; *Ich verlange*, I demand; *Ich verlange nach*, I have a desire for; *Es verlangt mich*, I am anxious; *Ich bewege mich*, I move; *Es bewegt mich*, It moves me, it induces me; *Ich rühre mich*, I move about; *Es rührt mich*, It touches me. From these instances it will be seen that the verb, when used personally, involves a **more voluntary** and spontaneous direction of feeling, proceeding from a conviction established in the mind, whilst in the impersonal form it indicates the immediate or impulsive feeling by which the individual is **overcome**, as if from without.

A complete list of the impersonal verbs governing the DATIVE has been given p. 213, List 4. and will, on account of its idiomatical character, be found to repay the trouble of special study by the more advanced pupil.

4. The following idioms may here be noticed: The impersonal pronoun *Es* largely represents in an indefinite way the English *the thing, the affair, the undertaking, the expedition*; the last in phrases like *Es geht fort*, I, we must depart. *Morgen geht's nach Deutschland*, Tomorrow we start for Germany. *Wohin geht es?* Whither bound?—*Es kommt vor* it occurs; *Es geschieht*, It happens; *Es geht los*, (an) It begins; *Es geht, Es geht an*, It will do, it is tolerable, practicable; *Es geht nicht, Es geht nicht an*, It won't do; *Es thut Nichts*, It does not matter; *Es geht über*, It passes off; *Es dauert lange*, It takes a long time.

5. USE OF *Es ist, Es sind, Es giebt, THERE IS, THERE ARE*  
(French: *Il y a*).

a. The English phrases *There is, There are*, are rendered by *Es ist Sing.* and *Es sind Plur.* when the statement is **definite with respect to the locality** in which a thing &c. is said to be, however indefinite the statement may be as to the **thing itself**; as, *Es ist Etwas in meinem Auge*, There is something *in my eye*. *Es war eben Etwas an der Thür*, There was just now something (some creature) at the door. *Es ist Jemand in dem Zimmer gewesen*, Somebody has been in the room. *Es sind zehn Zimmer in diesem Hause*, There are ten rooms in this house.

In the same manner *Es ist, es sind* are used in general statements having the character of **manifest truth**; as, *Es ist ein Gott*, There is a God. *Es sind Sterne am Himmel*, There are stars in the skies. *Es sind Fische in der See*, There are fish in the sea.

As the verb *sein to be* governs the nominative, the impersonal pronoun *es* is **rendered superfluous** when the phrases *there is, there are, there was, there were* occur **in the middle of the clause**; as, *In diesem Hause sind zehn Zimmer*, In this house *there* are ten rooms. *In dem kleinen Stübchen waren mehrere Personen*, In the little room *there* were several persons.

b. *There is and there are* are rendered by the **Singular form *es giebt*** (*there was, there were es gab*) when the statement, however definite as to the **thing &c. itself**, is **vague or intended to produce the impression of vagueness with respect to locality**; as, *Es giebt viele schöne Gebäude in dieser großen Stadt*, There are many fine buildings in this large town. *Es giebt nur einen Mann in diesem Reiche, der dich retten kann*, There is only one man in these realms who can save thee. *Es giebt hier einen jungen Menschen, der seine Aeußerungen ein wenig mehr bewachen könnte*, There is here

a young fellow (whom I do not chose to point out) who might be a little more guarded in his expressions. *Likewise* where vague ideas are premised *in the hearer*. Es giebt einen Gott, There is (exists) a God.

Especially with **abstract nouns** Es giebt has the force of *there occurs, there occur*; as, Es giebt im Menschenleben Augenblicke, There are (there occur) moments in the life of man. Es giebt Manches, was sich nicht sagen läßt, There is many a thing, which cannot be told; *also*: Es giebt auch schöne Forellen in diesem Bache, There are (there occur) also fine trout in this stream. Solch ein Ding giebt es nicht, Such a thing does not exist (occur).

From the above instances Es giebt einen Mann &c. Es giebt einen jungen Menschen &c. it appears that es giebt has the **logical subject in the accusative**. This is owing to the verb *geben* of which giebt is the 3<sup>d</sup> Pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. **governing the accusative**. This is farther the reason why the impersonal pronoun **es** must be retained even in the middle of the clause along with giebt, gab, because the sentence would otherwise have no nominative, hence: In Berlin giebt es einen Arzt, In Berlin there is a physician. Unter diesen Umständen giebt es keinen andern Rath, Under these circumstances there is no other expedient. Damals gab es noch keinen Buchdruck, In those times typography did not yet exist. Hier giebt es keinen Wein, There is no wine to be got here. (Compare p. 196, Note 2 and p. 335, *Obs.*)

**6. The impersonal pronoun not expressed in English.** Especially in *poetry* and in *solemn* language, the verb sometimes occurs in the impersonal form, although its proper subject is not suppressed, similar to the English; *it is I, ich bin es*; as, Es grüßen Euch alle Brüder, All the brethren greet you; and in Goethe's *Erlkönig*: Es scheinen die alten Weiden so grau, It is the old willows that gleam so grey. Es donnern die Höhen, es zittert der Steg (Schiller), The heights are thundering, and the bridge is trembling. (see p. 22.)

**7. The impersonal form of the verb to be is not used in German before the personal pronouns I, thou, he she, we &c.** See p. 68, 5. and Ex. XVII.

**8. The passive voice used impersonally is in German, as in the Latin dicitur they say, it is said; employed**

in representing an action as going on without definitely stating the persons performing it and is then extended even to intransitive verbs; thus in Schiller's *Wallenstein*: *In dem Zelte wird gesungen und gejubelt*, In the tent they sing and shout, there is singing and shouting in the tent. *Es wird geschossen*, they are shooting. Compare p. 288.

---

## SECTION XXVIII.

### ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

On the **accent** in adverbs see p. 25, 4., 5., on their comparison see XIII. 1. (p. 122), 2. (p. 124.) B. (p. 125), E. (p. 127), — on **adjectives** formed of adverbs see p. 89, 9. and on the **position** of Adverbs XXX. D.

#### A. FORM AND CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs and adverbial expressions are used in qualifying verbs, adjectives and other adverbs with regard to **place**, **time**, **manner**, **cause**, **purpose** etc. They are either primitive adverbs, as *da*, *there*, or cases of nouns chiefly Genitives; as, *morgens*, *in the morning*, *abends* in the evening, *jedenfalls*, *under all circumstances*, *hinsichts*, *with regard to* and compounds and derivatives of nouns; as, *bergan'*, *uphill*, *seewärts*, *seawards*; or adjectives and their derivatives; as, *blind* or *blindlings* *gehörchen*, to obey blindly or implicitly. Adverbs are also frequently compounds of prepositions; as, *voraus*, *in advance*, *vorbei*, *past*, *durchaus*, throughout, positively; or of adverbs and prepositions; as, *hiermit*, *herewith*, *somit*, *accordingly* or of Pronouns. See p. 25, 5.

**Adjectives used as adverbs remain unchanged** and the pupil must not take the common **Adjective-suffix lich** for an equivalent of the English adverbial suffix *ly*; *freundschaftlich*, for instance means *amicable* as well as *amicably*; *kleinlich*, *petty*.

Only in a few cases the suffix *lich* has preserved its originally adverbial force and some of these require attention; *freilich*, certainly (**not** *freely*), *gänglich*, entirely, utterly, *höchlich*, highly, *kurzlich*, recently (**not** *shortly*), *neulich*, the other day (**not** *newly*), *schwerlich*, hardly (**not** *heavily*), *wahrlich*, verily truly, *ziemlich*, tolerably, rather, fairly, pretty much. In others the suffix *lich* merely adds to the strength of the adjective; as *ewig*, eternal, eternally, *ewiglich* *for ever and ever*, *gewiß*, certain, certainly, *gewißlich* *wahr*, verily true, *sicher* sure, surely *sicherlich* *most assuredly*, *be'müthig* humble humbly, *demüthiglich*, with great humility.

**Even participles are used adverbially**; as, *reizend schön*, *charmingly beautiful*; *verzweifelt dumm*, *desperately stupid*.

In the following the adverbs (including some adjectives used as adverbs and given in parenthesis) are grouped **systematically** in order to give pupils, writing German, a more ready insight into their application and force than is afforded by other works. In this respect also frequent reference to the list given under B. below will be found of advantage.

### 1. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

(For the adverbial expressions of Place refer to p. 50, 1.)

**Observation:** It may be noticed that originally most adverbs, prepositions and even conjunctions express a relation of place as having been of chief importance even in the earlier stages of human existence; as, *da*, *there*. As '*being in a place*' connects itself at once with the idea of *duration*, the same adverb immediately comes to express the relation of time; as, *da*, *then*; and as facts coinciding in place and time are most frequently found to be connected as *cause and effect* the adverb becomes ultimately a conjunction expressing *cause, motive, manner* etc. as, *da*, *since, whereas*. In the same manner the conjunction *weil*, *because*, originally means *while* (from *Weile*, *a while* whence *weilen*, *to dwell*). The same progressive adaptation will be observed in most prepositions and Conjunctions; as, *nahe*, near, *nach* (prep.), after, *nach*, according to.

The Interrogative (and relative) adverbs *Wo?* where, in what place? *woher?* from what place? *wohin?* whither, to what place? are explained XI. E. C. p. 111. Other compounds like *woran*, *worin*, *womit*, *wowen* etc., are pronominal and explained XI. D. 4., p. 109. (*Wo, if*, as a Conjunction, see p. 330).

a. *Of Place in general: überall*, *allerwärts*, *allenthalben*, *everywhere*; *irgend* somewhere; *nirgend*, *nirgendes* nowhere, (weit und breit, far and wide) *umher*, about.

b. *Of this Place: hier* here, *hierorts*, *hiersebst* in this locality town etc.; (*nahe* near), *hüben* on this side, on our side, here with us; *hinieden* in this nether world, *diesseits* on this side.

c. *Of that Place: da* there, *dort* there, (the proper distinction between *da* present to view (even here) and *dort* there, in another place (in another town, house) is generally overlooked), (*weit* far, *fern* distant), *daselbst* in that place, town, locality, *doben* there above, *drunten* down there (see *oben* and *unten*), *drüben*, over yonder (opposite of *hüben*) *anderswo* elsewhere, *jenseits* on yon side. Many compounds of *da* and *hier* with prepositions; as, *daran*, *hieran*, *dabei*, *hierbei*, *damit*, *hiermit* are in reality compounds of the substantive-demonstratives *das* and *dies* (the latter like the Latin *hic* identical with *hier*) and their use and construction must be well ascertained from pp. 69, 1; 71, 2; 93, c., 297, e.

As the pronominal compounds with *das* (*da*, *dar*), here mentioned must still be counted adverbs the pupil may notice that in translating these in connection with a complementary dependent clause introduced by *daß*, or clause with the Infinitive with *zu*, the *da*, *dar* is not rendered and the preposition joined to it is taken in connection with the finite verb or the Infinitive of the succeeding clause, which is turned into an English present Participle; as, *Verlassen Sie sich darauf daß ich komme*, rely upon my coming, *Ich bin zufrieden damit, es gesehen zu haben*, I am contented with having seen it.

*d. Of Place relative to a given point or points:* *mitten in the middle*, *innen* within, *darin* there in, *drinnen* there within, *außen* outside, *draußen* there outside, *außwendig* at the outside (also *by heart*), *inwendig* inside, *rechts* to the right, *links* to the left, *vorn* in front, *hinten* in the rear, at the back, *unten* (drunten) in a place below, *oben* (droben) in a place above,  *rings* all around *umher*, *herum* around, *beisammen* together, assembled, *zusammen* together, along with, *auseinander* asunder and other compounds of *einander* as *nacheinander* after another, *besonders* apart or separately, *allerseits* from all sides.

*e. Of motion unlimited:* *weg* away, *dahin* away, gone, (lost), *fort* away, off, *zurück* back, *wieder* back again, *hin* und *her* hither and thither, *freuz* und *quer* in all directions, *auf* und *nieder*, *auf* und *ab* up and down, *ab* und *zu* to and fro, *drunter* und *drüber*, *pell*, *mell*.

*f. Of motion in relation to b. and c.:* *her* *hither* *here*, (towards the speakers place) with numerous compounds which are explained p. 64, E. *hierher* hither, *thisway*, *daher* from thence, along, *dorthier* from thence, from that side, *dahin* and *dorthin* to that place.

*g. Of motion in relation to given points:* *gradeaus* *straight on*, *vorwärts* forward, *rückwärts* backwards, *quer* right across, *seitwärts* sideways, and all the many compounds of *wärts*, *rechts* to the right, *links*, to the left, *empor* (in *die Höhe*) up, upwards, *herauf* and *hinauf* up to some place (see *d.*) *nieder* down downwards, *hinab* and *herab* down, *herunter* and *hinunter* down into.

## 2. ADVERBS OF TIME.

(For the adverbial expressions of time refer to p. 54, 2.)

The Interrogative (and relative) adverb *wann?* *when?* *at what time?* is explained XI. E., p. 111; — *wie lange?* how long? *wie oft?* how often.

(The adverbs under *a.* and *b.* imply a sequence sometimes applied to place.)



a. *when?* (in a definite order): *erstens firstly, in the first place, zweitens secondly, drittens thirdly; and so on to letztens lastly* (p. 137, C.).

b. (*when?* in a sequence not definite): *erst, zuerst, first, at first; vorher, zuvor before this, zuvorderst in the next place, (foremost) zunächst next of all, demnächst, nächstdem next to that, nacheinander after an other, dann, sodann then, darauf thereupon, danach, thereafter, ferner farther, weiterhin farther on, zuletzt last, lastly, allerlezt last of all.*

Of the same class but more strictly referring to time are: *Anfangs at first, hernach afterwards, nachher thereafter, später later on, endlich finally, schließlich in conclusion; also einstweilen, inzwischen, mittlerweile and unterdessen in the meantime, meanwhile.*

c. *when?* (fixing and defining a day): *heute to day, vorgestern the day before yesterday, gestern yesterday, gestern spät late last night, morgen tomorrow, morgen früh tomorrow early, frühestens morgen tomorrow at the earliest, spätestens übermorgen the day after tomorrow at the latest, Morgens in the morning, Mittags at midday, Abends in the evening, Nachts at night-time.*

d. *when* (with a present): *jetzt at present, now, gegenwärtig at present, grade just, just now, just then, eben, jetzt eben just now. The following are relative to a "past": noch still, nun (see B. list) now (now, that —), bereits already, schon already, by this time, bisher hitherto.*

e. The questioning *je, jemals ever; as in, "was there ever —?", is there ever —? will there ever —?* and *irgend any* and their negative response *nie, niemals never*, are of course applicable to Past, Present and Future and therefore not repeated under each of these.

f. *when?* (with a past): *da then, damals at that time. The rest are not limited, bisher hither, eben, soeben just now, kürzlich, unlängst a short time ago, lately, neulich the other day, leztthin, jüngst lately*

neuerdings of late, recently, sonst else, formerly, früher formerly (see c. above) lange her long since, ehem in former times, of old, einmal (colloquially) once, once upon a time, einst, einstens at one time.

g. *when?* (with a future): *fortan henceforth*, and ab see p. 48, 2, 3, *augenblicklich instantly*, (as an adjective *momentary*) *sofort forthwith*, *sogleich* (colloquially *gleich*) *directly*, *flugs*, *stracks* (somewhat antiquated), *instantaneously*, *straightway*, *balb soon*, *erstens* and *nächstens* very soon, *einmal* once, *some day* (to come), *einst, dereinst* sometime (to come), *nimmer never* (emphatic), *nimmer mehr never* to happen.

h. *how long?* *ewiglich everlastingly*, *immerda for ever* and ever, *immerfort unceasingly*, *immer always*, *stets always*, ever, *immerwährend, fortwährend continually*, *beständig constantly*, (*unaufhörlich incessantly*), *noch still*, *noch immer still* (continuing), *lange for a long time*, *minutenlang for minutes*, *stundenlang, tagelang* etc. for hours, days etc. etc. —

i. *how often?* definitely: *einmal zweimal*, etc. (XIV. H. p. 139) *indef.: selten seldom*, *rarely*, *wenig little*, *bißweilen, zuweilen, mitunter sometimes*, *gelegentlich occasionally*, *dann und wann now and then*, *manchmal sometimes*, *mehrmals several times*, *wiederholt repeatedly*, *oft, öfter, oftmal often*, *häufig frequently*, *viel much*, *noch ein'mal, once more*, *wieder again*, *immer wieder again and again*.

k. The following adverbs of Transition are as much adverbs of *manner* as of *time*: *allmählich gradually*, *nach und nach little by little*, *balb dies, balb das, now this, now that*, sometimes — sometimes, *eilends speedily*, *zusehends apace*, *plötzlich suddenly*, *jäh, jählings suddenly*, *vehemently sudden*; — also *einzelu singly* and *zugleich simultaneously*, at the same time or period.

### 3. ADVERBS OF MANNER.

(For the various adverbial expressions generally comprised under this head see VI. D., 3, 4, 5, 6 p. 57—62.)

The Interrogative (and relative) is *wie? how? in what way or manner?* of what quality?

a. of *Specification*: *nämlich to wit, viz., that is to say*, namentlich more especially, beispieelsweise as an example, eigens expressly, besonders (in)sonders, particularly, especially, vornehmlich and hauptsächlich principally, chiefly, vorzugsweise preeminently, ausnahmsweise by way of exception, überhaupt on the whole (wenn überhaupt *if at all*), zumal (da) especially (as).

b. of *Conjunction*: auch also, ebenfalls, gleichfalls, dergleichen likewise, dazu, noch dazu, nebenher besides, überdies moreover, zudem, außerdem moreover besides, ohnehin, ohnedies besides, any way, all the same, sonst else, obenein, obendrein to boot.

c. of *Degree (extent, completeness and excess)*: nicht not, garnicht not at all, vielleicht perhaps, etwa, ungefähr perhaps, about, fast, beinahe almost nearly, kaum scarcely, schwerlich hardly, wenig little, (XIII. E. p. 127.) ein wenig a little, nur only, eben, lediglich barely, etwas somewhat, theilweise partly, einigermaßen to some degree, in some measure, ziemlich rather, pretty, (bad, good) ansehnlich, beträchtlich considerably, bedeutend very considerably, sehr very, much, very much (See B. List), viel much, selbst, sogar even, schier well nigh, almost, genug enough, hinlänglich sufficiently, gar very, thoroughly, ganz quite, gänzlich entirely, totally, ganz und gar altogether, völlig completely, vollends utterly, überaus, ungemein exceedingly, höchlich highly, höchst, äußerst extremely, gradezu downright, unbedingt absolutely, positively, durchaus, platterdings, schlechterdings, schlechthin, schlechtweg absolutely, positively zu too, allzu altogether too.

Also theils — theils partly — partly, halb half, halb und halb so, so, so in such a manner, dergestalt, dermaßen, solchermaßen to such a degree, desto, umso all the — (better etc.); er- prefixed to adjectives and nouns denoting a bad quality means *arrant*, *arch-* (Notice however: Erzherzog Arch Duke, Erzengel Archangel etc.).

d. of *Comparison*: wie, gleichwie like, as (resembling), als as (being such), mehr rather, eher als sooner

than, so—als as—as, nicht so—als not so—as, als than, ebenso in the same manner, likewise, gleich (with the *Dat.*) like, equal to.

*e. of Quality:* Many adjectives; as, gut well, schlecht badly, recht hübsch nicely, ordentlich regularly, really etc.; etc.

*f. of Mode of Action:* so thus (so, as, p. 128, 1. p. 129, Note 4.), anders otherwise, differently; — with regard to number and time allein alone, zusammen together, einzeln, besonders individually, apart, zugleich at the same time; — with regard to movement and attitude: the compounds of -lings; as, rücklings from behind, back-foremost, seitlings sideways, hauptlings from the head, rittlings astraddle (notice blindlings blind-fold, implicitly, meuchlings treacherously, (of assassination)).

To this class belong also the many Compounds of -weise -wise; as, kreuzweise crossways, stückweise piece meal, by the piece, stufenweise by stages or steps, zollweise by inches, inch by inch, zwangungsweise by compulsion etc. etc. and the genitive-forms of the Substantive Weise way, manner; as gleicher Weise likewise, in the same way, glücklicher Weise fortunately, luckily, möglicher Weise possibly, natürlicher Weise naturally, of course etc.

In using this Genitive form a nice distinction is sometimes made between it and the mere adjective used adverbially, both having at first sight the same meaning; viz. merkwürdiger Weise remarkably and merkwürdig remarkably. This distinction will best be seen in the following examples; es brennt merkwürdig it burns remarkably, es brennt merkwürdiger Weise it remarkably burns; ich verschloß es vorsichtig I locked it cautiously and ich verschloß es vorsichtiger Weise I cautiously locked it (i. e. for cautions sake); er spricht natürlich he speaks naturally (unaffected), er spricht natürlicher Weise he naturally (of course) speaks. Not all Genitive-forms of Weise, however, admit of such a use and often the mere position of the adverb or, in speaking, the stress, explains its force; as, natürlich sprach er he of course spoke;) or er sprach' natürlich of course he spoke.

*g. of Concession and Contrariety* *war* it is true, indeed, (in der That indeed), freilich certainly, eigentlich properly speaking, aber but, indessen however, doch yet, still (though), jedoch however, dennoch never the less, trotzdem in spite of that, gleichwohl, dennoch notwithstanding, nichte-

destoweniger, vielmehr on the contrary, dagegen, hingegen on the other hand, umsomehr i.e. all the more etc.

*h. of Consequence and Conclusion:* also accordingly, hence, therefore, demnach, demzufolge accordingly, folglich consequently, and mithin, sonach, somit having the same force.

*i. of Reason: interrogatives:* warum? why? weshalb? weshwegen? on what account? also colloquial was? and woher? what for? in reply: darum, daher, deshalb and deshwegen an that account therefore. Also the pronominal compounds meinethalben, meinetwegen, meinewillen on my account (see p. 41) and many compounds of wo (was) and da; as, wodurch? through what? dadurch through or by that.

There may also be mentioned hinsichtlich, betreffs with regard to

*k. of Purpose:* dazu for that purpose; behufß for the purpose of. Also dieserhalb for this purpose; Interrogative, wozu for what end. (zu see p. 61, 5. a.)

*l. of Affirmation and Assent:* ja yes, wirklich really wahrhaftig, wahrlich verily, gewiß certainly, sicher, sicherlich surely, unbedingt by all means, undoubtedly, entschieden decidedly, allerdings certainly, natürlich of course, vielleicht perhaps, möglicherweise possibly, wahrscheinlich probably, höchst wahrscheinlich most likely, meinethalben, meinetwegen for ought that I care, you may (also gern gladly see B. list, gut! very well).

*m. of Denial and Negation:* nein no, nicht not, durchaus nicht by no means, keineswegs not at all, nicht im Mindesten not in the least, nimmermehr! never! never!

## B. LIST OF ADVERBS HAVING PRACTICAL PECULIARITIES.

**aber** *but*; in scriptural and similar narratives *and*; aber often follows the subject attributively; as, der Vater aber, *the father however*; or qualifies the verb; as, ich hat es dir aber gesagt but I had told it you, (see nur, noch, sondern; *nothing but* nichts als, all but dead fast leblos, **not** he **but** she nicht er, sondern sie, **but** few nur wenige). The **preposition** *but* is außer or bis auf.

**allein** alone; The conjunction is, *however, yet.* (XXIX. 1.)

**also** (not *also*), *accordingly, consequently.* Often: *so, thus.* In narrative: *well then.*

**anders** otherwise, differently; ein anderer, &c., another (a different one), (see noch ein &c. and sonst).

**auch** also, likewise, auch nicht neither; Ich auch nicht nor I; auch nicht ein Wort, not (even) one word. (See p. 328, Note 2).

**bald** soon (er sooner), almost; bald dies bald das *sometimes* this and *sometimes* that.

**da** (see dort) there, in that place; da then, thereupon. Da sometimes means *here*; as, Da bin ich, *Here I am.* Sometimes it is an expletive: Soviel Blümlein, als da blühen, *As many flowerets as are blooming.* Wer da weiß, *Whoever knows.*

da, as, whereas. (p. 328.)

**daher** from that place, hence. Dahin to that place, thither.

**damit** with it, with this; (conj., in order that).

**dann** then, at that time, after that; denn for unless (see p. 325, Note.)

**doch** yet, still, has often the force of the colloquial *though*: Du siehst es doch, You see it though. Sieh doch! Pray do see! Du kommst doch? You will come, I trust? Er ist doch hier, He is here nevertheless. Er ist doch hier? He is here, I hope? (See p. p. 285 B., 346, 4.)

**dort** there, at that (other) place (properly at a place not in view). Dorthin to that place.

**dran, drauf, drin, drüber, drum, drunter** are colloquial for *darauf, darin, etc.*

**drunter und drüber**, all in confusion, pell mell.

**eben** just, exactly; jetzt eben or so eben, just now; eben derselbe the very same; Das kann man eben nicht wissen, That is the (very) thing one cannot know; eben so exactly the same (manner); eben so gut quite as good or well; (eben, adj., even, smooth, level).

**einmal** once, one time, Ich habe es einmal gesehen, I once saw it. Sie müssen ihn einmal sehen, You must see him sometime (some day). Sehen Sie einmal! Just look! (See p. 285, B).

**einst** once, used both with past and future time; Einst war ich frei, I was free once. Einst werden wir frei sein, We shall one day be free.

**erst** first, therefore, with a view to continuation, *not later (longer, more) than; only*; on the other hand, with a view to the termination or accomplishing of an action, *not sooner than, not before*: Erst ich, dann du, First I, then you. Du bist erst eine halbe Stunde hier, und brauchst erst um sechs Uhr dort zu sein, You have been here only (not longer than) half an hour, and you need not be there before six o'clock. Wir sind erst eine halbe Meile gegangen: wenn wir so fort gehen, kommen wir erst Mittags an, We have walked no more than half a mile: if we continue thus we shall not arrive before (not sooner than) noon. Dies

ist erst der Anfang, das Vorspiel; warten Sie erst das Ende ab, This is only the beginning, the prelude; wait for the end first; eben erst, just a moment ago; erst recht (idiom), in right style, so much the more.

It will be seen that **erst** means *only*, only when used in relation to a **Past** or **Future** whilst **nur** is *only absolute*.

**etwa** perhaps; Etwas, something; etwas besser, somewhat (a little) better.

**ganz** quite, thoroughly; ganz und gar, altogether; **adj.**, entire, all the (day year).

**gar** very, gar sehr very much, gar nicht not at all; Warum nicht gar! What an idea! Wohl gar, You don't say so! Du hast es wohl gar gesehen? You don't mean to say you have seen it? (**gar adj.**, ready cooked).

**gerade** exactly, the very. The **adverb** grade may be often rendered by *to happen to*; as, Ich ginge grade über die Straße, I happened to cross the street. Es lag grade auf dem Tische, It happened to be lying on the table. (Gerade **adj.**, straight; gerade zu, downright).

**gern** (lieber, am liebsten; p. 127, E.) gladly, willingly; Ich möchte gern, I should like to. Er redet gern, He likes to talk, he is fond of talking. Er ißt gern, noch lieber trinkt er, aber am liebsten schlief er den ganzen Tag, He is fond of eating, he likes drinking still better, yet best of all he would like to sleep all day. Er hat es gern, wenn ich es thue, He likes me to do it. Ihr möchtet mich gern fangen, You would fain catch me. Entschuldigen Sie, ich habe es nicht gern gethan, Excuse me, I have not done it intentionally.

**gut** good, morally good, of good quality; (adverbially), well; Es ist gut, all right; Lassen Sie es gut sein, or schon gut, Never mind.

**halb** half; halben or halber (preposition), for the sake of; Anstands halber, for the sake of appearance.

**her** *hither*, hin *thither*; Er ging hin und her, He walked up and down. In compounds her is used with coming *towards*, hin with going *away*, *from*, going *to*; Er kommt her, He comes hither (to us). Gehen Sie heute hin? Do you go thither to-day? (See p. 49, 6, and p. 64 E).

**hier** here, at this place, hierher or her, hither, *to this place*, hiersebst in this city, town, hinten in the back part of; hinten am Schiffe ist das Steuer, At the stern of the ship is the rudder; hinter behind (separately); Ein Delphin schwimmt hinter dem Schiffe, A dolphin swims behind the vessel.

**immer** always, auf immer for ever, immer besser better and better, immer schöner more and more beautiful; gehen Sie immer! just go!

**indessen** yet; indess whilst.

**ja** yes, *ay* but also used as follows Du siehst es ja, You see it I am sure! Don't you see it? Stehen Sie ja still! Be sure

and stand still. **Fallen Sie ja nicht!** Take care not to fall. **Thun Sie es ja nicht!** Do it by no means. **Da steht er ja!** There he stands; don't you see him? **Da kommt er ja!** There he is coming indeed! In conditional clauses it generally means *contrary to expectation*: **Hier ist der Schlüssel, wenn Sie sich ja versippen sollten,** Here is the key, if (contrary to expectation, by any accident, &c.) you should be late. **Ja** is often equivalent to the English *nay*: **ja** sogar, *nay even*.

**je** and **jemaß** are like the English *ever*, used both with regard to the *past* and the *future*; as, **Ich erinnere mich nicht je** (or **jemaß**) **davon gehört zu haben,** I do not remember having ever heard of it. **Aber wenn es je** (or **jemaß**) **geschähe,** wäre es ein Unglück, But if it should ever happen it would be a misfortune; **von jeher** always (past) ever since. (Conjunction p. 326.)

**jetzt** at present, **just now**, denotes an *absolute* present; **Wir essen jetzt,** We are at dinner *at present*; but it occurs with the force of *now* (*that*, a certain circumstance has taken place); **Unsere Arbeit ist gethan, jetzt** (for *now*) **wollen wir zum Essen gehen,** Our work is done, let us *now* go to dinner.

**kaum** scarcely, **kaum** — **als**; or **kaum** — **so**, no sooner — than.

**lange,** lang' long (in point of time), **Es ist lange her,** It is long since; **längst** long ago; **Tage lang** for days, **Stunden lang** for hours, (but **Meilen weit** for miles); **lang lang** (in size), **längs** along.

**Heber, am liebsten** see gern.

**mehr** *more*; (a larger number, quantity or degree); **mehr** is used with the force of *rather* in comparing two adjectives in the positive degree, which have a certain analogy: **not mehr reich als weise,** (richer than wise); **but mehr gelehrt als weise,** (learned *rather* than wise); **mehrere** several.

**nein** *no*, in reply; (The Adjective *no*, *not a*, is **kein**; no person **kein** Mensch); (*nicht* *not*).

**nein** (INTERJECTION, rather colloquial). Dear, dear! **Nein!** **das war prächtig!** I can not tell you how splendid that was!

**niemals** never; **nie** and **nimmer** are more emphatic, especially the latter.

**noch** *still*, **noch nicht** not yet; **noch so sehr** ever so much, **wenn auch noch so lange,** however long; **noch** gestern, **noch** vor einer Stunde, but yesterday, but an hour ago; **noch einmal** *once more*, **noch ein, eine, eines** *another*; **Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel,** Take another apple; **noch** *nor*, see *werden*.

**nun** *now*, denotes a relative *present* (see *jetzt*); i. e. it denotes the present as viewed in relation to a past of which the present fact is the expected or unexpected issue. **Ich habe mein Versprechen erfüllt, nun** erfüllen Sie das Ihrige und thun Sie es **jetzt,** I have fulfilled my promise, now fulfil yours and do so at present. **Erst** verspricht er Alles, und **nun** will er gar nichts



thun, First he promises everything and now he is not going to do any thing at all).

Run, was giebt's? *Well*, what's the matter? Run, das war zu erwarten, *Why*, that was to be expected. Now is the time, the moment, Dies ist die Zeit, der Augenblick.

**schon** frequently only **strengthens the perfect**: ich habe es schon gesehen, *I have seen it*; otherwise it means *already*, or it expresses confidence like the colloquial *soon enough*; e. g. Es wir schon gehen, *No fear it will do*. Sie werden ihn schon treffen, *I doubt not but you will meet him*. Er wird es schon erfahren, *He will learn it soon enough*.

**sehr** (degree); before **adverbs and adjectives**, *very*; sehr schön very beautiful, sehr bald very soon (see viel); — when qualifying verbs *much, very much*; as, ich bewundere es sehr *I admired much*; gar sehr bewundert very much, greatly admired.

**selber** *self*, (not reflexive); as, Da kommt der Herr selber or selbst, *There the master comes himself*; von selbst, *spontaneously of him-, her-, itself*. selbst before the noun or pronoun *even*: Selbst der Vater lächelte, *Even the father smiled*.

**sondern** *but*, in contradistinction after a negative phrase: Nicht er, sondern du, *Not he, but you*. Nicht schlafen, sondern arbeiten, *Not to sleep, but to work*; sonder (obs. *præpos.*), *without*; sondern (verb), *to separate, to sunder*.

**sonst** *else, otherwise*; Thus es, sonst wird er böse, *Do it else he will become angry*; (elsewhere anderswo); sonst, better sonst, *is former times. Also usually*

**so** adverb, *thus*, in this manner, so; So standen die Dinge, *Thus matters stood*. Die Dinge standen so, daß &c., *Such was the state of affairs that &c.* (See p. 103, Note 1, etc. solcher and p. 128, 1.)

so, sobald als, etc., (see p. 329.); so! interj., well! so? ay? indeed? Es ist nur so so, *It is only so so*.

**um** (p. 30, C.) **inseparably**: round, circum-, as, umsegeln to circumnavigate, umfliegen to encircle (flying); — **separably**: A expresses **rearranging** as, umbilden to remodel, reform. umsetzen to transpose; often it means *down, overthrow*; as, umsegeln to run down (sailing), umstürzen to overthrow. Notice umgehen to go round to evade, umgehen to keep intercourse with. **unter** and **vorne** (see p. 313, d.) not to be confounded with the Prepositions unter and vor.

**viel** *much* expresses **quantity**; as, Sie singt viel *She sings a great deal*; viel expresses **degree before comparatives**; as, viel schöner *much more beautiful*, viel eher *much sooner* (see sehr). **With verbs** viel means *largely, extensively*; viel besucht largely frequented, viel beschäftigt extensively occupied. (p. 104, 10.)

**wann** *when, at what time*, date or hour, referring to time chronologically; not to be confounded with wenn, (see Conjunctions als p. 328 and wenn p. 330, also p. 111, E. a).

- weder** (noch) neither (nor): *weder er noch ich*, Neither he nor I.
- weise** (from *Weise manner*), joined to GENITIVES OF ADJECTIVES, has the force of *-ly*: *natürlicherweise naturally*; or joined to the GENITIVE OF NOUNS with the force of *as a*; *versuchsweise by way of trial*, *vorschussweise as an advance*. (See 3. e. above p. 317).
- wie** *like, in the same manner as*: *Wie Ihnen bekannt ist*, As is known to you; *wie?* **interrogative**, *how?* *wie auch as also*; but if the *auch* is separated from *wie* by intermediate words it means: *however*; *wie sehr, (viel) auch*, however much. (See p. 330).
- wieder** *again*, not to be confounded with the PREPOSITION *wider against*.
- wo** *where*, (wherefore *weßwegen*, *weßhalb*, for what *wofür*, p. 109, 4.); *wo* is sometimes used for *wenn if* and even for *als when*: *Wo du es sagst*, If thou tell it; *wo nicht*, if not. (See p. 111, E. c. and p. 330).
- wohl** (wol) *well (in health)*; *sehr wohl!* very well! *Leben Sie wohl!* Good bye. *Leb' wohl!* Adieu! Farewell! (The adverb of *manner, well*, is generally gut: He does it well, *Er macht es gut*). *Wohl* often expresses **probability**: *Es kann wohl sein*, It may be. *Er wird es wohl bringen*, He will bring it likely; *wohl* may often be rendered by *I presume*: *Dies ist wohl Ihr Bruder*, This is your brother, I presume; *wohl indeed*; *Ja wohl muß man sich wundern*, Indeed, one must wonder. *Die Botschaft hör' ich wohl, allein mir fehlt der Glaube*, The message I hear indeed; yet I lack faith in it. *Wohl dir!* Happy you!
- zu!** on! immer zu! on! on! — as an adverb in compounds it denotes *shutting*; as a **preposition**, *towards, to*; *zu too* (SUPERL.) governs the dative, (see p. 217, 5. b).

## C. INTERJECTIONS.

Mere sounds, incoherent words and elliptical phrases ejaculated under some excitement, emotion or prompted by some sudden impression, are called Interjections. They are like vocatives not elements of a sentence and influence the construction of the clause only when they are used as the object-portion in phrases like *O! said I*, *Ah! cried he*, which then as in the above have always the Nom. placed after the verb; hence, "*hurrah*" riefen Sie, "*hurrah*" they shouted.

The following may be noticed as expressing:

- a. grief*, *ach! ah! weh mir!*; *b. pain*, *au! au weh!*;  
*c. regret*, *leider! ach leider! (alas) oh wehe! wehe!*;  
*d. detestation*, *pfui! fi! (fie), schande! (shame!)*; *e. horror*,  
*hu!, hu! hu!*; *f. rage and threat*, *ha! weh Dir! woe*

betide thee!; *g.* arousing, *he!* *heda!*, *holla!*; *h.* stopping a person, *pft!* *pft!*, *he!*, *heda!*, *halt!* *wer da?!* who goes there?!; stopping a horse, *brr!* *steh!*; *i.* cautioning, *ei!* *ei!*, *he, he!* *na, na!*; *k.* questioning, *ei, ei!?*, *so! so!?*, *hm!?* *hm, hm!?* (*hm!* also means assent)—; *l.* defiance, *bah!* (*pooh, pooh!*) *ohoh!*; *m.* surprise and wonder, *ei! ih!* *ha!* *nein!*; (*as, nein! das ist erstaunlich, no! (I cant say) how that astonishes me*), *postausend!* *alle Hagel!* *alle Wetter!*; noticing a dashing flight: *hui!* *hei!* *blis!*; *n.* leading on to a charge, *auf!* *up!* *frisch auf!* *frisch vorwärts!* *auf und brann!* *up and at them!* *huffa!* *hurrah!*; *o.* triumph, *juchhe!* *hurrah!*; *p.* delight, *Ah!* *ach!* *O!*; *q.* bidding silence: *sch!* *st!* *stille!*; *r.* scaring: *husch!* *fort!*

The pupil must notice the varied use of the exclamation *bitte!* *pray*, for let me pass!, with pleasure!, what did you say!, beg your pardon!, for offer, acceptance and even for defiance; *bitte, bitte!* *pray do it, bitte um Verzeihung!* *beg your pardon, (bitte entschuldigen Sie, pray excuse).*

Their meaning in other exclamations is more apparent from their literal sense and so are many imitative interjections; *as, bim, bam bum!* *baum!* *baum!* *ding dong dell!*; *hum!* *bum!* (*with booming*), *piff!* *paff!* *puff!* *bang!* *bang!*; *knick!* *knack!* *krack!* *stinglingling!* *tinglingling!*; *baug!* *bums!* *plaus!* *plumps!* *perdauz!* (*with falling*), *kladeradatsch!* *down goes the rubbish!*

## SECTION XXIX.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

Many words usually treated as conjunctions have been more properly enumerated among the adverbs because they are altogether construed as such. These two sections may therefore be compared as completing each other. (See for instance; *aber, da, doch, wann, wie, wo.* XXVIII. A. and B.)

The classification of the Conjunctions according to their logical character is a matter of English Grammar and may be introduced with advantage in a book of exercises for the advanced pupils. Here the alphabetical arrangement under the simple heads of *pure*, *coordinative* and *subordinative conjunctions* is infinitely preferable as affording the greatest facility for reference both with regard to their meaning and their syntactical use.

### 1. PURE CONJUNCTIONS.

These conjunctions do not affect in any way the arrangement of words in a clause.

They are *aber but*, (sometimes *and*) in the sense of *however*, (p. 318, B.) *allein yet*, (not to be confounded with *allein alone*), *denn for*, *oder or*, *sondern but*, when used in contradistinction after a negative phrase, (p. 322) *und and*; also *doch yet! still!* when used as a mere exclamation; and occasionally *entweder either*; as, *Entweder ich träume oder du täuschst mich*, *Either, I dream or you deceive me* (see *entweder* p. 326).

These conjunctions are represented in English by *and*, *but*, *for*, *or* and sometimes *yet* and *either*.

**Note.** The Conjunction *denn for* differs from the *subordinative* Conjunction *weil because*, in so far as *denn for* is used in stating a reason rather in an *accidental* way; *Er wird es nicht bemerkt haben, denn er ist oft zerstreut*; He won't have noticed it for he is often listless, whilst *weil because* is used in stating a cause as the *essential or necessary one*, and must therefore be employed in *replying to a question*; as, *Warum beunruhigten Sie Ihre Freunde mit dieser Nachricht?* *Weil* (not *Denn*) *die Sache gefährlich werden konnte*. Why did you alarm your friends with this news? *Because* (not *for*) the thing might have become dangerous.

*Denn*, construed like an *adverb* (see Sect. XXX. D.) means *unless*; as, *Es sei denn, Unless it be: Ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich denn, I will not let thee go except thou bless me*. *Denn* also expresses curiosity and impatience in questions like: *Wo bleibst du denn?* *Why, where are you loitering then?* (p. 367, Note 2.)

### 2. COORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

Besides those construed as adverbs and given as such XXVIII.

## 326 XXIX. CONJUNCTIONS, 2. COORDINATE.

A. and B. the following must be noticed as being of particular importance. The examples show their use and position especially in connection with other conjunctions.

### LIST 2.

**also** see p. 318, g. Sein *Hut* ist hier; **also** ist er zu Hause. His hat is here *therefore* he is in the house *or* er ist **also** zu Hause, he is in *therefore*. **Notice:** **Also** hat Gott die Welt geliebt daß er — etc. For God *so* loved the world that he — etc.

**auch** which demands great attention. (see p. 328 Note 2).

**desto** (see p. 129, 5.) introduces the main clause after a dependent with *je* in comparisons; as, *je* mehr er nach äußerem Glücke strebte, **desto** ärmer wurde er an innerem. *The more* he strove for outward fortune, *the poorer* he became in inner happiness.

**doch** p. 346, 4. where its very peculiar use in inverted dependent clauses is referred to; *dennoch* nevertheless.

**einerseits** and **anderseits**, coupling either other clauses or merely elements of such, are construed as adverbs; as, *einerseits* war ich zu beschäftigt, *anderseits* gefiel mir der Vorschlag nicht. On the one hand I was too busy on the other hand the proposal did not please me. Er hat sie *einerseits* vernachlässigt, *anderseits* beleidigt. He has neglected them on the one hand and offended them on the other hand etc.

**entweder** *either*, (followed by *or*). When placed at the head of the clause may, but need not, invert it; as, **entweder** hat er Sie getäuscht oder Sie haben ihn mißverstanden. *Either* he has deceived you, *or* you have misunderstood him; for which also: **entweder** er hat Sie etc. Like *either* and *or* in English **entweder** and **oder** may distinguish merely an element of the clause; as, die Oele sind **entweder** fett oder ätherisch, oils are *either* fat or essential.

**je—je** see p. 129, 5 is used for **desto** in short phrases; as, *je* eher *je* besser, *the sooner the better*, **jedoch** however, yet.

**nicht allein**, *nicht bloß*, *nicht nur*, followed by **sondern** and **auch** *but also*, are construed like *einerseits* and *anderseits* above; **sondern** — **auch** are however, often separated from each other, **auch** being placed like any other adverb; as, er hat nicht nur seine Ansprüche aufgegeben **sondern** sie mir **auch** förmlich abgetreten, he has not only waived his claims but has also formally ceded them to me.

**noch** see *weber*.

**sonst**. Späten Sie sich **sonst** kommen Sie zu spät, make haste *or else* you will come too late (see p. 322).

**sowohl** — *als auch* *as well — as also*, *both — and*, couple, as in English, any two elements of a sentence; as, **sowohl** die Regierung als das Parlament wünschten die Vertagung. *Government*

as well as Parliament desired the adjournement. Both Government and Parliament etc. Sie können es sowohl hier als dort beobachten, you may observe it here as well as there, etc.

**theils** — *theils partly — partly*, is used entirely like *einerseits* anderseits above.

**umso(mehr)** —, als, *the — as*, Es ist umsomehr zu beklagen als Niemand Etwas dabei gewinnt. It is the more to be pitted as nobody gains anything by it. Die Freude war umso größer, als sie unerwartet kam. The joy was all the greater as it came unexpectedly.

**umso** —, also often refers to *je* in the dependent clause, (see p. 129, 5).

**weder** —, noch *neither*, — *nor*, are entirely construed as adverbs; as, Er ist weder hier noch drüben, *he is neither here nor yonder*. Ich habe es ihm weder gesagt, noch ihm geschrieben. I have neither told, nor written it to him.

**wohl** (often *wol*) and **zwar** both mean *indeed* before clauses introduced by **aber** *but*, dennoch *nevertheless*, doch *yet* etc. as, Ich hatte es ihm wohl (zwar) gesagt; aber (doch) er hatte es vergessen. I had indeed told him so; but (yet) he had forgotten it. Ich kannte die Gefahr wohl, dennoch wagte ich es. I knew the danger indeed; nevertheless I ventured it.

### 3. SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

These Conjunctions are by far the most important as they introduce dependent clauses the *finite* verb of which is placed at the very end; as, wir hatten die Gefahr kaum gemerkt, als er auch schon das Mittel zur Abwehr gefunden hatte. We had scarcely observed the danger, when he *had* already found the means for warding it off. Du siehst ganz deutlich, daß er die Sache nicht in diesem Lichte sieht. You *see* quite clearly that he does not (see) view the matter in this light. See p. 333, c. where the *RULE* contains the sixteen English conjunctions representing the whole of those given in the list 3 below.

**Note 1.** The conjunctions **da**, **ob**, während and **wenn** are under certain circumstances, (explained XXX. B. 4, and 5.) omitted and then the dependent clause is inverted; as, hätte ich die Mittel for wenn ich die Mittel hätte. *Had I the means for if I had the means* etc. etc. This construction demands special attention when the Conjunctions **wenn** and **ob** *if*, are omitted after the conjunction "*as*", representing an elliptical clause. The following example will make this clear. Er that als wäre er der Meister, *he acts as if he*

*were the master.* The clause in full would run thus: *Er thut als (wie er thun würde) wenn er der Meister wäre. The acts, as (he would act) if he were the master.*

**Note 2.** A number of the conjunctions in the list are used in connection with the adverbs *auch, nicht, nun, gleich, schon, wohl* etc.

These combinations are marked in the List by a dash between the conjunction and the adverb. The position of the latter in the clause differs from that of the ordinary adverb in so far as in these combinations the adverb is placed as close as possible to the conjunction, allowing only the subject and any pronoun Object, to intervene, (whilst the ordinary adverb would be close to the verb at the end, and have a different force): as, *wenn—gleich* in "*wenn er es gleich dem Vater sagte*", "although he told it the father;" on the other hand: *wenn er es dem Vater gleich sagte* means, or at least ought to mean, *if he told his father immediately*. These Combination-adverbs are specially apt to trouble the pupil in the frequent cases of the omission of the conjunction, *viz. sagte er es gleich dem Vater* for *wenn er es gleich dem Vater sagte*.

*als when, (that time when)* refers only to a single certain time in the past and therefore has the verb either in the Imperfect or Pluperfect; as, *als Cromwell starb*; when Cromwell died; *als Cromwell gestorben war*, when Cromwell had died; *als* is never omitted like the English *when* in phrases such as: *The last time he wrote, als er das letzte Mal schrieb* (notice the position of the adverbial.)

*als as, (So wohl — als auch &c. As well — as also &c. Um so mehr als etc. The more so as, &c. Als, than* see p. 128).

*als (ob) als (wenn) as if*; see Note 2, above.

*auf daß in order that* (with the Conjunctive, see p. 367, 2.).

*bis until.*

*bevor before.*

*da as (whereas), since, (often rendered in English participially; Da ich keine Zeit habe — Having no time; see p. 298 f.).*

*da when, rather as, combining reason and time. (Einst wird kommen der Tag da, The day cometh when.)*

*dafern if (in case).*

*dagegen (for wogegen) where on the other hand.*

*daher (for woher) whence.*

*damit that, in order that; (damit with it, with that, see p. 69, 1 and p. 93. c, also p. 367. 2.).*

*damit — nicht lest. (See p. 367, 2.).*

*daß that, also as, in phrases like: His zeal was such as to etc.;*

So groß war sein Eifer, daß etc. (see *sich* p. 103, c. daß when omitted and when not. See p. 343, f.).

daß nicht lest, but. See Note 2. above, and p. 367, 2.  
ehe before.

falls in case, (the conjunction daß *that*, being understood).  
gleichwie as, like as.

indem *since as, whilst*, often rendered by the PRES. PART. in English, either with or without *in* or *by*: Indem er hinausging, In going out, he said: —; Indem ich sprang *by springing*.

indess *whilst* (being engaged in).

insofern (als) in as far as, in as much as.

inwiefern how far (in what respect).

je —, (desto) the — (*the*) (with comparisons p. 326) je nachdem as, according as.

nachdem *after*, (often expressed by *having* with the past Part. c. g., Nachdem ich gesehen hatte, Having seen).

nun (properly nun, da) now (that).

ob *whether, if*, ob — nicht but; ob is sometimes omitted especially before nun. (p. 349. B. 5).

obgleich and obgleich, obwohl though, although (=gleich, wohl, and schon being sometimes separated from ob; see Note 2, p. 328.)

seit (seitdem) since, ever since. (Compare p. 55, i.)

sintemal (obsolete) whereas, since.

so *as*, for instance, So oft er kam, As often as he came.

so — auch *however*, e. g. so sehr auch however much, so lange auch however long; auch is often understood; as, So groß er war, *However tall he was, tall as he was*.

so occurs in the scriptures for wenn *if*, and also as a relative.

sobald (als), so wie as soon, as soon as, als being mostly omitted.

sofern and soweit in as far as.

um zu in order to. (See p. 290, 3.)

ungeachtet although, (notwithstanding).

während *whilst, während*, especially in combination with nun, is often omitted when used with the adverbs *einerseits on the one hand, theils partly*, and similar ones, in antithetical sentences. In these as in other clauses of this nature, the dependent is inverted and the clause following is introduced, by so; as, haben wir nun *einerseits* hier eine Unrichtigkeit so finden wir *anderseits* etc.; *whilst now we have here on the one hand an incorrectness we find on the other hand, etc.*; see p. 349.

wann *when, at what time, hour* etc. (when used relatively).

warum *why*, (when used relatively.)

weil because.

weil (used for während) *while, whilst*, is getting out of use.



**wenn** *if*, frequently omitted and then the clause **inverted**; as, *Erhe ich ihn*, If I see him. (see p. 346, 5. a.)

**wenn** *when, whenever*, as often as.

**wenn** — **anders** provided that.

**wenn** — **nicht**, unless, (see Note 2, p. 328.)

**wenn** — **auch**, **wenn** — **gleich** and

**wenn** — **gleich**, **wenn** — **schon**, although, if even. (See Notes 1 and 2, p. 327 and p. 328).

**weßhalb** and **weßwegen** *for which reason*, on account of which (when used relatively).

**wie** *as*, in such manner as. (See p. 115 d, and Note 3).

**wie** *how*, in what manner.

**wie** — **auch** *however*, (e. g. *wie groß auch*, great as, however great;) **auch** sometimes omitted.

**wie fern** in how far.

**wie wohl** although.

**wo** *where*, sometimes for **wenn**, *if, when*.

**wo** in Compounds; as, **womit**, **wofür**, **wovon**, **wonach**, **wozu** etc. (see p. 113, F.)

**zumal** (**da**) especially as; **da** sometimes omitted.

#### EXERCISE XXXIV. to p. 325.

#### Studium der Weltgeschichte, Study of Universal History.

„**Gerecht**“ bedeutet<sup>1</sup> sowohl „*just*“ als „*righteous*“. Man kann weder das Eine noch das Andere sein wenn man die Geschichte nicht kennt. Denn der Mensch hat Pflichten<sup>2</sup> gegen die Welt, deren Bürger<sup>3</sup> er ist; aber er kann diese nicht erfüllen, ohne die Geschichte der Welt zu verstehen. Er muß nicht nur das Wesen<sup>4</sup> und die Geschichte<sup>5</sup> des eigenen, sondern auch die anderer Völker begreifen<sup>6</sup> sonst urtheilt<sup>7</sup> er bald zu günstig<sup>8</sup> bald zu nachtheilig<sup>9</sup> über sie. Zwar scheint (st.) das Urtheil des Einzelnen<sup>10</sup> nicht wichtig<sup>11</sup>; jedoch schaffen (st.) die Einzelnen die öffentliche Meinung<sup>12</sup>. Ihre Unwissenheit<sup>13</sup> macht sie entweder gleichgültig<sup>14</sup> oder fanatisch<sup>15</sup>. Beides<sup>16</sup> ist gefährlich<sup>17</sup>. Je gründlicher<sup>18</sup> ein Volk die Weltgeschichte kennt, desto richtiger<sup>19</sup> wird es handeln<sup>20</sup> und desto sicherer<sup>21</sup> wird es unter den andern Nationen dastehen<sup>22</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>to mean, <sup>2</sup>f. duty, <sup>3</sup>citizen, <sup>4</sup>character, <sup>5</sup>n. destiny, <sup>6</sup>to comprehend, <sup>7</sup>to judge, <sup>8</sup>favourable, <sup>9</sup>unfavourable, <sup>10</sup>individual, <sup>11</sup>important, <sup>12</sup>public opinion, <sup>13</sup>ignorance, <sup>14</sup>indifference, <sup>15</sup>fanatic, <sup>16</sup>both, <sup>17</sup>dangerous, <sup>18</sup>thorough, <sup>19</sup>correct, <sup>20</sup>to act, <sup>21</sup>secure, <sup>22</sup>to stand.

## SECTION XXX.

## RULES FOR THE CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

(The Exercises on this Section are given Section XXXI.)

## 1. ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.

The essential parts of a sentence are the subject, the predicate and, strictly speaking, also the object or objects.

a. **The subject** (nominative) *is said to be* something; as, *The man is my friend*; or in a certain state; as, *The man is ill, the man lives*; or of a certain quality; as, *The man is good*; or acting; as, *The man sees*; or acted upon; as, *The man is seen*. "*The man*" in these cases is the subject. The **Infinitive**, often expressed by a present Part. in English, often occurs as the subject; as, *Geben ist jeztiger denn nehmen*, It is more blessed to give than to receive.

b. **The predicate** is the word or words by which this state, quality, action etc., of the subject is expressed; as, — *is my friend*, — *is ill, lives*, — *is good*, — *sees*, — *is seen*.

b. 1. It is well to distinguish at once the **finite** or **inflected** part of the predicate, i. e. the verb or part of the verb which assumes personal terminations (*I am, I was, I see, I saw, thou art, thou wast, thou seest, thou sawst, he, she, it is, was, sees, saw, or I have been, seen, I had been, seen, I can, may, must, shall, will be, see etc.*), from the **uninflected** part which is the **Past Participle** or the **Infinitive** (*I have seen, I must, shall, will see*). The finite verb is the part that agrees with the subject.

b. 2. In sentences formed with the simple tenses of the verb *sein* to be; as, *Er ist alt, He is old. Er ist ihr Vater, He is her father. Sie waren zu Hause, They were at home*, the verb *ist, waren*, is called the **copula**, and the adjective (*alt*) or the noun (*ihr Vater*) or the adverbial expression (*zu Hause*) which completes the assertion, is termed the **Predicate**, in which special sense the term is employed in this work..

With the verbs *bleiben* to remain, *erscheinen* to appear, *scheinen* to seem, *werden* to become, to get and *heißen* to be called, the complement is likewise the **predicate** and, unless governed by a preposition, in the **nominative** case.

c. **The objects**. If the sentence has a verb the action of which affects another person or thing (verb *transitive* or rather *objective*), as *sees*, it has the person or thing, so required for **its object**; as, *The man sees the brother, the light*. The object is a **simple case** i. e. not introduced by a preposition; it is generally the accusative (see p. 223), but often the dative (see p. 207) and sometimes the genitive (see p. 202, C. 2, 3, 4).

Certain verbs (see p. 207, 1) require besides the direct object an **indirect object**; as, *The man gives the book (direct object) to the brother (indirect object)*.

Also adjectives require objects p. 203, 217, 5.

**d. The adverbials.** The subject as well as the verb and the object may be attended by **adverbial expressions** which are generally introduced by **prepositions**; as, *The man in the gray dress bought for his children the book with the red cover.* Only the adverbial expression **qualifying the verb** however, has, the character of a **real adverb** and is construed as such (see below D.). The prepositional phrases, attending the subject or the object (which they always follow) have the value of attributes (see 'e. below'); as, *The man in the gray dress i. e. The gray-dressed man* — the book with the red cover *i. e. the red-covered book.* In translating from the German all **adverbial expressions ought first to be avoided** until the **essential elements**, viz. the nominative, the verb and the object, have been found, after which the sentence may be completed by the unessential parts.

**e. The attributes.** Any noun in a sentence may be accompanied by an **attributive adjective** or **genitive** or **adverbial** (see d.). The attributive adjective **precedes** the noun; as, *Das gute Buch, The good book* (see p. 88, 3): — the attributive genitive generally follows the noun (*Das Buch meines Freundes, The book of my friend*), but may also be placed before it. (*Meines Freundes Buch, My friends book*). The latter can be done only when the noun has the definite article which then is dropped. This omission of the article increases the difficulty of recognizing the case of the complement; as, *In der Bräute Locken*, which may be either in *den Locken der Bräute, In the locks of the brides*, or: *In die Locken der Bräute, Into the locks of the brides.* (Compare p. 197, Note 1).

**f.** For nouns in **apposition** (see p. 195, Apposition).

## 2. COMPOUND SENTENCES, PRINCIPAL AND DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Every simple sentence is a **principal clause** and even **compound sentences** may consist of **principal clauses only**; as, *Er spielt, sie singt und wir hören zu, He plays, she sings and we listen.*

**a. The principal sentence**, (leading or main clause) contains a proposition which is **not necessarily connected** with any other clause; as, *I see the man, I have seen the man, I shall see the man; The man is seen, has been seen, &c.*

**b. Dependent clauses** are such as **depend on**, or **refer by necessity** to the principal clause, or some

other portion of the compound sentence with which they are connected either by the relative pronoun (see p. 113) or relative adverb (see p. 111), as, —, *whom I saw*; —, *who has been seen*; —, *where you will see*; or by certain conjunctions, which are called **subordinative** (see p. 327), because they indicate the subordination of the dependent to the main clause; as, —, *if I saw the man*; —, *because I saw the man*; —, *after having seen the man*.

c. To know a dependent clause in German is easy, as it always ends with the finite verb (see p. 331 b, 1); as, — *wer den Apfel findet*, — *who finds the apple*; — *wer den Apfel gefunden hat*, — *who has found the apple*; *wenn du den Apfel finden kannst*, — *if you can find the apple*. In translating from English into German, however, the difficulty is greater and the author would suggest that the pupil should thoroughly learn the following

#### Rule:

Every clause introduced by the relative pronouns: *who, that, which, what*, or by the relative adverbs: *how, when, where, why* and their compounds, or lastly by any of the subordinative conjunctions, here following, is a dependent clause, the finite verb of which must in German be placed at the very end: *after, although, as* (in *as far as*, in *as much as*, *whereas*), *because, before, if, lest, since, that* (in case *that*, in order *that*, now *that*), *than* and *the* (in comparison), *unless, until, when, whether, while*, (*je whiles, whilst* p. 326). The German of these Conjunctions has been given pp. 328—330 List 3, where they must be well studied, but the pupil will more readily remember them in the order here given.

#### 3. DIRECT AND INVERTED SENTENCES.

A principal sentence is **direct** when it begins with the nominative; as, *She said*. — It is **inverted** when the finite verb is placed before the nominative; as,

*No, said she.* Even dependent clauses can be inverted owing to the omission of the conjunctions *if*, *since*, and *whilst*; as, *Were I*, instead of: *If I were*. (See B, below).

#### PARTICULARS, OF CONSTRUCTION.

The pupil will construe correctly only after mastering the following points, explained below. A. The position of the verb as different in **principal and in dependent** clauses. B. The **inverted order** of the nominative and the verb in principal and in dependent clauses. C. The mutual position of the direct and indirect objects and of the same when expressed by personal pronouns. D. The position of the separable prefixes, adverbs and adverbial expressions *qualifying the verb*. E. The position of **attributive adjectives or participles** with the **adverbial clauses** qualifying them.

In support of these details, however, the author has to offer the following as the

#### FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE OF GERMAN CONSTRUCTION

without which all other rules for the arrangement of the parts of the sentence will be found to remain unsatisfactory.

The genius of the *English* language demands that the parts of the sentence should be so arranged as to place the element of **chief importance** as **early** as possible after the subject and finite verb, and the rest so, that the **less important** follow the more important, the least important being placed last. It is a **descending** sequence. The *German* language has exactly the opposite tendency. The element of **chief import** is placed last and of the others the **less important** precedes the more important; the least important being nearest to the subject (and finite verb) at the

beginning. It is thus an **ascending** sequence. —  
**EXAMPLE:** English: He did **not** show the letter to the man yesterday. German: Er hat gestern dem Manne den Brief **nicht** gezeigt. It must be well understood that this **usual** order of the parts of the German sentence is **by no means a fixed one**, but that it may be varied in manifold ways according to the **superior** importance, to be given in the mind of the reader to any of the qualifying particulars, and that accordingly any element raised to a greater importance may be placed nearer the end; as,

Er hat gestern dem Manne nicht den Brief (sondern  
*He has yesterday to the man not the letter (but*  
 das Buch) gezeigt.  
*the book) shown.*

Er hat gestern den Brief nicht dem Manne (sondern  
*He has yesterday the letter not to the man (but*  
 seinem Freunde) gezeigt.  
*to his friend) shown.*

Er hat dem Manne den Brief nicht gestern (sondern  
*He has to the man the letter not yesterday (but*  
 heute) gezeigt.  
*today) shown.*

Certain elements indeed, as for instance the **Objects** and the **Adverbs** may seem to have a more definite position, but they are nevertheless liable to the above stated law, the operation of which is quite unmistakable when **two or several elements of the same nature**, (for instance two objects the direct and the indirect, [see p. 207, 1.] or several adverbs or adverbial expressions), are introduced in the same sentence. These particulars are explained C. and D. below.

**Inverted sentences** (see p. 344, B.) on the other hand express the **emphasis** given to an element by the voice in English by placing that emphasised

element at the head of the clause, (the finite verb following it immediately. This is done with great freedom since the terminations of Articles, Nouns and Verbs etc.; show sufficiently, what in English is expressed by the order of words — *German: den Vater liebt der Sohn; for der Sohn liebt den Vater. The son loves the father.* — *Die Franzosen schlug (Sing.) Wellington; for Wellington schlug die Franzosen. Wellington defeated the French. (The French defeated W. would be die Franzosen. (schlugen W.).* If the English wish to emphasise an element in a similar way they turn it into some little phrase like: "*It is the father whom the son loves*", *As to the French, Wellington defeated them.*

The elements which in German may thus be placed at the head of the clause, are the Object, the Predicate of the verb *to be* (see p. 331, b. 2.) the Adverbials and even the Verb, (whether Past Participle, Infinitive or a finite tense). The Examples above show, *a*, the Object at the beginning; in the following the other named elements are placed first.

*b. The Predicate:* hart war es aber gerecht, It was severe but just. *c. The Adverbial:* zu Hause war er nicht, He was'nt at home. (*A Past Participle*): Ausgegangen war er nicht, He had not gone out. (*The Infinitive*): Ausgehen werde ich; aber nicht spazieren, I shall go out but not for a walk.

*d. If the finite verb is to be placed first for the sake of emphasis merely it must be introduced, both in the singular and plural by the impersonal pronoun es which then is called the Grammatical Nominative; as, Es donnern die Höhen, es zittert der Steg. The Mountain heights resound with thunder, the slender bridge trembles. (Without this "Es" the clause would be an inverted dependent. See B. 4. 5 below).*

*Obs.* The language avails itself of this great facility in inverting clauses chiefly for the purpose of linking an element for which a

special interest has been excited (mostly a contrast) immediately to the preceding phrase. The leading topic often does not lie in the Subject but in the elements placed prominently at the beginning and this is the real reason for the frequent occurrence of Inverted Sentences, as will be seen from the following Examples: ("Doesn't he love his *parents*"). He loves the *father* den Vater liebt er. ("That is very *hard*") "*hard* it is but just" hart ist es, aber gerecht. (Are you coming tomorrow). *Tomorrow* I can't come, *Morgen* kann ich nicht kommen. Don't speak of it! you will not *convince* me at any-rate. Sprechen Sie nicht davon! Ueberzeugen werden Sie mich doch nicht.

## A. POSITION OF THE VERB.

(The *inverted order of the Nom. and the verb* is treated of separately under B. below).

1. The **Uninflected Part** of the verb *viz.* the **PAST PARTICIPLE** and the **INFINITIVE**, as also the **PREDICATE** of the verb *sein to be* (and of similar verbs, see p. 331, b. 2.) are placed at the end of the clause (*see, however, 5 below*); as, Ich habe den Mann gesehen, I have the man *seen*. Ich kann den Mann sehen, I can the man *see*. Er ist für sein Alter noch stark, He is for his age still *strong*. Er wurde im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann, He became in the course of time *a rich man*. Er ist diesen Augenblick nicht zu Hause, He is this moment not at *home*.

2. a. The **Past Part.** of the **Auxiliary** follows the **Past Part.** of the main verb; as, Der Mann muß gesehen worden sein, The man must seen *been* have.

b. When the clause contains both a **Past Participle** and an **Infinitive**, the **Infinitive** is placed after the **Past Participle**; as, Sie müssen den Mann gesehen haben, You must the man seen *have*.

c. When the **PREDICATE** (compare p. 331, b. 2.) is accompanied by a **Past Participle** or **Infinitive**, it is followed by these **uninflected parts**; as, Er war im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann geworden, He had in the course of time *a rich man become*. Er mag im Laufe



der Zeit ein reicher Mann werden, He may in the course of time a rich man *become*; (or geworden sein, become *have*). Other parts of speech must not be thrown in between the parts of the verb when these are at the end, except such words *as* are used as components of the verb.

3. But the finite verb is placed last of all in all dependent clauses (see above); as, — daß ich den Mann sehe, — that I the man *see*; — welchen ich gesehen habe, — whom I seen *have*; — wenn ich den Mann sehen kann, when I the man see *can*; — weil er im Laufe der Zeit ein reicher Mann geworden sein mag, — because he in the course of time a rich man become *have may*.

The few cases in which this rule is departed from are stated below 5, *a. b. c.*

4. The finite verb is in direct principal sentences placed immediately after the nominative (subject) or its attribute (see p. 332, *e. and d.*); as, Ich sehe den Mann, I *see* the man. Ich sah den Mann, I *saw* the man. Ich habe (hatte) den Mann gesehen, I *have* (had) the man seen. Ich werde (soll, will, muß, kann) den Mann sehen, I *shall* (am to, will, must, can,) the man see; (or after the attribute), Der Vater des Kindes kaufte das Buch, The father of the child *bought* the book. Der Mann in dem grauen Anzuge rettete das Kind, The man in the gray suit *saved* the child.

Note. Adverbials qualifying the verb, are not as in English placed between the nominative and a simple tense of the verb; I often saw the man, He generally disappoints his friends are construed; I saw the man often, he disappoints his friends generally, see D. 7, of his Sect. (In dependent clauses, where the nominative is at the beginning and the verb at the end, the adverb must of course be placed between the two, but then it generally immediately precedes the verb).

But the following adverbs will be found immediately after the nominative because they qualify attributively the Nom. and not

the verb; they then have almost all the force of: "*as to*"; — *aber* however, but, (*Der Vater aber sagte &c.* But the father said &c.), also accordingly, *dagegen* on the other hand, *einerseits* on the one hand *and anderseits* on the other hand, *indessen* however, *jedoch* however, *nämlich* namely, *nun* in the sense of *then*, *selbst* even, *sonach* accordingly, *überdies* moreover, besides, *zwar* indeed. *Der Vater zwar hätte den Muth gehabt, die Mutter jedoch konnte sich nicht entschließen, The father indeed might have had the courage, the mother, however, could not come to a resolution.*

### 5. Peculiar construction of the compound tenses of AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD and of *werden* in dependent clauses.

a. If in a dependent clause the main verb is accompanied both by an AUXILIARY VERB OF TENSE and by a Past Participle in the Infinitive form (see p. 260) or by an Infinitive of an AUXILIARY VERB OF MOOD, this auxiliary verb of mood is always placed last in the clause, whilst the auxiliary verb of tense precedes the main verb; as, — *daß ich es nicht habe sehen können*, — that I have not been able to see it; — *weil er es wird bringen müssen*, — because he will be compelled to bring it; — SECOND FUTURE: — *weil er es wird haben bringen müssen*, — because he will have been compelled to bring it.

b. In the same manner the finite part of an auxiliary verb of mood in dependent clauses is made to precede, and another auxiliary verb of mood in the Infinitive is made to follow the main Infinitive; as, *Dies beweist, daß er es nicht konnte hindern wollen*, This proves that he could not intend (will) to hinder it. *Er bat ihn, daß er es ihn möchte sehen lassen*, He begged him that he might allow him to see it. Even combinations like the following occur. *Dies beweist, daß er es nicht konnte haben hindern wollen*, (Past Part.), This proves, that he could not have intended (willed) to hinder it.

c. When in a dependent clause the forms of the Present of the AUXILIARY *werden* *shall, will*, are used along with the Infinitive *werden to be* (by which the Passive voice is formed) the former, for the sake of euphony, directly precedes and the Infinitive *werden* follows the main verb; as, *Ich sehe voraus, daß wir werden geschlagen werden*, I foresee that we shall be beaten. *Ich muß es sagen, wenn ich darum werde befragt werden*, I must tell it, when I shall be asked about it. With the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person *wirßt will, wird will*, the usual arrangement takes place; as, *Du mußt es sagen, wenn du darum befragt werden wirßt*, You must tell it, when you shall be asked about it; because this combination is tolerably euphonic.

## A. A. REMARKS ON COMPOUND SENTENCES.

(These contain the following: *a.* Dependent clauses, their position. *a. a.* insertion. *b.* and *c.* Omission of the Relative and of conjunctions. *d.* and *e.* Omission of the auxiliary verb. *f.* Omission of the conjunctions *daß* *that*, *wenn* *if* and *ob* *whether*. *g.* *Such as*. *h.* Relative clauses with the Infinitive with *to*. *i.* Clauses with the Infinitive with *zu*).

*a.* The *dependent* clause may, as in English, follow, precede, or be inserted into another clause of a compound sentence. In all these cases the application of the COMMA (see p. 19 *c. d.*) is important for the pupil, as it always separates the dependent from other clauses; as, *Das Buch war nicht, wo du es suchtest, The book was not where you sought it. Daß du das Buch suchtest, wußte ich nicht, That you sought the book, I did not know (knew I not). Das Buch, welches du suchtest, ist hier, The book which you sought is here.*

The *dependent* clause either represents the *object*; as, *Ich weiß, daß er stark ist, I know that he is strong, (i. e. I know his strength)*, or expresses an *adverbial relation*; as, *Bringen Sie es mit, wenn Sie Morgen kommen, Bring it with you when you come to-morrow, (i. e. Bring it with you to-morrow)*, or an *attribute*: *Der Mann, welcher alt war, The man who was old, (i. e. The old man)*; and according to its nature as an *Object*, an *Adverbial* or an *Attribute* its position in the compound sentence is regulated very much as in English.

*aa.* *Adverbial insertions* into dependent clauses are not, as in English, made directly after the introducing CONJUNCTION or RELATIVE, but are, like the adverb, placed after the nominative or the object, especially when this is expressed by personal pronouns (See p. 351). Thus not: *He said that as he had not the book he could not give me the words of the passage*; — but: *He said that he to me, as he had not the book, could not give the words of the passage.* Er sagte, daß er mir, da er das Buch nicht habe, die Worte der Stelle nicht geben könne. *If by any chance you should meet him, Wenn Sie ihn zufällig trafen.* (See p. 338, Note).

*Obs.* As the first step in translating must be to ascertain from their agreement the *nominative* or *subject* of the sentence, and then directly the *entire verb*

with the object it may govern, the reader must abstain from entering upon all inserted clauses until he has made out the enclosing sentence. As the inserted clauses are always preceded and followed by commas, these commas will warn him to pass on until the completing portion of the interrupted sentence is found. Thus: Das Land, in welchem der Flüchtling eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, lag endlich vor ihm. Translate: Das Land ————— lag endlich vor ihm, *The land ————— lay at last before him*, and then return to the inserted clause —, in welchem der Flüchtling eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, — *in which the fugitive hoped to find a new home*.

The greater the number of clauses inserted into each other the more strictly must this manner of proceeding be observed; as, Das Land, in welchem der Flüchtling, der sich bewusst war, daß die Sache, der er gedient hatte, auf lange Jahre eine verlorene war, eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, lag endlich vor ihm. Translate *first*: Das Land, —, —, —, —, lag endlich vor ihm, *secondly*: in welchem der Flüchtling, —, —, —, —, eine neue Heimath zu finden hoffte, *thirdly*: der sich bewusst war, *fourthly*: daß die Sache, —, auf lange Jahre eine verlorene war, *lastly*: der er gedient hatte, — The land in which the fugitive who was aware that the cause which he had served was a forlorn one for long years hoped to find a new home, lay at last before him.

*b. The entire omission of the relative pronoun* (see p. 113, F.) or of the subordinative Conjunctions *als* and *wenn* *when* (see pp. 328, 330), as in the English: *The man (whom) you saw, The man (whom) you spoke of, The day (when) it happened, Each time (when) I cross the place, The next time (when) you write, — never occurs in German.*

The Relative, governed by a preposition, must always be preceded by it; as, Der Mann, von welchem ich sprach, *The man I spoke of.*

c. But, as is occasionally done in English, the **Relative Pronoun**, if not changing its case, or the **Subordinate Conjunction**, heading the first of a succession of dependent clauses, is generally **not repeated in the rest** and along with either the Nominative (and sometimes the object) are likewise understood. The finite verb being placed last in all these clauses, will cause the pupil to look back for the Relative or Subordinate Conjunction heading the first; *Examples*: Der Mann, welcher ein Eingeborener der Provinz war, (welcher) die Wege kannte und (welcher) mir von meinem Bruder gesandt war, brachte mich nach dem Hause. *The man who was a native of the province, (who) knew the roads and (who) was sent to me by my brother, brought me to the house.*

Der Mann, den ich fast täglich sah, (den ich) oft bei meinem Bruder sprach, und (den ich) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt habe, *The man whom I saw almost daily, whom I often conversed with at my brother's, and whom I had asked a hundred times about these things.* Du weißt, daß ich diesen Mann fast täglich sah, (daß ich) ihn oft bei meinem Bruder sprach, und (daß ich ihn) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt habe. *You know that I saw this man almost daily, that I have conversed with him frequently at my brother's and that I have asked him a hundred times about these things.*

d. Here it may also be observed, that in a succession of clauses, both principal and dependent, **the auxiliary verb need not be repeated**; as, 1. **in main clauses**, Ich hatte den Mann fast täglich gesehen, (ich hatte ihn) häufig bei meinem Bruder gesprochen und (ich hatte ihn) hundertmal über diese Dinge befragt, *I had seen the man almost daily, had conversed with him frequently at my brother's, and had asked him, &c.*; or, 2. **in dependent clauses**. (Sie wissen) daß ich den Mann fast täglich gesehen (hatte), oft bei meinem Bruder gesprochen (hatte), und hundertmal darüber befragt hatte. (You know) that I had seen the man almost daily, that I had conversed with him frequently at my brother's, and that I had asked him, &c.

e. The Auxiliary is, especially in poetry, often **altogether omitted** in the past tenses, as in Heine's "*Die Grenadiere*":

Da hörten sie Beide die traurige Mär', Then they heard the sad story  
 Daß Frankreich verloren gegangen, that France *was* lost,  
 Besiegt und zerschlagen das tapfere Heer — that the brave army *was* conquered  
 and scattered,  
 Und der Kaiser, der Kaiser gefangen and even the Emperor in captivity.  
 (sei).

Farther in Schiller's "*Tell*": Es leben viele, die das nicht gesehen (haben), Many live who have not seen that. Der soll mir's zeugen, ob die Fahrt zu wagen (ist), He shall be my witness whether the passage is to be ventured.

f. The Conjunction *daß* *that* (introducing a clause which represents the object of the leading sentence) may be omitted as in English; but then the clause is construed as a principal clause in German; as, Ich glaube, es ist unmöglich, for, Ich glaube, daß es unmöglich ist, *I believe (that) it is impossible*. Sie sehen, ich bin beschäftigt, *You see I am occupied*.

The leading clause, however, must **not** be placed **after** the object-clause; as, *It is impossible I believe*, not: Es ist unmöglich, ich glaube, but, as above: Ich glaube, es ist unmöglich. *You are working I see*, not: Sie arbeiten, ich sehe, but: Ich sehe, Sie arbeiten; or, if such an arrangement is desirable the leading clause must be introduced by the Conjunction *wie*, *as*, which renders it **dependent**; as, Sie arbeiten, *wie* ich sehe.

*Daß* however **must not** be omitted after a **negative** clause; as, *I do not think, except, fear*, etc., therefore, ich glaube nicht, daß es richtig ist. I don't think (that) 'it is correct.

(The pupil will do well here to refer to p. 291, a.)

The Conjunctions *da* *as*, *wenn* *if*, während *whilst*, *ob* *whether* are frequently omitted in German, but when this is the case the dependent clause assumes the form of an **inverted principal** sentence. (See p. 346, 5 a).

g. "*As*" (conjunction and Relative) in *such* — *as* (see p. 115, d. and Note 3).

"*As to*" see p. 289.

h. English **relative clauses with the Infinitive with to**, as, *Whom to ask*, *What to do*, *Which to take* are elliptical and may be completed by means of the verb *to be* (in this case) *soßen* (see pp. 257, 6 and 292, c. and sometimes *to have* haben with the personal forms of which they must be construed as dependent clauses in German; as, *Whom* (I am) *to ask*, Wen ich fragen soll. *What* (he is) *to do*, Was er thun soll. *Which* (you are) *to take*, Welches du nehmen sollst, or, Was ich zu thun habe, Welches du zu nehmen hast.

After the **RELATIVE ADVERBS** *how*, *when* and *where* and their **COMPOUNDS** such clauses may be construed either with the personal

forms of *sein* or impersonally with *sein* and the Infinitive with *zu*; as, *How to begin*, *Wie ich beginnen soll*, or, *Wie zu beginnen ist*. *When to speak*, *Wenn du sprechen sollst*, or, *Wenn zu sprechen ist*. *Where to end*, *Wo er enden soll*.

*To know how to*, in the sense of *to be able to*, is rendered by *können* with the simple Infinitive (see p. 254, 1) or by *wissen* followed by the Infinitive with *zu*, if a general intellectual ability is implied; as, *Er weiß die Leute zu behandeln*, He knows how to treat people. In speaking of special cases *how* is expressed by *wie*, as above; as, *Er weiß, wie er in diesem Fall zu handeln hat*, He knows how to act in this case.

i. Clauses containing the Infinitive with *zu* are fully explained pp. 289, *seq.*

## B. THE INVERTED ORDER OF THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB.

### a. In Principal clauses.

The nature of this form, as occurring in principal sentences is fully explained pp. 333, 335 where also the inversion by the verb itself is mentioned. (p. 336, *d.*).

1. The finite verb is placed before its nominative, as in English, in *interrogative and imperative* sentences; as, *Saben Sie mein Buch?* Have you my book? *Ist er nach Hause gekommen?* Has he come home? *Sein Sie froh!* Be ye glad! *Mag er sich selbst helfen!* May he help himself.

2. The main clause is inverted when headed by its object, its predicate or by an adverb or adverbial expression. *Examples*: — with the object, (in the Genitive), *des Freundes* will ich dann gedenken, Then I will remember the friend. (in the Dative), *dem Herrn* gebührt Preis und Dank, To the Lord are due praise and thanks. (In the Accusative), *den Mann* sah ich nie, That man I never saw.

Words of a speech followed, or interrupted by phrases like — *sagte er* — *said he*, *antwortete er* (answered he) *he answered*, form the object of the interrupting phrase and hence invert all phrases of this

kind; as, *Warum kamen Sie nicht? fragte er*, Why did you not come? he asked, *Weil ich fürchtete, erwiderte* (entgegnete, versetzte) *der Freund zögernd, ich möchte unwillkommen sein*, Because I feared, his friend replied hesitatingly, I might be unwelcome.

**Examples: with the predicate** of the verb *sein* or *verbs* of a similar nature given p. 331, b. 2. Nom.; as, *Stärkend ist dieser Trunk nicht, er ist tödtlich*. This drink is not strengthening, it is deadly. *Mein Freund ist er nicht*, He is not my friend. *Unangenehm bleibt es doch*, It nevertheless remains unpleasant. *Alt wird er nicht werden*, He will not get old.

**Examples: with an Adverb, adverbial expression or Participle used adverbially** (as sometimes in English): *da liegt ein Hund*, there lies a dog. *Dann kam der König*, then came the king. *Auf dem Berge stand ein Haus*, On the hill there stood a house. *In dem Hause war Alles still*, In the house everything was quiet. *Bebend stand sie vor mir*, Trembling she stood before me. *Glehend erhoben sie die Hände*, They raised their hands beseechingly.

**3. The main clause is inverted if following the dependent or a clause containing the Infinitive with *zu***; because such clauses represent either the Object, Predicate or Adverbial, as, *Als ich nach Hause kam, sah ich den Mann*, When I came home I saw the man. *Dass Du hier bist, weiß der Vater nicht*, That you are here my father does not know. *Wenn Du kommst, wird dein Freund dich erwarten*, If you come your friend will await you. *Um es zu verstehen, muß man es oft hören*, In order to understand it, one must hear it often.

*Yet*, occurring at the head of a main clause after a concessive dependent is rendered by *doch* or *dennoch*, but these are placed after the nominative and the objects when expressed by Pers. Pron.; as, *Obgleich ich dich verlieren muß, kann ich dich doch nicht vergessen*, Although I must lose thee, yet I cannot forget thee.



bessern, so wird er dir vergeben. *If your father sees the earnestness with which you have striven to better your situation (then) he will forgive you.*

Especially in *poetical diction* the particle *so* is occasionally omitted; as, in *Goethe's "Tasso"*: — doch seh' ich näher an, was dieser Dichtung den innern Werth und ihre Würde giebt, (so) erkenn' ich wohl, ich hab' es nur von Euch. *Yet, if I consider more strictly what lends intrinsic value and dignity to this poem, I conceive, indeed, I have it only from you.*

The conjunction *so* is also used **before the principal clause** in order to **increase** the force of the **antithesis** or to point out an **inference**, as, Ob schon ich es sah, so konnte ich es doch nicht hindern, Although I saw it, (still) I could not hinder it. Wenn du so weise bist, so hilf dir auch selbst. *If you are so wise, (then) help yourself.* Weil (da) er nicht kommt, so müssen wir allein gehen, *As he does not come, we must go alone.* — *so* is used very conveniently when other clauses are **inserted** between the condition and the inference; as, Wenn er mir das Buch leihen wollte, von dem Sie mir sagten, daß er es besitzt, so würde er mich sehr verbinden. *If he would lend me the book (of) which you told me (that) he possesses (it) he would oblige me very much.*

*Note:* The above rules apply also to the following combinations of the conjunction **wenn**; viz: **wenn — auch**, **wenn — gleich**, **wenn — schon** and of the conjunction **ob**; viz: **ob — auch**, **ob — gleich**, **ob — schon**, all in the sense of *if — even, although*, of which the following must be observed. When the conjunctions **wenn** and **ob** are omitted the adverbs **auch**, **gleich** and **schon** are in the inverted dependent, placed after the Nominative and even after the objects especially when these are Personal Pronouns, which are never preceded by adverbs; *Thus: Wenn ich auch (gleich, schon) das Geld hätte —, is inverted into hätte ich auch (gleich, schon) das Geld, Even had I the money, — although I had the money; bringt er's dir auch (gleich, schon) morgen; although he bring it you tomorrow.*

The choice of **auch**, **gleich** and **schon** *even*, in connection with **wenn**, **ob** or of the compounds **wenngleich**, **obgleich**, **obschon** etc. is partly a matter of taste, and partly depends on the occurrence in their ordinary significations of, **auch** *also*, **gleich** *equal, at once*, **schon** *already*.

Especially in scientific works the inversion of sentences in which an Antithesis is expressed by phrases like — *einerseits on the one hand*, *hier here*, and *anderseits, dagegen on the other hand*, the omitted Conjunction to be supplied is *während while*, rather than *wenn if*; Finden wir *hier einerseits* eine Fülle der Materie, so ist *dagegen* der Mangel an Klarheit zu beklagen, Whilst we have *on the one hand* a profusion of Matter the want of distinctness is to be regretted on the other.

The inversion of the dependent clause owing to the omission of *ob whether, whether it was that*, occurs in sentences like the following: Hatte er nun die Mittel selbst, oder waren sie ihm von einem Freunde gegeben worden, — *kurz*, er unternahm die Speculation. *Whether it was that he had the means himself or that they were given to him by a friend, in short he entered upon the speculation.* For constructions of this kind the use of the conjunctions *nun* in the first and *oder* in the second clause as also of the adverb *kurz* in the inference is almost characteristic.

## 6. The Nominative at or near the end of the Clause.

a. When a particular stress is to be put on a substantive, forming the Nominative of a clause, it may be placed *after* the objects, especially when these are pronouns and after adverbs etc.; This is more common in inverted and dependent clauses, when the Nominative has the *indefinite Article* (see p. 352, 5.) or when a *Relative Clause* is to be attached to the Nominative; *Examples:* Bald erfüllte den ganzen Saal ein ersüßender Rauch, Soon a suffocating smoke filled the entire hall. Da erhob sich plötzlich aus den Schlünden des Gebirges ein wüthender Sturm, Then suddenly a furious Tempest arose from the gorges of the mountains. Wenn es dir der Vater erlaubt, If your father allows it you. Endlich erfuhr diese Begebenheiten auch der König, der solche Unregelmäßigkeiten sehr haßte, At last also the king heard of these events who hated such irregularities much.

b. The indefinite substantive pronouns *Alles everything, Etwas something, irgend Etwas anything, Manches many a thing, Nichts nothing, Wenig few things, Vieles many things, much,*

are, when Nominatives of inverted and dependent clauses specially liable to this inversion and **must** be placed after the object and adverbials as, Mir mißfiel in diesem Hause **Manches**, Many a thing displeased me in this house. Weil deinem Freund in dieser schlimmen Lage **Nichts** Andres übrig bleibt, Because *nothing else* is left to your friend in this critical state of affairs. Trügt mich nicht Alles, Unless every-thing deceives me. Weil ihn Alles (Etwas, **Manches**) beunruhigt, Because everything (something, many a thing &c.) troubles him. as, Es gefällt meinem Vater hier **Nichts**, Nothing here pleases my father. (see p. 301, Note).

### C. THE MUTUAL POSITION OF THE DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS and of these when expressed by PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

In arranging the objects in a clause, its nature as a direct main clause or as an inverted, or as a dependent clause must first be taken into account, and also the position of the adverb or adverbial expression (see D below) if any occur.

*a.* In Section XVIII under 3, and 4, pp. 204 etc.; there are given transitive and reflective verbs, which besides the person in the Accusative **require a secondary object in the Genitive**. Of these it is to be noticed that this Object in the Genitive invariably follows the object in the Accusative; as, Es ist die schlechteste Handlung, einen Menschen seines guten Namens zu berauben, It is the meanest action to rob a person of his good name. Doch schämen die meisten Menschen sich dessen nicht, Yet most people are not ashamed of it.

*b.* As already stated, p. 207, verbs conveying the idea of *giving or taking from, granting or refusing, as, to lend, to send, to present with, to show, to prove, to promise, to allow, to permit, or in the negative, to withhold from, to rob of, to conceal from, to deny to, to refuse, &c.*, require in German the party *to whom* or *from whom* (indirect object) in the dative, whilst the thing given, &c., or taken, &c. (direct object), stands in the accusative. *e. g.* Ich gab meinem Freunde (dative) das Buch (accusative), I gave (to) my friend the book.

As to the position of the object in general, the pupil has to study p. 334, FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE and INVERTED SENTENCES p. 335 according to which the object may assume very different positions and it must here be added that the position of the object may be farther affected by the statements preceding or following the clause in which it occurs.

1. **One object a Personal Pronoun.** Thus the object often is a personal pronoun when the thing or person which it represents has been named in a preceding clause; as, *The book is not here; I gave it to your sister. Your sister was here; I gave her the book.* The personal pronoun, such as *it, her*, then conveys nothing new to the mind, and being thus of least consequence is placed foremost in the clause so that it precedes everything except the nominative and, in direct main clauses, the finite verb; as, *Ich gab es ihrer Schwester, I gave it to your sister. Ich gab ihm das Buch, I gave him the book.*

In inverted and dependent clauses the Personal Pronoun-Object immediately follows the nominative; as, *Daher gab ich es ihrer Schwester, Hence I gave it to your sister. Daß ich ihm das Buch gab, That I gave him the book.*

2. **Both objects personal pronouns.** The accusative of the personal pronoun as the object, precedes any other case of the personal pronoun, used as an object; as, *Du willst dich seiner (Gen.) entledigen, You want to rid yourself of him. Ich kann es ihr nicht geben, I cannot give it to her. Soll ich ihn dir vorstellen? Shall I introduce him to you? Er hat sie euch empfohlen, He has recommended her to you. Ich empfehle mich Ihnen, Good-bye.*

3. **Dieß and daß.** The substantive demonstrative pronouns, *dieß this* and *daß that* (p. 92, A. a.) as ob-

jects must, like the personal pronoun, precede every other element of the sentence except the nominative and, in direct main clauses, the finite verb; as, *Ich finde dies nicht in meinem Buche, I cannot find this in my book. Ich hörte das neulich bei Ihnen, I heard that the other day at your house.*

But *dies* and *das* invariably follow the personal pronouns used as objects; *Wer hat Ihnen dies gesagt? Who has told you this? Ich kann dich dem nicht aussetzen, I cannot expose you to that.*

4. Both objects nouns. Of these the one bearing most directly on the verb, and being of chief import in the sentence, is placed second. In ordinary statements this is the direct object in the accusative, because with verbs of *giving* the question naturally arising first is: *You gave what?* to which the object in the accusative is the reply and is hence placed second, whilst the remoter question: *to whom did you give?* is answered by the object in the dative which according to the general law must be placed earlier in the sentence; e. g. *Ich gab dem Manne das Buch, I gave to the man the book.*

When on the other hand the indirect object is to be represented as the principal item of the statement, it is made to follow the accusative; as, *Ich gab das Buch diesem Manne, I gave the book to this man.*

5. Any object used with the indefinite article, is almost invariably made to follow the object used with the definite article or with any pronoun, because an element introduced by the indefinite article always appears as a new item to the mind of the hearer and hence must be held to be of primary importance; e. g. *Ich gab dem Manne einen Thaler, I gave the man a dollar,* (the man is already known and the whole statement is intended to shew what you gave). *Ich gab den Thaler einem Manne, I gave the dollar to a man,* (here

the dative *einem Manne* is placed second, because, the rest being already known, the statement is mainly made with a view to show to whom the dollar was given).

When both objects have the indefinite article, their position is decided by the greater importance attributed to one of them.

*Note.* It has been mentioned already (p. 349. 6. a.), that even the nominative when used with the indefinite Article, may be placed after the object and near the end of the clause; and this strong influence of the indefinite article will also be found to have an effect on the position of adverbial expressions (see D. below). There it may farther be noticed that an Object with the indefinite article is frequently found after adverbial expressions; e. g. *Ich will Ihnen mit Vergnügen einen Thaler geben*, I will give you a dollar with pleasure. *Sie bekam von ihrer Mutter einen Ring*, She got a ring from her mother.

6. An object referred to by a Relative Clause follows any other object; as, *Ich gab das Buch dem Manne, der hier war*, I gave the book to the man who was here. *Ich gab dem Manne das Buch, welches du mir geliehen hattest*, I gave (to) the man the book which you had lent me. *Wir verbieten den Kindern, das was ihnen schadet*, We forbid our children that which hurts them. (See 3. above).

In complex sentences the order of the objects and clauses referring to them, is much the same as in English; as, *Ich gab das Buch, welches wir neulich lasen, deiner Schwester, die es zu sehen wünschte*. I gave the book which we read the other day to your sister who wished to see it.

*Note.* Objects with the force of separable components of the Verb. Especially with the verbs *essen to eat, trinken to drink, spielen to play, machen to make* and some others of a similar nature, the objects *eaten, drunk, played &c. form a separable combination* which may often be expressed by one verb in English; as, *Mittag essen, to eat the mid-day's meal* stands for *to dine*; *Kaffee trinken* after the fashion of the Germans is equivalent to *to breakfast*; *Abendbrod essen, to eat the evening meal* is equivalent to *to sup (to take supper)*; *Karten spielen, to play at cards* may be

expressed by *to gamble*, Klavier spielen, *to play the piano* simply by *to play*; Besuche machen, *to pay visits* by *to call*; einen Walzer tanzen, *to dance a waltz* by *walzen*, *to waltz*. All such objects (Mittag, Kaffee, Abendbrod, Karten, Besuche, Walzer &c.) and even the objects of similar verbs are treated like separable prefixes (see D. below and compare also p. 232, *e. separable compound verbs &c.*)

#### D. POSITION OF SEPARABLE PREFIXES AND OF ADVERBS OR ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS QUALIFYING THE VERB.

**NB.** It must be well observed that this portion treats of Adverbials only in so far as they qualify the verb, and that the position of Adverbs &c. qualifying Adjectives or Adverbs, or joined attributively to the noun (as in *the man with the pale face*) is the same as in English. Compare however E. below.

The separable prefix (see pp. 29, B. 40, 3. 64, E. 233, 1. and 2.) has in every respect the character of an adverb, from which it differs only in so far as it exercises *so forcibly* a qualifying influence on the verb, as to be actually joined to it when the verb is placed at the end.

1. In direct principal clauses and in all inverted clauses, the simple form of the main verb (*viz.* the *Present*, *Imperfect* and *Imperative*) either immediately follows or precedes its nominative. (Compare A. 4, Note. p. 338). In these cases only is the separable prefix, the adverb, &c., placed at the end of the clause; as, Er geht mit seinem Bruder aus, (from ausgehen), *He goes out with his brother.* Stehen Sie auf! *Get up!* Stehst Du nicht auf, so rufe ich den Vater her, *If you don't get up, I shall call your father here.* Er wünscht dies nicht (sehr, oft, manchmal), *He does not wish this, (He wishes this very much, He often, sometimes, wishes this).* Er kam mit seinem Bruder nach Hause, *He came home with his brother.*

2. In all other cases (*viz.* when it is the *Infinitive*, the *Past Participle* and in all *dependent Clauses*) the verb

is at the end, and then the separable prefix, the adverb, &c. immediately precedes it, the prefix being joined to the verb; as, *Er ist mit seinem Bruder ausgegangen, He has gone out with his brother.* *Er wird mit seinem Bruder ausgehen, He will go out with his brother.* *Ich sah, daß er mit seinem Bruder ausging, I saw that he went out with his brother.* *Er hatte dies nicht gewünscht, He had not wished this.* *Ich weiß, daß er dies nicht wünscht, I know that he does not wish this.* *Er ist mit seinem Bruder nach Hause gekommen, He has come home with his brother.* *Wenn er mit seinem Bruder nach Hause kommt, If he comes home with his brother.*

3. However, Adverbs or Adverbial Expressions precede the object of the verb in the following cases: —

a. They may be placed altogether at the head of the sentence which they then invert; as, *Nicht im Glücke entwickeln sich die edelsten Kräfte des Menschen, It is not in good fortune that the noblest qualities of man are developed.*

b. Adverbs etc.; stating Time "When", especially those given p. 314 under *c, d, f,* and *g,*, precede the objects if these are nouns, and if particular stress is not laid on the time; as, *Ich sah gestern Ihren Bruder, I yesterday saw your brother.* *Ich begegnete kürzlich dem Kapitain, I lately met the captain.*

If however the time is mentioned as of particular importance the object precedes it; as, *Ich sah Ihren Bruder gestern, I saw your brother yesterday.* *Ich begegnete dem Kapitain diesen Morgen, I met the captain this morning.*

c. Adverbs of place when mentioned merely incidentally, or when the Place is already known to the hearer often precede the object; as, *Ich lebte in Berlin und hatte dort einen Freund, I lived in Berlin and had a friend there.* *Ich habe hier keine Bekannten, I have no acquaintances here.* *Man erwartet morgen in Paris*



eine **Demonstration**, One expects a *demonstration* in Paris tomorrow. (In cases like the last the Adverbs of Time may also follow that of Place; as, *Mail erwartet in Paris morgen eine Demonstration*).

When used as explained under *b.* and *c.* Adverbs of *time* and *place* may even precede the **Nominative**; as, *Es bestand damals in London der Gebrauch*,—*There existed then in London the custom*,—; *Es wüthete gestern auf der See ein Sturm*, *Yesterday there was a storm raging at sea*. Such inversions occur when a succeeding portion of the sentence is to be **closely linked** to the Nominative; as, *There existed then in London the custom to celebrate the anniversary etc.* or when the subject has the **Indefinite article**; as, *a Tempest etc.*; (Compare C. 5. p. 353 note with regard to the peculiar force of the Indef. Article).

*d.* Adverbial Expressions (so-called Prepositional-Clauses) often precede the object when the latter is the main thing to be stated, the Adverbial being mentioned merely incidentally; the object then has mostly the indefinite article; as, *Sie hat so viele Geschenke erhalten: Von ihrem Vater eine goldene Uhr, von ihrer Tante einen Sonnenschirm, von ihrer Schwester ein Buch, etc.*; *She has recieved so many presents: from her father a gold watch, from her aunt a parasol, from her sister a book etc.* The order is of course to be reversed when the stress is laid on the Adverbial chiefly; as, *eine Uhr von ihrem Vater*, a watch *from her father*. Pupils must here also take up the cases mentioned p. 353, 6. and especially the Note there, likewise such "separable Combinations of Verbs" as are mentioned under *e.* p. 232, the separable portion of which is often the object and then treated like a separable prefix according to 1, 2, above. Such **Combinations, forming one idea**, are for instance: *Anspruch machen* to lay claim to (*to claim*), *Antheil nehmen* to take an interest in (*to interest oneself in*), *Rücksicht nehmen* to have regard (*to consider*), *Rechenschaft geben*, to account for *Verzicht leisten* to waive ones claims (*to renounce*), *Nachsicht haben* to have indulgence (*to forbear*), *den*

Verstand verlieren to lose ones reason (*to go mad*) and similar ones; as, Sie **machen** besonders jetzt auf große Rücksicht von unserer Seite **Anspruch**, They especially now lay claim to great consideration on our part.

e. The Adverbs **auch**, **gleich**, **schon**, *even* used in combination with **wenn** and **ob** *if*, (*ob*) — **nun** and especially **nicht** in damit — **nicht**, daß — **nicht** *lest*, **wenn** — **nicht** *unless* are placed before other adverbs and before the objects unless these are pronouns or the indefinite **dies** and **das** (p. 350, 3.) As fully explained p. 328, Note 2. *Example*: Sie können es thun, **wenn** er es **nicht** schon heute seinem Vater gesagt, You may do it *unless* he has already told it to his father today.

f. Phrases like “were you not there?” „Did you not see etc.? „Had you not lost etc.?” are often elliptical and imply an interrogative main clause; as, “Did you not say that you had lost a key?” In these the **nicht** is placed immediately after the nominative and before the objects unless these are personal pronouns or the indefinite **dies** and **das**; as, **Hatten** Sie **nicht** einen Schlüssel verloren? Had you not lost a key?

g. Certain Adverbs like: **gern** *gladly*, *with pleasure*; **gefälligst** (*obligingly*) *please!*; **immer** *always*; **niemals** *never*, are often employed without a particular signification in the sentence and without being essential to it; as, **Machen** Sie **gefälligst** die Thür zu! Please shut the door. Ich will Ihnen das Bild **gern** zeigen, I will gladly show you the picture. Er **macht** die Fenster **immer** (*niemals*) auf, *He always (never) opens the windows*. Such adverbs, being hardly used in their strict sense, are a very convenient means to throw the stress either on the verb alone, or on the object, or another adverbial which they then precede. *Ex.* (*These windows are too stiff.*) “Yes! he never opens the windows”, Ja! er **macht** die Fenster **niemals** auf. (*The*

*air here is so close*). Yes! he never opens *the windows*, Ja! er macht niemals *die Fenster* auf.

*h.* But Adverbs of all kinds may precede objects whether these be nouns or pronouns if the Adverb does not strictly qualify the verb but is used rather attributively in singling out the object or in marking it in contradistinction to another object; as, *Er sieht in solchen Augenblicken leider überall nur Gefahr und Täuschung*, He *in such moments unfortunately* beholds *everywhere only* danger and disappointment. *Er verleßt heute diesen, morgen jenen*, He slanders to day the one, tomorrow another. *Ihr beleidigt durch solche Reden eures gleichen, aber nicht mich*, You insult by such talk people like yourself, but not me.

Often also the necessity of closely linking to the object a succeeding portion of the sentence determines its position after adverbs; as, *Du verletzest durch solches Benehmen immer am meisten mich*, *dem du doch so Vieles verdankst*, You *by such conduct always most of all* offend me to whom you owe so much. *Ich sagte Ihm unter diesen Umständen genau nur daß, was einzig ihn anging*, I, under these circumstances, told him only (that) what concerns solely him.

4. Except in the cases just mentioned under *h*, Adverbs and adverbial expressions **must not** be placed before the objects when these are **Personal Pronouns** or the Indefinite Demonstratives **dies** and **daß**. The cases of the pronoun-object, expressed in English by *it*, *them* are **never** preceded by any Adverb or Adverbial. The reason for this rule will be seen from C. 1, 2, 3, p. 351. *Ex.* *Sieh' hier diesen Ring*. *Ich werde ihn dir eines Tages geben*, See here this ring! I shall some day give it you. *Ich werde ihn lieber dir, als deiner Schwester geben*, I shall give it to you, rather than to your sister.

5. *a.* If several adverbs or adverbial expressions

qualify strictly speaking, the same verb, they are arranged entirely in accordance with the FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLE p. 334. The adverb &c. of chief importance in the statement is placed **nearest the end**, and is preceded by the others, so that the least important is placed first. This leads to the arrangement of adverbs in the following order; 1<sup>st</sup> expression of **time**, 2<sup>d</sup> of **manner**, 3<sup>d</sup> of **place**, in *ordinary* statements, that is in statements not made with a view to give prominence to a particular adverb, and not affected by the preceding or succeeding clause; e. g. Er ist heute allein hier gewesen, He has been *alone here to-day*. Ich fand es gestern zu meiner großen Ueberraschung auf meinem Tische, I found it *yesterday on my table to my great surprise*.

b. Particularly when the verb is one referring to place, as stehen to *stand*, kommen to *come*, treffen to *meet*, senden to *send* &c. and especially sein to *be*, its close connection with the adverbial expression of place is marked by placing the adverb **last** or immediately before the verb if that be at the end; as, Wenn Sie morgen mit ihrem Freunde zu uns kommen, *If you come to our house with your friend to-morrow*. (The order of the adverb is here as in many other cases exactly the reverse of the English according to p. 334).

c. Whenever **particular importance** is to be given to any other Adverbial, it must be brought **nearest the end**; as, Wenn Sie es heute nicht wünschen, will ich es Ihnen mit Vergnügen auch morgen schicken. If you do not wish it to-day, I shall send it you with pleasure *to-morrow*. Ich bin diesen Augenblick hier ganz allein, I am *quite alone* here at this moment.

6. a. The negative nicht *not* and other adverbs of **supreme importance qualifying the verb**, are placed **at the end unless** the verb occupies that place, in which case nicht &c. is placed immediately before it; as, Ich habe dein Buch nicht, *I have not your book*. Er kommt heute nicht, *He does not come to-day*. (Ich habe nicht dein Buch does not deny the verb nor the having of

the book, but merely expresses that, — *The book which I have is not yours*). Ich habe Ihren Bruder gestern zu meinem großen Bedauern *nicht* gesehen, und ich fürchte, ich werde ihn auch morgen *nicht* sehen. I did not see your brother to my great regret yesterday, and I fear I shall not even see him to-morrow. See p. 357, f.

The **supreme importance** of the adverb *nicht* appears from sentences like. Er thut solche Dinge *nicht*, *He does not do such things*, which may involve the man's character and for which in a reply the simple negative **no** may be substituted.

*b.* On the other hand *nicht* when **not** qualifying the verb is placed before the element which it especially qualifies; as, Er thut *nicht* nur solche, sondern noch ärgere Dinge, *He does not only do such, but even worse things*. The verb *he does* is here not at all denied, but merely the attribute *only such*. In Sie ist *nicht* alt, *She is not old*, it is the predicate *old* which is denied by the preceding *nicht*, and not the verb *she is* (*she exists*), as in *To be or not to be*, Sein oder *nicht* sein.

*c.* The adverb *nicht* is generally placed **not before** adverbs of time, but after them. Heute *nicht*, *Not to-day*. Selbst morgen *nicht*, *Not even to-morrow*. But it stands generally before adverbs of place from the reason stated above 5 *b.* Er war gestern *nicht* dort, *He was not there yesterday*.

It might seem as if in Heute *nicht*, *Not to-day*. Auch morgen *nicht*, *Not even to-morrow*. Er kam gestern *nicht*, *He did not come yesterday*, it is the adverb of time, which is especially negated. If more closely examined, however it will appear that the negation after all affects the **action**, the idea of **time being** more or less premised.

*d.* *Nicht* loses its negative force as in English in exclamatory expressions of an interrogative form introduced by Wie How, (Wann When, Wo Where, Was What, Wer Who &c.); as, Wie schön waren *nicht* jene Abende im Kreise treuer Freunde! *How beautiful were not those evenings in the circle of true friends!* Wie reich waren wir *nicht* an edeln Gütern, *How rich were we not in noble goods.*

*Obs.* The Pupil would naturally find the application of the above rules difficult mainly so because even in ones native tongue the adjustment of the elements of the sentence is a matter of nice judgment. For a long time therefore the attention should be directed chiefly to the understanding of the Adverbs and their position in good prose; and no disappointment need be felt if the pupil should not always succeed in placing them correctly. Under no circumstances however should he listen to the crude suggestion advanced in some Grammars, viz: that there are adverbs — "which need not be translated". They may as well leave out the little touches forming the lights in a picture. Especially in poetry the real force of a line often depends on some "such small word in a significant position."

7. Entire clauses of an adverbial nature (*Adverbial Clauses*) when inserted into a direct principal clause, are not, as in English, placed immediately after the subject (*nominative*) but are placed after the finite verb; as, *Kinder werden, wenn man ihre individuellen Eigenthümlichkeiten zu viel beachtet, leicht eingebildet*; Children, if one notices their individual peculiarities too much, easily become conceited.

In inverted and dependent clauses they follow the nominative whilst relative clauses are joined directly to the antecedent; as, *Kinder, die tüchtig werden sollen, müssen zu Arbeit und Gehorsam angehalten werden*; Children, who are to become fit for duty must be accustomed to labour and obedience.

#### E. POSITION OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE, OR PARTICIPLE WHEN QUALIFIED BY ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS, OBJECTS etc.

(For the use of the Participle, see pp. 294, 1. and 298, f. g.)

Only when a particular **emphasis** is desired, and in **poetry**, participles or adjectives sometimes occur at the **beginning** of their own clause; as, *Liegend unter grünen Bäumen*, *Lying* beneath the green trees. *Die Mutter, neu befeelt von dieser Hoffnung*, The mother revived by this hope. *Ihre Züge, kalt und ruhig* in ihrem gewöhnlichen Ausdrücke, gewannen einen besondern Reiz, wenn sie lächelte, Her features, *cold and calm* in their usual expression, gained a peculiar charm when she smiled.

*a.* In participial clauses the Present and Past Participle are generally placed **at the end**; as, *Mit der Hand nach der Sonne deutend*, *Pointing* with his hand towards the sun. *Auf dem Wasser schwimmend*, *Swimming* on the water. *Aus ihrem Vaterlande verbannt*, *Banished* from their country. *In den Wäldern angesiedelt*, *Settled* in the woods.

But even when used attributively, such clauses are, like simple adjectives or participles (*e. g.* *Das arme singende Kind*, *The poor, singing child*), placed before their noun (complement) **unaltered** in their arrangement, and so are all phrases qualifying the adjective, whilst in English such clauses follow the noun; as, *Der noch nicht sehr alte Mann*, *The man not yet very old*, or who was not yet very old. *Das vom Sturm getriebene Schiff*, *The vessel driven by the storm*, or which was driven by the storm. *Die aus ihrem Vaterlande verbannten und in den Wäldern angesiedelten Männer*, *The men banished from their country and settled in the woods*.

*b.* When the attributive Adjective or Participle requires an object, such objects, like the participial clauses above, are placed **before** the Adjective or Participle; as, *Der des Wegs kundige Mann* (p. 203), *The man well acquainted with the road*. *Der sein Ziel verfehlende Pfeil* (p. 204), *The arrow, missing its aim*. *Das dir gegebene Versprechen* (p. 208), *The Promise, given to you*. *Die unserem Freunde drohende Gefahr*, *The danger threatening our friend*. *Die ihre Aeltern zärtlich liebenden Kinder*, *The children tenderly loving their parents*.

As partly stated p. 298, *g.* clauses like those given under *a.* and *b.* may be turned into dependent relative clauses (*Die Kinder, welche ihre Aeltern zärtlich lieben*); but the latter construction is hardly so terse. If used with discretion the construction natural to the English language is employed more graphically than either; as,

Sein Geist, erfüllt von den großen Ideen der Vergangenheit, erfasste hoffend die Zukunft, His genius, filled with the great ideas of the past, hopefully grasped the future.

Sentences with extended attributive clauses are often very **complicated**, more than one adjective being introduced, each with a separate clause; as, Er erreichte seinen Zweck auf dem schon früher von seinem Bruder mit großem Glück betretenen und mit Energie und Talent verfolgten Wege. He reached his object by following the course entered upon previously with great success, and pursued with energy and talent by his brother.

In sentences like this it is necessary first to ascertain the **connexion between the article, the attributes and the noun**, which may be recognised by their agreement in case; here, auf dem —, —, —, —, —, —, betretenen und verfolgten Wege. Before this is done, none of the **intermediate clauses** should be entered upon. Such combinations are too common, yet not always avoidable in German. If introduced with judgment, they are well adapted to increase the force of speech, conveying to the mind a great complicity of ideas with a precision not otherwise attainable.

## SECTION XXXI.

### ON THE USE OF THE CONJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

#### A. THE CONJUNCTIVE.

(This mood differs widely in its application from the English or French *Subjunctive* and only in some cases coincides with the Latin; here therefore the term "*Conjunctive*" is used as in all German works, to make the distinction all the more felt. Its formation has been given with the conjugation of the verb, p. 237, 241, 259, 272, 280).

The true nature of the German *Conjunctive* has been by no means sufficiently explained even in German works. To ensure its proper application, which among Germans marks the line between the half educated and the well-educated, the Author has, as with most other subjects, found it necessary to advance an intelligible principle from which the rules may be deduced into safety. He holds the *Conjunctive* to be a form of speech expressing **deference**



to the judgment of the person to whom a statement is introduced in the form of an indirect quotation or to the consent of the person or being, approached with a wish or prayer; and he thinks this view will be found conclusive.

The usual application of the Conjunctive in the IMPERFECT and PLUPERFECT as explained below (B, THE CONDITIONAL) limits its application under A. to the Present, Perfect and Future tenses, except in the cases specially mentioned. —

### 1. The Conjunctive in indirect quotations.

The Conjunctive occurs *a.* chiefly in clauses containing an indirect quotation *i. e.* containing not the very words, but merely the substance of a statement made by some other person, (or by the speaker regarding the past). Such clauses are by their nature dependent and therefore commonly introduced by the Conjunction *daß, that*; but "*daß*" is frequently omitted (see p. 343, *f.*) and then the clause assumes the form of a principal sentence. (In *Latin* such quotations are generally rendered by the Accusative with the Infinitive). *Ex.*: Er sagt, *daß* er noch jung sei und noch Geld genug habe. (or — er sei noch jung und habe Geld genug), He says he is still young and has plenty of money. Er habe London noch nicht gesehen [Perfect] und werde zur Saison dorthin gehen. [Future.] (*He says that*) he has not yet seen London and will go there for the season. Er wolle sich dort gehörig amüsiren und könne seine Studien später beginnen, [*He says that*] he will amuse himself there thoroughly and (*that he*) can commence his studies afterwards.

*b.* It is well to notice here at once that in German the Conjunctive in the reported speech remains always in the same tense (*viz.* Present, Perfect, Future etc.; as in the examples above) whether the introductory clause be in the Present (*he says thinks, believes etc.*) or in the Past (*he said, thought, believed etc.*)

The English adhere to a more **mechanical sequence** of the tenses, **following up the Present by a Present and the Past by a Past**, saying: *He says he is*, but *He said he was*. *She says she has*, but *She said she had*. *They say they will*, but *They said they would*, even where no Past is employed at all.

A person, for instance, sent out to inquire into the condition of a poor woman still standing in the street would, if asked in the Present, *'What does she say?'* report in the Present, *'She says, she is the mother of the child, she has no husband and can procure no bread.'* But the same still present circumstances would be reported in the Past, if the question were by mere accident put in the Past; as, *'What did she say? She said she was the mother of the child, had no husband and could procure no bread.'* In the same manner: *'The professor said, the sun was a luminous body'* or *'He said he would come to-morrow.'* In German the reported verb in the Conjunctive remains strictly unaltered as, *Sie sagt, or sie sagte, sie sei die Mutter des Kindes und könne kein Brod schaffen, Der Professor sagte, die Sonne sei ein leuchtender Körper. Er sagt, (or sagte), er werde morgen nicht kommen.*

c. In German the **tense of the Conjunctive** depends on the tense which the person, whose speech is quoted, employed the verb; as follows:

α. speech in the **present** is quoted in the present. "*Ich bin der König*" is quoted: *Er sagt or sagte, er sei der König (He says he is or said he was the king).*

β. Speech in the **Past or Perfect** tense is quoted in the Perfect. "*Mein Bruder sah es or Mein Bruder hat es gesehen*" is quoted: *Er sagt sein Bruder habe es gesehen, He says etc. that his brother saw it or has or had seen it.*

γ. Speech in the **Pluperfect** is quoted by a some what awkward combination of the Perfect of the Auxiliary with the main Past Participle. (This is quite foreign to the English and if possible to be avoided. "*Ich hatte die Straße verlassen und war in das Haus getreten, als der Schuß fiel*" is quoted *Er sagt, er habe die Straße verlassen gehabt und sei in das Haus getreten gewesen, als der Schuß fiel. He says (or said) that he had (had) left the street and already entered the house when the shot was fired.*

d. Speech in the future tense is quoted simply in the Future. "Ich werde kommen" is quoted: Er sagt or sagte, er werde kommen. He says he will come, he said he would come.

e. The Imperative is quoted by means of the Auxiliary mögen or sollen; as, for: Er sagte "geh" say: er sagte ich möge or soll gehen.

ζ. It will be noticed that in the Conjunctive the verb or, in compound tenses, its auxiliary is, as in the above examples, in the Present tense. But (though only for the sake of distinctly marking the nature of the sentence as an indirect quotation, this use of the Present tense of the finite verb is departed from and —

The Imperfect Conjunctive is substituted for the Present in all cases where the indicative and conjunctive forms of the Present &c. would be alike; (as for instance in the first person Sing. Indicative ich habe, Conjunctive ich habe, Indicative ich finde, Conjunctive ich finde, Indicative ich werde, Conjunctive ich werde and in the same way in the 2<sup>d</sup> person Sing. and Plur. with the euphonic *e* [see p. 237. The insertion of the *e*] and in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person Plur. of the Present, Wir or sie haben, finden, werden &c.) Here the form of the Imperfect Conjunctive must be adopted; as, Sie sagen, sie hätten es nicht gesehen, They say they have not seen it. Sie sagen, Sie fänden keinen Unterschied, They say, they find no difference. Sie sagten, Sie könnten es selbst kaufen, They said they could buy it themselves.

*Note.* The real nature of this substitution of the Imperfect Conjunctive for the Present especially after introductory clauses in the Past (e. g. Sie sagten, sie würden kommen, *They said they would come*) has often been misunderstood and the Imperfect Conjunctive needlessly used where there is a distinct enough form of the Present Subjunctive; as, Er sagte, er würde kommen, incorrectly used

for er sagte, er werde kommen, He said he would come. Sie glaubten, es wäre zu spät, incorrectly for: sie glaubten, es sei zu spät, They believed it was too late. This has largely contributed to the confusion in which the whole subject of the Conjunctive is almost universally found, and which even great Authorities like *Becker* have not entirely escaped.

d. Such is the force of the mere Conjunctive, that the principal clause introducing the indirect quotation; as, *he said, thought, believed*, is often altogether omitted; as, Er machte sie auf den für Frankreich höchst nachtheiligen Unterschied aufmerksam, der zwischen den drei Ländern obwalte. He called their attention to the difference, most prejudicial to France, which (*he said*), or *was of opinion*) existed between the three countries. England und selbst Holland seien geschlossene Landschaften, denen man nur zur See beikommen könne, wo doch ihre Macht am größten sei. England, and even Holland (*said he*), were closed countries, assailable only by sea, where their power was greatest. — *Ranke, Französische Geschichte.*

*Note 1.* The conjunction *ob, if, whether*, is dropped in elliptical clauses like *Sei dem so oder nicht*, Whether that may be so or not. *Wie dem auch sei* and *Sei dem nun, wie ihm wolle*, Be that as it may, *Werde was da wolle*, *Geschehe was da wolle*, Come what may.

If a dependent clause, introduced by *als ob, as if*, thus assumes the form of a principal clause, *ob* only is dropped; as, Er thut, als ob er reich sei, He acts as if he were rich, rendered as an inverted clause, Er thut, als sei er reich.

*Note 2.* The conjunction *denn*, when used in the sense of *unless* (see p. 325) requires the Subjunctive both in its own and in the object clause; *Es sei denn, daß er es bringe*, Unless he bring it. *Er komme denn und bitte seinen Vater*, Except he come and ask his father.

NB. In the foregoing portion the Conjunctive is treated of occurring in the quoted statements of others. For the Conjunctive in the speakers own statement. See 4, 5, 6, below.

## 2. The Conjunctive after an Imperative or Wish in the main Clause.

The Conjunctive occurs also in dependent clau-

ses, the main clause of which has the verb in the imperative or expresses a wish, entreaty, warning or solemn exhortation, the dependent clause being introduced by one of the CONJUNCTIONS *auf daß* or simply *daß* or *damit*, expressing PURPOSE (*in order that*), or *daß nicht lest*. In such cases the German Conjunctive is generally rendered in English by the AUXILIARY VERB OF MOOD *may*, for which *mögen* in the Conjunctive is likewise frequently put; as, *Zeite du, O Gott, diesen unsern Freund, daß er dir getreulich diene* (or *diene möge*), Lead thou, o Lord, this our friend, that he *may* faithfully serve thee. *Halte ihn, damit* (or *daß*) *er nicht falle* or *fallen möge*, Hold him lest he fall. *Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß es dir wohl gehe und du lange lebest auf Erden*, Honour thy father and thy mother, that it may be well with thee, and that thy days may be long upon earth. (See 6 below).

Note 1. This use of *Mögen* however is more proper in solemn speech and therefore better avoided in ordinary language; as, *My mother wishes that you should go*, *Meine Mutter wünscht, daß du gehst*.

Note 2. *Damit*, *daß* and *um zu*, *in order that* (expressing PURPOSE) have the Subjunctive even where the wish &c., is merely implied in the main clause; as, *Ich thue es, damit man es sehe*, I do it in order that it may be seen. *Er ging, um zu sehen, ob es wahr sei*, He went to see whether it was true.

Note 3. It must be observed that the auxiliary *mögen* stands in the Indicative in principal clauses expressing a possibility, as *Es mag sein*, It may be. *Er mochte es gesehen haben*, He had likely seen it. This proves how unsatisfactory is the common explanation of the Conjunctive as expressing the mere possibility of a fact.

### 3. The Conjunctive in main Clauses expressing a wish, prayer &c.

The Conjunctive occurs also in principal sentences expressing a wish, prayer, &c., which may be considered as contractions or elliptical forms of such compound sentences as those stated 2 above. Here

it coincides in form with the Imperative; as, *Es gehe dir wohl*, May it fare well with thee, *i. e.*, I pray, wish &c., that it may fare well with thee. *Sehe er sich vor*, May he take care, *i. e.*, I warn, command him to take care. *Möge er kommen*, Let him come. *Es lebe der Kaiser!* Long live the Emperor!

**EXPLANATION.** In order that its difficult application may be fully understood, the Conjunctive in indirect quotations may be considered as a form peculiar to the genius of the German language, by which a certain deferential reserve on the part of the speaker as to the reality of a statement quoted indirectly is expressed, and by which at the same time it is left to the judgment of the party to whom such a statement is addressed, whether or not it is to be adopted as a reality. The more or less this sentiment prevails, the more or less strictly is the Conjunctive employed.

Thus in stating *Er sagt, er sei gefallen*, *he says he has fallen*, the speaker indicates by the Conjunctive of the indirect quotation „*er sei gefallen*“, chiefly that he merely **tells** what he has been told, **with a reserve** as to whether he, the speaker, considers it a reality or not, and leaves it to the party addressed whether or not the statement is to be believed. On the other hand *Er sagt, er ist gefallen* is used, if the speaker considers the statement true.

#### 4. The Indicative in the speaker's statement of his present views; transferred to indirect quotations.

As the person speaking cannot quote indirectly his own present statements, views, &c., the Conjunctive is not used if the principal clause has the verb in the first person singular or plural of the present tense (see, however, below, 6). The speaker, in fact, is not allowed to express any reserve as to what he at present states, thinks, believes, &c., (because doing so would show a want of frankness and hence a want of deference). Hence the verb of the dependent clause stands in the indicative, and hence also this indicative may be transferred even to the verb of a dependent clause quoting

indirectly the statements, views, &c. of others, if the speaker purposely expresses that he himself adopts them as realities; as, *Er sagt selbst, daß er gefallen ist*, He himself says (as is also my belief) that he has failed. *Mein Freund glaubt auch, daß diese Nachricht falsch ist*, My friend also (like me) believes that this news is false.

In this respect the use of the Indicative becomes a **matter of sentiment and good taste**. The speaker for instance would naturally adopt as absolute reality (and hence not to be deferred to the judgment of the person to whom he communicates them) the statements of his own father, mother and of persons similarly revered, although he may quote them indirectly; as, *Mein Vater sagt, er hat es gesehen*, *My father says he has seen it*. *Meine Mutter schreibt mir, daß sie wohler ist*, *My mother writes me that she is better*; and in the same manner when a statement as an indirect quotation is repeated to the person who made that statement, the Conjunctive would be avoided unless some doubt as to its reality were to be implied. Compare *Lieber Freund, du schreibst mir, daß du in Noth bist, weil du Unglück gehabt hast*. *Kann ich dir helfen?* Dear friend you write me that you are in need, because you have had misfortunes. Can I help you? *with Du schreibst zwar, du seiest in Noth, weil du Unglück gehabt habest*; aber ich fürchte, du bist wie gewöhnlich durch deine Schuld in Noth. You write indeed, that you are in need because you have had misfortunes; yet I fear you are as usual in need by your own fault.

Indirect quotations like the above introduced by the **past tense**, *My father said &c.*, *you wrote &c.*, are however generally made in the **Conjunctive**; the Past having a modifying effect.

In the same manner the **Conjunctive** is quite **admissible** in indirectly quoting the mere views, opinions etc., of persons for whom otherwise the greatest regard is entertained and whose statements as to facts would unquestionably be quoted in the Indicative; as, *Mein Vater glaubt, es sei besser, diesen Weg einzuschlagen*, *My father thinks (is of opinion) that it is better to take this road*. (With all deference to the father, his mere opinion is submitted to the judgment of the hearer.)

**5. The Conjunctive in the speaker's views as held in time past.**

The Conjunctive accordingly is also used, if the speaker states what he himself said, thought, believed, &c., in time past. For here the reasons for the Conjunctive are the same as in indirect quotations; as, *Ich dachte die Nachricht sei falsch*, I thought the news was false. *Wir glaubten, Sie seien gekommen*, We believed you had come.

**6. The Conjunctive in the speaker's own wish, prayer &c.**

As stated above (2), the Conjunctive stands in dependent clauses, the principal clause of which contains a wish, prayer, &c. Here, again, the Conjunctive expresses that the fulfilment or realization of the wish, request, &c., is deferred to the judgment or will of the person, or being, under whose control it stands; and if this sentiment is to be indicated to a certain degree, the Conjunctive in the dependent clause may be used after a principal clause, the verb of which stands in the first person singular or plural of the present tense; as, *Ich wünsche, daß er gehe*, I wish that he may go. *Wir bitten, o Herr, du wollest deinen Segen geben*, We beseech thee, O Lord, to grant thy blessing.

**7. The Conjunctive not used after verbs expressing absolute reality or doubt.**

It is evident from the above explanations, that verbs expressing absolute reality or absolute doubt, as *wissen to know, bestätigen to confirm, beweisen to prove, zweifeln to doubt, vermuthen to guess, vorgeben to allege*, although introducing an indirect quotation, cannot be followed by the CONJUNCTIVE; as, *Er weiß, daß es recht ist*, He knows that it is right. *Er vermuthet, daß sie ihn gesehen hat*, He suspects that she has seen him.

A direct question is in itself an expression of deference to the judgment of the person asked and hence



is followed by the Indicative; as, Glaubst du, daß er kommen wird? Do you believe that he will come?

The author is aware that especially with respect to this last point the practice varies even with great writers; yet he must insist on the strict observance of the above rules as being conclusive in themselves.

### EXERCISE XXXV. On the Conjunctive.

Warum lernen wir Deutsch? Why do we study German?

Neulich<sup>1</sup> wurde in einer muntern<sup>2</sup> Gesellschaft junger Freunde diese Frage aufgeworfen<sup>3</sup>, indem es sich fand<sup>4</sup>, daß jede der anwesenden Personen mehr oder weniger mit dem Studium der deutschen Sprache beschäftigt<sup>5</sup> war. Es war in der That nicht uninteressant zu hören, was für<sup>6</sup> verschiedene (various) Ansichten<sup>7</sup> bei dieser Gelegenheit laut wurden<sup>8</sup>. Nur Wenige der Anwesenden<sup>9</sup> konnten nachweisen<sup>10</sup>, daß sie einen praktischen Zweck<sup>11</sup> dabei<sup>12</sup> im Auge<sup>13</sup> hatten<sup>14</sup>. Der Eine sagte, er sei<sup>15</sup> Mediciner und müsse sowohl<sup>16</sup> die deutschen als die französischen Schriften<sup>17</sup> studiren, indem<sup>18</sup> man heut zu Tage<sup>19</sup> ohne die Kenntniß (knowledge) derselben nicht mehr mit Ehren<sup>20</sup> bestehen<sup>21</sup> könne. Andere junge Gelehrte<sup>22</sup> hatten ähnliche<sup>23</sup> Gründe<sup>24</sup> und ebenso (p. 319) bewies<sup>25</sup> ein Kaufmann<sup>26</sup>, daß die Kenntniß des Deutschen für den Geschäftsmann<sup>27</sup> unentbehrlich<sup>28</sup> ist. Die Uebrigen<sup>29</sup> aber<sup>30</sup>, und besonders<sup>31</sup> die Damen hatten keine so leichte Aufgabe<sup>32</sup>. Zwar mußte man den allgemeinen<sup>33</sup> Grund<sup>34</sup> gelten lassen<sup>35</sup>, daß es eine angenehme Sache ist, wenn man auf Reisen<sup>36</sup> die Sprache

<sup>1</sup>p. 314, f. —, <sup>2</sup>merry, humorous, <sup>3</sup>to raise (a question), <sup>4</sup>p. 303, 8, <sup>5</sup>busy, <sup>6</sup>p. 110, 5, <sup>7</sup>f. view, <sup>8</sup>laut wurden, were expressed, <sup>9</sup>those present, <sup>10</sup>to prove, <sup>11</sup>object, <sup>12</sup>(at it) often best rendered by — *in doing so*, <sup>13</sup>here: *in view*, <sup>14</sup>see p. 371, 7, <sup>15</sup>p. 364, 1. b, <sup>16</sup>p. 326, <sup>17</sup>publication, <sup>18</sup>p. 329, <sup>19</sup>now-a-days, <sup>20</sup>, <sup>21</sup>to get on creditably, <sup>22</sup>students, <sup>23</sup>similar, <sup>24</sup>m. reason, <sup>25</sup>p. 371, 7, <sup>26</sup>merchant, <sup>27</sup>business-man, <sup>28</sup>indispensable, <sup>29</sup>the rest, the others; <sup>30</sup>p. 318, B, <sup>31</sup>p. 316, a, <sup>32</sup>task, <sup>33</sup>general, <sup>34</sup>reason, <sup>35</sup>allow to pass, <sup>36</sup>in travelling.

der Nation sprechen kann, die man besucht, und daß es mitunter<sup>1</sup> Vergnügen macht<sup>2</sup>, in der Heimath mit Fremden in ihrer Sprache zu verkehren<sup>3</sup>. Doch gaben die Meisten zu<sup>4</sup>, daß die Wahrscheinlichkeit<sup>5</sup> einer solchen Anwendung<sup>6</sup> nur<sup>7</sup> eine geringe<sup>8</sup> ist und die große Mühe<sup>9</sup> des Studiums kaum rechtfertigt<sup>10</sup>. Unsere Gelehrte Miß B. erklärte<sup>11</sup>, sie wüßte die philosophischen Systeme Kant's, Fichte's und Hegel's<sup>12</sup> zu studiren; die Uebersetzungen seien<sup>13</sup> unverständlich<sup>14</sup> u. s. w. Ich entdeckte<sup>15</sup> aber bald, daß sie einen noch gar weiten<sup>16</sup> Weg bis zum Verständniß<sup>17</sup> einer einfachen<sup>18</sup> Stelle<sup>19</sup> in einem gewöhnlichen<sup>20</sup> deutschen Buche zu machen hatte. Eine andere Freundin sagte, sie betrachte<sup>21</sup> das Studium der deutschen Grammatik als eine treffliche<sup>22</sup> Gymnastik des Geistes und es that mir sehr leid, zu finden, daß die Grammatik deren sie sich bediente<sup>23</sup>, ein höchst confuses Buch war. Miß Luisa war eine große Verehrerin<sup>24</sup> Göthe's und Schiller's, sie finde<sup>25</sup> selbst die besten Uebersetzungen der "Iphigenia"<sup>26</sup> und des "Don Carlos"<sup>27</sup> abscheulich<sup>28</sup>. Ich sagte, sie dürfe sich nicht zu sehr darüber beklagen<sup>29</sup>. Es gäbe wirklich<sup>30</sup> einige sehr lesbare<sup>31</sup> Uebersetzungen und ein kleiner Versuch<sup>32</sup> mit den Originalen bewies, daß sie dem großen Schiller Gedanken unterschob<sup>33</sup>, die ihm nie im Traume eingekommen waren<sup>34</sup>. Es war eben<sup>35</sup> die beliebte Manier<sup>36</sup> der "freien Uebersetzung" ohne jedwede<sup>37</sup> grammatische Gründlichkeit<sup>38</sup>. Noch Andere meinten<sup>39</sup> die Sache sei einmal Mode<sup>40</sup>, die handverwählten George hätten sie eingeführt<sup>41</sup> und die Achtung<sup>42</sup> vor der Bildung<sup>43</sup> des deutschen Gemahls<sup>44</sup> der Königin habe sie befestigt<sup>45</sup> und so

<sup>1</sup>p. 315, *i*, <sup>2</sup>to give pleasure to please; see p. 356, *d*, <sup>3</sup>to converse, <sup>4</sup>zugeben to admit; p. 354, *i*. <sup>5</sup>probability, <sup>6</sup>application, <sup>7</sup>employment, <sup>8</sup>only, but, <sup>9</sup>little, inconsiderable, <sup>10</sup>labour, <sup>11</sup>to justify, <sup>12</sup>to declare, <sup>13</sup>the three principle metaphysicians of the present century, <sup>14</sup>p. 367, *d*, <sup>15</sup>unintelligible, <sup>16</sup>to discover, <sup>17</sup>very long, distant, <sup>18</sup>n. comprehension, <sup>19</sup>simple, <sup>20</sup>passage, <sup>21</sup>ordinary, <sup>22</sup>to consider, p. 224, *b*, <sup>23</sup>excellent, <sup>24</sup>to avail ones-self of, <sup>25</sup>admirer, <sup>26</sup>p. 367, *d*, <sup>27</sup>by Göthe, <sup>28</sup>by Schiller, <sup>29</sup>abominable, <sup>30</sup>to complain, <sup>31</sup>really, <sup>32</sup>readable, <sup>33</sup>trial, <sup>34</sup>to soist on, <sup>35</sup>which never entered his mind even in a dream, <sup>36</sup>just, <sup>37</sup>favorite style, <sup>38</sup>any, any at all, <sup>39</sup>thoroughness, <sup>40</sup>be of opinion, <sup>41</sup>fashion, <sup>42</sup>to import, <sup>43</sup>respect, <sup>44</sup>accomplishments, <sup>45</sup>consort, <sup>46</sup>to confirm.

werde sie sich wohl<sup>1</sup> erhalten, Jedermann lerne jetzt Deutsch und man müsse Alles mitmachen<sup>2</sup> was von der Gesellschaft<sup>3</sup> für gut gehalten<sup>4</sup> werde. Nun kamen ein paar junge Pensionärinnen<sup>5</sup> an die Reihe<sup>6</sup> und die Offenherzigkeit<sup>7</sup> derselben war wirklich erquickend<sup>8</sup>. Sie sagten, sie wüßten<sup>9</sup> wirklich nicht, warum sie mit dem unmelodischen Deutschen gequält<sup>10</sup> würden<sup>11</sup>. Freilich<sup>12</sup> war ihre Aussprache<sup>13</sup> bitterlich vernachlässigt<sup>14</sup>. Helene und Gretchen klagten, es sei ihnen schon längst so vorgekommen<sup>15</sup>, als sei<sup>16</sup> die deutsche Grammatik die elste der ägyptischen Plagen, die Finsterniß<sup>17</sup> müsse dagegen<sup>18</sup> glänzendes Licht<sup>19</sup> gewesen sein. Ihr Lehrer komme nicht aus dem Schelten<sup>20</sup> heraus; sie könnten ihm Nichts recht machen<sup>21</sup> und sie glaubten fest, die umgestellten<sup>22</sup> und abhängigen<sup>23</sup> Sätze<sup>24</sup> habe ein Dämon erfunden<sup>25</sup>, der ihnen böshafterweise<sup>26</sup> das Leben so sauer<sup>27</sup> als möglich zu machen suche. Sie würden<sup>28</sup> noch Bladerei<sup>29</sup> genug in ihrem Leben finden und es sei kein Wunder, wenn sie das Französische viel lieber<sup>30</sup> hätten, das nicht den zehnten Theil der Schwierigkeiten<sup>31</sup> biete<sup>32</sup> und ihnen bei Weitem<sup>33</sup> mehr Vergnügen gewähre<sup>34</sup>. Ich glaube, sie hielten<sup>35</sup> mich für einen recht bösen<sup>36</sup> Menschen, als ich ihnen erklärte, ich hätte selbst<sup>37</sup> eine Grammatik geschrieben und würde ihnen in dem sechs und dreißigsten Exerzitiu beweisen, daß Alles darauf ankomme<sup>38</sup> wie man Deutsch lerne, und daß es für Dritten keine zweckmäßigere<sup>39</sup> Uebung des Geistes gebe, als das Studium der deutschen Grammatik und Literatur.

<sup>1</sup>p. 323., <sup>2</sup>to join in, <sup>3</sup>society, <sup>4</sup>p. 224, Note 3. a., <sup>5</sup>boarding-school girls, <sup>6</sup>in their turn, <sup>7</sup>candour, <sup>8</sup>refreshing, <sup>9</sup>p. 366, ζ. <sup>10</sup>to torment, <sup>11</sup>p. 366, ζ, <sup>12</sup>p. 311 "Adjectives used as Adverbs" etc.; <sup>13</sup>pronunciation, <sup>14</sup>to neglect, <sup>15</sup>p. 215, List 4., <sup>16</sup>p. 367, Note 1., <sup>17</sup>darkness, <sup>18</sup>compared with it, <sup>19</sup>brilliant light, <sup>20</sup>nicht aus dem Schelten kommen, never get done scolding, <sup>21</sup>ihm Nichts recht machen, do nothing to please him, <sup>22</sup>inverted, <sup>23</sup>dependent, <sup>24</sup>clause, sentence, <sup>25</sup>to invent, <sup>26</sup>maliciously; see p. 317, ζ., <sup>27</sup>hard, <sup>28</sup>p. 366, ζ, <sup>29</sup>bother <sup>30</sup>p. 321, <sup>31</sup>difficulty, <sup>32</sup>p. 246, <sup>33</sup>by far, <sup>34</sup>to afford, <sup>35</sup>p. 224, Note 3. a., <sup>36</sup>wicked, <sup>37</sup>p. 366, ζ, <sup>38</sup>to depend on, <sup>39</sup>suitable.

## B. THE CONDITIONAL.

## 1. The Imperfect and Pluperfect Conjunctive in the dependent clause.

A condition, the fulfilment of which is expected as certain or likely, has the verb in the Indicative; as, *Ich werde es ihm sagen, wenn er es wissen will*, I shall tell it him if he wishes to know it. *Ich werde es ihm sagen, wenn er kommen sollte*, I shall tell it him if he should come. (see p. 377, *δ*). But if a dependent clause contains a condition merely assumed and implying the contrary, its verb stands as in English in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Conjunctive; as, *wenn ich wäre*, if I were; *wenn ich hätte*, if I had; *wenn ich gehabt hätte*, if I had had.

## 2. The Conditional in the main clause.

At the same time the verb of the main clause, expressing the contingency, stands in the Conditional or Conditional Past; as, *Wenn ich nicht unwohl wäre, würde ich mit dir gehen*, If I were not unwell I would go with you, (the reality is I am unwell, and therefore I do not go). *Wenn ich Wein gehabt hätte, würde ich etwas getrunken haben*, If I had had wine I should have drunk some, (the reality is I had no wine, and therefore I did not drink any).

The full form of the conditional consists of the Infinitive present or of the Infinitive past, conjugated with the Auxiliary *ich würde* (Imperf. Conj. of *werden*). — See p. 270, 2. *aa*. p. 273, p. 277, Specimen, etc.)

## 3. Deviations from the rules 1 and 2 above occurs in the following: —

*a*. The conditional may occur in dependent clauses, when the sentence expressing the contingency is itself introduced as a dependent part in a compound sentence; as, *Ich sagte, daß ich es thun würde, wenn ich bessere Gründe dafür hätte*, I said that I should do it, if I had better reasons for it.

### 376 XXXI. B. THE CONDITIONAL VARIOUSLY EXPRESSED.

*b.* Sometimes the Conditional, is used if the fulfilment of the condition is merely doubtful and not likely to take place; as, Er scheint nicht zu kommen, aber wenn er käme, würde ich gehen, He seems not to come, but if he should come I would go.

*c.* Clauses expressing the condition are introduced not only by *wenn* if, but also (so called concessive clauses) by the conjunctions *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch*, *wenn schon* and *ob auch*, *obgleich*, *ob schon*, meaning *though*, *although*, *if even*; as, Wenn gleich ich es hätte or Wenn ich es gleich hätte, würde ich es dir nicht geben, the same inverted, Hätte ich es gleich, so würde ich es dir doch nicht geben, Although I had it I would not give it you.

*d.* The condition is sometimes expressed by the Infinitive with *zu* to, or with *um zu* in order to; as, Um es zu vermeiden, würde ich gehen, In order to avoid it, I should go.

*e.* The condition is often merely understood; as, Bitte, kommen Sie; meine Mutter würde sich freuen, Sie zu sehen, Pray, come; my mother would be glad to see you (*viz.*, if you came). Welches Buch würden Sie wählen? Which book would you choose? (suppose you had the choice). Was würden Sie an meiner Stelle thun? What would you do in my place? (*i. e.*, if you were in my place).

NB. *α.* The Pupil will carefully keep in mind that the English *I would, should, &c.*, is rendered by the German Conditional *ich würde* only in the cases defined above; namely where a condition contrary to reality, or at least doubtful, is expressed or understood. Compare Er würde kommen, wenn seine Mutter besser wäre, He would come if his mother were better (as she is not better he does not come) with Er sagt, er werde kommen (indirect quotation) wenn seine Mutter besser sei, He says he will come if his mother be better (which is possible enough). The latter (er werde kommen) is merely the Future Conjunctive,\* (see p. 364, 1).

*β.* Nor on the other hand must the forms *ich würde*, *wir würden*, *ihr würdet*, *sie würden*, when merely substituted for the present Conjunctive (as explained p. 366, *ζ.*) be mistaken for the Conditional.

*γ.* The Past of the Auxiliary *I will*, ("*I would*") *ich wollte* &c. and of *I shall*, ("*I should*") *ich sollte* &c., is likewise not to be confounded with the Conditional;

as, Ich bat ihn, aber er wollte es nicht thun, *I asked him, but he would not do it* (was not inclined to do it). Ich sollte gehen, aber ich wollte nicht, *I was to go, but I would not* (was not inclined).

d. Nor must *I should* and *I would* &c. in the dependent clause expressing the hypothetical condition, be translated by *ich würde*. In most cases the Imperfect or Pluperfect Conjunctive of the main verb, (see above 1), suffices; as, Es wäre mir lieb, wenn Sie es fänden, *I should be glad if you should find it*. But *sollen* also is employed as an Auxiliary to the verb in order to strengthen the expression of improbability, (Wenn Sie es finden sollten, *if you should find it*) and especially with weak verbs when an ambiguity might arise from their being alike in the Imperfect Indicative and Conjunctive; as, Wenn er sagen sollte, *If he should say* (which is more distinct than Wenn er sagte, which might mean both *If he said* and *Whenever he said*). The Auxiliary *wollen* is used only where inclination is implied; as, Wenn ich es thun wollte; *If I chose to do it*. Wenn Sie so gut sein wollten, *If you would be so kind*.

#### 4. The Shorter Form.

The Imp. and Pluperf. Conjunctive for the Conditional present and past. In English the Conditional *it would be* may be expressed by the simple Past Subjunctive *it were*, i. e. the auxiliary *would* is omitted and its strength given to the Infinitive *be* by making that Infinitive a Past Subjunctive. In the same manner, in German, the Conditional, not only of the verb *sein* but of any other verb, may be expressed by the simple Imperfect Conjunctive; and farther the Conditional Past by the Pluperfect Conjunctive. In other words the Past Conjunctive *ich würde* (see p. 273) is omitted and the Infinitive changed into the Past Con-

junctive\*; as, *Es würde besser sein, It would be better*, short form, *Es wäre besser, It were better*. **CONDITIONAL PAST**, *Es würde besser gewesen sein*, short form, *Es wäre besser gewesen, It would have been better*. *Ich würde einen Freund haben*, short form, *Ich hätte einen Freund, I should have a friend*. **COND. PAST**, *Ich würde Zeit gehabt haben*, short form, *Ich hätte Zeit gehabt, I should have had time*. *Ich würde es finden*, short form; *Ich fände es, I should find it*. **COND. PAST**, *Ich würde es gefunden haben*, short form, *Ich hätte es gefunden, I should have found it*.

*Passive voice*, **CONDITIONAL PAST**, *Ich würde gefunden worden sein*, short form, *Ich wäre gefunden worden, I should have been found*. The first Conditional is generally given in full, *Ich würde gefunden werden, I should be found*.

As this use of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Conjunctive is uncommon in English, except in the one instance *I were* for *I would be*, particular attention must be paid to it, more especially if the dependent clause occurs in the form of an inverted sentence (see p. 346, 5 a &c.); as, *Hätte ich das Buch, so liehe ich es dir*, If I had the book I would lend it to you; *Brächte er mir die Einwilligung meines Vaters, so wäre Alles abgemacht*. If he should bring me the consent of my father, all would be settled.

Rare but remarkable is the substitution of the imperfect indicative for the Conditional Past, the dependent clause having the verb likewise in the Imperfect; as, *Wenn er kam, ging ich* or *Kam er, so ging ich*, If he had come, I would have gone (see p. 283, b.).

a. As the *Imperf. Conjunctive* in **weak verbs** is like the Imperfect Indicative, the full form of the Conditional, *ich würde* &c., *I would* &c., may be preferred where an ambiguity would arise

\* Historically, the use of the Past as a Conditional has preceded that of the full form *ich würde sein* (see p. 283, foot-note). The above arrangement refers to the Present use, and by attaching itself to the usage of English grammar, greatly helps to facilitate the use of the Conditional and to prevent confusion (See the end of the Section).

from the use of the former; as, Sie würden fremdes Verdienst ehren, wenn Sie selbst Verdienst besäßen, rather than Sie ehrten fremdes Verdienst, &c., They would honour the merits of others, if they possessed merit themselves.

b. So called **optative clauses** are either dependent clauses expressing a supposition and **inverted** owing to the **omission of wenn if**, whilst the contingency is understood; as, Käme er doch! for Wenn er doch käme! *If he would only come!* (Contingency understood, *How glad I should be!*) Or they express the **contingency** with the condition understood, O! daß du nicht so von mir gingest! Oh! that thou wouldst not go from me thus!

Of the latter nature are also exclamations in **interrogative** form like, Wie? Sie hätten ihn gesehen! What! you don't mean to say you have seen him? (*i. e.* If this were truth, I should understand that you had seen him?) Dies wäre Ihre Schwester? Am I to understand that this is your sister? Of the same nature are: "Es müßte sein, daß ich zu sehr mich irrte", Unless it be that I am too far mistaken. Ei! das wäre! Indeed! that would be strange.

c. **Conditional of deference.** Like the phrases, *I should like, I should think*, in English, the Conditionals ich möchte, ich wünschte, ich dachte &c., are used where a certain deference is to be expressed, and may be explained by a condition understood; as, Ich wünschte, Sie schenken mir Gehör, I (should) wish (*viz.* if it were not too bold) you would grant me a hearing. Ich dachte, wir machten es besser so, I should think (*viz.* if my opinion were taken) we might do it better this way.

These phrases cause the verb in the clause **expressing the object** of the wish, thought &c. to be **likewise** in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Conjunctive; as, Ich wünschte, Sie kämen (— Sie wären gekommen). I (should) wish you would come (— you had come). Ich dachte, Sie gäben es mir, I (should) think you might give it to me. Ich möchte, du gingest, I should like you to go. Notice: Ich wüßte nicht, or, Nicht, daß ich wüßte, Not that I know of, Not to my knowledge.

The above **short forms** of the Conditional do **not** actually imply a contrary proposition (*I should think*, rather means *I do think*). The **full form** Ich würde wünschen, ich würde denken &c. on the other hand would be exclusively used where the reality is, I do **not** wish, I do **not** think.

d. **I MIGHT, I OUGHT** and in German ich möchte and ich sollte or müßte are often Conditionals with a **Condition** understood. They may be resolved into ich würde können or dürfen I would be able or permitted (if I liked) and ich würde sollen or müssen. it should be my duty to, I would be compelled to (see p. 259, Imperf. Conj.)

In the same manner are the **PLUPERFECT CONJUNCTIVES** (see p. 261.) ich hätte können, mögen or dürfen *I might have* and ich hätte sollen or



müssen, *I ought to have*, Conditionals Past, and require to be explained in the following manner: —

*Ich hätte es thun können*, *I might have done it (if I had liked)* is to be resolved thus 1. *Ich hätte* short form for *ich würde haben* *I should or would have*. 2. *thun* to do (main Infinitive), 3. *können* (Past Participle in Infinitive form), *been able*; accordingly *I should have been able to do it*.

*Ich hätte es thun sollen* (*if I had rightly considered it*), *it would have been my duty to do it*, resolved thus, 1. *Ich hätte* short form for *ich würde haben*, *it (I) would have*, 2. *thun* to do (main Infinitive), *sollen* (Past Participle in the Infinitive form) *been (my) duty*.

*Ich hätte müssen* is often used as a strong expression for *Ich hätte sollen* *I ought to have*; but it often occurs in the sense of *I would have been compelled to*. It is incorrect to translate *I ought to have* by *ich sollte haben* or *ich müßte haben*. The former ought to be used in the sense of *I was said to have* (see p. 258, c.) The latter in the sense of *it must be that I have, unless it be that I have*; as, *Ich müßte es geträumt haben*, *it must be that I have dreamt it*.

e. Notice the idioms, *Dann sagte sie wohl*. (*Then she would say (used to say)*, *Wenn ein Unglück geschehen war*, *ging er wohl selbst von Haus zu Haus und sammelte für die Leidenden*. *When a misfortune had happened he would himself go from house to house and collect for the sufferers*. *Would* in this sense is also translated by *pflögte*; as, *Dann pflögte mein Vater zu lächeln*; and it may be noticed that the English *then he would say etc.*; applies as well to the German Present; as, *Dann sagt er wohl*; or *pflögt er zu sagen etc.* (i. e. he is in the habit of saying).

#### Concluding remark.

The French language makes a distinction between the *Imparf. Subj. si j'avais*, and the *Conditionnel j'aurais*, the English between the Past Subjunctive *if I had* and the Conditional *I should have*, and in the same manner the German, although originally possessing only a Preterite (*hätte*) for both forms (see p. 283, footnote) has, impelled by this modern tendency to mark the logical distinction between **condition** and **contingency**, developed, exclusively for the latter, and **not transferable** to the former, the compound form *ich würde haben*.

This analogy in the French, English and German with the striking advantages it affords to the English pupil should in itself have furnished sufficient reason for retaining the terms of the older grammarians, viz. *Wenn ich hätte* for the Imperfect Subjunctive, *ich würde haben* for the Conditional.

The fact however, that the German language by dint of the greater versatility of its construction has preserved to a great extent the use of the simple form *ich hätte* for the contingency also (e. g.

Wenn er Geld hätte, hätte er mehr Einfluß, If he had money he *would* have more influence) has led to a new arrangement by which 1<sup>st</sup> the distinction between the condition and the contingency has been destroyed, the verb in both clauses being called the Conditional, and 2<sup>d</sup> a distinction between the simple tense ich hätte as a Present Conditional and the compound tense ich würde haben, as a Conditional Future has been introduced. Although Becker yielded to this formalism in his *Schulgrammatik*, he has in his *Ausführliche Grammatik* given such qualifying explanations with regard to this point (especially in § 222 which entirely bears out the author's views) that no writer of a German grammar for the English, at all conscious of the nature of his task, could have adopted the modern arrangement. Nevertheless this has been done in some rather literal translations of the *Schulgrammatik*; the practice in English grammar, decidedly preferable in this point, has been utterly disregarded and the pupil is now taught not only that there is no difference between *if I had* and *I should have*, but even that, Dann säße ich morgen bei meinen Freunden, *Then I should sit to-morrow with my friends*, is a **Present** and, Dann würde ich noch bei meinen Freunden sitzen, *Then I should still be sitting with my friends*, is a **Future**; or he is at least induced to believe, that, contrary to the usage of all German authors, a distinction between a Conditional Present and Future ought to be made, whereas the very nature of a mere supposition forbids such a distinction. By simply adhering, as the author does, to the clear and practical arrangement of English grammar the whole of this embarrassing complication is avoided and the only thing remaining to be done is to explain that the use of the Preterite, as a Conditional is a relic of the ancient period of the language when still limited in its tenses.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

## On the Conditional.

**Erfolgreiches Studium des Deutschen; Successful Study of German.**

Ein Gretchen! so häuslich<sup>2</sup> beschäftigt?<sup>3</sup> Ja, ich will eben<sup>4</sup> diese Wolle abwickeln<sup>5</sup>. Wenn Sie erlauben, werde ich Ihnen den Strähn<sup>6</sup> halten. (st.) Das ist bequemer<sup>7</sup>. Danke, wenn ich einen so gelehrten Herrn damit bemühen<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup>see there! <sup>2</sup>domestic, <sup>3</sup>busy, engaged, <sup>4</sup>p. 314, d., <sup>5</sup>to wind  
<sup>6</sup>Hank, Skein, <sup>7</sup>handy, <sup>8</sup>to trouble.

darf<sup>1</sup>. Nur zu!<sup>2</sup> das wäre<sup>3</sup> nicht das erste Mal. Nun! was suchen Sie denn? Den Faden<sup>4</sup>. Hier ist einer. Ja, aber das ist nicht der rechte<sup>5</sup>. Gibt es<sup>6</sup> denn dabei<sup>7</sup> einen rechten und einen falschen Faden? Gewiß<sup>8</sup>! Und was würde<sup>9</sup> geschehen (st.) wenn Sie nicht den rechten nähmen<sup>10</sup>? (st.). Wenn ich den unrechten nähme, würde ich die zehnfache<sup>11</sup> Mühe haben und am Ende<sup>12</sup> würde Alles in ein unauf lösliches<sup>13</sup> Gewirr<sup>14</sup> gerathen<sup>15</sup>. Das ist ja ein prächtiges Beispiel<sup>16</sup> zu unserer neulichen<sup>17</sup> Unterhaltung<sup>18</sup> über die deutsche Grammatik! In wie fern<sup>19</sup> denn? Nun, dabei gibt es eben auch einen rechten und einen unrechten Faden, und wenn man letzteren nimmt, gibt es hundertfache<sup>20</sup> Mühe und am Ende eine unauf lösbare Verwirrung. Dann wäre<sup>21</sup> es am Ende nicht so beschämend<sup>22</sup>, wenn ich gestehen<sup>23</sup> müßte<sup>24</sup>, daß ich mich in dieser Lage<sup>25</sup> befinde<sup>26</sup>? Sicherlich nicht, wenn Sie den unrechten Faden aufgenommen hätten. Es käme darauf an<sup>27</sup>, ob Ihr Lehrer den richtigen Weg eingeschlagen<sup>28</sup> hätte. Denn gewiß würden die Anstrengungen<sup>29</sup> der meisten Schüler weit erfolgreicher<sup>30</sup> sein, wenn die Lehrer eine richtige Methode verfolgten und wenn es nicht so viele ganz unzweckmäßige<sup>31</sup> Bücher gäbe, die den Namen einer Grammatik gar nicht verdienen<sup>32</sup>. Nun, wenigstens<sup>33</sup> würden Sie sich wundern, wenn Sie in unsere Klasse kämen und die vielen verdutzten<sup>34</sup> Gesichter<sup>35</sup> sähen, wenn irgend eine Schwierigkeit<sup>36</sup> vorkommt. Man hat wohl<sup>37</sup> von Borne herein<sup>38</sup> mit dem Lesen von Geschichten<sup>39</sup> u. d. gl.<sup>40</sup> angefangen? So ist es. Unser Lehrer befolgt die sogenannte Unterhaltungsmethode. Nun, das wäre nicht so schlimm<sup>41</sup>, wenn die Methode nur der natürlichen Entwicklung<sup>42</sup> der Rede<sup>43</sup>

<sup>1</sup>p. 259, and p. 255, 3., <sup>2</sup>just go on!, <sup>3</sup>p. 375, <sup>4</sup>thread, <sup>5</sup>the right one, <sup>6</sup>p. 308, 5., <sup>7</sup>in doing this, <sup>8</sup>p. 318, 1., <sup>9</sup>p. 376, 4. <sup>10</sup>p. 375, 1. <sup>11</sup>p. 138, F., <sup>12</sup>in the end, <sup>13</sup>inextricable, <sup>14</sup>tangle, confusion, <sup>15</sup>to get, <sup>16</sup>illustration, <sup>17</sup>p. 314, f., <sup>18</sup>conversation, <sup>19</sup>how so? <sup>20</sup>p. 138, F., <sup>21</sup>p. 376, 4. <sup>22</sup>humiliating, <sup>23</sup>to confess own, <sup>24</sup>p. 259, <sup>25</sup>condition, <sup>26</sup>p. 299, 1., <sup>27</sup>ankommen auf to depend on, and p. 376, 4. <sup>28</sup>to take (a way), <sup>29</sup>efforts, <sup>30</sup>unsuccessful, <sup>31</sup>impracticable, <sup>32</sup>to deserve, <sup>33</sup>p. 125, 2., <sup>34</sup>blank, perplexed, <sup>35</sup>p. 175, <sup>36</sup>difficulty, <sup>37</sup>p. 232, <sup>38</sup>from the outset, <sup>39</sup>story, <sup>40</sup>p. 22, <sup>41</sup>bad, <sup>42</sup>development, <sup>43</sup>speech.

folgte. Bei diesem Worte Entwidlung sind wir wieder beim Wickeln. Ich sehe Ihre Wölle hat sich ganz glatt<sup>1</sup> abgewickelt. Ach! wie sehr würde ich mich freuen, wenn unsere deutschen Stunden eben so glatt abgingen<sup>2</sup>. Das geschähe bei so eifrigen<sup>3</sup> Schülerinnen sicherlich, wenn der Lehrer Einsicht<sup>4</sup> und Takt genug besäße<sup>5</sup> (st.) bei dem ersten Unterrichte<sup>6</sup> eine so einfache, und, ich will es gleich sagen, die einzig richtige Methode zu verfolgen, wie wir sie in Dr. Ahn's Leitfaden<sup>7</sup> besitzen und wenn alle weiteren Schritte<sup>8</sup> auf das unumstößliche<sup>9</sup> Princip dieser Methode gegründet<sup>10</sup> würden. Wobei allerdings<sup>11</sup> eine gründlichere Unterweisung<sup>12</sup> in der Grammatik, als man sie eben in dem praktischen Lehrgange<sup>13</sup> findet, jeden Schritt begleiten müßte. Könnten Sie das nicht unserm Herr Dr. Sauer an die Hand geben<sup>14</sup>? Das würde wohl nicht Viel helfen<sup>15</sup>, liebes Gretchen. Ihr Herr Dr. würde einfach sagen: p. 376, e.<sup>16</sup> "Ich bin so klug<sup>16</sup> und noch klüger als Sie". Und wenn ich ihm meine Gründe und Erfahrungen<sup>17</sup> auseinandersetzen<sup>18</sup> wollte<sup>19</sup>, nannte<sup>20</sup> er mich gar noch einen alten Pedanten. Ließe sich denn dem Uebel gar nicht abhelfen<sup>21</sup>? Das ließe sich eben nur dann erwarten, wenn das Publikum und namentlich<sup>22</sup> die Männer, welche Einfluß auf die Erziehung haben, bald begreifen<sup>23</sup> möchten<sup>24</sup>, welchen Schaden<sup>25</sup> der liederliche<sup>26</sup> Sprachunterricht dem Geiste<sup>27</sup> zufügt<sup>28</sup>, und daß die deutsche Sprache nun den Britten, und besonders den Brittinnen, wirklich fruchtbar zu werden auf eine eigenthümliche Weise, und namentlich gänzlich verschieden<sup>29</sup> von der französischen, behandelt<sup>30</sup> werden müßte. Ich bin weit davon entfernt<sup>31</sup>, dem Französischen den hohen Werth<sup>32</sup> abzusprechen<sup>33</sup>, den es als Verkehrsmittel<sup>34</sup> und in Hinsicht auf<sup>35</sup> Präcision und Eleganz des

<sup>1</sup>smoothly, <sup>2</sup>to come off, <sup>3</sup>anxious, <sup>4</sup>insight, <sup>5</sup>to possess, <sup>6</sup>first instruction, <sup>7</sup>literally *leading string*; clue; <sup>8</sup>step, <sup>9</sup>incontrovertible, <sup>10</sup>to base, <sup>11</sup>p. 318, l., <sup>12</sup>information, <sup>13</sup>course, method; <sup>14</sup>an die Hand geben to suggest, <sup>15</sup>to avail, <sup>16</sup>wise clever, <sup>17</sup>experience, <sup>18</sup>explain, <sup>19</sup>say *were* to, <sup>20</sup>p. 242, <sup>21</sup>p. 211, List 2. See also p. 303, 9., <sup>22</sup>p. 316, a., <sup>23</sup>to comprehend, <sup>24</sup>say, here *would*, <sup>25</sup>harm, <sup>26</sup>careless, slovenly, <sup>27</sup>intellect, <sup>28</sup>to inflict, <sup>29</sup>totally different, <sup>30</sup>to treat, <sup>31</sup>far from, <sup>32</sup>value, <sup>33</sup>to deny, to dispute; see also p. 297, c., <sup>34</sup>means of intercourse, <sup>35</sup>with regard to.

Ausdrucks<sup>1</sup>, beſiſt. Man beginge<sup>2</sup> einfach eine Thorheit<sup>3</sup>, wenn man ihm das Deutſche in dieſer Beziehung gleich ſtellen<sup>4</sup> wollte. Die Vorzüge<sup>5</sup> des letzteren liegen eben nach einer andern Seite hin<sup>6</sup>. Man hätte längſt einſehen<sup>7</sup> ſollen, daß, indem ſich das Engliſche grammatiſch und idiomatiſch faſt<sup>8</sup> gänzlich<sup>9</sup> in dem Gleife<sup>10</sup> des Franzöſiſchen bewegt<sup>11</sup>, dieſes hauptſächlich<sup>12</sup> als Umgangſprache<sup>13</sup> und mit Bezug auf<sup>14</sup> die Literatur werthvoll<sup>15</sup> iſt, während dagegen das Deutſche von vorn herein den grammatiſch hoch entwickelten<sup>16</sup> kläſſiſchen Sprachen des Alterthums<sup>17</sup> hätte gleichgeſtellt werden können. Man hätte es ſogar<sup>18</sup> als Bildungsmittel<sup>19</sup> des Geiſtes den letzteren vorziehen<sup>20</sup> müſſen, indem es als die lebende Sprache der größten Nation des Continents, und in ſeiner Literatur, neben der engliſchen, die tieſten Gedanken der modernen Welt repräſentirend, von ungleich<sup>21</sup> größerer, praktiſcher und intellectueller Bedeutung<sup>22</sup> iſt.

<sup>1</sup>m. expression, <sup>2</sup>to commit, <sup>3</sup>folly, <sup>4</sup>to put on or par with, <sup>5</sup>m. excellence, merit, <sup>6</sup>in an other direction; p. 49, 6., <sup>7</sup>to conceive, <sup>8</sup>, <sup>9</sup>p. 361, c., <sup>10</sup>groove, <sup>11</sup>to move, <sup>12</sup>p. 316, a., <sup>13</sup>the language of intercourse, <sup>14</sup>with respect to, <sup>15</sup>valuable, <sup>16</sup>highly developed, <sup>17</sup>n. antiquity, <sup>18</sup>p. 316, c., <sup>19</sup>means of cultivating the mind, <sup>20</sup>st. to prefer, <sup>21</sup>incomparably, <sup>22</sup>Importance, <sup>23</sup>For the constructions hätte ſollen, hätte müſſen ſee p. 379, d. and p. 380.

## SECTION XXXII.

### REMARKS ON GERMAN METRE.

The German language admits of the formation of all kinds of metres, and its abundance in semi-accented and unaccented syllables greatly facilitates the faithful reproduction of all the varieties of metrical construction in use among the ancients. Without entering into the subject in detail, the following short hints will enable the student to read German poetry with the proper accent: —

As far as the metre is concerned, (that is, quite apart from the power of the vowel and even from

the accent in words) syllables are either long (--), short (—), or doubtful (≡). The root-syllables and accented prefixes are long, as, Väter, Öväter, auß-geht, Unfall. Unaccented prefixes and suffixes, and the article in its monosyllabic forms, are short, as, der, Öväter, liebender. Semi-accented suffixes, monosyllabic prepositions, adverbs, conjunctions, &c., and the monosyllabic forms of the pronouns and of the auxiliary verbs haben, sein, and werden, are doubtful; they may be used as long, chiefly when placed between short syllables, or as equivalent to two short syllables in the same foot; or they may be used as short, when placed between with long or doubtful syllables; as, doch zu lieblich war mein Traum.

A combination of long and short syllables, which is regularly repeated in the same line or verse, is called a *foot*. The metre is *Iambic* when each foot consists of two syllables, the first short, the second long, as in Schiller's *Don Carlos*:

— — | — — | — — | — — | — —  
Ist mei- nem I- de- al- nicht reif. Ich lebe.  
Ein Vür-ger Der- er, wel- che som- men werden.

The metre is *Trochaic* if each foot consists of two syllables, the first long, the second short; as,

— — | — — | — — | — —  
Bil-de Künstler, re- de nicht;  
Nur ein Hauch sei dein Ge- dacht. — Goethe.

**Rhymes** occur in two forms; either of one long syllable, which is called **Male**, as in the above quotation from *Goethe*, or of a long and short, which is called **Female**, as *Herzen* rhyming with *Schmerzen*.

The metre is *Dactylic* if each foot consists of three syllables, the first long, and the two others short. The principal verse in this metre is the rhymeless *Hexameter*, consisting of six Dactylic feet, into which, how-

ever, to avoid monotony, occasionally a foot of two syllables (a *Spondee* — —), or even, in lieu of it, a Trochaic foot is inserted. Such is always the case in the sixth or last foot of the line; yet it must not be in the fifth, which remains a regular Dactyl, to preserve the character of the verse. Besides this, the third foot must be formed of the syllables of two different words, in order to produce a kind of rest (*caesural pause*); and if this cannot be done in the third, it must be done both in the second and fourth feet; as,

— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —
Hurtig mit		Donner-ge-		pol-ter ent-		roll-te der		türkische		Mar-mor.
— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —
Gedeh'n		handbreit		ragten, em-		por am		Häupte die		Hörner.

*Voss's Homer.*

To begin the Hexameter with a short syllable is no improvement. A particularly fine effect is produced by combining Hexameter and *Pentameter*; which latter metre consists of five Dactylic feet, or, properly speaking, of twice two and a half (— — — | — — — | —). This metre is called the Elegiac, in larger poems like Schillers "Spaziergang" or Goethe's "Euphrosyne"; but it is commonly termed the *Distichon* in short epigrammatic compositions:

Groß-britannien und Deutschland.

— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —		— — —
Großes		gabst du der		Welt; es		danke die		fernsten		Regionen
Deiner be-		flü-gel-ten		Kraft		Glauben, Ge-		sitz-ung und		Recht.
Doch für die		Freiheit des		Geistes erhob		der germanischen		Schwester		
Danken, Wissen		und Kunst,		mächtig den		leuchtenden		Schild.		

*H. Weisse.*

END.

ak-  
ike  
but  
un-

en  
fr.





